

2 N.6.

CALLATED PERFECT.  
A - Ccct in 48.

MARKHAM. (GERVASE.)

MARKHAM'S MASTER-PIECE.... DIVIDED INTO TWO  
BOOKS. THE FIRST CONTAINING ALL CURES PHYSICAL. THE  
SECOND ALL BELONGING TO CHIRURGERY. TO WHICH IS NOW  
ADDED THE COUNTRY-MAN'S CARE FOR CURING DISEASES IN  
SMALLER CATTLE. ALSO THE COMPLETE TOCKEY. AND ETC.

LONDON 1717.

470. A FINE AND APPARENTLY UNUSED COPY IN THE ORIGINAL  
CALF. COMPLETE WITH THE WOODCUT AND PRINTED TITLES, AND  
WITH 5 FULL PAGE WOODCUTS.















1609/5566



**MARKHAM'S  
Master-Piece:**

**CONTAINING**  
All Knowledge belong-  
ing to Smith, Farrier, or  
Horse-Leach; touching the  
Curing of all Diseases in  
**HORSES.**

**Divided into two Books:**  
*The First containing all Cures  
Physical.*  
*The Second, All belonging to  
Chirurgery.*

*The 12th Edition Corrected  
and Enlarged by the Author*  
**GERARD MARKHAM.**

*To which is now added,*  
**The Country-mans Care**  
for Curing Diseases in  
Smaller Cattle. Also the  
Compleat Jockey, &c.

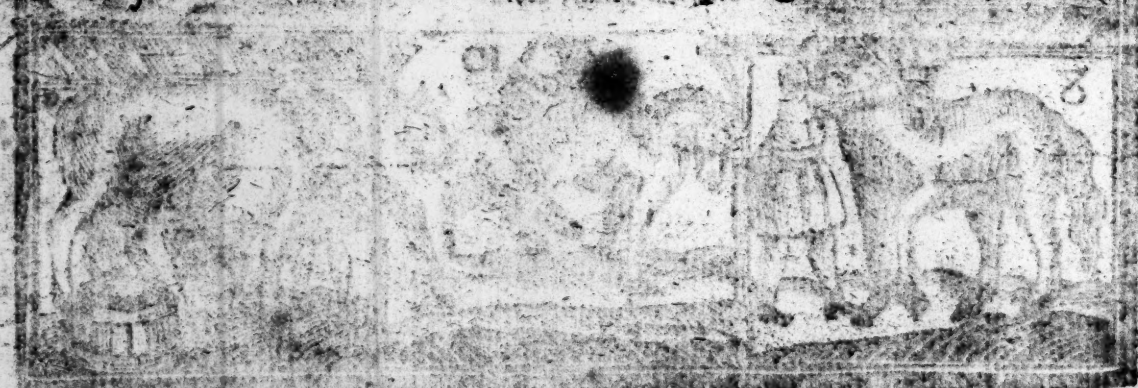






*The Cut or Figure Explained.*

**T**HE Figure 1. a Compleat Horseman shews,  
That Rides, Keeps, Cures, and all Perfections knows.  
The 2. Diet; the 3. Letting Blood.  
Best Balm of Balms, for inward Grievs most good:  
The 4. Wounds, Galls, and Sores doth firmly cure;  
The 5. helps Nature's Marks; 6. doth procure  
Helps for the Sinews Grievs, as Slip or Strain,  
Knock, or Convulsion, all are helpt again.  
The 7. wholesome Drink; the 8. doth take  
Blood from the Mouth, which sudden Death doth slake.  
The 9. shews the Horse-Caudle, or the Mash,  
Good as the best, yet some Fools count it Trash.  
The 10. shews Fury in untamed Things,  
The only Fountain whence Diseases Springs.



# MARKHAM's Master-Piece:

CONTAINING

All Knowledge belonging to the *Smith, Farrier, or Horse-Leath,*  
touching the

Curing all DISEASES

**HORSES.**

Drawn with great Pains and Approved Experience, and the  
Publick Practice of the best Horse-Masters in *Christendom.*

Divided into Two BOOKS.

The I. Containing Cures *Physical*: The II. All Cures *Chyrurgical.*

Together with

The *Nature, Use, and Quality* of every **SIMPLE** mentioned  
through the whole **WORK.**

Now the Nineteenth Time Printed, Corrected and Augmented, with  
above Thirty New Chapters, and Forty new Medicines, heretofore  
never Published.

To which is Added,

The Exactest **RECIPTS** for Curing all Diseases, in Oxen, Cows,  
Sheep, Hogs, Goats, Dogs, and all small Cattle.

**A L S O**

**The COMPLEAT JOCKEY.**

Containing Methods for the Training Horses up for Racing, with  
their Heats and Courses, and Manner of Keeping, &c. Also, In-  
structions to avoid being Cheated by Horse-Couriers.

To which is Added in this Nineteenth Impression,

Directions to preserve all sorts of Cattle from all manner of Dis-  
eases, and to feed Cattle Fat, without Corn, Hay, or Grass. Also the  
Way to improve St-Foin. With divers other Things never before  
made Publick.

**L O N D O N:** Printed for N. and M. Boddington, at the Golden-Ball in Duck-Lane; And  
G. Conyers, at the Golden-Ring in Little-Britain; And M. Wotton at the  
Cross Daggers in Fleet-street. 1717. Price 4s.



# Admonition to the READER.

**I**N this Impression, all those Medicines, which of my own Knowledge I have found to be certain and most approved, I have in the Margin, and over against the Medicine, placed this Mark . And also to every new Addition and new Chapter (never before published; I have in the beginning of this Chapter) placed this Mark. And for thy fuller Information, I have also in the Table to all the new Editions, which are the very Excellencies of all my Knowledge, placed this Mark also . As for the many Books that have been foisted into the World in my Name, I own none but this and one other. I can give the Reader no better Reason to persuade him to read my Book, than to shew him the real Use of Horses, well managed according to the true Rules of Horsemanship, that this excellent Beast may not perish or miscarry for want of knowing his natural Diseases, and Cure thereof. I have now made the Soldier, and all others Masters of Art in the Cure of their Horses, if Farriers be wanting to Consult with. It is also a Knowledge fit for a Gentleman, both in Peace and War, to be able to cure the Diseases insident to Horses. I have been 50 Years a Practitioner; and did never think to have disclosed these Secrets that I now have done: But Old-Age growing upon me, and considering that the Grave will be never a whit the better; I thought it more proper to divulge them to the World than that they should be buried in Oblivion: So desiring the Reader to give God the Glory, and me but only Thanks and good Wishes.

I rest thine,

G. MARKHAM.

*To Farriers, Husbandmen, and all that delight in Horses and other Cattle.*

Sirs, Let me assure you that there is newness of Birth, and approved Experience, which to this Day has not been discovered by any other, and it is the Practice and Experience of above 50 Years: The many Impressions shews the good and kind Reception it has found, and I say of it, that it will not be counted Ostentation, to affirm it the only Book that is Extant of this Kind: In the 10th Edition are some Additions, and an Alphabetical Table, which I was desired to add to this Impression. yours, G. Markham.

*Authors, The best of Farriers made use of in this Work.*

Xenophon, Rusticus, Vigelius, Pelagonius, Camerarius, Apollonius, Gellon, Gulli, Horatio, Gloria, de Coballi, Liball, Stevens, Wieher, la Borone, Martin, Sm. Albetere, Vinet, Clifford, Mastal Martin, Jan. Webb, Dalidoun,, Alishorn, Stanly, Smith, Dowling, Day, Burns, Mayfield, Lupman, Goodson, Parfucy, White, and others.



**A T A B L E of the First Book, containing all C U R E S Physical.**

|                                                          |                                          |                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b>                                                 | <b>C</b>                                 | <b>F</b>                                                     |
| Actions or Operations whereto they belong,               | Composition of Horses Bodies,            | Fevers in General, their divers kinds,                       |
| Apoplexy, or Palsy,                                      | Complexion                               | Fevers Quotidian, or every Day, to Cure,                     |
| Anticor, or Heart Sickness,                              | Cramps or Convulsions of Sinews,         | Fevers Tertian, to Cure,                                     |
| <b>B</b>                                                 | Cold, or Pose in the Head,               | Fevers Quartan, M                                            |
| Broken-Winded or Purlick,                                | Cold Pose, or Raating to take away,      | Fever Continual,                                             |
| Breast Pain,                                             | Cold or Pose, the best of all Medicines, | Fever Hectick,                                               |
| Belly-Ach,                                               | Cough,                                   | Fever in Autumn,                                             |
| Belly-Bound or Costive,                                  | Cough inward or wet,                     | Fever in Summer,                                             |
| Bloody-Flox,                                             | Cough dry,                               | Fever in Winter,                                             |
| Bots Truncheons, or Worms,                               | Cough, Medicines for any Cold or Dry     | Fever by Surfeit of Meat only,                               |
| Bladder Diseases and Urine,                              | Cough, or Shortness of Breath,           | Fevers extraordinary, and Pestilent,                         |
| <b>C</b>                                                 | Consumption, or Dry Malady,              | Fevers accidental,                                           |
| Composition of Horses Bodies,                            | Consumption of the Flesh,                | Fevers, and Sickneses of all Sorts, a certain approved Cule, |
| Complexion                                               | Casting out of the Horses Drink,         | Frenzy, and Maddness,                                        |
| Cramps or Convulsions of Sinews,                         | Consumption of the Liver,                | Falling-Evil,                                                |
| Cold, or Pose in the Head,                               | Cholick, or Gut Diseases,                | Falling in the Body,                                         |
| Cold Pose, or Raating to take away,                      | Colt-Evil,                               | Fundament Falling,                                           |
| Cold or Pose, the best of all Medicines,                 | Consumption, Pestilent in Mares,         | Frictions and Bathes,                                        |
| <b>D</b>                                                 |                                          | <b>G</b>                                                     |
| Dropfie, or Evil Habit of Body,                          |                                          | Gall Diseases,                                               |
| Drenches General, and Medicines for all inward Diseases, |                                          | Glanders,                                                    |
| Diapente to make,                                        |                                          | Glanders of all Sorts to Cure infallibly,                    |
| <b>E</b>                                                 |                                          | Glanders, High Running, an infallible Cure,                  |
| Elements Four, their Virtue and Operations,              |                                          | <b>H</b>                                                     |
| Excrements, and Urine of a Horse,                        |                                          | Horses Head Diseases,                                        |
|                                                          |                                          | Head-ach, or Pain,                                           |
|                                                          |                                          | Horse Lean, how to Fatten,                                   |
|                                                          |                                          | Horses Tired,                                                |
|                                                          |                                          | Humours in Horses, and to what End they serve,               |
|                                                          |                                          | Hide-bound,                                                  |
|                                                          |                                          | Hungry-Evil, or Greedy-Worm,                                 |
|                                                          |                                          | Heart-Sick,                                                  |
|                                                          |                                          | Horse-Leaches, Drinking to Cure,                             |
|                                                          |                                          | Hens-dung, or any Venomous thing,                            |
|                                                          |                                          | <b>I</b>                                                     |
|                                                          |                                          | Jaundice or Yellows,                                         |
|                                                          |                                          | Lethargy,                                                    |



## A Table of the First Book, &c.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>L</b></p> <p>Lethargy, or Sleeping-Evil, p. 34</p> <p>Lungs Rotten, Broken, or Frettized, p. 56</p> <p>Lungs Rotten, p. 56</p> <p>Liver Diseases, and Inflammations, p. 74</p> <p>Liver Obstructions, Stoppings and hard<br/>Knobs, p. 76</p> <p>Liver Consumption, p. 78</p> <p>Lax, or Scouring, p. 87</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>M</b></p> <p>Members of Horses, their several Kinds, p. 5</p> <p>Mourning of the Chine, p. 51</p> <p>Mirror and Master of all Medicines, p. 65</p> <p>Mares Diseases, incident to them, and<br/>Barrenness of the Womb, p. 100</p> <p>Mares Rage of Love, <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Mares which cast their Foals, p. 101</p> <p>Mares hard of Foaling, <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Mares to make cast their Foals, p. 102</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>N</b></p> <p>Not Natural, Six Things in Horses,<br/>their Profit and Hurt, p. 11</p> <p>Night-Mare, p. 38</p> <p>Notes to be observed in buying of a<br/>Horse, p. 124</p> <p>Neezing or Fumigation, p. 111</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>O</b></p> <p>Observations in Physicking of Horses<br/>p. 19</p> <p>Oil of Oats, to make, p. 115</p> <p>Observations on Horse's, and Mares of<br/>all Country's, p. 119, 120</p> <p>Powers of Horse's Bodys, and how they<br/>are Governed, p. 8</p> <p>Plague and Pestilence in Horses, p. 30</p> <p>Pain in a Horses Kidneys, p. 39</p> | <p>Pissing in Pain, p. 94</p> <p>Pissing surprest, or Stone, <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Pissing Blood, p. 96</p> <p>Purging Medicines in General p. 103</p> <p>Purgations, and their Use p. 106</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>R</b></p> <p>Receipt, Famous for singular Drench,<br/>an Ointment, p. 114</p> <p>Rules to be observed for the right order-<br/>ing of Horses and Mares, and to keep<br/>them in Health, p. 116</p> <p>Rules to gather Simples for Use, p. 122</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>S</b></p> <p>Spirits in Horse's, and what Part of the<br/>Body they remain in, p. 10</p> <p>Sickneses inward, their Causes, and se-<br/>veral Kinds, p. 15</p> <p>Signs of Sicknes, and of what Nature it<br/>consisteth, p. 16</p> <p>Shrow-running, or being taken, p. 34</p> <p>Staggers, p. 36</p> <p>Shortness of Breath, or Purfiness, p. 55</p> <p>Stomach Diseases, p. 71</p> <p>Surfeit with glut of Provender, p. 72</p> <p>Spleen, and all Diseases incident to it,<br/>p. 80</p> <p>Seed Shedding, p. 98</p> <p>Scouring for any Horse, an excellent<br/>Way, especially for Running or Hunt-<br/>ing Horses, p. 110</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>T</b></p> <p>Temperaments, their Kind, and how far<br/>they to Extend in Horses, p. 4</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Y</b></p> <p>Yard Mattering, p. 99</p> <p>Yard Falling, p. 98</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## A Table of the Second Book, containing all manner of CURES Chirurgical.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>A</b></p> <p>A Description well-shapen Horse, p. 125</p> <p>Anatomy ins. p. 128</p> <p>Anatomy of Sinews, p. 131</p> <p>Anatomy of all the Bones, p. 133</p> <p>Attaint Upper, p. 201</p> | <p>Attaint Nether, <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Attaint on the Heel, <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Ambury, p. 258</p> <p>Arrow-hurts, p. 262</p> <p>Approved Ways to preserve Horses from ti-<br/>ring, p. 297</p> <p>Approved</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

# A. Table of the Second Book, &c.

|                                                                                  |              |                                                     |              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Approved Way to make a Horse follow his Master,                                  | p. 208       | Eye Haw in a Horse,                                 | p. 143       |
| An Alphabetical Account of all the Simples in the Work,                          | <i>ibid.</i> | Eye Moon, or Lunatick,                              | p. 144       |
| As also the Principles, Nature, Use and Property of them,                        | p. 312       | Eye Canker,                                         | p. 145       |
| An Account of the Weights and Measures,                                          | <i>ibid.</i> | Eye Wart,                                           | p. 146       |
| An Account of the Farriers Instruments and Use, with their Names and Properties, | p. 315       | Eye Inflammation,                                   | <i>ibid.</i> |
| <b>B</b>                                                                         |              | Ear an Imposthume,                                  | p. 147       |
| Blindness that's desperate, an approved Medicine for any Blindness,              | p. 141       | Enterferag,                                         | p. 221       |
| Blood-Rifts, or Chops in the Palate,                                             | p. 156       | <b>F</b>                                            |              |
| Barbes, or Paps,                                                                 | p. 160       | Foundring in the Feet,                              | p. 191       |
| Blood to Staunch,                                                                | p. 164       | False Quarters,                                     | p. 203       |
| Burfting, or Rupture,                                                            | p. 177       | Foot to draw out Stubs, Thorn or Iron, of the Foot, | p. 232       |
| Botch in the Groin,                                                              | p. 178       | Fig,                                                | <i>ibid.</i> |
| Botch in the Groin to Cure,                                                      | <i>ibid.</i> | Feet Observations for them,                         | p. 235       |
| Bone-Spaven,                                                                     | p. 207       | Frush Running or Rotten,                            | p. 240       |
| Bone-Spaven wet, or thorough Spaven,                                             | p. 209       | A Certain Cure,                                     | p. 241       |
| Blood-Spaven, a Medicine to Cure,                                                | p. 210       | Foot-fore to Skin,                                  | p. 244       |
| Brufings,                                                                        | p. 226       | Fistula,                                            | p. 244       |
| Blisters,                                                                        | p. 268       | Fistula to Cure of any Sort,                        | p. 245       |
| Bones of all Sorts to take away,                                                 | p. 268       | Fretting in the Belly,                              | p. 267       |
| Burning with Lime,                                                               | p. 271       | Flesh Superfluous, to take away,                    | p. 269       |
| Biting of Mad Dogs,                                                              | p. 272       | <b>G</b>                                            |              |
| Biting or Stinging of Serpents,                                                  | <i>ibid.</i> | Gigs or Bladder in the Mouth,                       | p. 156       |
| Bones broken,                                                                    | p. 273       | Gaull'd-back or Withers,                            | p. 177       |
| Bones out of Joint,                                                              | p. 275       | Gravelling,                                         | p. 220       |
| Burning Compositions,                                                            | p. 279       | <b>H</b>                                            |              |
| <b>C</b>                                                                         |              | Heat in the Mouth,                                  | p. 159       |
| Canker,                                                                          | p. 158       | Hair Shedding,                                      | p. 167       |
| Crick in the Neck,                                                               | p. 172       | Horse's Halting, to know the Reason,                | p. 182       |
| Crest-filling, and to Raife it,                                                  | p. 164       | Horse's Halting before,                             | p. 183       |
| Cods-swelling,                                                                   | p. 175       | Horse's Halting behind,                             | p. 184       |
| To Cure,                                                                         | p. 176       | Hipthurts,                                          | p. 204       |
| Curb,                                                                            | p. 212       | Hough Bonny,                                        | p. 213       |
| Casting in a Halter,                                                             | p. 222       | Halting, to help of any Sort,                       | p. 219       |
| Crown-scab,                                                                      | p. 227       | Hurt on the Coronet,                                | p. 227       |
| Cloying,                                                                         | p. 234       | Hurt on the Cronet, to Cure of any Sort,            | <i>ibid.</i> |
| Canker in the Body,                                                              | p. 253       | Hoof loosing,                                       | p. 237       |
| Canker in the Withers,                                                           | p. 172       | Hoof-casting,                                       | p. 238       |
| Cords,                                                                           | p. 289       | Hoof-bound,                                         | p. 239       |
| Conglutinate, or Join together, any inward Rupture, or Bursteness,               | p. 278       | Hoof-Evil,                                          | p. 241       |
| Carterizing,                                                                     | p. 298       | Hoofs to preserve,                                  | p. 242       |
| Carterizing Astual,                                                              | <i>ibid.</i> | Hoofs Hurt,                                         | p. 243       |
| Caterize by Medicine,                                                            | p. 301       | Hoofs to soften,                                    | <i>ibid.</i> |
| Curtails to make,                                                                | p. 306       | Hoofs to harden,                                    | <i>ibid.</i> |
| <b>E</b>                                                                         |              | Hurts by a Boars Tusk,                              | p. 272       |
| Eye Diseases,                                                                    | p. 138       | Horses to save from Stinging of Flies,              | p. 273       |
| Eye Blood-shot,                                                                  | p. 139       | Humours to Dry up,                                  | p. 275       |
| Eye Pearl, Pin, or Web,                                                          | p. 141       | Humours to Dissolve,                                | p. 277       |
|                                                                                  |              | Hardness of any Sort, to mollifie,                  | p. 278       |
|                                                                                  |              | Harden any Softness,                                | <i>ibid.</i> |
|                                                                                  |              | Hurts all of Manner of Sorts,                       | <i>ibid.</i> |
|                                                                                  |              | Horses or Colts to Geld,                            | p. 304       |
|                                                                                  |              | Hair to make Grow very soon,                        | p. 293       |
|                                                                                  |              | Hair to make Smooth,                                | <i>ibid.</i> |
|                                                                                  |              | Hair                                                |              |



# A Table of the Second Book, &c. A

Hair to take Off, p. 294  
 Horse to Throw, p. 294  
 Horse Old to make seem Young, p. 307  
 Horse's Age to find, p. 307  
 Horse make not to Neigh, p. 307  
 Horse to Quicken, p. 307  
 Horse that Tires, to make go, p. 291  
 Imposthumes, p. 265  
 Imposthumes old, p. 266. Impost. hot, p. 265  
 Inbording Bursting, or the Rupture in Hor-  
 ses, p. 177  
 Knots or Joint, hardness, &c. p. 270  
 L  
 Lave Ears, p. 150  
 Lampas, p. 175  
 Legs before, swelling, p. 176  
 Legs furred, or swollen, p. 244  
 Legs furred, or swell'd, an infallible Cure,  
 p. 245  
 Lice and other Vermin, to kill, p. 273  
 M  
 Manginess of the Mare, p. 166  
 Manginess of the Tail, p. 179  
 Manginess over the whole Body, p. 179  
 Mange, or Leprosie, the Worse that can  
 happen, 2 Receipts, p. 182  
 Mellander to take away, p. 199  
 Mellet on the Heel, p. 203  
 Mules or Kib'd-Heels, p. 215  
 Malt-Long, p. 243  
 Moisture, Superfluous, a Plaister, p. 276  
 Mundifie and Cleanse any Sore, p. 278  
 Medicines, Repercussive, p. 278  
 Nose Bleeding, p. 155  
 Naval Gall, p. 137  
 P  
 Pole-Evil, p. 147. An approved Cure, p. 149  
 Pimples or Warts in the Palate, call'd Ca-  
 mery or Frounce, p. 175  
 Pains, p. 213  
 Pastern Joint-strained, p. 218  
 Prickle in the Sole of the Foot, p. 280  
 Powder of Honey and Lime to make,  
 Q  
 Quitter-Bone, p. 228  
 R  
 Ringbone, p. 225. Retrait, p. 233.  
 Rowelling of Horses, p. 302

Sorranes, what they are, p. 137  
 Strangle or Inflammation, p. 155  
 Swelling in the Neck after Bleeding, p. 163  
 Stickfast, Stiff, Horns or Bones growing  
 under the Saddle, p. 173  
 Swaying in the Back, p. 144  
 Shoulder Grief, to know, p. 185  
 Shoulder Wrench, p. 187  
 Shoulder Plating, p. 188  
 Shoulder Pight, p. 189  
 Shoulder Pain, that is desperate, p. 190  
 Splent on the inside of the Knee, p. 196  
 Splent to take away, p. 198  
 Screw, p. 199  
 Sinew-train, an approved Medicine, p. 202  
 Stiffing, p. 205  
 Strain, or Swelling, four Medicines to  
 Cure any, p. 221  
 Sellender, p. 211. Shackle-Gall, p. 222  
 Scratches, Crepanches or Rats-Tails, p. 223  
 Scratches to Cure, p. 225  
 Surbaiting, p. 230  
 Spur-galling, 260. String-halt, p. 259  
 Sinews that are cut, p. 267  
 Swelling of any sort. Plaister to dry up, p. 276  
 Star White to make, p. 290  
 Star Black to make, p. 292  
 Star Red to make, p. 292  
 T  
 Tongue Hurt, p. 159. Teeth Pain, p. 160  
 Tetters, p. 266  
 V  
 Vives or hard Kernels, p. 150  
 Vives to Cure, p. 152  
 Ulcer in the Nose, p. 154  
 Ulcer, or old Sore of any Sort to cure, p. 262  
 Ulcer, any old one, a certain Cure, p. 263  
 Veins, the order of taking them, p. 280  
 W  
 Wolfs-Teeth, p. 160  
 Wens in the Neck, p. 163  
 Withers Pain, p. 167  
 Withers Canker, p. 172  
 Wens, or Knobs about the Saddle Place, p. 173  
 Weaknesses in the Back, p. 175  
 Wrench in the Neather Joint, p. 188  
 Wind-Gall, p. 116  
 Wounds in General, p. 160  
 Wounds made with Gun-powder to Cure,  
 p. 170

# MARKHAM's Master-piece.

## The FIRST BOOK.

Containing all Cures Physical, or such Infirmities, as being inward, crave the Administration of Physick, and are called in Horse-Leach-Craft, *Horse-Sicknesses*.

### CHAP. I.

#### *Of the Natural Composition of Horses Bodies.*



Toucing the true Composition of a Horse's Body, you shall understand, that it is (as the Body of Man) compounded of Thirteen several Things, that is to say, Seven Natural, and Six not Natural: The Seven Natural are *Elements, Temperaments, Humours, Members, Powers, or Virtues, Actions, or Operations, and Spirits*; all which be called Natural, because the natural Perfection and Excellency of every sensible Body doth wholly depend upon them: And hath his moving no longer than they have power of Working. The Six, which are not Natural, be the *Air, Meat, and Drink, Motion, and Rest, Sleep and Watch, Emptiness and Fulness*, and the *Affects, or Motions* of the Mind; and these are called not Natural, because as (being rightly and in due order applied) they preserve, sustain, and fortify the Body; so being misgoverned, or used in any excess, or disorder, they are the only corrupt destroyers of the whole Body: And of these Thirteen Principles which compound the Fabrick, or whole Frame of the Body, I intend to speak severally.

### CHAP. II. *Of the Four Elements, their Virtues and Operations.*

First, For the Exposition of the Word *Element*, you shall understand that it is the primary or first beginning of all Things, being of itself pure, uncorrupt and simple; all things being first made thereof, and all things at last being dissolved into the same again. It is also in its own Nature so bright, clear, and without contraction of Impurity, that it is



not able to be discerned by any sensible Eye whatsoever. Lastly, it is the last part of *Atom*, or that thing which is made or proceedeth from it.

Now of these Elements which are the usual first Movers, or beginners of all moving things, there are only four in Number, that is to say, *Fire*, *Air*, *Water*, and *Earth*; meaning not that *Fire*, *Air*, *Water*, and *Earth*, which is here visible with us beneath, and which through the grossness thereof is both palpable and to be discerned; but those which are amounted aloft, and through their Purity invisible and concealed from us, (for the other are compounded Bodies, and not simple.) And of these perfect and distinct Elements you shall know that the *Fire* is the highest, as being fixed or joyned next unto the *Moon*, being hot and dry; yet naturally exceeding, or being most predominant, or ruling in Heat.

The *Air* is placed next unto *Fire*, and is naturally light and hot; yet his predominant or chief Quality is moist.

The *Water* is joyned unto the *Air*, the disposition thereof being heavy and moist; but his Predominant or chief Quality only cold.

Lastly, The *Earth* adjoyned to the *Water*, is the lowest; and it is most heavy and cold; but the Predominant or chief Quality thereof is only driness.

Now for the Virtues, Properties, and Operations of these four Elements, you shall understand, that first the *Fire*, by means of his Heat, moveth Matter to Generation, and stirreth up Warmth in all living Things; it is that which the Philosophers call *Heterogenea*, which is in the mixt Bodies to separate things of divers Kinds one from another, and also to joyn things of like Kinds together, which they likewise call *Homogenea*. For by Virtue of the *Fire*, the Bones of Horses are separated from the Flesh, the Flesh from the Sinews, the Sinews from the Veins, the Veins from the Arteries, the Heart from the Liver, the Liver from the Spleen, and so forth in such sort as we see the divers Parts of the Fuel we burn, by the Virtue of the *Fire* and Heat to be separated, and divided one from another; as the Vapour from the Smoak, the Smoak from the Flame, and the Flame from the Ashes, as in these things, so in many other things, as in the Tryal of Metals and such like, where the *Fire* by Virtue of the Heat separateth the Body from Body, that is, Metal from Metal, and Corruption from Incorruption, gathering and knitting together every thing of one and the self same kind. Besides the virtue of the *Fire*, is to ripen, order and digest things raw and undigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the Pores, that the *Air* being somewhat more solid and gross, may enter into the Body: And lastly, it breaketh and moderateth the coldness of the *Water* and the *Earth*, so that it may not distemper or confound the Body.

Touch-



Touching the Virtue and Operation of the Air, you shall understand, that by the moistness thereof it maketh the matter apt to receive a Shape, either natural or accidental, and by the Help and Assistance of the Fire, bringeth the Powers and Influences of the Heaven and Stars into inferior Bodies, making the mixt Bodies not only subtle and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too gross, nor too heavy. Secondly, The Air through his moistness cooleth the burning heat of the Heart, Liver, and Intrails as we daily see by the Office of the Lights and Lungs, which like a pair of Bellows draweth incessantly fresh Air unto the Heart and inward Members. And altho' the Air doth not seem to the sense of the outward Eyes, to be any thing near so moist as the Water, yet according to the Opinions both of our Books and best Physicians, it is by much the moister, which is well proved (say they) by the abundant Flux it containeth, which Flux spreadeth it self so far abroad in the Body, that it filleth every empty Part and Corner thereof with the special Properties and Characters of moistness, and by that Reason, is much harder to be kept within his own Bounds than the Water is. Lastly, as the Water was altered by God from his first natural Place, for the better profit both of Man and Beast, even so the Air, according to School-men's Opinions, was not left altogether in his first natural Disposition, lest being over-moist it should so confound and suffocate all Sense, that neither Man nor Beast should be able to breath or live.

Now for the Virtue and Operation of the Water, it is to be noted, that through the coldness thereof, it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt Bodies, both Parts and Members together, which be of divers kinds; as Bones with Flesh and Sinews, Flesh with Sinews and Bones, and Sinews with Bones and Flesh. Even as for a familiar Example, we see in the time of any great Frost, the strength of the cold how it bindeth things of divers kinds together, bringing into one Mass or Substance, both Water, Dirt, Stones, Straws, Sticks and Leaves: The Water also with its Coldness, doth temper and cool the Inflammation and Heat of the Fire, gathering together those things, which otherwise the violent Heat would disperse and scatter abroad.

Lastly, For the Virtue and Operation of the Earth, it is through his driness in mixt Bodies, so to harden and fix them together, that they may retain their Shapes, which otherwise by the Power of the Air and Water, would be so Soluble and Loose, that they could not hold together; as we may see in Paste, Wax, and such like, which whilst it is moist, will receive no Print, but being once hardned, it retaineth any Form that is prest into it. And here is to be noted, that according to the Opinion of *Hippocrates*, when any sensible Body dieth not only every quality, but every substance, and part makes its return to the Element



from whence it came; as Heat to the Fire, Moistness to the Air, Coldness to the Water, and Driness to the Earth. And thus briefly you see, that of these Four common Elements, or common Beginners of Things; the Fire being hot, separateth; the Air being moist, shapeth; the Water being cold, bindeth; and the Earth being dry, hardneth and retaineth. The use that you are to make of this Knowledge, over and besides the Composition of a natural Body, is, that when you find any Sickness, or Infirmary, which proceedeth from the Fire as Inflammations of the Body, or such like, that then you apply Simples of the Nature of the Air or Water, which may moisten and cool the violence of the Heat. If the Infirmary proceed from the Air, as Flux of Blood, or too much moisture, then you shall apply Simples of the Nature of the Fire or Earth, whose heat and driness may disperse and harden such moisture. If the Disease spring from the Water, as Colds, Rheums, Apoplexies, and such like; then you shall seek Simples of the nature of the Fire and Air; that through the heat of the one, and the moist lightness of the other, all such cold, gross and solid humours may be dispersed. But if the Disease proceed from the Earth, as Manginess and Leprosie, or their like, that are dry and hardned Infections, then you shall seek Simples of the nature of the Fire only, whose heat may dissolve and loosen those ill knit, dry, and hard Humours.

Thus you see, too much heat is abated by coldness and moistness, too much moistness by heat and driness; too much coldness by heat and moistness; too much driness by heat only.

Thus much of these Four common Elements, which begin all things living and unliving, sensible and unsensible; yet of sensible things, which live and have Blood, there be other more near Elements, or beginnings, which are called proper Elements, or Generation; as the ingendring Seed, and menstrual Blood, from whence every Beast taketh his first shape and beginning; and yet those proper beginnings have their whole dependency and hanging upon the Qualities of the first common beginnings already spoken of, which is moist, dry, hot and cold, for without them they are nothing, nor can do any thing.

CHAP. III. *Of Temperaments, and their several Kinds, and how far every way they extend in Horses.*

These *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the second thing in a Horse's Composition, do spring from the Commixture of the four Elements, and are nine in Number, whereof eight are unequal, and the ninth is equal. Of the eight unequal, four are simple, and those be hot, cold, moist, and dry, which Physicians call the first Qualities; and of these, the first two be active, and the other two passive: The other four are compound, and they be hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and

and moist, cold and dry. Now the equal *Temperament* is divided into two, an *Universal* and a *Special*. The equal *Temperament Universal*, is when the four Elements are in an equal proportion, generally divided, through the whole Body, Nature enjoying no more from the one than from the other. The equal *Temperament Especial*, is when the Elements are proportioned according as every kind doth most properly require, be it either Plant or Beast: In Plants, when every Plant hath that commixture of Elements, which are proper to its kind, the hot Plant being hot, the cold being cold, &c. Whereas contrariwise, to have a hot Plant cold, or a cold hot, to have Rue cold, or Sorrel hot, were a false and unequal commixture of Elements. So likewise Beasts; that Horse, that Dog, that Swine is said to have his due *Temperament*, when he is of such temperature as is most proper unto his kind, which is best discerned by his Actions or Motions. As thus, the Horse is known to be hot and moist by his lightness, swiftness, valiantness and long Life, and also to be of a temperate Nature, in that he is easily tamed, docible, obedient and familiar with the Man. And so long as either Horse, or any other thing, continueth in the Mediocrity and Excellency of his proper *Temperament*, so long we may truly judge him of a good Temper and Disposition; but if there be any overflow of Qualities, or excess in his Humours, as either heat, coldness, moistness or driness, then we say, he is either a hot Cholerick Horse, a cold Dull Horse, a dry Mischievous Horse; or a most cowardly Horse, according to the overflow of that Quality which reigneth in him.

Again, every Horse is said to have his *Temperaments*, according to his Age and the Country wherein he is bred, and sometimes according to the time of the Year wherein he liveth. And thus a Horse in his foal Age, which is till he be six Years old, is naturally hot and moist; in his middle, which is till twelve, more hot and dry than moist; and in his old Age; which is past eighteen, more cold and dry, than either hot or moist. So likewise, the Horses which are bred in Southern Parts, as either in *Spain*, *Barbary*, or *Greece*, are naturally more hot than those which are bred either in the seventeen Lands, *Germany* or *England*; neither is there any Horse, which is in good state of Body, that is so hot in the Spring-time of the Year, as in the Summer, nor so cold in the Summer, as the Winter. All which Observations are with most curious diligence to be observed of every Horse-leach, when he goeth about to cure any Sickness: For unless he considers their Natures and Temperatures, and every other Circumstance already declared, he shall right-soon be deceived in the Administration of his Physick. Therefore, I earnestly desire every Farrier, before he give any Drench or Potion, first to enquire the Kind, Race, and Disposition of the Horse, next his Age, the Country, and lastly, the time of the Year: And so according to the truth thereof, to mix his Receipts.

It



It is most expedient also, for every Horse-leach to consider the second Qualities, which are so called, because they take their beginnings from the first Qualities already declared, of which second Qualities some are called palpable, or to be touched, as these, softness, hardness, smoothness, roughness, thickness, brackleness, heaviness, thinness, smallness, grossness, and such other like. Some again are not palpable, as those which appertain to hearing, seeing, and smelling, as noises, colours, odours, and such like; and by observing well the second Qualities, he shall with much ease know whether the Horse be disposed to any Sickness or not, as shall be more largely declared hereafter in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. IV. Of Humours, and to what end they serve.

**N**OW concerning *Humours*, which are the third Composers of a *Horse's* Body, and so likewise of every other Beast also; you shall understand that they are four in Number, that is to say, *Blood*, *Phlegm*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*. As touching *Blood*, it is in its Nature uncorrupted, and therefore hot and moist, and sweet in taste; participating of the Elements Water and Air: *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taste, as participating of the Elements Fire and Earth: *Melancholly* is cold and dry, and in taste sowre and heavy, as participating of the Elements Fire and Air: *Phlegm* is cold and moist, and either sweet, or wollowish without any taste at all, as participating of the Elements Water and Earth: So that these four Humours by their Qualities, are every way allied unto the Elements. For to speak briefly, and according to the manner of Physicians, *Blood* is of the nature of the Air, it being most predominant therein; *Phlegm* of the nature of the Water; *Choler* of the nature of Fire, and *Melancholly* of the nature of the Earth. And albeit these Humours are symbolized or mixt through every part of the Body, yet every one of them aboundeth more in one part than in another, and have their places of Residence, absolute and particular to themselves; as *Blood* about the Heart; *Phlegm* in the Brain; *Choler* in the Liver; and *Melancholly* in the *Spleen*. Now as these Humours do more or less abound, or have greater or lesser Sovereignty in the Horse, so is the Beast naturally better or worse coloured, qualified, or disposed: As thus; That Horse in whom Blood hath the gteatest predominance, and may be called a Horse, sanguine, is bright, bay of Colour, and in Disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate Motion. That Horse in whom Phlem has the gteatest Dominion, and may be called a Phlegmatick Horse, is for the most part of a milky white Colour, and so consequently slow, dull, and heavy. If *Choler* bear the gteatest Rule in his Constitution, then is his Colour commonly a bright Sorrel, and by that means of disposition, hot, fiery, and of little strength. Lastly, If the Earth have gotten power above the  
other

other Elements, so that he may be called a Melancholy Horse, then his Colour is commonly a Mouse-dun; and his disposition cowardly, faint and sloathful. But because these particulars are properly appertaining to the Complexions of Horses, of which we shall have cause to speak more largely hereafter, I will not stand upon any greater Relations; only I give you thus much in conclusion: To understand that every one of these aforesaid Humours hath his proper use and end, whereunto it serveth; As thus; *Blood* serveth more properly to nourish the Body. *Phlegm* giveth Motion to the Joynts. *Melancholly* begetteth an Appetite or longing to his Meat. Now during the time that these Humours do possess their natural Qualities, so long they are wholesome, and be called by their simple Names without Gloss or Addition. But if by any mischance they be disordered or corrupted, then they are unwholesome, and are no longer called by their simple Names, but have other Epithetons annexed unto them, as *Melancholly*, *Blood*, *Salt*, *Phlegm*, *Choler*, *adust* or *burnt Choler* and *fretting Melancholly*, whereof proceedeth many pestilent and dangerous Diseases, as shall be at large declared hereafter. And thus much for the State of Humours.

CHAP. V. Of Members, and their several Kinds.

**T**ouching *Members*, which are the fourth main Instrument in this Fabrick of a Horse's Body, they are by School-Men divided into two Parts. The first is called *Similaria*, which is like, semblable, or one and the same thing. The other is called *Instrumental*, and are contrary to the first.

*Members* alike, are those, which being separated, or distributed into Parts, yet every Part thereof is alike in substance to the whole, neither altering in Definition, Appellation, or Nature; as *Flesh*, *Bone*, *Sinew*, and such like: For *Flesh* being cut or incised into many Parts, yet is every part still *Flesh*, so reputed, and so called, as well as when it was in combination altogether; and as of this, so likewise may it be said of *Bones*, *Sinews*, and the like.

Now for *Members* instrumental, they be those which being made of Parts of semblable, and divided into Parts, yet the Parts are not alike, neither have one Name with the whole; as the *Head*, *Leg*, *Foot*, and such like: For every part of the *Head* is not called the *Head*, nor every part of the *Leg*, the *Leg*, but have other Appellations, as the *Brow*, the *Temples*, the *Knees*, the *Feet-lock*, &c. Now these *Instrumental Members*, in doing of their Offices and Duties, are of much more Perfection than the semblable *Members*: Wherefore School-Men have made amongst these *Instrumental Members*, four Sovereigns, or Princes above the rest; that is, the *Brain*, the *Heart*, the *Liver*, and the *Stones*; of which the first three are the preservers of the singular Body, and the fourth



fourth of the whole Kind ; the first three giving Motion and Agitation to the Body, the fourth Generation and Increase to succeeding Ages.

Now from these principal Members, like Branches from a well-grown Tree, do spring other Members, which doth them Service : As from the Brain spring Sinews, whose Office is feeling, from the Heart-Arteries, whose Office is Sprightliness and Liveliness ; from the Liver-Veins, whose Office is Warmth and Strength ; and from the Stones the Seed-Vessels, whose Office is Procreation and Increase. Now forasmuch as from these do likewise proceed a world of other Members, as *Tendons*, *Ligaments*, *Lungs*, *Spleens*, *Guts*, and such like ; all which, inasmuch as the Knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the Office of the Chirurgeon, than to the Physician, (though most necessary to both) I am here to advertise every studious Reader, that when he shall have occasion to meddle with any Member about a Horse, that he turn to the second Book of this Volumn, which treateth only of Chyrurgery, and there he shall not only find every Member and Lineament in a Horse, but also the true Anatomy so lively demonstrated, that there shall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his Understanding. And thus much in this Place of Members.

CHAP. VI. *Of Powers, and how a Horse's Body is governed by them.*

**P**Owers which by some are called *Virtues*, or principal Faculties, and do govern and controul both the Body of Man and Beast, and have the fifth place in this Work, are in Number three, that is, the *Power Animal*, the *Power Vital*, and the *Power Natural*. The *Power Animal*, is a Virtue incident to the Brain, which through the Sinews coming like little Conduit-pipes from the Brain, distributeth feeling and moving to all the Parts of the Body. The *Power Vital* is a Virtue belonging to the Heart, which doth give Life and Spirit to all the Body, by means of the Arteries ; which proceeding from the Heart, which is the chief Fountain of natural Heat, carry in their little Channels over the whole Body, that Air and spiritual Blood which makes it full of Lightness and Alacrity. The *Power Natural* is a Virtue belonging to the Liver, which gives Nourishment unto all the Body, and to every Part thereof, by means of the Veins, which do likewise proceed from the Liver, like greater Conduits, carrying the Blood from the Liver, which is the Fountain of Blood, into every part of the Body. Besides, the *Power Natural* containeth four other Virtues, that is, the Virtue *Attractive*, which draweth Food, Meat to sustain the Body ; the Virtue *Retentive*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the Food received ; the Virtue *Digestive*, whereby it concocteth and digesteth the same ; and Lastly, the Virtue *Expulsive*, by which it expelleth Excrements and Superfluities. Thus these Powers or Virtues being of no less validity than you perceive by this Discourse, it is the Part and Duty

Duty of every good Horfeleach, to have a more careful and vigilant respect unto them; for if any one of them fail, the Horfe cannot live. Therefore whensoever yo see that either your Horfe refuseth his Food, or that he cannot retain and keep his Food, but casteth it up again; or that he doth not digest his Food, but keeps it corruptly in his Stomach: Or that he cannot void his Excrements in a natural manner, but holds it burning in his Body, take them for certain signs of mortal Sicknes: And thus much of the Powers and Virtues.

CHAP. VII. Of Actions or Operations, and whereto they belong.

**A**S touching *Actions* or *Operations*, which are the sixth Column or Pillar which doth uphold this natural Body of which we treat, they are not only belonging. but even derived from the three Powers immediately spoken in the former Chapter, as thus: The Action and Operation of the *Power-Animal*, is to discern, to move, and to feel. Horses discern by means of the Virtue *Imaginative*, *Discursive*, and *Mensitive*, whereof the first is placed in the Forehead, the second in the middle of the Brain, and the third in the hinder part of the Head. All which are comprehended under the *Power-Animal*. Horses move by means of the *Virtue-Motive*, whose Action and Operation is to refrain, or let slack the Sinews, whereby every Member hath his moving. And Horses feeling is by means of the *Virtue-Sensitive*, whose Action and Operation is buied in the five Senses, as to *See*, *Hear*, *Smell*, *Taste*, and *Touch*, and all these Actions spring from the *Power-Animal*.

The Action or Operation of the *Power-Vital*, is to restrain and loosen the Heart, and the Arteries which proceed from the Heart, which Action, whether it be hurt or disturbed in a Horse's Body, is easily known of every good *Farrier* or *Horse-Marshall*, by the unequal beating of his Pulse; that is to say, of the Arteries, which come down from the Heart to the insides of both his Fore-legs, a little below the Knuckles of his Shoulders, and likewise cross both the Temples of his Head, a little higher than his Eyes. And if any Man be so simple to imagine that the thickness of the Horse's Skin shall be an impediment to the feeling of his Motion; let him remember that as a Horse's Skin is thicker than a Mans, so also are his Arteries greater, and beat with more violence, and so consequently be felt without any great Difficulty.

The Actions or Operations of the *Power-Natural*, are to *Ingender*, to *Emcrease*, to *Nourish*, to *desire with Appetite*, to *Attract*, to *Change*, to *Digest*, to *Retain*, and to *Expel*, and many other of like kind. These Actions therefore are carefully to be looked unto by every *Farrier*, to the intent that he may learn by them, not only the whole Estate of a Horse's Body, but also what particular Member thereof is evil affected: As thus, If either in your Horse you find much Forgetfulness, Unnimbleness of



his Limbs, or Dulness upon Correction, it is a sign of Sickness in the Brain, and that the *Power-Animal* is evil affected. If you find that his *Pulses* do beat extraordinary slow, or much too fast, it is a sign that his Heart is grieved, and his *Power-Vital* evil affected; But if you find that he doth consume, pine away, and loseth his Stomach, it is a sign that his *Liver* is perplexed, all his inward Parts out of frame, and his *Power-Natural* evil affected.

Now you shall again understand, that of Actions some be *Voluntary*, some not *Voluntary*.

The *Voluntary* Actions be those, which a *Horse* may either further or hinder, stay or lett when themselves please, as the moving of the Legs; for they may go stand or lie down at their own pleasure.

The Actions not *Voluntary*, are those which depend not upon the Will of any Beast. but be done of their own accord, and naturally; as the moving of the Heart, and of the Arteries and the passage of the Blood; the first whereof beateth *Sleeping* and *Waking*; and the other hath his Course every Minute. And thus much of the *Actions* and *Operations*.

#### CHAP. VIII. Of Spirits, and in what Part of the Horse's Body they remain.

**S**pirits, which is the seventh Natural Builder of this Natural Work, are to be understood to be, that fine, pure, clear, and airy Substance which is engendred of the finest part of the Blood, whereby the virtue of every principal Member may visit all the other Parts of the Body, making them to do their Duties, according to the Rules of Nature. Now of Spirits according to the Opinions of some Physicians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit-Animal* and the *Spirit-Vital*: The *Spirit-Animal* is that which giveth power of feeling and moving to a Horse, and hath his resting place in the Brain, from whence through the Sinews, it is dispersed into all other parts of the Body: And it is engendred of the *Vital Spirit*, being more vehemently wrought and laboured, and partly of continual breathing: Even so it is partly preserved by the *Caul* of the Brain, which doth, hourly water and nourish it.

The *Spirit-Vital* is contained in the Heart, from whence it floweth into every part of the Body, being the chief cause of all natural Heat, and it is preserved and nourished both by Breathing and Blood.

To these two Spirits, there be most *Farriers*, both *Italians* and *French*, which add a third Spirit, and call it the *Spirit-Natural*, saying, it hath his Residence in the *Liver*, and the Veins; but the two former are of such Power, and have such Superiority, that the Body cannot live without them, nor have any being at all: Wherefore, it is the Office of the *Farrier* continually, in all his Medicines, to have some comfortable Simple, which may maintain and keep the Spirits in their full strength, livelihood and virtue. And thus much touching Spirits, and those seven natural things which compact a Natural Body.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX. Of the Six Things not Natural, how they Profit, and how they Hurt.

**H**AVING spoken of the Natural things, whereof a Horse's Body is compounded, it is needful now that we speak something of the other six which be not Natural, so far forth as they concern the Office of the *Farriers*, and no farther; for with other matters we have not to do. The first thing then which is not natural, yet preserveth a Horse's Body in good state, is the Air, which being pure, sharp, clear, and piercing, giveth great Life and Nourishment to a Horse: But being contrary, that is, gross, thick, and full of putrefaction, it cannot chuse but alter the good habit of his Body, and breed in him many Infirmities: Therefore every *Farrier* shall have great respect to the Air wherein a Horse either liveth or was bred in; as if a Horse that was bred in a hot Air, come to live in a cold, and through the exchange grow Sick, the *Farrier* shall by warm Diet, close House, and moderate Cloathing, bring his Nature to a stronger acquaintance: Also when a Horse exceedeth in any of the four Qualities, that is, in Heat, Moistness, Coldness, or Dryness, it is best for him to live in that Air, which is contrary to that Quality, wherein he exceedeth. Lastly, in many Diseases, the change of the Air is most wholesome, as shall be shewed at large in the particular Diseases.

For the Meat and Drink of a Horse, which is the second thing not Natural in a Horse's Composition, it is not to be doubted, but whilst it is sweet, clean, and good, as Bread well made and baked, dry Oats, dry Beans, dry Pease, sweet Hay, sweet Straw, or short Grass, so long it nourisheth and preserveth the Horse's Body: But if it be fusty, raw, corrupt and unclean, or if he eat Tares, Fitches, Rye, or Barley, then must he needs be unsound, and full of Infirmities, Therefore the *Farrier* shall be careful to keep him from all such Food, as breeds naughty evil Blood. As for his Water, the more pure it is, the better; and the more muddy, thick, and pleasant, so much the more unhealthful.

Now for this Moving and Rest; that is, either his Travel or Standing still, which is the third thing not Natural in a Horse's Composition, doubtless they be great *Preservers* of Horse's Health: For as moderate Exercises dissolve gross Humours, ingender Appetite, and add Strength unto the Limbs, so likewise indifferent Rest causeth Digestion, comforteth the Sinews, and maketh the Heart chearful against ensuing Labour. But on the contrary Part, immoderate Travel or Exercises, when a Horse is ridden beyond his Strength, breedeth many dangerous and mortal Sickneses; as the Foundring in the Body, the Consumption in the *Lungs* and *Liver*, molten *Grease*, and such like, besides the pissing of *Blood*, *Manginess*, *Farcy*, and such like: All which inward Diseases



crave strong *Purges*, and the outward *Sharp* and *Corroding* Medicines. Immoderate Rest, which is, when a Horse doth stand long still without any Exercise, feeding foul and grossly, is as great an Enemy to a Horse's Health as the other: For it congregateth and bindeth together all sorts of ill Humours, breeds Corruption in the Blood, Rottennels in the Flesh, and generally as many Diseases as any ill Diet whatsoever.

The Sleep or Watch of a Horse, (which is the fourth thing in our Composition,) is so necessary a comfort to a Horse, that he cannot live without it: It is the greatest mover of Digestion, and so consequently gives comfort to the whole Body. For whilst the Horse sleeps, the Powers-Animal do take their Rest, which otherwise would be over-wearied; and neither able to discharge their Duties nor to continue their Actions and Operations, which is the giving of Feeling and Moving only: And while a Horse doth Sleep, the Powers-Natural have more Liberty to do their Work, in concocting the Meat and comforting the Body, insomuch as I account Sleep to be the only quieting of the Senses, ordained by Nature to ingender Strength. Sleep is begotten by sweet, fatty and gross Vapours, (and not by their contraries) which are raised from the Heart to the Brain, with the coldness of which Brain, those Vapours being congealed and thickned together, do stop the Pipes of the sensitive Spirits, so as they cannot resort to the Instruments of the Senses, to give the feeling and moving, whereby the Body at that time is deprived of those Motions. And according as those Vapours do more or less fill the Pipes, so is the Horse's Sleep more or less sound and undisturbed; but when this Sleep shall at any time grow into excess, and you shall perceive a Horse to sleep beyond both Nature and Custom, then you shall know that such Sleep cometh from an evil Habit of the Body, and is a sign either of a *Lethargy*, and a Numbness of the Spirits, or else that he hath some inward Grief and Pain in his Limbs, when he standeth; which being easy by lying, makes him covet a continual Rest and Sleeping. Now for the Watch of a Horse, because it is the meer contrary to Sleep, there needs little to be said more than this; that as the excess of the one sheweth the want of the other, so the natural wanting of either shews the evil State of a Horse's Body, and gives the *Farriers* warning to expect ensuing Sicknes.

Now for Emptiness and Fulness, (which is the fifth and Natural Compositor) forasmuch as it is only in adding to, and taking away; some *Farriers* have held Opinion, that all Physick belonging to a Horse's Body, consisteth in them two only; and truly I am of this Mind, that whosoever can take away Corruption, and add Perfection, shall without doubt ever keep an able and substantial Body. But to our purpose; of this fulness there are two sorts, the one fulness by excess of Humours, the other fulness by excess of Meat; either of which perturbing the Spirits, are

are the grounds of Sickness. Again, excess of Humours are of two kinds, the one an equal increase of all manner of Humours gathered together, and the other particular excess, either of too much *Melan-choly Phlegm*, or other waterish Humours whatsoever, the first being termed an abundance of Humours, the latter an excess of evil Juice or Nutriment. Lastly, there is fulness in Quantity, and fulness in Quality. Fulness in Quantity is when a Horse is full of Blood, or any other simple Humours. Fulness in Quality is, when any of these Humours are too hot, or too cold, too gross, or too thin, now for Emptiness; as all Diseases of fulness must be cured by it only, so all Diseases of emptiness must be healed by fulness, as by taking of *Blood*, by *Purge*, *Friction*, *Scarification*, *Boxing*, *Sweating*, *Bathing*, and a world of such like, as shall be very largely set forth hereafter, in its proper Place.

Lastly, Touching the Affections of a Horse's Mind, you shall understand, that so far forth as the Sensitive Soul doth stretch, so far they have sense and feeling of Affections, as Namely, to Love, to Hate, to be Angry, to Rejoyce, to be Sorry, and to Fear: For all which there needs no great *Apology*, since we have it in daily Experience: As who seeth not the Love of some *Horses* to their Keepers, their Hate to Strangers; their Angers in their Fits, their Joys in their Prides and Wooings, their Sorrows in their Sickneses, and their Fears unto their Riders; now these Affections, since many times they are the grounds of strange Motions in the Body, therefore they ought carefully to be looked unto by the *Farrier*, and that the *Horse* be not overpressed with any of them; especially Fear and Hatred, the first wereof compelleth the Blood and Spirits to fly to the inward Parts, and to leave the outward without Sense or Feeling; and the latter makes him to be Unquiet, Fierce and Raging; both together breed Distemperature in a Horse, and those Distemperatures ingender mortal Sickneses. *And thus much for these six things, being held not Natural in a Horse's Composition.*

#### CHAP. X. Of Horse's Complexion.

**H**AVING spoken of those Thirteen Natural, and not Natural things, whereof a Horse's Body is compounded, we will now in a somewhat more particular manner speak of the Complexions of Horses, which is one of the most necessary Faces that a Farrier can behold, both for the judging of a Horse's Infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his Medicines for every Disease: Therefore you shall first understand, that by the Colour of the Horse you shall ever judge his Complexion: For look which of the Elements is predominant in him, from that Element we draw his Complexion: As thus: If he participate more of the Fire than of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a Cholerick Horse, and his Colour is either a bright *Sorrel*, a *Coal Black* without any White, or an *Iron-Gray* unchangeable, that is,



is, such a Grey as neither will ever turn a Dabble-Grey, a White, or a Flea-bitten, and these Horses are of Nature, *Light, Hot, Fiery*, and seldom of any great Strength; these Horses are much subject to *Pestilent Fevers, Yellows, and Inflammations of the Liver*. Wherefore every Farrier shall be careful in his composing of every Medicine for such a Horse to purge *Choler*, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary Strength in the Potion or Drench; because the Horse being in his best Strength, not reputed Strong, should you apply any violent thing to him, that little strength being abated, there were great danger in the confounding of the whole Body.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Air, than of the other Elements, then he is of Sanguine Complexion, and his Colour is either a bright Bay, or a dark Bay, which hath neither skouling Countenance, mayly Mouth, nor White Flank, or a White Flea-bitten, White Lyard like Silver, or Black with a White *Star*, White *Rach*, or White Foot. These Horses are of Nature *Pleasant, Nimble, Free*, and of good Strength. The Diseases to them most incident, is a Consumption of the Liver, Leprosy, Glanders, or any Disease which is Infectious. They are of a good strong Constitution, and may endure strength in their Medicines, especially any thing that cooleth the Blood.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Water, than of the other Elements, then is he of a Phlegmatick Complexion, and his Colour is either Milk-White, or Yellow-Dun, Kite-glew'd, or Pide-ball, in whom there is an equal mixture of Colours, that is, as much White as of the other Colour. Otherwise if the Bay, the Black, or the Dun exceed the White, he is said to be of that Complexion of which the Colour is greatest. These Horses are of Nature Slow, and apt to lose Flesh: The Diseases which are most incident unto them, are *Colds, Head-ach, Rheums, Staggers*, and such like. They are able to endure the reasonable strength of any Medicine, because the abundance of *Flegm* which is in them, sufficeth both Nature and Potion to work upon: All cold Simples are to them exceeding hurtful, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree: The First, because it bindeth too soon; the latter because it disperses too suddenly, therefore Simples of a moderate mean are the best.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Earth, than of the other Elements, then he is of a Melancholy Complexion, and his Colour a *Mousse-Dun, Russet, Chesnut, Ashy, Grey, Dark-Bay*, with mayly Mouth, Red or White Flanks, or a Reddish Bay, having long White Hair like *Gom's-Hair*, growing on his Legs. These Horses are of Nature heavy and faint-hearted: The Diseases to them most incident, are Inflammations in the *Spleen, Frenzy, Dropsy*, and such like. They are commonly of better Strength, than they will suffer to appear by their Actions, and are able to endure the strength of any reasonable Medicine: All cicatrizing and dry  
Simples

Simples are hurtful unto them; the cold and moist are most profitable.

Having thus shewed you these four Complexions, *Cholerick*, *Sanguine*, *Flegmatick* and *Melanchollick*, together with their Qualities and Strengths, you shall understand now, that amongst *Farriers* there is another Complexion, or fifth Constitution, which is called the Composition or Mixture of Complexions: that is, whensoever a Horse doth participate of all the four Elements equally, and in due proportion, none being greater or lesser than another, and this Complexion of all other is the best, and most perfect, and the Horse which is of this Complexion, is ever of one of these Colours, that is to say, either a fair Brown Bay, Dabled or not Dabled, a Dabled-Grey, a Black, full of Silver Hair, or a fair Roan, Red or Black. And these Horses are of Nature most Excellent, most Temperate, Strongest gentlest, and most Healthful; though they may have any Disease, yet are they Naturally inclined to no Disease: But what Infirmary soever falleth unto them, is meerly Accidental, and not through any overflow of Natural Distemperature. All Medicines must be compounded for them according to the Nature of the Sicknes, and the time of their Languishment. For if the Sicknes be Young and new Bred, then they are able to receive any well composed Receipt: But if it be Old, and the inward Powers and Faculties feeble, then you must be careful to help Nature, by adding to every Medicine, of what Nature soever, some Simple of Comfort, that, as ill Humours be cleansed, so Strength may still be repaired and maintained. And thus much for Complexions.

CHAP. XI. Of inward Sickneses, the Causes and severall Kinds thereof.

Since I have already passed over all those things which have Natural and perfect working in a Horse's Body, and do maintain, uphold and preserve the same in good State and Health, except accidentally they be encountred and crossed by some Excess, either in Diet or in Exercise, it shall now be meet, that we begin to speak of the Things, which be Contrary and against Nature, which are all those Things, whereby at any time the healthful Estate of the Horse's Body is any way impeached; and they be three in Number; that is, the Causes, the Sicknes, and the Accidents which follow every Sicknes.

Now the Causes of Sicknes are all unnatural Affects, and evil Dispositions, which going before, do as it were by Violence, bring Sicknes after them; and of these Causes there be two Sorts, some Internal, some External: The Internal be those which breed within the Body of the Horse, as evil Humours, evil Obstructions, and evil Juice. External are they which communicate with the outward Parts of the Body, as Heat, Cold, Worms, and such like, of which I shall speak more in the Second Book: and for so



so much as I intend at the beginning of every particular Disease, to shew the Cause of that Disease, and I will at this time speak no more of that Subject.

Now for *Sickness* it self, which is any thing that is contrary to Nature, it is divided into Three general Kinds; the First an *Evil Temperature*, the Second an *Evil State and Composition*; and the Third, a *Loosing or Dividing of an Unity*: Now of these two latter, I intend not to speak in this Place, because they appertain to Chirurgery, which I reserve for the Second Book: But for the First Kind, which is an *Evil Temperature*, it is taken two-fold, that is, either Simple or Compound: Simple, when one quality only doth abound or exceed, as to be too moist, or too dry: Compound, when more Qualities than one do grow into excess, as for a *Horse* to be too hot, and too dry, or too cold, and to moist. Again, *Sicknesses* are said some to be long, as *Consumptions*, *Glanders*, and such like, which linger and wear a *Horse* away by small degrees; some short, as the *Stagers*, *Tellows*, *Anticor*, and such like; which as soon as they be perceived, so soon they be Mortal.

Now of inward *Sicknesses*, some do occupy all the whole Body, some but particular Parts; those which occupy the whole Body, are *Fevers*, the *Pestilence*, *Convulsions*, and such like: Those which occupy Parts or Members, are Colds which annoy the Head; Surfeits which perplex the Stomack: And so likewise all outward infirmities proper to every particular Member; as *Spleens* upon the Legs, *Spavens* on the Hoofs, *Pearls* in the Eyes, and such like; as shall be amply shewed hereafter, with their several Cures. And thus much for *Sickness*, and the several Kinds thereof.

#### CHAP. XII. Of the Signs of Sickness, and of what Nature it Consisteth.

THE Signs and Faces by which *Sickness* is discerned, are many, and almost numberless: Yet in the best sort, that I may, I will shew you such, and so many as shall amply serve for any Man's understanding, Know when first, that there be according to the Rules in Physick, four especial ways to judge of inward and outward infirmities. First by Accidents, as by the shape, number, quantity and place of the Member grieved, for if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or less in number or quantity, or out of his proper Place, then questionless it is Diseased. Secondly, by alteration of the Quality, as when it is either too hot too cold, too moist, or too dry. Thirdly, when any Member of the Body is hindred from doing his Office, as when the Eye cannot see, or the Foot cannot tread. And Fourthly, by Excrements, as by his Dung or Urine. But forasmuch as in the Speculation of these Qualities, many of the ignorant sort may be either amazed, distracted or deceived, and that my Desire is to give an absolute Satisfaction to all  
sorts

sorts of People; I will briefly and plainly shew you the most undeceivable signs of all sorts of inward Sickneses: As thus: If a Horse be slower in Labour, or duller to the Spur, than he hath been accustomed; if he be shorter-breathed; if his Ears hang down more than they were wont; if his Hair be more staring; if his Flank be more than usually hollow; if he burn betwixt his Ears, or about his Pasterns; if in Travel his Stomach fail him, or his Mouth, that in Labour was usually wont to be Foaming, become dry; all these are most apparent signs of inward Sicknes.

When a Horse holdeth down his Head, which was wont to be of chearful Countenance, it is a sign either of a Fever, Head-ach, or else Foundering in the Body.

If a Horse be dim of Sight, which was clear-sighted, it is a sign either of Head-ach, the Staggers, or Sore-Eyes.

When a Horse turneth his Head backed to the Place grieved, if it be to the Right-Side, it is a sign of Obstructions in the Liver: But if he turneth down to his Belly, then it is a sign either of Cholick, Bots, or Worms.

When a Horse hath Water running from his Mouth, it is a sign of the Staggers, or Wet Cough.

If a Horse's Breath stinks, or foul Matter issues from his Nostrils, it is a sign of an Ulcer in the Nose or Head; but if the Matter be White, then it is a sign of Glanders; if the Matter be Black, then it is a sign of the Mourning of the Chinc; but if the Matter be Yellow, then it betokens the Consumption of the Liver: But if he cast little Lumps out of his Mouth, then it betokens the Consumption or Rottensness of the Lungs.

If a Horse's Body and Breath be hot, it is a sign of a Fever, and heat of the Stomach; if therewithal he forsake his Meat, it is a sign of Inflammation in his Liver, and either dry or moist Yellow.

If the Temple of a Horse's Head be very hollow, it is a sign either of the Strangle or Old-Age.

Shortness of Breath, and a beating Flank, is a sign either of a Fever or a Strangle; but if the Passage of the Throat be stopped, it is a sign the film of the Lungs be broken, and the Spleen troubled, or else Broken-winded.

If any thing lie on both sides the Fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a sign of the Staggers.

If there be any thing swelling about the Ears, it is a sign of the Pole-evil: Swelling under the Ear, is a sign of the Pyles; and swelling in the Mouth, a sign either of Canker, Flaps, Lampasse.

Swelling under the Throat is a sign of the Glanders; and swelling about the Tongue-Roots, a sign of the Strangle: But if there be about the Tongue-Roots, nothing but little small knots like Wax-kernels, then it is but a sign of Cold only.



Swelling on the Left Side is a sign of sick *Spleen*. Swelling in the Belly and Legs, a sign of the *Dropsie*, and swelling in the Flank, of *Cholick* only.

To Cough, or to offer to Cough, is a sign either of the *Glanders*, or the Mourning of the *Chine*, of a Feather in the Weasand, of the wet or dry Cough, of the Film broken, of the dry Malady, of a Consumption, or of Foundring in the Body.

Staggering is a sign either of a *Fever*, of the Staggers, or of swaying in the Neck: But if he stagger or roll behind only, then it is a sign either of Foundring in the Body, or of Pain in the Kidneys.

Trembling is a sign of a *Fever*, or of a Foundring in the Body: And here is to be noted, that a Horse which trembleth after the drinking of cold Water, hath during that time of trembling, a very certain Fit of an Ague; and if any *Farrier* or other, will but observe it, he shall find that the Horse, after he hath done trembling, will burn and glow in as great Extremity, at least an hour and a half after; and some Horses after their burning will sweat also.

The hollowness of a Horse's Back is a sign of a dry Malady, and the Dropsie.

Hair standing is a sign either of a cold *Stomach*, or of Foundring in the Body, but generally of a Cold, or want of Cleaths.

If a Horse Stale with much pain, it is a sign either of foundring in the Body, the *Wind Cholick*, or the *Bleem*; and if the Urine which comes from him be *Yellow*, it is a sign of the *Glanders*; but if it be blackish or thick, it is a sign of a pain in the Kidneys.

*Leanness* and *Gantiness*, is a sign of *Hindering*, or of a Consumption, of the dry Malady, of Foundring in the Body, Inflammation of the Liver, the *Yellows*, *Cholick*, or *Worms*.

*Laxitiveness*, a Looseness of the Body, is a sign of a hot Liver.

Costiveness in the Body is a sign of dry *Yellows*, or of Diseases in the *Gut*.

If a Horse's Dung stink, it is a sign of a hot Liver; if it have no smell, then of a cold Liver; but if it be indigested, then either of a Consumption, or of a dry Malady.

If a Horse go stiff, it is a sign either of Wrenching, Hipping, Stiffing, or Foundring either in Body or Legs: If he go crouching behind, and stiff before, then the Grief is in his Fore-legs, but if he go only weak behind, then is the Grief in his Hinder-legs only.

If a Horse desire Extraordinarily to lie down on his right Side, it is a sign of heat in the Liver. If on the left Side, then of a diseased Spleen. If he be oft up and down, finding no rest, then it is a sign of *Bots*, *Worms*, *Cholicks*, or *Gripping* in the Belly. If when he is down, he spreads himself abroad, it shews the Dropsie; if he groan whe he is down,

it shews either a sick *Spleen*, moist *Yellow*, *Cholick*, *Bots*, or Film broken; if he be not able to rise when he is down; then either mortal *Weakness*, or *Foundring* in the Body or Legs.

To be troubled with much *Wind*, is a sign either of grief in the *Spleen*, or loss of much *Blood*.

If a *Horse* forsake his *Meat*, it is a sign either of a *Fever*, *Head-ach*, *Strangles*, *Staggers*, *Consumption*, or dry *Malady*, *Anticor*, *Foundring* in the Body, a hot and consumed *Liver*, moist *Yellows*, *Cholick*, or the *Worms*; but if when he forsakes his *Provender*, he doth as it were *chaw* or *chaw* a little *Hay*, and in his *chawing* doth make a certain sharp *Noise* in his *Mouth*, as if his *Tongue* could not well part from the *Roof* without a kind of *chanking*, it is then a certain sign that the *Horse* is troubled with the falling of the *Palate* of the *Mouth*, a *Disease* which only cometh by overmuch *Travelling*, or too sore a *Burthen*.

If a *Horse* desire to eat much and drink little, it is a sign of a cold *Liver*; but if he desire to drink much, and eat little, it is then a sign either of a *Fever*, rotten *Lungs*, heat in the *Stomach*, heat in the *Liver*, or the dry *Yellows*.

If a *Horse* both eat and drink with an extraordinary greediness, it is a sign of rotten *Lungs*, or a diseased *Spleen*.

*Lazy*, heavy going, contrary to true *Nature*, is a sign either of a *Fever*, *Sick Spleen*, *Yellows*, or else *Obstructions* of the *Liver*.

If a *Horse* strike with his *Foot* at his *Belly*, it is a sign of the *Cholick*, but if when he striketh, he *Fisks* with his *Tail* also, then it is either *Bots* or rough *Worms*.

If a *Horse* be *Scabby* and *Ulcerous* all over his *Body*, and about his *Neck*, it is a sign of the *Mangy*: If it be an *Ulcer* full of *Knots* creeping along a *Vein*, it is the *Farcy*: If spreading abroad only in one *Place*, it is a *Canker*: If the *Ulcer* be hollow and crooked, it is a *Fistula*: But if it be a *spongy Wart*, full of *Blood*, it is then an *Anbury*.

If a *Horse's Tongue* hang out, and be swollen, it is a sign of the *Strangle*.

To conclude, if a *Horse* in *Health* beat short, thick and fast in the *Flank*, it is a sign of *Sickness* in the *Lungs* and *Lights*, which we call *Broken-winded*, with a *World* of other such like signs and tokens, as shall be more amply declared in every particular *Chapter*.

#### CHAP. XIII.. General Observations in the Physicking of Horses.

After you can by these Signs and Characters, judge and approve either the *Health* or *Sickness* of a *Horse*, it is then necessary that you learn some *General Rules* and *Observations* which belong to the *Physicking* of a *Horse*, lest that either by your *Rashness*, *Unskillfulness*, or *Uncleanliness*,



*cleanness*, in what you go about to do, you commit Errors more gross than the *Medicine* you *Administer* hath *Power* to do good. Know then first, that whensoever you go about to give your Horse any inward *Potion* or *Drench*, you must first take very careful heed, that your *Drink* be no more than *Milk* warm, for there is nothing more mortal to a Horse than the Scalding of his Stomach. Next, you must be very careful that you give the *Drench* easily and gently, lest in making too much haste, the *Drink* pass into his *Wealand* or *Wind-Pipe*, and so force him to an *extream Coughing*, and almost *suffocate* him; which if it do, you must then let his Head loose, and walk him up and down till the *Passion* be past. *Lastly*, you shall observe in giving a *Drench*, to draw out the *Horse's* Tongue before you put in the *Horn*, and then presently let it loose again; for that will compel him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be used, when you give your Horse *Pills*, as *Butter* and *Garlick*, *Butter* and *Sanders*, or *Butter* and *Savin*: Also every *Drench* will work the better, the longer you keep the Sick *Horse* fasting both before and after the *Medicine*; wherein is likewise to be observed, that moderate *Exercise*, (as gently *Walking*, or *Trotting* up and down according to the *Horse's* strength, after his *Drench* received) is most wholesome, and maketh the *Medicines* work a great deal the better.

You shall likewise observe, if your *Horse's* *Sickness* be a *Fever*, to which mix always your *Simples* either with warm *Water*, with *Honey*, or with *Oyl*; but if the *Disease* be *Coughs*, *Rheums*, or any thing that proceedeth of cold *Causes*, then you shall mix your *Simples* with good *Ale* or *Wine*; and if your *Horse* be brought low, and weak with *Sickness*, then you shall mix your *Simples* with *Milk* and *Eggs*.

You shall also observe, that in *Blood-letting*, you must take but half so much from a young *Colt* as from an old *Horse*, and but the fourth Part from a *Yearling Foal*: Also in letting *Blood*, you must carefully regard the *Age* and *Strength* of your *Horse*, taking more or less according to his *Ability* of *Body*. *Lastly*, letting of *Blood* is either to divert *Sickness*, and preserve *Health*, or to refresh and cool the *Spirits*, or to diminish *Blood*; or else to purge gross and bad *Humours*.

Observe before you let your *Horse* *Blood*; first, moderately to chafe, or exercise him: Then let him take *Rest* a *Day* before his letting *Blood*, and three *Days* after, not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal *Seasons* of the *Year* for that purpose, except urgent *Occasion* be ministered.

Observe whenever you rake your *Horse* with your *Hand*, (which is to draw his *Ordure* out of his *Fundament* when he cannot *Dung*,) that then, first you anoint your *Hands* with *Sallet-Oyl* or *Butter*: The like you must ever do when you put any *Suppositary*; but when you *Administer* any *Glisters*, you shall then but anoint the *Glisters-pipe* only. Many other

other Observations there are which be more particular, and those you shall find annexed to the several Cures of every Disease : Thus much then of these general Observations.

CHAP. XIV. *Of the Urine, and Excrements of a Horse.*

**A**fter you have made your Memory acquainted with the Sign and Observations before specified, and so in the end find a Horse, which by the demonstration of some of these Signs, appeareth most certainly to be Sick and Diseased : My Advice is then, (if conveniently you may, and that the violence of the Sicknes doth not urge the contrary,) that before you Administer any thing unto him, in any case you see his Urine, from which Urine you shall reap these Knowledges.

First, If the Urine of a Horse be of a pale, whitish, yellow Colour like unto Amber, and therewithal somewhat strong smelling, and not very clear, then you shall be assured that the Horse is in good state of Body, strong and healthful ; but if it be extraordinary white, as it were Creamy, then it is a sign the Horse hath weak Reins, and is subject to the Stone, and the *stopping of the Kidneys*.

If the Urine of a Horse be somewhat high coloured, bright and clear like Lamber, and not like Amber, or like a Cup of strong *March Beer*; then it sheweth the Horse hath Inflammation in his Blood, and that he hath either a *Fever*, or else some great *Surfeit* ; but if it be Red like Blood, then is his Inflammation more great, and his *Surfeit* is only an over-heat taken by Over-riding ; insomuch, that if present Remedy be not applied, either by scouring or other healthful *Physick*, the Horse cannot chuse but fall into some mortal Sicknes.

If the Urine of the Horse be of a pale greenish Colour, thick and slimy, it is a sign of a weak Back and Consumption of the Seed.

Lastly, If the Horse's Urine be high-coloured, yet therewithal cloudy and full of blacknes, then it is a sign that the Horse's Sicknes is Mortal, and hardly to be preserved by any *Physick* ; but if the *Blacknes* and *Cloudiness* of the Urine do not remain, (as it were) bound up together in one Body, but is broken and dispersed, shewing many Clouds in one Water, then it is a sign that the violence of the Sicknes departeth away, and there is great hope, by good government, that the Horse will recover his Health as at the beginning.

Now for the Excrements or Dung of a Horse, which is no less worthy of Note than the Urine ; you shall first understand, that if his Dung be ever of Alliance with his Food, I mean either in part or in whole, coloured like unto that he eateth : As thus for Example ; if your Horse go to Grass, his Dung will ever be green, and the brighter such *Greenness* is, and being in a mean between hardness and softness, the sounder and in more perfect Estate the Horse standeth ; but if the *Greenness* be bright,



bright, yet the Ordure so soluble and loose, that it cometh from the Horse like Water, then you shall understand, that either the Horse hath eaten up some Feather, or else he hath an inward Coldness both in Stomach and Bowels.

If a Horse's Dung be of a reasonable thickness, neither too Costive, nor too Soluble, yet the *Greenness* inclined to some *Blackness*, it is a sign that the Horse hath a hot Stomach, and is easily subject either to *Yellows* or *Staggers*.

If the Horse's Dung be in round hard Pellets, and of a *Blackish-green Colour*, like the Dung of Sheep, or a Deer, then it is without fail, that the Horse hath had some great Surfeit, either by Over-riding or by ill Food, or else is certainly possesse either of the *Yellows*, or *Fever*, or *Foundering in the Body*.

Now if your Horse be fed only upon Straw, then its Colour will be of a high-coloured Yellow, rather Costive than Soluble, and the Grain thereof long, and not well couched together: And all these be good signs of great healthfulness; but if the Colour be inclined to redness, or if it be exceeding dry without moisture, or if it be thin like the Dung of an Ox or Cow, they all be apparent signs of inward Sickness; but if the Redness turn to Blackness, and that his Ordure doth lose the strength of its smelling, then it a great sign of Death and Mortality.

If your Horse be fed with Hay and Provender, then your perfect and sound Dung will be of a Brown-yellow Colour, the Grain somewhat long, yet moist and well fixt together; but if the Brownness turn to Redness, it is a sign of Distemperature; and if it turn to Blackness, then of Death. Now for the smell of his Dung, you must understand, that the more Provender you give, the greater will be the smell, and the less Provender, the less smell.

Lastly, If you feed your Horse only upon Provender, as Bread, Oats, and such like, then the Dung which shews a perfect and a sound Body, will be of a pale yellow Colour like course Honey, firm, like a thick Salve, having within it when you tread upon it or break it, little white Grains, like those which are in Soap; or if the Dung be harder, like the ordinary Ordure of a Man, it is not amiss, For both be signs of Health and Strength; and if the Dung look Red, then it is a sign that the Horse hath taken some inward Heat, and his Stomach and Bowels do rest still inflamed.

If his Dung be Brown and Slimy, or if it shine and look greasy, it is a sign that he hath had some of his inward Grease molten, and that it resteth and putrieth in his Body; but if with his Dung, you see him void great Clods and Lumps of Grease, then you may be assured that his Grease was molten, but Nature hath overcome Infirmity, and the worst Danger is past already; but if the Dung be Matter undigested,

fo.

so that you may either perceive therein whole Corns, or whole Bits of Bread, it is a Sign the *Horse* hath either had a late Surfeit, or is entring into a mortal Consumption. Lastly, If his Dung be black, or have lost the Smell, it is an apparent Sign of Death. And thus much for Urine and Excrements, and the severall Knowledges attain'd by them.

CHAP. XV. Of Fevers in General, and the divers Kinds thereof.

**T**HAT *Horses* have Fevers, and those Fevers of divers and sundry Natures, there is nothing more certain, as by strict Observation may daily be percived, especially when we use either much Travel or disorderly Diet: For questionless from these two, and none other Heads, do spring most Fevers whatsoever. But, *First*, That I may give you an Account what a *Horse's* Fever is, you shall know that it is an unnatural and immoderate Heat, which proceeding first from the Heart, disperseth it self not only through all the Arteries, but even the Veins of a *Horse's* Body, and thereby hindreth all the Actions and wholesome Motions of the same. Now of Fevers, some *Farriers* make three Sorts. The first, those which breed in the Spirits, being inflamed and set on Fire beyond the ordinary Course of Nature: The second, those which breed in the Humours, being likewise distemper'd by Heat: And the third, those which breed in the firm Parts of the Body, and are continually hot. Now I, for your better Memory, will divide them only into two Parts, that is to say, Ordinary and Extraordinary. The ordinary Fevers, are all those which are bred either in the Spirits, or in the Humours; as namely, *Quotidianas, Tertians, Quartans, Fevers continual, Fevers, Hestech Fevers in Autumn, Summer or Winter*. And the Fevers extraordinary, are all those which are bred in the firm Parts of the Body, and are ever hot, as *Pestilence Fevers* and the *Plague*, which are ever accompanied with *Ulcers*, and the *Fevers accidental*, which proceedeth from the Anguish and Pain of some mortal Wound.

Now for the Cause from whence these Fevers do proceed, you shall understand, that all these which I call ordinary Fevers, do generally spring either from Surfeit by extream Labour, or some Surfeit by naughty Meat, as *Raw Pease, Raw Fitches, Raw Oats, Mouldy and Unwholsome Bread*, and such like: Sometimes they do proceed from the extream Violence and Heat of the Sun-Beams, when travelling with disorderly haste in the extreamest Heat of the Day, those two Heats mix'd together, *Labour* and the *Sun*, there cannot chuse but be bred in the *Horse* some mortal *Inflammation*; and for my own Part, I have seen *Horses* fall down dead in the High-way: For whose Deaths I could find no reason more than their *Labours*, and the Heat of the *Sun*. Fevers sometimes spring from a contrary Cause, as from extream Cold in this Manner: When a *Horse* in the *Winter-time* hath been travelled



velled fore all the Day, and is brought into the House hot, if, after his Blood and inward Powers are settled and cooled, you then presently, or the same Night, give him cold Water as much as he will Drink, you shall see him out of Hand fall into an extream Quaking, and from that Quaking into a violent Burning, with all other Distemperatures of a Fever.

Now for extraordinary Fevers, they ever proceed either from Corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air: And albeit these Fevers are not usually known unto our Farriers, yet they are as common as the former; only the Violence of them is so great, and the Poyson so strong, that they ever carry with them some other mortal Sicknes, as namely, the Staggers, Yellows, Anticor, and such like, which never are, but a Pestilent Fever ever goeth before them: And they, like the Marks of the Plague, are seldom seen till the Cures be desperate, and then the unskillful Farrier, neither noting nor knowing, if he did, the Effects of the Fever, doth ever miscall the Name of the Horse's Infirmary, and taking the lesser for the greater, fails many times to do the Office and Cure, which he intendeth.

Now the Signs to know the Fever be these: First, he will ever hold down his Head, he will quake and tremble; but when his Trembling is past, then will his Body burn, and his Breath be hot; he will breathe fast, and his Flank will beat; he will reel, he will forsake his Meat, his Eyes will be swollen and closed up, yet therewithal much watering; his Flesh will as it were fall from his Bones, and his Stones will hang down low, he will often lye down and rise up again: As his desire will be to Drink; yet at no time drink much, neither will he at any time sleep.

Now for the general Cure of these general Fevers, you shall understand, that some Farriers use to let the Horse blood in the Face, Temples, and Palate of the Mouth, and the first Day to give him no Meat, but warm Drink only, by a little at a time: And after, the finest Grass or finest Hay wet in Water, keeping him warm, and often walking him up and down in a temperate Air, and giving him good Store of Litter: Then when he begins to mend, to feed him with Barley sodden, husk'd and beaten, as you do Wheat before you make Furmity. And this Cure is not amiss, for it agreeth with the antient Experience of the Italians: But in our English Horses, (through the Clime, as I suppose) it often faileth.

The best Cure therefore that I have found, is, as soon as you perceive him begin to shake, to give him the Yolks of three or four Eggs beaten with seven or eight Spoonfuls of Aqua-Vita to drink, and then chafe him up and down till his Shaking be past, and then set him up close and warm, and with many Cloaths make him Sweat an Hour: Let his Food be Oats very well dry'd and sifted, and once a Day some wash'd

in Ale. If his shaking Fit be past before you perceive his Sicknes, you shall only give him a Pint of Muscadine, and an Ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to Powder, and brewed together to Drink, and so let him rest, feeding him by little and little, as aforesaid; and giving him no Water but such as is warm: And this Order you shall observe at the beginning of every Fit, if you can note them, or else every Morning, if his Sicknes hath no ceasing.

CHAP. XVI. Of the Quotidian, or every Day's Fever, and the Cure.

THE Quotidian, or every Day's Fever, is that which takes a Horse and holdeth him with one Fit once every Day; and will at first appear somewhat violent, but seldom or never endureth long if the Farrier have any Discretion: It proceedeth most commonly from extreme Riding, either after Water, or a full Stomach; and then suddenly after his heat, being thrust into a Stable, and neither stopt nor rubb'd, a sudden Coldness to that sudden Heat, begets a shaking, and so consequently the effect of a Fever.

The signs to know it, are Watrish and Blood-shotten Eyes, short and hot Breathing, Panting, Loathing of his Meat, and Stiffness in his Limbs; but above these, to know it is a Quotidian, you shall observe, that these signs, together with the Sicknes, will not last above six or eight Hours in one Day, and then he will be cheerful and in health again till very near the same Hour of the next Day, at what time his Fit will begin again. And here is to be noted, that the more it altereth the Hours, the more hope there is of his Health; as if it takes him at seven of the Clock of the one Day, and at three of the Clock of the other, and so forth. The Cure is, you shall only during his Fit, give him nothing but a sweet Mash made of Malt and Water being luke-warm, and walk him gently up and down in a temperate Air; then as soon as his Fit is past, you shall set him up, and rub his Body and Legs exceedingly; then four Hours after you shall give him this Drink: Take of strong Ale a Quart, and boile therein half a Handful of Wormwood, of Long Pepper and Grains two Ounces, of the best Treacle two Ounces, and of the Powder of dried Rue one Ounce: Now when a third part of the Ale is consumed, take it from the Fire and strain it, then put therein three Ounces of Sugar-candy beaten to Powder; then when it is luke-warm give it him with a Horn to Drink. Do this twice at the least, or thrice if his Fits continue, and there is no doubt but he will recover.

CHAP. XVII. Of the Tertian Fever.

THE Tertian Fever is that which cometh every other Day, holding the Horse with one sick Day, and one sound: It is not so violent as the Quotidian, but much longer lasting; it happeneth oftentimes in the



Spring-time of the Year, when Blood begins to encrease, and most commonly to Colts and young Horses. It proceeds of the same Causes that the *Quotidian* doth, and sometimes of Rankness and Ill Blood. The signs to know it, are all the signs formerly spoken of, and this is the chiefest, that the Horse will be apparently Sick; as it were on the *Monday*, then apparently well on the *Tuesday*, and sick on the *Wednesday* following. This Fever is never seen, but it beginneth with shaking. The Cure thereof is, as soon as you perceive the Horse begin to shake, you shall take a certain Herb, or rather a Weed called *Stone-crop*, and bruizing it in a Mortar, take four Spoonfuls of the Juice thereof, and infuse it in a Quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to Drink: Then walk him gently up and down in some temperate Air for an Hour, then set him up, and with the help of Cloaths put him into a Sweat for another Hour, then cool him; and in any wise till his Fits leave him, let him drink no cold Water, and let his Provender be the oldest and driest Oats you can get, only upon his good Days before his Fits come, keep him very long fasting and empty.

#### CHAP. XVIII. Of the Quartan Fever.

**T**HE *Quartan Fever*, is that which some *Farriners* call a Third Day's sickness, as thus: If his Fits begin on the *Monday*, he will be well on the *Tuesday* and *Wednesday*, and sick again on the *Thursday*. It proceeds from the same Causes that the *Tertian Fever* doth, yet in his working is not so apparently violent, but of much longer continuance: For if greater Care and Help be not, these Fevers will last some a Quarter of a Year, some some Half a Year, and some a whole Year, there needs no other sign to know it, then the coming and going of the Fits, as hath been declared already. And for the Cure, it is the self-same which is described in the former Chapters, for the *Tertian Fever*: Only if his Fits doth not leave him at the first taking of the Medicine, you shall then give it him again the second time, but not above thrice at the most in any wise.

#### CHAP. XIX. Of the Fever Continual.

**T**HE *Fever Continual*, is that which continueth without any intermission, and it is most dangerous and violent: For there is in it the Effects of all the former Fevers, every one taking place as the other endeth; as the *Quotidian* beginning is pursued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartan*, and those two supply so many Hours till the *Quotidian* doth begin again. This kind of continual Fever most often springeth from some Inflammation or violent Heat ingendred in the Principal Members about the Heart: And the signs thereof are want of Rest, and falling away of the Flesh, besides certain Inflammations or Swellings, which will

will appear about his Withers and Flanks. The Cure is, first to purge his Head by Sneezing, the Manner whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter hereafter: Which done, you shall give him this Drink: Take of Jermander two Ounces, of Gum Tragacanth and dried Roses, of each Half an Ounce, beat them into fine Powder, and put them into a Quart of Ale, adding thereunto of Oil-Olive two Ounces, and as much Honey; and when it is luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink: Then Walk him a little space, and after set him up close and warm, keep him from cold Water, and let his Provender be dry Oats.

CHAP. XX. Of the Hellick Fever.

**T**HE Hellick Fever in Horses, is a dangerous and mortal Fever, being in a Horse the first Original breeder of a Consumption; it is a certain hot and dry Humour, which runneth between the Skin and the Flesh, proceeding from a sick Stomach, which having been scalded with hot Drinks, as those ill-dieted running Horses be, which feed upon much Spice, (as those which take hot Drenches upon every foolish and slight Occasion) hath almost clean lost the Power of Digestion: It sometimes happens to those Horses which Men too carefully teaching to drink Beer and Wine, do so continually apply them thereunto, that in the End they become subject to this Sickness. The Signs to know it; the Horse will never eat with any Appetite; and when you draw out his Tongue, you shall find it raw and almost scalded; his Flesh will be loose and flabby, and his Body subject to a continual Trembling. The Cure is, first wash his Tongue either with the Syrup of Mulberries, or with Alom, Running-water, Sage, and Woodbine-leaves boiled together, then give him Fasting in a Morning this Drink: Take of Aloes one Ounce, of Gartick half an Ounce, of Licoras and Anniseeds of each a Dram, beaten to Powder, and let him drink it with a Quart of White-wine, luke-warm, and made sweet with Sugar-candy or Honey: Let him drink no Drink, but warm Mashies of Malt and Water, and let his Meat be sweet Hay, or green Corn-blades; and ever after his Medicine, let him be chafed a little, keep fasting two or three Hours and stand warm and wellcloathed.

CHAP. XXI. Of the Fever taken in Autumn, or the Fall of the Leaf.

**A**L L these Fevers before spoken of, do for the most part commonly happen to Horses in the Spring-time of the Year, by reason that the new Blood is ever aptest to be inflamed: Yet notwithstanding, we find by Experience, that Fevers will sometime come at the Fall of the Leaf, which we call *Autumn*, and they are of a longer continuance than the other. The Signs are none other but such as I have already declared: For they are the same Fevers, only altering the time of the Year. If therefore



your Horse do chance to catch a Fever at the Fall of the Leaf, you shall let him Blood in his Neck-Vein, and on the Palate of his Mouth; and you shall give him to drink the same Drink which is formerly set down for the Fever continual, and there is no doubt of his Recovery.

CHAP. XXII. Of the Fever taken in the Summer Season.

A Fever taken in the Summer Season, is the worst of all ordinary Fevers whatsoever, especially all such as are taken in the Dog-Days; because according to the Opinion of *Farriers*, all Accidents are then most furious: The especial signs of this Fever are, that his Arteries will beat most palpably, and wheresoever he Staleth, there you shall perceive he sheddeth his Seed also. The Cure according to the Ancients, is to let him Blood in the great Vein which he hath on his hinder Haunch, almost four Inches beneath his Fundament; But for white Rowl Part, because that Vein is not easily found by every ignorant Smith, and that many times by mistaking, they may cut the Artery instead of the Vein, I hold it fully as good to let him Blood on the Neck-Vein; which done, give him this Drink two Hours and a half after; Take the Juice of a Handful of Purslane, and mix it with Gum-Tragacanth, Anniseeds, and Dalmask-rose-leaves beaten to Powder; then put them into a Quart of strong Ale, made sweet either with Sugar-candy or Honey, and fail not to give him this Drink three Mornings together; keep the Horse warm during his Sicknes.

CHAP. XXIII. Of the Fever taken in the Winter Season.

A Fever taken in the Winter, is not so dangerous to the Life of a Horse as the Fever before-mentioned, yet it is a Fever which will continue long and ask great Circumspection in the Cure: The Causes thereof are the same which are formerly described, and the Signs are no other than hath been formerly declared. Touching the Cure, it is thus: you shall first purge his Head by making him Sneeze; that done, you shall let him Blood both in the Neck and the Palate of the Mouth, and then two Hours and a half after give him this Drink: Take of Rue three Ounces, of Round Pepper half an Ounce, of Bay-Berries, and the Seed of Smallage, each half an Ounce, boil these in White-wine, and give it him to drink luke-warm. Other *Farriers* use to take a Pint of new Milk, and to put therein two Ounces of Sallet-Oil, of Saffron one Scruple, and of Myrrh two Scruples; of the Seed of Smallage a Spoonfull, and to make him drink it luke-warm; but the Horse which taketh this Drink must be good in Strength, for if he be brought low it is somewhat too strong.

The Ancient *Italians* did use for this Fever to give this Drink: Take of *Aristolochia* half an Ounce, of *Gentian*, of Hyssop, Wormwood, of Southern-

Southernwort, of each half an Ounce, of dry fat Figs three Ounces, of the Seed of Smallage an Ounce and a half, of Rue half an Handfull, boil them all with Running-Water in a clean Vessel, till almost half be consumed; then when it begins to thicken, take it from the Fire, strain it, and give it the Horse luke-warm. Now there are not any of these Drinks but are sufficient for the Cure. But the first is best. Now for his Diet, be sure to keep him fasting long before his Fits come, and let his Drink be only warm Mashes of Malt and Water. Now if you perceive that his Fits continue, and bring the Horse to any weakness, you shall then to comfort and quicken the natural heat of the Horse, rub and chafe all his Body over, either in the Sun or by some soft Fire with some wholesome Friction, of which Frictions you shall find choice in a particular Chapter hereafter following, together with their several Natures and Uses.

CHAP. XXIV. *Of the Fever which cometh by Surfeit of Meat only.*

**T**HE Fever which cometh by Surfeit of Meat only, without either Disorder of Travel or Corruption of Blood, is known by these Signs: The Horse will heave and beat upon his Back, his Breath will be short, hot, and dry, and his Wind will draw only at his Nose with great Violence. The Cure therefore is, you shall let him Blood in his Neck, under his Eyes, and in the Palate of his Mouth, you shall also purge his Head by making him Sneeze, then keep him with very thin Diet, that is, let him fast for more than half of the Day, and let him not drink above once in four and twenty Hours, and that Drink to be warm Water; you shall also once or twice chafe his Body with a wholesome Friction; and if during his Cure, he chance to grow Costive, you shall cause him to be raked, and afterward give him either a Suppository, or a Glister, of both which, and of their several Natures, you shall read sufficiently in a Chapter following.

CHAP. XXV. *Of Fevers extraordinary, and first of Pestilent Fevers.*

**W**E find by many Ancient Italian Writers, that both the Romans and others their Country-Men, have by Experience found many Horses subject to this Pestilent Fever, which is a most Contagious and Pestiferous Disease almost incurable; and for mine own Part I have seen it in many Colts and Young Horses. Surely it proceedeth, as I judge, either from great Corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air. The signs thereof be, the Horse will hold down his Head, forsake his Meat, shed much Water at his Eyes; and many times have Swellings or Ulcers rising a little below his Ear-roots. The Cure is, first you shall not fail to let him Blood in the Neck-vein; then two or three hours after you shall give him a Glister, then make him this Plaster. Take of

*Squilla*



*Squilla* five Ounces, of *Elder*, of *Castorum*, of *Mustard-seed*, and of *Euphorbium*, of each two Ounces, dissolve the same in the Juice of *Daffodil* and *Sage*, and lay it all about the Temples of his Head, and between his Ears, then give him to drink for three or four Days together every Morning, two Ounces of the best Treacle dissolved in a Pint of good *Muskadine*.

The *Italians* use to give him divers Mornings, a Pound of the Juice of *Elder-roots*, or instead of his *Hay*, a good Quantity of that Herb which is called *Venus-hair*; but if the time of the Year be such that they cannot have it Green, then they boil it in Water, and strain it, and give it him to drink; but I hold the first Drink to be the most sufficient, his Diet being thin, and his Keeping warm.

CHAP. XXVI Of the Plague and Pestilence in Horses: of some called the Gargil or Murrain.

THIS Pestilence, Murrain or Gargil in Horses, is a Contagious and most infectious Disease, proceeding either from Surfeit of Heat, Cold, Labour, Hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt Humours in a Horse's Body, as the holding too long of his Urine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding upon gross, foul and corrupt Foods, as in low Grounds after Floods, when the Grass is unpurged, and such like: Sometimes it springs from some evil Influence of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and Fruits of the Earth, and Cattle too sometimes, and from divers other such like Causes; but howsoever when the Disease beginneth, certain it is, that it is most Infectious, and if there be not Care and Prevention used, of Multitudes, it will not leave one. Not any of the ancient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *English* Farriers that I have met with, do or can shew me any Sign or Token to know this Disease, more than that one or two must first die, and then by their Deaths I must adjudge and prevent what will follow; but they are mistaken: For this Disease is as easily known by outward signs, as any Disease whatsoever; as namely, the Horse will begin to lowre and hang down his Head; and within two or three Days after such lowring, you shall see him begin to swell under his Ear-roots, or under the roots of his Tongue, and that Swelling will run universally over all one Side of his Face, being very extream hard and great. Moreover all his Lips, Mouth, and Whites of his Eyes will be exceeding Yellow, and his Breath will be strong, and stink exceedingly.

The Cure of this Disease, according to the Manner of the *Italians* and *French-men*, is first to separate the Sound from the Sick, even a far distance from that Air where the Sick breatheth, then let him Blood in the Neck-veins, and give every one severally to drink, two Spoonfuls of the Powder of *Dipent*, brewed in a Pint of strong Sack: Of the Composition

position of which *Diapente*, and of the particular Virtues thereof you shall read in a Chapter following. If you cannot really get this *Diapente*, you may then take a Pint of *Muskadine*, and dissolve into it two Ounces of the best Treacle, and it will serve the turn. Questionless the Medicines are both exceeding good; for they are great Preservatives against all Infections.

Now that which I have found far to exceed, and to be most excellent, not only for this Plague amongst Horses, but for the Plague or Murrain (of some called the Mountain's Evil) amongst Beasts) is this: Take a good Quantity of old Urine, and mix therewith a good Quantity of Hen's-Dung, stir them well together till the Dung be dissolved; then with a Horn give to every Horse or Beast a Pint thereof luke-warm. This have I seen help hundreds.

CHAP. XXVII. *Of the Fever Accidental, coming by some Wound received.*

**I**F a Horse shall receive any grievous and sore Wound, either by Stroke or Thrust, by which any of the Vital Powers are let or hindred, certain it is, that the pain and anguish of such Wounds will bring a Horse to a hot Fever, and then his life is in great danger: Besides, a Horse being naturally subject to moist Distillations in his Throat, there will many times rise therein great Swellings and Ulcers, through the Pain whereof a Horse will fall into a burning Ague.

The Signs whereof are, that he will covet much Drink, but cannot drink, and his Flesh will fall away in much extraordinary Fashion.

The Cure, besides the Remedies before-mentioned, is to let him Blood under his Ears, and in the Mouth; and then to take a fine Manchet, and cutting it in slices, steep it in Muskadine, and compel him to swallow them: It shall also be good, if once in three Days you steep your Manchet in Sallet-Oil, and make him eat it. As for his Drink, let it be only warm Mashies of Malt and Water, which if he cannot drink, you shall then give it him with an Horn. And thus much touching Fevers both ordinary and extraordinary.

CHAP. XXVIII. *One general, certain, and approved Cure for all the Fevers and Sickneses formerly rehearsed, never yet disclosed from the Authors Breast.*

**I** Have in the former Chapters shewed you the Names, Diversities, Natures, Signs, and ordinary Cures for all sorts of Fevers whatsoever: Now because I know the Ignorance of some so great that they cannot discern; the Sloth of others such, that they will not endeavour to discern; and the Folly of many so peevish, that they will mistake what they may discern: I will shew you here one general, certain, and approved Medicine for all Fevers of what Nature or Violence soever.

When



When therefore at any time you shall find by any of the Signs formerly rehearsed, that your Horse droopeth, you shall presently let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and let him bleed well, then three Mornings together (the Horse being fasting) give him half an Ounce of the Powder called *Diapente* (the Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter, together with the Virtues,) and this *Diapente* you shall brew it in a Pint of Muscadine, and so give it the Horse to drink with an Horn: Then let him be ridden or walked abroad for an Hour, after he cometh in, give him any Meat whatsoever that he will eat. At Noon give him a sweet Mash. In the Evening perfume his Head with a sweet Perfume: The Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter; at Night rub all his Limbs well with hard Wips, and his Head and Nape of the Neck with a coarse-harden Rubber, then feed as aforesaid. And thus do three Days together, and without doubt Health will come suddenly.

CHAP. XXIX. *Of the Diseases in the Head.*

AS a Horse's Head is composed of many Parts, so are those many Parts subject to many and sundry Grievances, as namely, the Panicles, or thick Skins, which cleave to the Bones, and cover the whole Brain are subject to Head-ach, Megrin, Dizziness, and Amazes; the whole Brain it self is properly subject to breed the Frensy, Madnes, Sleeping-evil, the taking and forgetfulness. And here is to be noted, that many Farriers, and those of approved good skill have strongly held Opinions, that Horses have very little or no Brains at all: And my self for my own part, being carried away with their Censures, did at last upon good Consideration, cut up the Heads of divers Horses, some dead, and some in dying, and could never find any Liquid or thin Brain, as in other Beasts, but only a very thick, strong, tough, and wining Substance, solid and firm like a tough Jelly, which I ever held to be only a Panicle, and so resolved with others, that a Horse had no Brain: But after, upon further Discourse with Men of better Learning, I had this Resolution given me: That a Horse being a Beast of extraordinary Strength and Ability, made even to endure the worst of all Extremities, either by fore Labour, or heavy Burthen, that Nature in his Creation had endowed him with Members answerable to such Vigour: As namely, that his Brain was not liquid and moist, as subject to fleet, or to be distempered with very small Disorder, but tough and hard, even unpenetrable, and not to be pierced by any reasonable Motion. And for the Panicles, they shewed me those thin Skins over and besides that great Substance; so that by experience I saw, and now know, that a Horse hath both Brain and a Panicle, and in them two are bred the Diseases beforementioned. Now in the Ventracles, or Cells of the Brain, and in those Conduits by which the

the lively Spirits give Feeling and Motion to the Body, there do breed the Turnfick, or Sturdy, the Staggers, the Falling-Evil, the Night-Mare, the Apoplexy, the Palsie and Convulsion, or Cramp, the Catarrh, or Rheum, and lastly the Glanders. And thus much of the Head in general.

CHAP. XXX. Of Head-ach, or pain in the Head.

THE Head-ach is a Pain that cometh either from some inward Cause, or of some Cholerick Humour gathered together in the Panicles of the Brain, or else of some extream Heat or Cold, or of some sudden Blow, or of some noisome Savour. The signs are, the hanging down of the Horse's Head and Ears, dropping of his Urine, dimness of Sight, swollen and watrish Eyes. The Cure according to the Opinion of some of our English Farriers, is to let him Blood in the Eye-veins, and to squirt warm Water into his Nostrils; and for that Day give him no Meat; the next Morning fasting give him warm Water, and some Grasse: At Night give him *Barley* and *Fitches* mixt together, and so keep him warm till he be sound; but this Cure I do not fancy. The best help is first to make him Sneeze by Fuming him, then let him Blood in the Palate of the Mouth, and keep him fasting at the least twelve Hours after: Then pour into his Nostrils Wine, wherein hath ben sodden *Euphorbium* and *Frankincense*, and after feed him, and keep his Head warm.

CHAP. XXXI. Of the Frenzy, and Madness in a Horse.

THE Madness of a Horse, by the most ancient and best approved Farriers, is divided into four Passions: The first is, when some naughty Blood doth strike the Panicle of the Brain but in one part only, it presently makes the Horse dull both in Mind and Sight, and you shall know it by this sign, the Horse will turn round like a Beast that is troubled with the Sturdy: The Reason being, because the outside of the Head is grieved only. The second is, when the Poyson of such Blood doth infect the middle part of his Brain; then the Horse becometh Frantick, leaping against Walls or any thing. The third is, when that Blood filleth the Veins of the Stomach, and infecteth as well the Heart as the Brain; then he is said to be Mad. But the fourth and last is, when that Blood infecteth not only the *Brain* and *Heart*, but even the Panicles also, and then he is said to be Stark-mad, which you shall know by his biting at every Man which comes near him, by his gnawing of the Manger and the Walls about him. And lastly, by tearing his own Skin in pieces.

Now for the Cure, you shall cause him to be let Blood in all the lower Parts of his Body, to draw the Blood from his Head; as namely, on the Shackle-veins, the Spur-veins, the Palat-veins, and the Thigh-veins, and you shall let him Blood abundantly, then give him this Drink: Take the



Root of Wild-Cucumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a handful of Rue or Mints, and a handful of Black Elleborus, and boil them in strong Red Wine, and give it luke-warm to the Horse in a Horn.

Some use to give Man's Dung with Wine three Mornings together; and also to rub his Body over with a Friction at least twice a Day, and not to fail to give him moderate Exercise.

Others use to pierce the Skin of his Head, with a hot Iron, to let out the Ill Humours,

Others, as the most certain of all Medicines, use to Geld him of both, or one Stone at the least, but I like it not for my own part.

The Cure I have ever used for this Grief, was either to make him swallow down hard Hens Dung, or else give him to drink, the Root of *Virga Pastoris* stamped in Water, and for his ordering during the Cure, I would have his Stable quiet, but not close, and his Food only warm Mashies of Malt and Water, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinnest Diet is best.

CHAP. XXXII. Of the Sleeping-Evil or Lethargy in a Horse.

THE Sleeping-Evil is an Infirmary which maketh a Horse to Sleep continually, depriving him thereby, both of Memory, Appetite, and all Alacrity of Spirit: It is most incident to White and Dun Horses, because it proceedeth only from *Flegm*, cold and gross, which moistneth the Brain too much, causeth Heaviness and Sleep: There needs no other sign more than his Sleeping only. The Cure is, to keep him waking whether he will or no, with great Noises and Affright; then let him Blood in the Neck, and the Palate of the Mouth, and give him to drink Water luke-warm, wherein hath been boiled Camomile, Motherwort, Wheat-bran, Salt, and Vinegar: You shall also perfume his Head, and make him Sneeze, and anoint the Palate of his Mouth with Honey and Mustard mixt together: It shall not be amiss, if with the ordinary Water which he drinketh, you mix either Parsley-seed, or Fennel-seed, for that will provoke Urine: You shall also bathe his Legs and stop his Hoofs with Bran, Salt, and Vinegar boiled together, and applied as hot as may be, and his Stable should be Lightsome and full of Noise.

CHAP. XXXIII. Of a Horse that is taken, or of Shrow-running.

THOSE Horses are supposed by Farriers to be taken, or as some call it Planet-strook, which are deprived of feeling or moving, not being able to stir any Member, but remain in the same Form as they were at the time of taking. Some hold it proceeding of Choler and *Flegm*, when they are superabundantly mixt together, or of Melancholy Blood, which being a cold dry Humour, doth oppress and sicken the hinder part of the Brain. Other ancient Farriers hold it cometh of some extreame Cold,

Cold, or extream Heat, or raw Digestion striking into the empty Veins suddenly; or else of extream Hunger caused by long Fasting. The Signs thereof are Numbness, and want of Motion before spoken of: As for the Cause, it is diverse: For first you must note, whether it come of Cold or Heat: If it come of Cold, you shall know it by the stuffing and poze in the Head, which is ever joyned with the Disease: If of Heat by the hotness of his Breath, and clear fetching of his Wind. Now if it proceed from Cold, you shall give him to drink one Ounce of *Laserpitium* mixt with Sallet-Oil and Muskadine Luke-warm: If it proceed of Heat, you shall give him one Ounce of *Laserpitium* with Water and Honey luke-warm: But if it proceed of Crudity, or any raw Digestion, then you shall help him by Fasting; and if it proceed from Fasting, then you shall heal him by feeding him often with good Meat, as with wholesome Bread and dry Oats; yet but a little at a time, that he may ever eat with a good Stomach.

Now for the French Farriers, as Monsieur Horace and the rest, who call this Disease *Surprius*, they hold it cometh only from cold Causes, following hot Accidents, and they use for their Cure to let him Blood on the Brest-veins, and then put him into a Sweat, either by Exercise, or multiplicity of Cloaths; but many Cloaths are better, because the Horse is not capable of Labour: And sometimes they will bury him all save his Head in an old Dung-hill, till through the heat thereof his Limbs receive such feeling, that he begins to struggle out of the same. All which Cures are not much amiss; yet in mine Opinion, this is the best, easiest, and surest Way: First to let him Blood in the Neck and Breast, then to anoint all his Body with Oyl *Petroleum*, then give him this Drink: Take of Malmsey three Pints, and mix it with a quartern of Sugar, Cinamon and Cloves, and let him drink it luke-warm, then take old rotten wet Litter, and for want thereof wet Hay, and with Cloaths, Surfingles and Cords Swaddle all his whole Body over with the same of a good thickness, and renew it once in three Days till he be whole; let his Stable be warm, his Exercise moderate, and if he grow Cossive, let him first be raked, and after give him either a Clister, or a Suppositary according to his Strength. There is also another kind of taking, and that is, when a Horse is Planet-struck, or stricken with Thunder: But it is utterly uncurable, and therefore I will omit to speak further of it. The last kind of taking is when a Horse is Shrow-run, that when a Horse lieth sleeping, there is a certain Venemous Field-Mouse called a Shrow, whose Head is extraordinary long, like a Swine's Head, and her Feet shorter of the one Side than the other. This Mouse if she happen to run over any of the Limbs of the Horse, presently the Horse loseth the Use of that Limb she ran over, and if she run over his Body, he commonly loseth the Use of his hinder Loins: And these Accidents having been often found unex-pected, common Farriers have



held the Horse to be taken or Planet-struck. As for the Cure thereof, the best is to seek out a Brier, which groweth at both Ends, and take the Horse or Beast that is thus vexed, and draw him under the same, and it is a present Remedy. For mine own Part, I have heard much, both of the Infirmary and of the Cure, but I have had no Experience of it, but only in one young Foal, which being suddenly Lame, was as suddenly helped, to my much Contentment.

#### CHAP. XXXIV. Of the Staggers.

**T**HE Staggers is a dizzy Madnes of the Brain, proceeding from corrupt Blood, or gross, tough and heavy Humours, which oppress and make sick the Brain, and from whence proceedeth a vaporous Spirit, dissolved by a weak heat which troubleth all the whole Head: It is almost of all Diseases the most common, yet very Mortal and Dangerous; it cometh many times from Surfeit of Meat, surfeit of Travel, or from corruption of Blood. The signs to know it is dimness of Sight, swollen and watrish Eyes, a moist Mouth, staggering and reeling of the Horse, and beating of his Head against the Walls, or thrusting it into his Litter. The Cure is divers; for almost every Smith hath a several Medicine, yet these which I shall rehearse, are the most approved. The ancient Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, use to let the Horse Blood in the Temple-veins, and then with a Knife make an hole an Inch long overthwart his Fore-head, underneath his Fore-top, and raising up the Skin with a Cornet, some two or three Inches about, stop the hollownes with a Tented in Turpentine and Hog's grease molten together; but some of our Smiths finding this Cure fail, except the Disease be very young, use to stop the hollownes with Dock-roots. Others with a Clove or two of Garlick. Others use for this Disease to take Selladine, and stamping it, to stop it into his Ears, and so tye up his Ears, or stitch the tips of his Ears together, that he may not shake the Medicine out. Others use to mix Salt and Water together thick, and to put it into his Ears. Others use to mix *Grounsel* and *Aquavite* together, and to put that into his Ears. Others use to take Garlick, Rue, and Bay-Salt, and beat them grossly, then mix Vinegar with them, and put it into the Horse's Ears, then wet Wooll or Tow in the Medicine, and stop that in his Ears also: Let the Medicine rest so four and twenty Hours, and if he forsake his Meat, wash his Tongue with Vinegar, and it will recover his Stomach. Others use first to perfume the Horse's Head to make him Sneeze, then to take half a handful of Selladine, and as much Herb-of-Grace, three or four Cloves of Garlick, and a little Bay-Salt, and stamp them together: Then mix therewith two or three Spoonfuls of Vinegar or Verjuice, and thrust it hard into the Horse's Ears: Then tye up his Ears with a soft Incle-string, that no Air may come in, and let this Medicine remain for the  
space

space of a Day and a Night: Then let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and give him a comfortable Drench, of which Drenches you shall find great plenty, together with their Uses, in a Chapter following. There be some Smiths which only take Rue and Selladine, of each a like Quantity, and stamping them with White-Salt, thrust it into the Horse's Ear, and it helpeth. Others take an Ounce and an half of the Oyl of Bitter-Almonds, two Drams of Ox-Gall, and a half-penny in black Elebor stamped, and five Drams of the Grains of Castoreum, Vinegar, and Verjuice, teethe them altogether till the Vinegar be consumed, then strain them, and put it into the Horse's Ears. All these Medicines have been divers times approved to be singular good, and for mine own part, I have found great Effects in them: Yet that which I have found at all times most excellent, is, if the Disease be young, and early taken, (that is, before the Horse be grown into an Extremity of Weakness) to take only Verjuice and Bay-Salt, and mixing them well together, to stop it into the Horse's Ears. But if the Disease be old, and the Horse brought to a desperate state of Mortality, then you shall take *Assa-fetida*, and having dissolved it in Vinegar, warm it upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and with round Balls of Tow, stuff it hard into the Horse's Ears, and so bind them up for four and twenty Hours, after which time give him a comfortable Drink. Now, whereas some Smiths do use to stamp Aquavice and Garlick together, and stop that into his Ears; I for my part, think it too strong, except the Horse be in great Lust, and full of Flesh, which if he be, doubtless it may do well enough; only for a general Rule you must observe, ever to let the Horse Blood in the Neck-vein two or three Mornings together, and every time take a great Abundance of Blood from him.

#### CHAP. XXXV. Of the Falling-Evil.

**T**HIS Falling-Evil, or as the *Italians* call it, This *Malcoaduco*, is nothing else but that which we call in Men the Falling-Sickness, in Beasts the Falling-Evil; for it doth for a certain Season, deprive them of all Sense whatsoever. It is a Disease not commonly incident to our *English* Races, but amongst the *Italian*, *Spanish*, and *French* Horses, many times found.

Now considering that the most of our best of *English* Stables are furnished even with some Horses of these Countries, I think it good to write something touching the Disease. It proceeds from cold and gross Flegm, gathered together in the fore-part of the Head, betwixt the Panicle and the Brain, which being by any hot Vapour dispersed over the whole Brain, it doth instantly cause this falling. There be others which suppose it to be governed by the Moon; and that by a certain Course thereof, both Horses and other Beasts do fall, and as it were die for a small time. The  
sign



sign to know the Disease, is, the Horse will fall suddenly, both through the Resolution of his Members, and the Distention of his Sinews, all his Body will quake and quiver, and they will foam much at their Mouths, yet when you think them past all hope of Life they will still start up suddenly and fall to their Meat. Now, if you will know whether these Fits will come often, or but seldom, you shall feel the Gristle betwixt his Nostrils, and if it be Cold, he will often, but if he be Warm, he will fall seldom. The Cure is, You shall first let him Blood in the Neck-vein, taking good store of Blood away: Then within four or five Days after, you shall let him Blood on his Temple-veins, and on his Eye-veins: Then anoint all his Body over with a comfortable Friction, then Bathe his Head and Ears with Oyl de Bay, liquid Pitch and Tar mixt together, and of the same put some into his Ears: Then make him a Cap or Bigger of Canvas, quilted with Wool to keep his Head warm: Then give him a Purgation or Scouring, of which you shall find plenty in a Chapter hereafter: You shall also force him to Sneeze, but if the Disease notwithstanding continue still, you shall then with a hot Iron pierce the Skin of his Fore-head in divers places, and after anoint it with Sweet-Butter, for thereby you shall draw out the gross Humours which do oppress the Brain, and in any wise during the time that he remaineth in Physick, let his Stable be kept exceeding warm, and his Diet thin.

CHAP. XXXVI. Of the Night-Mare.

**T**HIS Disease which we call the Night-Mare, is an Infirmity which only troubleth the Horse in the Night-season, stopping the drawing of his Breath, in such violent sort, that with the struggling and striving he will be driven into a great Sweat and faintness: It proceedeth, according to the Opinion of ancient Farriers, from a continual Crudity, or raw Digestion of the Stomach, from whence gross Vapours ascending up into Head, do not only oppress the Brain, but all the sensitive Parts also. Now for my part, I rather hold it an Infirmity of the Stomach and inward Bowels, which being cloyed with much Glut and Fat, doth in the Night-season so hinder the Spirits and Powers from doing their Natural Office, that the Beast having, as it were his Breath strangled, doth with an unnatural strugglin in his Sleep, put his Body into an extreme Sweat, and with that Passion is brought to much Faintness; of which I have had much and continual Experience, not only in Horses exceeding Fat, and newly taken from the Grass, but especially from such Horses as are either fatted upon Eddish Grass, which in some Countries is called After-Mathes; or such as are taken up Fat in the Winter-season. The signs to know this Disease, is, that in the Morning when you come early to your Horse, you shall find him all of a great Sweat, and his Body

Body something panting; or perhaps you shall but only find him Sweat in his Flanks, upon his Neck, and at the roots of his Ears: Either or both are signs of this Sicknels, especially if at Night when you Litter him, if you find that he is dry of his Body, and giveth no outward sign of inward Sicknels. Now there be some that will object against me, and say, that this Infirmary is not the Night-Mare, but an ordinary Infirmary ingendred by superfluity of cold, grois, and unwholesome Food, got in the Winter-season; which Nature, through the help of warm Cloaths, and a warm House expels in this Manner, in the Night season. To this Objection I answer, That if they do disallow this Sicknes to be the Night-Mare, that then without Contradiction, there is no such Disease as the Night-Mare at all, and that it is but only a Name without any Substance or Consequence; but forasmuch as this Sicknes is not only very usual, but also carrieth with it all the Effects and Attributes ascribed unto the Night-Mare, and that it is as yet a Disease unnamed, I do not think I can give it a more proper Term than to call it the Night-Mare. The Cure whereof is, every Morning and Evening, both before and after his Water, to give the Horse some moderate Exercise, as to make him go at least a Mile and more for his Water; and after he is watered, to Gallop him gently on the Hand a good space; then when he is brought into the House, and well rubbed, to give him his Provender, (being Oats) and to mix therewith a Handful or better of Hempseed; only in this Cure you must be careful, that your Exercise do not inforce him to Sweat, nor shall you have need to use it longer than you find that he sweateth much in the Night-season. This Exercise and Medicine will not only cure this Infirmary, but also any Cold that is newly gotten whatsoever.

CHAP. XXXVII. *Of the Apoplexy or Palsie.*

THESE Palsies or Apoplexis whic happen unto Horses, are of two sorts; the one general, the other particular. The general Palsie is, when a Horse is deprived of all Sense, and Moving, generally over his whole Body, which is seldom or never found out by our Farriers; because the Mortality and Suddenness of Death which pursues the Disease, takes from them all Notes and Observations of the Infirmary: And indeed, for the general Palsie, there is no Cure, and therefore there needs no Description of Sign of Cure. For this particular Palsie, that is, when a Horse is deprived but of some Part or Member of his Body, and most commonly it is but the Neck only, as both my self and others have found by daily Experience. This Disease proceedeth from foulness of Food, or from Fen-feeding, which breedeth grois and tough Humours, which joyned with Crudities and raw Digestions, oppress the Brain violently altogether: It also cometh many times by means of some Blow or Wound given upon the Temples of the Head. The signs to know the Disease are, the gathering



thering together of his Body, going crookedly, and not strait forward, but seldom, and holding his Neck awry without Motion, yet never forsaking his Provender or Meat, but eating it with greediness and much flavering. The Cure is, to let him Blood on his Neck-vein, and Temple-vein, on the contrary Side to that way he wryeth: Then anoint all his Neck over with the Oyl Petroleum, and with wet Hay-Ropes Swaddle all his Neck over, even from his Breast to his Ears, but having before splented his Neck strait with Splents of Wood, made strong, smooth, and flat for the purpose; then for three Mornings together, give him a Pint of Old *Muskadine*, with two Spoonfuls of this Powder to drink. Take of Opoponax two Ounces, of Storax three Ounces, of Gentian three Ounces, of Manna, Succary three Ounces, of Myrrh one Scruple, and of Long-Pepper two Scruples: Beat all these into fine Powder.

Now there be some Farriers, which for this Disease use to draw the Horse's Neck on the contrary Side with a hot Iron, even from the Neck to the Shoulder, and on the Temple of his Head of that Side also, a long stroke, and on the other a little Scar in this Manner ✕, and from his Reins to his Middle-Back, small Lines in this Manner:



But I that know this Sicknes proceedeth from the Brain and Sinews, cannot conceive how any help should come from burning of the Skin, that is drawn up and fraitned: And therefore I would wish every Farrier to forbear this tormenting, unless he apparently see, that the Skin itself, through dislike and weakness, is shrunk also, and then the Cure is not amiss.

#### CHAP. XXXVIII. Of the general Cramps, or Convulsion of Sinews.

**T**Hese general Cramps, or Convulsion of Sinews, are most forcible Contradictions, or drawing together of the Sinews, and Muscles: and they happen sometimes generally into many Parts of the Body, sometimes particularly, as but into one Member and no more: When they are generally dispersed in Horses, they proceed commonly from some Wound, wherein a Sinew is half cut and no more, and so there runneth a general Contraction through the whole Body by degrees. When they are particular, as but one in one Member, then they proceed either from cold windy Causes, or from the want of Blood. For the general Contraction which cometh by a Wound, you shall read the Cure thereof in the Book of Chyrurgery following, where the Sinew being cut in two pieces, the Contraction ceaseth. For this particular, where but one Member is grieved, you shall know it by these Signs: The Member will be stark and stiff, infomuch that neither the Beast, nor any Man will be able to bow it: The Sinews be hard like Sticks, and the Horse being down,

is not able to rise during the time of the Contraction, he will also halt extreamly whilst the Fit is upon him, and presently go well again, as it were in one Moment. The Cure is, To chafe the Member exceedingly, either with Linseed Oyl, Sheep's-foot Oyl, or Neat's-foot Oyl, and during the time of his Chafing, to hold up the contrary Foot that he may stand upon the Limb which is most pained. There is also another Cramp or Convulsion of Sinews: which doth extend into the Neck and Reins of the Horse's Back, and so almost universal over the Horse's whole Body: It proceeds ever, either from some extream Cold, as by turning a Horse suddenly out of a warm Stable, and warm Cloaths, into the piercing rage of the cold Winter, or by the loss of Blood, whereby great Windiness entrencheth into the Veins, and so benummeth the Sinews; or else by too much Physicking and Drenching of a Horse, whereby the Natural Heat is much weakened or dried. The signs of this Convulsion be, his Head and Neck will stand awry, his Ears upright, and his Eyes hollow, his Mouth will be clung up that he cannot eat, and his Back will rise up in the midst like the Back of a Camel; the Cure hereof is, with great store of warm Woollen Cloaths, as Blanckets and Coverlids, some folded double about his Body, and some girded all over from his Head to his Tail, to force him into a Sweat; but if the Cloaths will not force him to sweat, then you shall either fold all his Body over with hot wet Horse-Litter, or else bury him all save the Head in a Dung-hill or Mixon; then when he hath sweat an Hour or two, and is moderately cooled, you shall anoint him all over with this Oyntment, (holding hot Bars of Iron over him, to make the Oyntment sink into his Body:) Take of Hogs-grease one Pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a Pound, of Pepper beaten into Powder half a Dram, of old Oyl-Olives one Pound, boil all these together, and use it, being made Warm. There be other Farriers which use this Oyntment; Take of new Wax one Pound, of Turpentine four Ounces, of Oyl de Bay as much, Opoponax two Ounces, of Deer's Suit, and of Oyl of *Syrax* of each three Ounces, melt all these together, and use it warm.

There be others which use, after his Sweat, nothing but Oyl of *Cypress*, or of *Spyke*, and Oyl de Bay mixt together, and with it anoint his Body over. After this Unction thus applied, you shall take twenty Grains of Long Pepper beaten into fine Powder, of Cedar two Ounces, of *Nitre* one Ounce, of *Laserpicium* as much as a Bean, and mingle all these together with a Gallon of White-wine, and give him a Quart thereof to drink every Morning for four Days. Now for his Diet and Order, let his Food be warm Mashies, and the finest Hay, his Stable exceeding warm, and his Exercise gentle Walking abroad in his Cloaths, once every Day about high-Noon.



## CHAP. XXXIX. Of the Cold, or Poze the Head.

**T**H E Cold, or Poze in the Horse's Head is gotten by divers sudden and unseen Means, according to the Temper and Constitution of the Horse's Body, insomuch, that the best Keeper whatsoever, cannot sometimes warrant his Horse from that Infirmity. Now according as his Cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the abundance of Humours which abound in the Head, and as those Humours are of thickness or thinness, so is the Disease and the Danger thereof greater or lesser, stronger or weaker. For you shall understand, that if the Horse hath but only a Cold that is newly taken, the signs are, he will have many Knots like Wax-Kernels between his Chauls about the Roots of his Tongue; his Head will be somewhat heavy, and from his Nostrils will run a certain clear Water; but if about his Tongue-roots be any great Swelling, or Inflammation like a mighty Botch or Bile, then it is the Strangle; but if from his Nostrils do issue any thick, stinking, or corrupt Matter, then it is the Glanders, of both which we shall speak hereafter in their proper Places. Now for this ordinary Cold, which is ordinarily taken, (the signs whereof, besides his much Coughing, are before declared) you shall understand, that for the Cure being very easie, it is helped sundry Ways: Some cure it only by purging his Head with Pills of Butter and Garlick, the Manner whereof you shall find in the Chapter of Purgations. Others Farriers cure it with purging his Head with Fumes, and forcing him to Sneeze, the Manner whereof is in the Chapter of Neeeing; which done, you shall give him to drink Water wherein hath been sodden *Pennegreek*, Wheat-Meal, and Anniseeds; and then to trot him up and down half an Hour after. Others use to give him Neeeing-Powder, blown up into his Nostrils, and then this Drink: Take a Pint of *Malmsey*, and the Whites and Yolks of four or five Eggs, a Head of Garlick bruised small, Pepper and Cinnamon, and Nutmegs, of each a like Quantity beaten to fine Powder, and pretty quantity of sweet Butter, mix them together, and give it luke-warm with a Horn three Days together: Then keep him fasting at least two hours after. Others use to let the Horse Blood in the Vein under his Tail, and to rub all his Mouth over with a Bunch of Sage bound to a Sticks-end, and then to mix with his Provender the tender Crops of Black-berries; but I take this Medicine to be fittest for such Horses, who with the Cold Rhume are trouble with Pain in their Chaps, and not with stuffing in their Head.

Now although none of these Mediciens are Fault-worthy, yet some for mine own Part, I have ever found to be the most Excellent for these slight Colds, moderate Exercise, both before and after a Horse's Water, in such Sort as is declared in the Chapter of the Night-Mare, without any other Fumig or Drenching, except I found the Cold be more than ordi-

ordinary, and that for want of heed taking it was like to grow to some Ulcer, about the Roots of the Tongue. In this Case I would for one time and no more, give the Horse a Pint of Sack, and half a Pint of Sallet-Oyl made luke-warm, and well brewed with good store of Sugar-candy, to drink in the Morning fasting, and exercise moderately thereupon, without putting him into any Sweat, and it hath never failed to work the Effects I wished in ample sort, without hindring me at any time of my Travel or Journey, but if you cannot conveniently come by this Medicine, and you notwithstanding Travel your Horse: then take a Spoonfull of Tar, and folding it in a fine Cloath, fix or tie it fast to the Mouth of your Bit, or Snaffle, and so Travel your Horse therewith, and it will take his Cold clean away. But yet it will a little abate and lessen his Stomach.

CHAP. XL. *How certainly to take away any Cold, Poze, or Rattling in the Head, how violent soever, without giving any inward Medicine.*

**I**F your Horse have taken any extream Cold, or Poze in his Head, and being match'd either to Hunt or to Run for any great Wager, the Day is so near that you dare not give him any inward Drench without which, none of our Farriers know how to cure any Cold; you shall then, or at any other time (for there is no Medicine in the World more Sovereign) take as much sweet Butter as big as a Walnut, and with the Powder of Brimstone finely beaten and searsed, work them either with your Knife, or a Splatter together, till the Butter be brought to a high gold Colour; then take two clean Goose-Feathers, the longest in all the Wing, and first at the Quill's end, with a Needle, fasten two long Threads, then with your Salve anoint all the Feathers clean over; which be done in the dry Powder of Brimstone, role them over and over; then putting the Feather ends foremost, open the Horse's Nostrils, and thrust them up into his Head: Then take the Threads which are at the Quill's end, and fasten them on the Top of the Horse's Head; which done, Ride him abroad for an Hour or two, Airing him in this Manner Morning and Evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after he hath stood tied up a pretty Season, unty the Threads, and draw out the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next Occasion to use them. This Cure of all other, is most certain, and taketh away any stoping in the Head how extream soever.

CHAP. XLI. *The Perfection and best of all Medicines for Poze or Cold.*

**T**AKE (if you can get it) an Ounce of the fine and pure Paste of Elicampane, which hath the strings at the Roots taken from it, or for want thereof, an Ounce of the Conserve of Elicampane, and dissolve it in a Pint and half of Sack, and so give it the Horse with a Horn in the



Morning fasting, and then ride him half an hour after it, and let him fast two hours more, then feed him as at ordinary times: And thus do for two or three Mornings together.

CHAP. XLII. Of a Horse that is Hide-bound.

**T**HIS Disease which we call Hide-bound, is, when a Horse's Skin cleaveth so hard to his Ribs and Back, that you cannot with your hand pull up or loosen the one from the other. It proceedeth sometimes from Poverty and ill Keeping, sometimes from Surfeit of Over-riding; especially if when he is extream hot, he be suffered to stand long in the Rain or wet Weather: And lastly, it proceedeth from a corrupt driness of the Blood, which wanting his natural Course, forceth his Skin to shrink up, and cleave to the Bones. The signs, besides the cleaving of his Skin, is, Leanness of Body, gauntness of Belly, and the standing up of the Ridge-Bone of his Back: It drieth up the Entrails, torments the Body, and makes his Dung stink extraordinarily: And if it be not remedied, Manginess will presently follow after it. The Cure of it is divers, according to the Opinion of divers Work-men: The most ancient Farriers did use to let him Blood on the Spur-veins of both Sides his Belly, somewhat towards his Flank, which done, they give him this Drink: Take of White-wine, or strong Ale a Quart, and add thereunto three Ounces of Sallet-Oyl, of *Cummin* one Ounce, of *Amiseeds* two Ounces, of *Licoras* two Ounces, beaten all into fine Powder, and give it him luke-warm with a Horn; when he hath drank, let one chafe his Back, from the Huckle-bone upward, for the space of an hour or more; then set him in a warm Stable, with good store of Litter; then fold about his Body a thick Blanket, soaked in Water, and wrung; then over it a dry Blanket, then gird them both fast, and stop the Sursingle about with Wisps; for the wet Blanket will put him into a great heat, and for want of a wet Blanket, if you fold his Body in wet Hay, it will do the like, and loosen his Skin; this you shall do the space of a Week, during which time he shall drink no cold Water.

There be other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet Blanket, will anoint all the Horse's Body over with Wine and Sallet-Oyl, and surely it is good also. There be others which for this Disease, use to let the Horse Blood in the Neck, then bathe his Sides with warm Water, wherein hath been sodden Bay-Leaves: Then anoint him all over with the Oyl of Rue or Camomile, hold a hot Iron over him to make the Oyl sink into his Skin, then give him this Drink: Take of *Carrots*, *Rue*, *Wild Mint*, of each an Ounce and an half, of *Wormwood* two Ounces; dry them, and beat them to Powder, then give two Spoonfuls thereof in a Pint of *Malmsey*. There be other Farriers, which take *Fenugreek*, *Turmeric*, *Amiseeds*, *Bay*, *Licoras*, and *Cummin*, of each a like Quantity, dry them, beat

beat them to Powder, and give the Horse two Spoonfuls thereof with a Quart of Ale or Beer luke-warm: Use this at least three Mornings together, and it will not only help the Disease, but if it be formerly used, it will prevent the coming thereof: This Drink is also good for a Cold. Now although every one of these Medicines are very good, yet for my own part, I have found this which followeth to exceed them all.

First, Let him Blood in the Neck-vein, then give him this Drink: Take two handfuls of *Celladine*, if it be in the Summer, the Leaves and Stalks will serve, but if it be in Winter, take Leaves, Stalks, Roots and all, chop them small, then take a handful of Wormwood, and a handful of Rue, chop them likewise, put all these into three Quarts of strong Ale or Beer, and boil them till it come to a Quart; then take it from the Fire, and strain it till you have left no Moisture in the Herbs; then dissolve it in three Ounces of the best Treacle, and give it the Horse luke-warm to drink: Then for a Week together, once a Day, rub all the Horse's Body over with Oyl and Beer, or Butter and Beer, against the Hair, and feed him with warm Mash of Malt and Water, and for his Provender, let him have Barley sodden till it be ready to break, provided that you keep it not until it sower.

#### CHAP. XLIII. Of the Glanders.

**T**ouching this Disease which we call the *Glanders*, my Masters, the old Farriers and I are at much Differnce For some of them do hold Opinion, that it is an Inflammation of the Kernels, which lie on each Side of the Throat, underneath the Roots of the Tongue, near the Swallowing-place; and their Reason is, that because those Kernels are called of the *Italians*, *Glandula*, that thence we borrow this Word *Glanders*; adding moreover, that a Horse which is troubled with this Disease, hath great Kernels underneath his Jaws, easie to be felt, paining him so, that he cannot eat, or swallow any thing. Others say, it is a Swelling upon the Jaw-Bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrify and rot. But both these Opinions I hold in part Erroneous: For although our old Farriers might (according to the Custom of our Nation, which loveth imitation of Strangers) borrow this Word *Glanders* from the *Italian Glandula*; yet these Inflammations under the Chaps of the Tongue-Roots, is that Disease which we call the *Strangle*, and not the *Glanders*; and whereas they could call the *Strangle*, the *Quinsie*, or *Squinacy*, there is no such Matter, neither hath an Horse any such Disease, except they will call the *Vives* by that Name, which is far more fitter for the Application.

Now for the *Glanders*, you shall understand that it is a Running Imposthume, engendred either by Cold, or by Famine, or by long Thirst, or by



by eating corrupt and musty Meat, or by being kept in Unfavoury Places, or is taken by standing with infected Horses. It is a gathering together of moist and corrupt Humours, which runneth at the Nose; or may be said to be a Flux of Rheum, which issueth sometimes at one, sometimes at both the Nostrils, The Cause being, the wideness of the Passage, so that the Cold liberally entring into the Brain, bindeth it, and crusheth it in such Manner, that maketh the Humours there to distill; which descending to the spiritual Parts, and possessing them, in the End suffocates the Horse, either by their Abundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principal Parts; or else by congealing thereby little and little, over-runne the Natural Heat. Now that Distillation, that by Cold cometh from the Brain and breedeth this *Glanders*, is of three sorts. The first is a Cold, which maketh indigested Humours to pass from the Brain, which cometh by taking off the Saddle suddenly when the Horse is hot, or by letting him drink before he be inwardly cooled, or before his Body be dried: This Distillation commonly is slimy Matter that smells not, and is easie to be cured; for it is no inward Ulcer, but only abundance of Humour, the substance whereof is gross and white. The second is a great Cold ingendred and congealed, causing Humours something thin and slimy, of the Colour of Marrow, or the White of an Egg: This descendeth to the Throat, and lieth there till it be discharged through the Nostrils. The third is by long continuance thicker, and therefore harder to be cured; if the Colour thereof be Yellow like a Bean, then is the *Glanders* most desperate, and lieth also in his Throat: But if it be a brown or darkish Yellow, then commonly a Fever will accompany the Disease. To these three Distillations, there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the Matter which comes from his Nose, is Dark, Thin, and Reddish, like little Sparks of Blood, but then it is not said to be the *Glanders*, but the Mourning of the Chine, which is a Disease, for the most part held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for every good Farrier, when he shall take this Cure in hand, to consider well the Matter which issueth from the Horse's Nose: For if the Humour be clear and transparent, so that it may be seen through, then it is not greatly hurtful, or of much moment. If it be White, it is worse, yet with much ease cured. If it be Yellow, separate him from the sound Horses, for he is Infectious, yet to be cured: If that Yellow be mixed with Blood, it is with much Difficulty helped, or if the Matter be like unto Saffron, the Horse is hardly to be saved. He must also consider whether the Matter stink, or have lost the Smell; the first is the sign of an Ulcer, the latter of Death: Also whether he cougheth with straitness in his Chest or no; for that also is a sign of an inward Ulcer, and that the Disease is past Cure. Now for the Cure of these three Distillations, which are all that make up a compleat *Glanders*, you shall understand, that when the *Glanders* is of  
the

the first sort, it is easily helped by moderate Exercise and warm Keeping: But if it be of the second sort, you shall give him warm Mashcs of Malt and Water, and perfume his Head well, and purge it by Sneezing; and into his Mashcs you shall put Fenel-seed bruised. Others will take a Pint of White-wine, and a handful of Soot, a Quart of Milk, and two Heads of Garlick bruised, brew them together, and give it the Horse to drink. Others will take a Pottle of Urine, a Handful of Bay-Salt, and a good Quantity of Brown-Sugar-candy, boil it to a Quart; then add Licoras and Anniseeds beaten to fine Powder, and give it luke-warm to drink. Others will take Lard, or Swines-Grease, and boil it in Water: Then take the Fat from the Water, and mingle it with a little Oyl-Olive, and a good Quantity of Urine, and half as much White-wine, give him a Quart of this luke-warm to drink. Others use to give of Ale a Quart, of grated Bread one Ounce and a half, the Yolks of two Eggs, of Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cardamomum, Spikenard, or Lavender, Galingal, and Honey, of each a pretty Quantity; mix these together, and give it to drink. Now if the Distillation be of the third sort, which is the worst of the three, you shall take half a pound of Swine's Blood, and melt it at the Fire, add to it a Pound of the juice of Beets, with three Ounces of *Euforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boiled a little, take it from the Fire, and add another Ounce of *Euforbium* to it: Keep this Ointment, and anoint therewith two long Feathers or little Rods, lapt with Linnen about, and so anointed, put them into his Nostrils, and after rubbing them up and down, tie them to the Nose-band of the Bridle, and walk him abroad: Do thus three Days together, and it will either absolutely cure him, or at least take away the Eye-sore. Others use to take a Quart of Ale, an half-penny-worth of long Pepper, a little Brimstone, a Pennyworth of *Galingal*, two pennyworth of Spikenard of *Spain*, two penny weight of Saffron brayed, with two Ounces of Butter boiled in the Ale: When it is lukewarm, cast the Horse, and holding up his Head, pour it equally into his Nostrils; then holding his Nostrils close, till his Eyes stare, and that he sweat; which done, give him Bays and Ale to drink; then let him rise, and set him up warm; feeding him with warm Grains and Salt, or with sweet Mashcs; but the best is, if the Weather be warm, to let him run abroad at Grass. Other Farriers use to dissolve in Vinegar, three Drams of Mustard-seed, and as much *Euforbium*; then to give him one Dram at his Nostrils every Day before he Drink. Others use to take *Myrrh*, *Iris*, *Illyrica*, Seeds of *Smallage*, *Aristolochia*, of each three Ounces, *Salniter*, *Brimstone*, of each five Ounces, Bays two Ounces, Saffron one Ounce; make this into Powder, and when you give it, give part in Pills, made with Paste and Wine, and part by the Nostril with strong Oyle: Do this for the space of three Days at the least. Others use to take of Malmsey a Pint, of strong Ale a Pint, of

*Aquavita*



*Aquavita* four Spoonfuls, and brew them together, with a pretty Quantity of Anniseeds, Licoras, Elicampane-Roots, Long-Pepper, Garlick, and three or four New-laid Eggs, and a little Butter; give this luke-warm to drink; then walk him abroad, and set him up warm; do this every other Day for a Week together. Others use to take stale Urine that hath stood three or four Days, and ten Garlick-heads, and seething them together, give it the Horse to drink. Others use to take Swine's-grease well clarified, and as much Oil de Bay as a Walnut, and give it the Horse to drink, with fair Water luke-warm.

But better then all these it is, to take of Elicampane, Anniseeds, and Licoras, of each one Pennyworth, boil them in three Pints of Ale or Beer, till one Pint be consumed, the add unto it a Quarter of a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and give it him to drink luke-warm, then with a Quill blow *Euforbium* up into his Nostrils, and within three Days after, take of Mustard four Spoonfuls, Vinegar a Pint, Butter three Ounces, boil them together, then add thereunto half an Ounce of Pepper, and give it the Horse luke-warm-warm to drink; use this Medicine a Fortnight. Others use to take a handful of pill'd Garlick, and boil it in a Quart of Milk till a Pint be consumed, then add thereto two Ounces of Sweet Butter, and a Pint of strong Ale; stir them well together, and give the Horse Fasting to drink luke-warm, which done, ride him a little up and down, and use this the space of nine Days.

Thus I have plainly shewed you the Opinion and Practice of all the best Farriers, both of this Kingdom, and of others, and they be all very good and effectual; yet for mine own Part, that which I have found ever the best in my Practice, is, if the Disease be of the first or second sort, to give the Horse to drink fasting every Morning for a fortnight together, a Pint of strong Ale, and five Spoonfuls of the Oil of Oats, the making of which Oil, you shall read in a particular Chapter following: But if the Disease be of the third sort, which is most desperate, you shall then take of Tanners Ouse a Pint, and of new Milk a Pint, and of Oil Olive half a Pint, and the quantity of a head of Garlick bruised, and a little Turmerick: mix these well together, and give it the Horse to drink: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will help, if any help be to be had.

CHAP. XLIV. Two most certain and lately found out Medicines, which will without all fail cure any Glanders, though our Farriers hold it impossible.

IF your Horse's Cold be come to the worst Glanders, which is a continual running at the Nose, and hath run by the space of divers Months, so that your Farriers can do you no good; you shall then take better than two handfuls or the White Cankerous Moss which grows upon an old Oak-en Pale, and boil it in two Quarts of Milk till one Quart be almost consumed

sumed; then strain it, and squeeze the Moss well, which done, give it the Horse lukewarm to drink: then take the Goose-Feathers, Brimstone, and Butter, in such Manner as is set down in the new Additions for the Cold, or Poze in a Horse's Head, before, and having put them up into his Nostrils, ride him forth an hour or two gently, and after he is come home, draw forth the Feathers, and keep his Body warm. This Disease you shall understand cometh not suddenly, but grows out of long process of time; so likewise the Cure must not be expected to be done in a Moment, but with much leisure, therefore you must continue your Medicine as your leisure will serve, either every Day, or at least thrice a Week, if it be four or five Months together, and be assured in the End it will yield your Desire.

Now the second certain and well approved Medicine, is, To take Eli-campane Roots, and boil them in Milk till they be soft, that you may bruise them to Pap: Then with a Horn give them to the Horse, together with the Milk lukewarm, being no more than will make the Roots liquid; then having anointed your Goose-Feathers, put them up into his Nostrils, and ride him forth, as is before shewed.

**C H A P. III. Of the Mourning of the Chinne.**  
**T**HIS Disease which we call the *Mourning of the Chinne*, or as some Farriers term it, the *wist Mladay*, is that fourth sort of corrupt Distillation from the Brain, of which we have spoke in the Chapter before, shewing from whence it proceeds, and the signs thereof. To wit, that the corrupt Matter which issues from his Nostrils will be dark, thin, and reddish, with little streaks of Blood in it. It is supposed by some Farriers, that this Disease is a foul Consumption of the Liver, and I do not derogate from that Opinion: For I have found the Liver wasted in those Horses which I have opened upon this Disease: And this Consumption proceeds from a Cold, which after grows to a Poze, then to a Glanders, and lastly to this Mourning of the Chinne.

The Cure whereof, according to the Opinion of the eldest Farriers, is, to take clear Water, and that Honey which is called *Hydomele*, a Quart, and put thereunto three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, and pour it into his Nostrils each morning, the space of three Days. And if that help not, then give him to drink every Day, or once in two Days at the least, a Quart of red Wine, mingled with some of the Sovereign Medicine called *Terrapharmacum*, which is to had almost of every Apothecary. Others use to take Garlick, Housleek, and Chervill, and stamping them together, thrust it up into the Horses Nostrils.

Others use to let the Horse fast all Night, then take a Pint and an half of Milk, three Heads of Garlick pilled and stamped, boil them to the half, and give it the Horse, some at the Mouth, some at the Nose, then

H

gallop



gallop him a quarter of a Mile, then rest him; then gallop him half a Mile, then rest him again: Thus do twice or thrice together, then set him up warm, and give him no Water till it be high Noon; then give him a sweet Mash: Use this Cure at least three Days together. Others use to take half a Peck of Oats, and boil them in running Water till half be consumed, then put them into a Bag, and lay them very hot upon the Navel-place of his Back, and there let it lie thirty Hours, using thus to do three or four times at least. Others use to take *Warmwood*, *Peucedanum*, and *Century*, of each a like Quantity; boil them in Wine, then strain them, and pour thereof many times into his Nostrils, especially in that which most runneth. Others use to take *Hare-baud*, *Licoras*, and *Anniseds*, beaten to Powder; then with Sweet-Butter to make Pills thereof, and give them fasting to the Horse. Others use to take Wheat-Flower, Anniseeds, and Licoras stamped in a Mortar, five or six Cloves of Garlick bruised; mix all these together, and make a Paste of them; then make it into Pills as big as Walnuts, and taking out the Horse's Tongue, cast the Balls down the Horse's Throat, three or four at a time, then give him two New-laid Eggs Shells and all, after them.

Now after all these, the best and most approved Medicine, is, To take as much of the middle-green Bark of an Elder-Tree growing on the Water-Side, as will fill a reasonable Vessel, putting thereunto as much running-Water as the Vessel will hold, and let it boil till half be consumed, and then fill up the Vessel again with Water, continuing so to do three several times together; and at the last time when the one half is consumed, take it from the Fire, and strain it exceedingly through a Linnen-Cloth; then to that Decoction add at least a third part of the Oil of Oats, or for want of that, of Oil Olive, or of Hoggs-grease, or Sweet-Butter; and being warmed again, take a Quart thereof, and give it the Horse to drink, one Hornful at his Mouth, and another at his Nostrils, especially that which casteth out the Matter. And in any Case, let the Horse be fasting when he taketh this Medicine; for it not only cureth this, but any Sickness proceeding from any Cold whatsoever. It shall be also good to use to his Body some wholesome Friction, and to his Head some wholesome Bath, of which Baths you shall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his Diet, his Meat should be sodden Barley, and sweet Hay, and his Drink warm Water, or Mashes: But if it be in the Summer-season, then it is best to let him run at Grass only.

CHAP. XLVI. *A most Rare and Certain approved Medicine, to Cure any High Running Glanders, called, The Mourning of the Chinc; held of all Men inscruable.*

**T**HIS Disease to my Knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this Kingdom can tell how to cure; for it comes not to the extremity, till the Horse have run at his Nose a Year or more; and have at the Roots of his Tongue, a hard Lump gathered, which will not be dissolved. Now for mine own Part, it is well known I have cured many with this Medicine only: Take of *Auripigmentum* and *Tussilaginis* beaten into fine Powder, of each of them four Drams: Then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a Paste, then make of it little Cakes, or Troches, as broad as a Groat, and dry them: This done, lay about two or three of them on a Chafing-dish of Coals, and cover them with a Tunnel, so that the Smoke may come out only at the End thereof, and so without any loss ascend up into the Horse's Head through his Nostrils; then ride the Horse till he begin to Sweat; do this once every Morning before Water, till the Running be stopt, which will be in a very short space, considering the greatness of the Disease.

CHAP. XLVII. *Of the Cough.*

**C**oughing is a Motion of the Lungs, raised naturally from its expulsive Power, to cast out the hurtful Cause, as Neefing is the Motion of the Brain. Now of Coughs, there be some outward, and some inward: Those are said to be outward, which proceed of outward Causes, as when a Horse doth eat or drink too greedily, so that his Meat goeth the wrong way, or when he licketh up a Feather, or eateth dusty or sharp-bearded Straw, and such like, which tickling his Throat, causeth him to Cough; those which are said to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we shall speak more hereafter. Now of these outward Coughs, they may proceed from the Corruption of the Air, which if it do, you shall give him half an Ounce of *Diapente* in a Pint of Sack, and it will help. It may also proceed from Dust, and then you must wash it down by pouring into his Nostrils Ale and Oil mingled together. It may come by eating sharp and sowre things; and then you must put down his Throat Pills of Sweet-Butter, whose softness will help him. It may proceed from some little or slight taken Cold, and then you shall take the Whites and Yolks of two Eggs, three Ounces of Sallet-Oil, two Handfuls of Bean-Flower, one ounce of Fenugreek, mix them with a Pint of old Malmsey, and give it the Horse to drink three Days together: Or else take Tarr and fresh Butter, mix them together, and give Pills thereof to the Horse four times in seven Days: That is, the first, the third, the fifth, and the seventh Day. There be others which use to take a Gallon



of fair Water, and make it ready to seeth; then put thereto a Peck of ground Malt, with two handfulls of Box Leaves chopt small, and a little Groundfel, mix them all together, and give him every Morning and Evening a Pint for a Week together. If to the Box-Leaves you add Oats and Bettony, it is not amiss, so you keep the Horse warm. Others use to give the Horse a Pint of Swine's-Blood warm. Others use to boil in a Gallon of Water one Pound of Fenugreek, then straining it, give the Water Morning and Evening by a pint at a time to drink, then drying his Fenugreek, give it the Horse with his Provender. Others use for all manner of Coughs, to take a Quarter of white Currans, and as much clarified Honey, two ounces of sweet Marjoram, with old fresh Grease, and a Head of Garlick; melt that which is to be molten, and pun that which is to be beaten; mix them together, and give the Horse a Pint thereof, better than three Mornings together. Others use to give the Horse the Gut of young Pullet dipt in Honey, and being warm; and certainly, there is not any of these Medicines, but are most sovereign and well approved. Now whereas some Farriers use to thrust down the Throat of the Horse a Willow Wand, rolled about with a Linnen-Cloath, and anointed all over with Honey, (I for my part) do not like it; for it both torments the Horse more than there is occasion, and doth but only go about to take away that which is gone in the strugling, before the Medicine can be used, for it is only for a Cough, which cometh by a Feather, or some such like Matter.

CHAP. XLVIII. *Of the inward, or wet Cough.*

**T**ouching inward Coughs, which are gotten and engendred by Colds and Rheums of long continuance, being not only dangerous, but sometimes Mortal, you shall understand, that they are divided into two Kinds, the one Wet, the other Dry; the wet Cold proceedeth from cold Causes taken after great Heat; which heat dissolving Humours, those Humours being again congealed, do presently cause Obstructions and stopping of the Lungs. Now the signs to know this wet Cough, is, the Horse will ever after his Coughing, cast out either Water or Matter out of his Nostrils, or Champ or Chaw with his Teeth, the thick Matter which he casteth out of his Throat, as you shall easily perceive, if you heedfully note him, he will also Cough often without intermission, and when he Cougheth, he will not much bow down his Head, nor abstain from his Meat: And when he drinketh, you shall see some of his Water issue out at his Nostrils. The Cure is, first to keep him exceeding warm; then forasmuch as it proceedeth from cold Causes, you shall give him hot Drinks, and Spices, as Sack, or strong Ale, brewed with Cinnamon, Ginger, Cloves, Treacle, Long-Pepper, and either Swines-grease, Sallet-Oil, or Sweet Butters, for you shall know,

that

that all cold Causes are cured with Medicines that open and warm; and the hot with such as cleanse and cool. Some use to take a pretty Quantity of *Benjamin*, and the Yolk of an Egg, which being well mixt together, and put into an Egg-shell, cast all down into the Horse's Throat, and then moderately Ride him up and down for more than a quarter of an Hour: And do this three or four Mornings together. Others use to keep him warm, and then to give him this Drink: Take of Barley one Peck, and boil it in two or three Gallons of Running-Water, till the Barley burst, together with bruised Licoras, Anniseeds, and Raisins, of each a Pound; then strain it, and to that Liquor put of Honey a Pint, and a quarter of Sugar-candy, and keep it close in a Pot to serve the Horse therewith four several Mornings, and cast not away the Barley, nor the rest of the strainings, but make it hot every Day to perfume the Horse withal in a close Bag; and if he eat of it, it is so much the better; and after this, you shall give the Horse some moderate Exercise; and for his Diet, let him drink no cold Water till his Cough abate, and as it lesseneth, so let the Water be less warmed.

Now for mine own Part, though all these Receipts be exceeding good, and very well approved, yet in this Case, thus hath been, and ever shall be my Practise; if I found either by the heaviness of the Horse's Head, or by the rattling of his Nostrils, that the Cough proceeded most from the stopping of his Head, I would only give him four or five Mornings together, three or four good round Pills of Butter and Garlick, (well knodden together) fasting, then ride him moderately an hour after; but if I found that the Sickness remained in the Chest or Breast of the Horse, then I would give him twice in four Days a pint of Sack, half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and two ounces of Sugar-candy well brewed together, and made luke-warm, and then ride him half an Hour after, and set him up warm, suffering him to drink no cold Water, till his Cough begin to abate and leave him.

But for all wet Coughs, frettized and broken Lungs, putrified and rotten Lungs, or any such moist Disease, see the new Additions for the *Mourning of the Chine*, and it is a certain Cure.

#### CHAP. XLIX. Of the Dry Cough.

**T**HIS Disease which we call the dry Cough, is a gross and tough Humour, cleaving hard to the hollow places of the Lungs, which stoppeth the Wind-pipes, so that the Horse can hardly draw his breath. It doth proceed by ill-government, from the Rheum which distilleth from the Head, falleth down to the Breast, and there inforceth the Horse to strive to cast it out.

The special signs to know it, is, by eating hot Meats, as Bread that is spiced, Straw, dry Hay, or such like, his extremity of Coughing will increase, by eating cold and moist Meats, as Grass, Sorage, Grains, and.



and such like, it will abate and be the less: He Cougheth seldome, yet when he cougheth, he cougheth violently a long time together, and drily with a hollow sound from his Chest: He also boweth his Head down to the Ground, and forsaketh his Meat whilst he Cougheth, yet never casteth forth any thing, either at his Mouth or Nostrils.

This Cough is most dangerous, and not being taken in time is incurable: For it will grow to the Purfick or Broken-winded altogether. The Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, that forasmuch as it proceedeth from hot Humours, therefore you shall perfume his Head with cold Simples, as Camomile, Mellilot, Licoras, dried Red Roses and Camphire boiled in Water, and the Fume made to pass up into his Mouth and Nostrils.

Others use to take a close Earthen Pot, and to put therein three Pints of the strongest Vinegar, and four Eggs, Shells and all, unbroken, and four Heads of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, and set the Pot being very close covered in a warm Dung-hil or a Horse-mixen, and there let it stand 24 Hours, then take it forth and open it, and take out the Eggs which will be as soft as Silk, and lay them by, until you have strained the Vinegar and Garlick through a Linnen Cloath: Then put to that Liquor a quartern of Honey, and half a quartern of Sugar-candy, and two Ounces of Licoras, and two Ounces of Anniseeds beaten all into fine Powder, and then the Horse having fasting all the Night, early in the Morning, about seven or eight a-Clock, open the Horse's Mouth with a Drench-staff and Cord, and first cast down his Throat one of the Eggs, and then presently after it a Horn full of the aforesaid Drink, being made luke-warm; then cast in another Egg, and another Hornfull: And thus do till he hath swallowed up all the Eggs, or three at the least; then Bridle him, and cover him warmer than he was before, and set him up in the Stable, tying him to the bare Rack for the space of two Hours; then unbridle him, and give him either some Oats, Hay, or Grass; yet in any Case give him no Hay, until it hath been somewhat sprinkled with Water: For there is no greater Enemy to a dry Cough than dry Hay, dry Straw, or Chaff; then let him have cold Water the space of nine Days. Now if you chance the first Morning, to leave an Egg untaken, you shall not fail to give it him, and the remainder of the Drink the Morning following. If you find by this Practice that the Cough weareth not away, you shall then purge his Head with Pills, of which you shall read in the Chapter of *Purgations*: After his Pills received, you shall let him fast three Hours, standing warm cloathed and littered in the Stable: You shall also now and then give him a warm Mash, and once a-Day Trot him moderately abroad.

There be other Farriers which for this dry Cough take only the Herb called Lyon's-Foot, Lady's-Mantle, Spurge, and Smallage, of each a like

like quantity, seethe them in a Quart of old Wine, or a Quart of Running-Water till some part be consumed, and give it the Horse to drink: If instead of the Herbs themselves, you give the Juice of the Herbs in Wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantity of white Currans, and as much Honey, two Ounces of Marjoram, one Ounce of Penny-royal, with five Pounds of fresh Grease, and nine Heads of Garlick, beat that which is to be beaten, and melt the rest; give this in four or five Days like Pills dipt in Honey. Others use to take Myrrh Opoponax, Iris, Ilerica, and Galbanum, of each two Ounces, of Red Storax three Ounces, of Turpentine four Ounces, of Hen-Bane half an Ounce, of Opium half an Ounce, beat them to fine Powder, and give two or three Spoonfuls with a Pint of old Wine, or a Quart of Ale.

Others use to take forty grains of Pepper, four or five Roots of Radish, four Heads of Garlick, and five ounces sweet-Butter; stamp them all well together, and give every Day a Ball of It to the Horse for a Week together, making him fast two hours after his taking of it; and surely, it is a most excellent approved Medicince for any old over-grown Cold, or Cough. Other Farriers use to take of Oil de Bay and sweet Butter, of each half a pound, Garlick one pound, beat it together unpilled, and being well beaten with a Pestle of Wood, add your Oil and Butter unto it: Then having made it into Balls, with a little Wheat-flower, give your Horse every Morning for a Week and more, three or four Balls as big as Walnuts, keeping him fasting after from Meat three hours, and from Drink till it be Night, provided that still his Drink be warm, and his Meat, if possible, may be Grass or Hay sprinkled with Water: As for his Provender, it should be Oats and Fenugreek sprinkled among it. Now if you perceive that at a Fortnights End, his Cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another Week, give him again the same Physick and Diet; but truly for my own part, I have never found it to fail in any Horse whatsoever; yet I will wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward Medicines, except they be well assured that the Cold hath been long, and that the Cough is dangerous.

CHAP. L. Two excellent true and well approved Medicines, for any Cold, dry Cough, Shortness of Breath, Purfiness, or Broken-winded.

THE first is, Take of Tar three spoonfuls, of sweet-Butter as much, beat and work them well together with the fine powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard PASTE; then make it in three round Balls, and put into each Ball four or five Cloves of Garlick, and so give them them to the Horse, and warm him with Riding, both before and after he hath received the Pills, and be assured, that he be fasting when he takes it; and fast at least two hours after he hath taken it.

The



The Second is, Take of the white Fat or Lard of Bacon, a Piece four Fingers long, and almost two Fingers thick both ways; then with your Knife making many holes into it, stop it with as many Cloves of Garlicke as you can conveniently get into it; then rolling it in the Powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, Sugar-candy and Brimstone, all equally mixed together, give it your Horse fasting in a Morning, at least twice a Week continually; and ride him after it, and be sure that all the Hay he eats be finely sprinkled with Water.

*The best of all other Medicines; for a dry Cough, never before mentioned, nor revealed.*

**T**AKE of the Syrup of Colts-foot two Ounces, of the Powder of Elicampane, of Anniseeds and of Licoras, of each half an Ounce, of Sugar-candy divided into two Parts, two Ounces, then with Sweet-Butter work the Syrup and the Powders, and one part of the Sugar-candy into a stiff Paste, and thereof make Pills or small Balls, and roll them in the other part of the Sugar-candy, and so give it to the Horse fasting, and Exercise him gently an hour after it: And thus do for divers Mornings till you find Amendment.

*Chill Of the Rotted, Broken, and Rotten Lungs.*

**C**oughs do many times proceed from the Corruption and Putrefaction of the Lungs, gotten either by some extream Cold, Running or Leaping, or by over-greedy drinking after great thirst; because the Lungs being inclosed in a very thin Film, they are therefore the much sooner Broken; and if such a Breach be made, without instant Cure, they begin to Inflamm and Apopleume, oppressing and sickning the whole Lungs. Now the Signs to know this Disease, is, the Horse's Flanks will beat when he Cougheth, and the slower they beat, the more old and dangerous is the Disease: He will also draw his Wind short, and by a little at once: He will groan much, be fearful and loath to Cough, and often turn his Head to the place grieved: To conclude, he will never Cough, but he will bring up something which he will champ in his Mouth after The Cure is, give him two or three Ounces of Hogg's Grease, and two or three Spoonfuls of Diapente brewed in a quart of Barley-Water, wherein Currants have been soaked. *Other Partiers use to take a Pound of Licoras, and being sliced and liest, to steep it in a quart of Water four and twenty hours, then to strain it, then to beat three or four Ounces of Currants in it, and to give it the Horse to drink and keep him fasting three or four hours after.* There be other Partiers which use to take of Peppercorne and Linseed, of each half a Pound, of Gum-dragant, of Masticke, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of Pitch-Flower, of each one ounce, let all these be beaten into fine Powder, and then infused one whole Night

in a good quantity of warm Water, and the next Day give him a quart of this luke-warm, putting thereto two Ounces of the Oil of Roses, and this you must do many Days together; and if the Disease be new, it will certainly heal; if it be never so old, it will assuredly ease him, but in any Case let him drink no cold Water: And for his Food, Grass is the most excellent.

Others use (and it is the best Cure) to take of Malmsey a Pint, of Honey three Spoonfuls, mix them together, then take of Myrrh, of Saffron, of Cassia and Cinnamon, of each a like quantity, beat them to a fine Powder, and give two Spoonfuls thereof in the Wine to drink, do this at least a Fortnight together, and it is certain it will help these Fret-tized, and broken Lungs, but for the putrified and rotten Lungs, we will speak more in the next Chapter.

#### CHAP. LIII. *Of the Putrified and Rotten Lungs.*

**T**HIS Disease of Rotten and Exulcerate Lungs, you shall know by these Signs: He will Cough oft and vehemently, and ever in his Coughing he will cast little reddish Lumps out of his Mouth, he will decay much in his Flesh, and yet eat his Meat with more greediness than when he was sound: And when he Cougheth, he will Cough with more ease and clearness than if his Lungs were but only broken. The Cure whereof, according to the Practice of our ordinary English Farriers, is, to give the Horse divers Mornings together a Pint of strong Vinegar warm, or else as much of Man's Urine, with half so much Hogg's-Grease, brewed warm together.

But the more ancient Farriers take a good quantity of the Juice of Purslain mixt with the Oil of Roses, adding thereunto a little Tragacanthum, which hath before been laid to steep in Goat's-Milk, or for want thereof in Barley, or Oaten-Milk strained from the Corn, and give him a pint thereof every Morning for seven Days together. This Medicine is but only to ripen and break the Imposthume, which you shall know if it hath done, because when the Sore is broken, his Breath will stink exceedingly: Then shall you give him the other seven Days this Drink: Take the Root called Castus, two Ounces, and of Cassia, or Cinnamon, three Ounces beaten into fine Powder, and a few Raisins, and give it him to drink, with a pint of Malmsey. Others use to take of Frankincense and Aristolochia, of each two Ounces beaten into fine Powder, and give the Horse two or three Spoonfuls thereof, with a Pint of Malmsey. Others take of unburnt Brimstone two Ounces, of Aristolochia one Ounce and a half beaten to Powder, and give it the Horse with a Pint of Malmsey.



CHAP. LIV. *Of Shortness of Breath, or Purfiness.*

**T**HIS Disease of short Breath or Purfiness, may come two several ways; that is, Naturally, or Accidentally: Naturally, as by the straitness of his Conduits, which convey his Breath, when they want Liberty to carry his Breath freely, or being cloyed up with Fat, force Stopplings and Obstructions in his Wind-pipe, and thereby make his Lungs labour, and work painfully. Accidentally, as by hasty running after drinking, or upon full Stomach, by which Humours are compelled to descend down into the Throat and Lungs, and there stoppeth the passage of the Breath. The signs of this Disease are continual panting and heaving of his Body without any Coughing, great heat of Breath at his Nostrils, and a squeezing or drawing in of his Nose when he breatheth; besides a coveting to hold out his Head whilst he fetcheth his Wind. The Cure, according to the Opinion of some of our best Farriers, is to give him in his Provender, the Kernels of Grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you must give them plentifully. The warm blood of a sucking Pig is excellent good also. Other Farriers use to take Venus-hair, Ireos, Ash-Keys, Licoras, Fenugreek, and Raisins, of each a dram and a half; Pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettle-seed, Aristolochia, and Colloquintida, of each two Drams, Algaratium one Dram and a Half, Honey two Pounds, dissolve them with Water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden, and give him one Pint every Morning, for three or four Mornings. Others use to take Molline, or Long-wort, and make a Powder thereof, and give two Spoonfuls thereof with a Pint of running Water, or else Powder of Gentian, in the afore said manner, and do it for divers Mornings.

Others use to take of Nutmegs, Cloves, Galingal, Grains of Paradise, of each three Drams, Carraway-seed, and Fenugreek, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and half an Ounce of Licoras; beat them all into fine Powder, then put two or three Spoonfuls thereof to a Pint of White-wine, and the Yolks of four Eggs, and give it the Horse to drink; then tie his Head up high to the Rack for an Hour after: That done, either ride him, or walk him up and down gently, and keep him fasting four or five Hours after at the least, the next Day turn him to Grass, and he will do well. There be others which use to let the Horse blood in the Neck-vein, and then give him this Drink: Take of Wine and Oil, of each a Pint, of Frankincense half an Ounce, and of the Juice of Hare-hound half a Pint, mix them well together, and give him to drink.

Others use to give him only somewhat more than a Pint of Honey, Hog's-Grease, and Butter molten together, and let him drink it lukewarm. Eggs made soft in Vinegar, as is shewed in the Chapter of the dry

dry Cough, is excellent for this shortness of Breath, so you give the Eggs increasing, that is, the first Day one, the second Day three, and the third five; and withal, to pour a little Oil and Wine into his Nostrils, is very good also. There be other Farriers which use to take a Snake, and cut off her Head and Tail, and then take out the Guts and Entrails, boil the rest in Water till the Bone part from the Flesh; then cast the Bone away, and give every third Day of this Decoction more than a Pint, till you have spent three Snakes, and this is excellent good for the dry Cough also.

Now the last and best Medicine for this shortness of Breath, (for indeed in this Case I do not affect much Physicking) is only to take Anni-seeds, Licoras, and Sugarcandy, all beaten into very fine Powder, and take four Spoonfuls thereof, and brew it well with a Pint of White-wine, and half a pint of Sallet-Oil; and use this ever after your Horse's Travel, and a Day before he is travelled.

CHAP. LV. *Of the Broken-winded, Purse-sick Horse.*

**T**HIS Disease of Broken-winded, I have ever since I first began to know either Horse or Horse-leach-craft, very much disputed with my self; and for many Years did constantly hold (as I still do) that in truth there is no such Disease; only in this I found by daily Experience, that by over-hasty or sudden running of a Horse (or other) presently after, or by long standing in the Stable with no Exercise and foul Food, that thereby gross and thick Humours may be drawn down into the Horse's Body so abundantly, that cleaving hard unto the hollow Places of his Lungs, and stopping up the Wind-pipes, the Wind may be so kept in, that it may only have its resort backward, and not upward, filling the Guts, and taking from the Body great part of his Strength and Livelihood; which if from the corruption of our old Inventions, we call Broken-winded, then I must needs confess, that I have seen many Broken-winded Horses. The signs of which Disease are these, much and violent beating of his Flanks, especially drawing up of his Belly upward, great opening and raising of his Nostrils, and a continual swift going to and fro of his Tuel: Besides, it is ever accompanied with a dry and hollow Cough. The Cure, I must needs say in so great an extremity, (for it is the worst of all the Evils of the Lungs, which are before spoken of) is most desperate, but the preservations and helps both to continue the Horse's health, and his daily Service, are very many, as namely, (according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers) to purge your Horse by giving him this Drink: Take of Maiden-hair, Ireos, Ash, Licoras, Fenugreek, Balsm, of each half an Ounce, of Cardamum, Pepper, Bitter-Almonds, Borage, of each two Ounces, of Nettle-seed, and of Aristolochia, of each two Ounces, boil them all together in a sufficient



quantity of Water, and in that Decoction dissolve half an Ounce of Agarrick, and two Ounces of Colloquintida, together with two Pound of Honey, and give him a Pint and a Half of this at a time, for at least a Week together; and if this Medicine chance at any time to prove too thick, you shall make it thin with Water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden; and some Farriers, also besides this Medicine, will with a hot Iron draw the Flanks of the Horse to restrain their beating, and slit the Horse's Nostrils to give the Wind more Liberty, but I do not affect either the one or the other: The best Diet for a Horse in this Case, is Grass in Summer, and Hay sprinkled with Water in Winter. There be other Farriers, which for this Infirmary hold, that to give the Horse three or four Days together sodden Wheat, and now and then a quart of new sweet Wine, or other good Wine, mixt with Licoras-Water, is a certain Remedy. There be other Farriers, which for this Disease take the guts of a Hedge-hog, and hang them in a warm Oven till they be dry, so that a Man may make Powder of them: Then give your Horse two or three Spoonfuls thereof with a Pint of Wine or strong Ale: Then the rest mix with Anniseeds, Licoras, and sweet-Butter, and make round Balls or Pills thereof, and give the Horse two or three after his Drind: And so let him fast at least two or three Hours after. Now when at any time you give him any Provender, be sure to wash it in Ale, or Beer; then take Cummin, Anniseeds, Licoras, and Century, of each a just Quantity, make them, being mixt together, into fine Powder, and strew two Spoonfuls thereof upon the Provender, being wet. This Physick must be used for a Fortnight at least. Others use to take of Cloves and Nutmegs three Drams, of Galingale and Cardamomum three Drams, of Soot, of Bay-seeds, and Cummin of each three drams, and make them into fine Powder, and put it into White-wine, being well tempered with a little Saffron, then put to so many yolks of Eggs, as may countervail the other quantity: Then mix them with Water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden, making it so thin, that the Horse may drink it, and after he hath Drank the quantity of a Pint and a Half of this Drink, tie up his Head to the Rack, and let him so stand at least an hour after, that the Drink may descend into his Guts, then walk him gently abroad that the Medicine may work; and in any case give him no Water for the space of four and twenty Hours after: The next Morning give him some Grass to eat, and the Branches of Willows or Sallow, which will cool the heat of the Potion.

Now there be other Farriers which take of Pances, Long-wort, Maiden-hair, the Crops of Nettles, Carduus Benedictus, Herb Fluetin, the Roots of Dragonus bruised, the Roots of Elicampane bruised, of Water-hemp, of Penny-royal, of Light-wort, of Angelica, of each of these a good handful, or so many of these as you can conveniently get: Bruise

Bruise them, and lay them all Night in two or three Gallons of Water, and give it a boil in the Morning, and let the Horse drink thereof as much luke-warm as he will, then after this Drink, give him a pretty quantity of sodden Wheat; use this Diet for a Week or more at the least; and then if the Season be fit, put him to Grass. This Cure is of great Reputation, and thought to help when all other fail: For mine own part, I wish every Man to judg<sup>e</sup> it by the Practice.

There be others, which only for nine or ten Days together, will give their Horse Water wherein Licoras hath been sodden, mixt with Wine, and hold it a most sovereign help.

There be others, which will only give new Milk from the Cow; but I despair of that Cure, because Milk being only Flegmatick, Flegm is the only substance of this Disease. Other Farriers use to keep the Horse fasting four and twenty Hours, then take a quart of Ale, a quarter of an Ounce of Fenugreek, half a quarter of Bays, of the green Bark of Elder-Trees, of Sugar-candy, of Water-creffes, of red Mints, of red Fennel, of Haw-tree-Leaves, and of primrose-Leaves, of each half an Ounce, the Whites of six Eggs; beat these in a Mortar, and seethe them in the Ale, give it him to drink, then let him fast after it two hours; then give him Meat and Provender enough, yet but a little Drink. Others use to give him wet Hay, and moderate Travel: Then take twenty Eggs, steep them in Vinegar twenty four Hours, giving the Horse two every Morning, and after the Eggs are spent, a Pottle of new Milk from the Cow.

Now there be other Farriers, which only will dissolve in Vinegar, fifteen Eggs, and give the Horse the first Day three, the second Day five, and the third Day seven, and hold it a good help. Others will take an Ounce of Frankincence, two Ounces of Brimstone, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and half a pint of Honey. Others will take Sal-Nitre, burnt with the Powder of Pitch, and give it with the same quantity of Wine and Honey. Others will only give Sal-Nitre mingled with his Meat, provided always, that in every Cure you keep your Horse from Cold and Labour, and daily chafe his Head with Oil and Wine. But of this, look in the last new Additions for the dry Cough, noted thus .

#### CHAP. LVI. Of the dry Malady, or Consumption.

**T**HIS Disease of the dry Malady, or as the ancient Farriers term it, a general Consumption, is nothing but a meer Exulceration of the Lungs, proceeding from a Cankerous fretting and gnawing Humour, ingendred by Cold and Surfeit, which descending from the Head, sickness and corrodeth the Lungs. Some of our ignorant Farriers will call it the *Mourning of the Chine*, but they are thus far forth deceived, that  
the



the Mourning of the Chine doth ever cast some filthy Matter from the Nose, and the dry Malady never casteth forth any thing.

The Signs to know this dry Malady or Consumption, are these: His Flesh, and strong estate of Body will consume and waste away, the Belly will be gaunt, his Back-bone hid, and his Skin so stretched or shrunk up, that if you strike upon him with your hand, it will sound hollow like a Tabor; his Hair will hardly shed, and either he will utterly deny his Meat, or the Meat he eateth will not digest, prosper, or breed any Flesh on his Body; he will offer to Cough, but cannot, except in a faint manner, as though he had eaten small Bones; and truly, according to the Opinion of others, so I find by mine own Practice of fifty Years, that it is incurable; yet that a Horse may be long preserved to do much Service, I have found it by these helps: First, to purge his Head with such Fumes and Pills as are good for the Glanders, which you may find in the Chapter of *Purgations*, then give him Colewarts small chopt with his Provender, and now and then the blood of a sucking Pig warm.

There be other well-experienced Men, that instead of the Blood, will give either the Juice of Leeks mixt with Oil and Wine, or else Wine and Frankincense, or Sallet-Oil, and the Juice of Rue mixt together: But in my Conceit, the best Cure, is, to purge his Body clean with comfortable and gentle Purges, and then to be suffered to run at Grass, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no question but he must necessarily end or mend, for languish long he cannot.

#### CHAP. LVII. *Of the Consumption of the Flesh.*

**T**HIS Disease which we call the Consumption of the Flesh, is an unnatural or general dislike, or Falling away of the whole Body, or, (as we term it,) the Wasting of the Flesh, which proceedeth from divers Grounds; as namely, from inward Surfeits, either by naughty Food, or ill Diet, or from unclean, moist and stinking Lodging, but especially from disorderly Labour, as by taking great and sudden Colds, after violent heat, or such like; all which procure the wasting or falling away of the Flesh. The Signs whereof are these: First, an unnatural and causeless Leanness, a dry and hard Skin cleaving hard to his Sides, want of Stomach or Appetite to his Meat, a falling away of his Fillets, and a general Consumption both of his Buttocks and Shoulders: The Cure whereof, according to the Ancients, is, To take a Sheep's Head unflayed, and boil it in a Gallon and a half of Ale, or Running-Water until the Flesh be consumed from the Bones; then strain it through a Cloath, and put thereto of Sugar half a Pound, of Cinnamon one Ounce, of Conserve of Roses, of Barberries, and of Cherries, of each one Ounce; mingle them together, and give the Horse every Morning a Quart thereof luke-warm, till two Sheeps-heads be spent; and after every time he drink-

drinketh, let him be gently walked or ridden up and down according to his Strength, that is, if the Weather be warm abroad; if it be Cold and Windy, then in the Stable or some close House, suffering neither to eat nor drink for two hours after his Medicine; and from cold Water you shall keep him the space of fifteen Days. Now for his ordinary Food or Provender, you shall repute that best which he eateth best, whatsoever it be; and that you shall give him by little and little, and not any gross or great quantity at once, because the abundance and glut of Food taketh away both the Appetite and Nutriment which should proceed from wholesome Feeding.

CHAP. LVIII. *How to make a Lean Horse Fat.*

**B**ESIDES this general Consumption of a Horse's Flesh, which for the most part, or altogether, proceedeth from Sicknes; there is also another Consumption, or want of Flesh, which proceedeth from Neshness, Tenderness, Freeness of Spirit, and the Climate under which the Horse is Bred: as Namely, when a Horse that is Bred in a Warm Climate comes to live in a Cold; or when a Horse that is Bred upon a fruitful and rich Soil, comes to live in a Barren and dry Place. In any of these Cases, the Horse will be Lean without any apparent sign of Grief or Disease, which to recover, there be many Receipts and Medicines; as namely, the Ancient Farriers did use when a Horse either grew Lean without Sicknes or Wound, or any known Distemperature, to take quater of a Peck of Beans, and boil them in two Gallons of Water till they swell or burst, then to mix with them a Peck of Wheat-bran, and so to give it the Horse in Manner of a Mash, or instead of Provender, for it will fat suddenly. Others, and especially the *Italians*, will take Colewarts, and having sodden them, mix them with Wheat-bran and Salt, and give them instead of Provender. There be others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoises being well sodden, (their Heads, Tails, Bones, and Feet being rejected) and giving it the Horse, suppose it fatteneth presently; or if you mix the flesh of the Tortoise so sodden with your Horse's Provender, that is good also. But as the Simples are *Italian*, and not *English*, so I for mine own part, refer the use rather to them than to my Countrymen. There be others which use to fat up their Horses, by giving them a certain Grain which we call Bock, in the same manner as we give Oats or Pease. There be others, which to fat a Horse will give him only parched Wheat, and a little Wine mixed with his Water, and among his ordinary Provender, always some Wheat-Bran; and be exceeding careful that the Horse be clean dressed, well rubbed, and soft littered; for without such clean Keeping, there is no Meat will enjoy, or do good upon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once, and not surfeited. There be other Farriers, which to feed up a Lean



Lean Horse, will take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth-nuts, Bears-grease, to drink with a quart Wine. Others will give the Entrails of a Barbil, or Tench with White-wine; others will give new hot Draff, and new Bran, and twenty hard roasted Eggs, the Shells being pulled off, then bruise them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of Salt, then mix all together, and give a good quantity thereof to the Horse at Morning, Noon, and at Evening, for his Provender; and once a Day (which will be at high Noon) give him a quart or three pints of strong Ale, and when the Horse beginneth to be gluttoned upon this Meat, then give him dried Oats: If he be gluttoned upon that, then give him Bread, if he leave his Bread, give him Malt, or any grain that he will eat with good Appetite, observing ever to keep the Horse very warm, and with this Diet in fourteen Days, the leanest Horse will be made exceeding fat. There be other Farriers which to make a Horse fat, will take a quart of Wine, and half an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw Egg, and a penny-weight of the powder of Myrrh; mix altogether, and give it the Horse to drink many Mornings together. Others will take three-leaved Grass, half green and half dry, and give it the Horse instead of Hay, by little at once, and it will fat suddenly, only it will breed much rank Blood. Other Farriers use to take two penny worth of Pepper, and as much Saffron, Anniseeds and Turmeric, a penny-worth of Long-pepper, two penny-worth of Treacle, a penny-worth of Licoras, a good quantity of Penny-royal and Arch-Angel: Give the Horse these with the yolks of Eggs in Milk to drink. Others use to take Wheat made clean, and sod with Salt and Lard dried in the Sun, and give it twice a Day before each Watering. Others strong Ale, Myrrh, Sallet-Oil, and twenty grains of white Pepper, and instead of the Ale you may take the Decoction, that is, the Water wherein Sage and Rue hath been sodden, it will soon make the Horse fat. Others take sodden Beans well bruised and sprinkled with Salt, adding to the Water four times so much Bean-flower, or Wheat-bran, and give that to the Horse, and it will fat him suddenly. Wine mixt with the Blood of a sucking Pig, made luke-warm, or Wine with the Juice of Featherfew, or an ounce of Sulphur, and a penny-weight of Myrrh well made into Powder, together with a newlaid Egg, will raise up a Horse that languisheth. Barley dried, or Barley boiled till it burst, either will fatten a Horse.

But the best way of fattening a Horse, (for the most of the ways before prescribed, are not to breed fat that will continue) is, first to give your Horse three Mornings together a pint of sweet Wine, and two spoonfuls of Diapente brewed together: For that Drink will take away all Infection and Sickness from the inward Parts; then to feed him well with Provender at least four times a Day, that is, after his Water in the Morning, after his Water at Noon, after his Water in the Evening, and after

ter his Water at nine of the Clock at Night. Now you shall not let his Provender be all of one sort, but every Meal it may be changed as thus: If in the Morning you give him Oats, at Noon likewise you shall give him Bread, at Evening Beans or Pease mixt with Wheat-bran, at Night Sudden Barley, &c. and ever observe of what Food he eateth best, of that let him have the greatest plenty, and there is no question but he will in short space grow fat, sound, and full of Spirit, without either Dislike or Sicknes.

CHAR. LIX. *The Mirror and Master of all Medicines, teaching how to make the leanest and unsoundest Horses that may be, fat, sound, and fit either for Market or Travel, in the space of fourteen Days.*

**I**F your Horse be full of all inward Diseases that may be, and brought to that Dislike and Poverty that you are desperate of his Life, you shall take of Anniseeds, of Cummin-seeds, of Fenugreek, of Carthamus, of Elicampagne, of the Flower of Brimstone, of Brown Sugarcandy, of each of these two Ounces beaten and searst to a very fine Powder, then take an Ounce of the Juice of Licoras, and dissolve it in half a Pint of White-wine, then take three Ounces of the Syrup of Colts-foot, of Sallet-Oil, and of Live-Honey, of each half a Pint; then mix all this with the former Powders, and with as much Wheat-flower as will bind and knit them all together, work them into a stiff Paste, and make thereof Balls as big as French Walnuts, Hulls and all, and so keep them in a close Gally-pot, and when you have occasion to use them, take one and anoint it with Sweet-Butter, and give it the Horse in the manner of a Pill, and ride him a little after it, then feed and water him as at other times, and thus do (if it be to prevent Sicknes) for three or four Mornings together.

But if it be to take away Infirmitie, as Glanders, &c. then use it at least a Week or more.

But if to take away Molten Grease, then instantly after his Heat, and in his Heat.

But if it be to fatten a Horse, then use it at least a Fortnight: Now as you give them thus in the manner of a Pill, so you may give them dissolved in sweet Wine, Ale, or Beer.

Lastly, If it be to fatten a Horse, then you shall take the second Balls; that is to say, of Wheat-Meal six Pound, or as Physicians write, *Quantum sufficit*, of Anniseeds two Ounces, of Cummin-seeds six Drams, of Carthamus one Dram and a half, of Fenugreek-seeds one Ounce two Drams, of Brimstone one Ounce and a half, of Sallet-Oil one Pint two Ounces, of Honey one pound and a half, of White-wine four Pints: This must be made into Paste, the hard Simples being pounded into Powder, and finely searst, and then well kneaded together, and so made into Balls as big as a Man's Fist, and then every Morning and Evening when you would

Water



Water your Horse, dissolve into his cold Water one of these Balls, by lathering and chafing the same in the Water, and then give it him to drink. The Horse it may be will be Coy at the first to drink, but it is no matter, let him fast till he take it; for before two Balls be spent, he will refuse all Waters for this only. This is the Medicine above all Medicines, and is truly the best Scouring that can be given to any Horse whatsoever: For besides his wonderful Feeding, it cleanseth the Body from all bad Humours whatsoever.

CHAP. LX. Of the Breast-pain, or Pain in the Breast.

**T**Hough most of our Farriers are not curious to understand this Disease, because it is not so common as others; yet both my self and others find it a Disease very apt to breed, and to indanger the Horse with Death. The *Italians* call it *Grandezza di petto*, and it proceedeth from the superfluity of Blood and other gross Humours, which being dissolved by some extream and disorderly Heat, resorteth downward to the Breast, and paineth the Horse extreamly that he can hardly go. The Signs are a stiff staggering, and weak going with his Fore-Legs, and he can very hardly, or not at all bow down his Head to the Ground, either to Eat or Drink, and will groan much when he doth either the one or the other. The Cure is, First to Bathe all his Breast, and Fore-boobs with the Oil of Peter, and if that do not help him within three or four Days, then to let him Blood on both his Breast-veins in the ordinary Place, and then put in a Rowel either of Hair, Corn, Horn, or Leather, all of which, and the manner of Rowelling, you shall read in a more particular Chapter hereafter, in the Book of *Chirurgery*.

Now there be other Farriers, which for this Sicknes, will first give the Horse an inward Drench, as namely, a Pint of sweet Wine, and two Spoonfuls of Diapente, then bathe all his Breast and Legs with Wine and Oil mingled together, and in some ten or twelve Days it will take away the Grief.

CHAP. LXI. Of the Sicknes of the Heart, called the Anticor.

**T**HIS Sicknes of the Heart, which by the Ancient Farriers is called *Anticor*, as much as to say, against or contrary to the Heart, is a dangerous and mortal Sicknes, proceeding from the great abundance of Blood which is bred by too Curious and Proud Keeping, where the Horse hath much Meat, and little or no Labour, as for the most part your Geldings of Price have, which running all the Summer at Grass, do nothing but gather their own Food, and such like, where the Master's too much Love and Tenderness is the Means to bring the Horse to his Death, as we find Daily in our Practice; for when such

naughty

naughty and corrupt Blood is gathered, it resorteth to the inward Parts, and so suffocates his Heart. The Signs whereof are, the Horse will many times have a small Swelling rise at the bottom of the Breast, which Swelling will increase and rise upward even to the top of the Neck of the Horse, and then most assuredly it kills the Horse; he will also hang his Head either down to the Manger, or down to the Ground, forsaking his Food; and groaning with much painfulness. This Disease is of many an ignorant Strich taken sometimes for the Yellows, and sometimes for the Staggers, but you shall know that it is not by these Observations: First, neither about the Whites of his Eyes, nor the insides of his Lips shall you perceive any apparent Yellows, and so then it cannot be the Yellows, nor will he have any great Swelling about his Eyes, nor Dizziness in his Head, before he be at the point of Death; and so consequently it cannot be the Staggers. The Cure whereof is two-fold; the first, a Prevention or Preservative before the Disease come! the second, a Remedy after the Disease is apparent.

For the Prevention, or Preservative, you shall observe, that if your Horse live Idly, either at Grass or in the Stable, and withal grow very fat, which Fatness is never unaccompanied with corruptness, that then you fail not to let him Blood in the Neck-vein before you turn him to Grass, or before you put him to feed in the Stable; and likewise let him Blood two or three Months after, when you see he is fed, and at each time of letting Blood, you must make your Quantity according to the Goodness of the Blood: For if the Blood be Black and Thick, which is a sign of Inflammation and Corruption, you shall take the more: If it be pure Red, and Thin, which is a sign of Strength and Healthfulness, you shall take little or none at all. There be others which use for this Prevention, to give the Horse a Scouring or Purgation of Malmsey, Oil, and Sugar-candy, the making and use whereof you shall read in the Chapter of Purgations, and this should be given immediately when you put your Horse to feed, and soon you shall see his Skin full swoln with Fatness.

Now for the Remedy, when this Disease shall be apparent; you shall let him Blood on both his Plat-veins, or if the Smith's Skill will not extend so far, then you shall let the Horse blood on the Neck-veins, and that he bleed abundantly, then you shall give him this Drink: Take a Quart of Malmsey, and put thereunto half a quartern of Sugar, and two Ounces of Cinnamon beaten to Powder, and being made warm give it the Horse to drink: Then keep him very warm in the Stable, stuffing him round about with soft Wisps very close, especially about the Stomach, lest the Wind do annoy him; and let his ordinary Drink be warm Mashes of Malt and Water, and his Food only that, whatsoever it be, which he eateth with the best Stomach.



Now if you see any Swelling to appear, whether it be soft or hard, then besides letting him Blood, you shall strike the Swelling in divers places with a Fleam or Launcet, that the Corruption may issue forth, then anoint it with Hogs-grease made warm: For that will either expel it, or bring to a Head, especially if the Swelling be kept exceeding warm. There be other Farriers which for this Disease use to let the Horse Blood as is aforesaid, and then to give him a Quart of Malmsey, well brewed with three Spoonfuls of the Powder called *Diapente*, and if the Swelling arise, to lay thereunto nothing but Hay well sodden in old Urine, and then keep the same Diet as is afore said: Others use after the letting of Blood, to give the Horse no Drink, but only ten or twelve Spoonfuls of that Water which is called Doctor *Stevens's* Water, and is not unknown to any Apothecary; and then for the rest of the Cure, to proceed in all things as is before specified: and questionless I have seen strange Effects of this Practice.

#### CHAP. LXII. Of tired Horses

**S**INCE we are thus far proceeded into the inward and vital Parts of a Horse's Body, it is not amiss to speak something of the Tiring of Horses, and of the Remedies for the same, because when a Horse is truly tired (as by over extream Labour) it is questionless that all his Vital Parts are made Sick and Feeble. For to tell you in more plainness what Tiring is, it is when a Horse by extream and uncessant Labour, hath all his Inward and Vital Powers which should accompany and rejoyce the Heart, expelled and driven outward to the outward Parts and less deserving Members, leaving the Heart forlorn and Sick, insomuch that a general and cold Faintness spreadeth over the whole Body, and weakeneth it in such sort that it can endure no further Travel, till those lively Heats, Faculties and Powers be brought unto the natural and true Places back again, and made to give Comfort to the Heart whom their Loss Sickned.

Now for the Tiring of Horses, though in truth proceeding from no other Cause but this before-spoken, yet in as much as in our common and vulgar Speech, we say that every Horse that giveth over his Labour is tired, you shall understand that such giving over may proceed from four Causes; The first from inward Sicknes; The second from some Wound received either of Body or Limbs; The third from Dulness of Spirit, Cowardliness, or Restiness; And the fourth from most extream Labour and Travel, which is true Tiredness indeed. Now for the first, which is inward Sicknes, you shall look into the general Signs of every Disease, and if you find any of those Signs to be apparent, you shall straight conclude on that Disease, and taking away the Cause thereof, have no Doubt but the Effect of his Tiring will vanish with the same: For the  
second

second, which is by some Wound received, as by cutting or dismembring the Sinews, Ligaments, Muscles, or by Straining or Stooming any Bone or Joynt, or by Pricking in Shooing, or striking Nail, Iron, Stub or Thorn into the Sole of the Horse's Foot, and such like.

Since the first is apparent to the Eye, by disjoyning the Skin, the other by halting, you shall take a survey of your Horse, and finding any of them apparent, look what the Grief is, repair to the latter part of this Book, which treateth of Chyrurgery, and finding it there, use the Means prescribed, and the Tiring will easily be cured. Now for the third, which is Dulness of Spirit, Cowardliness or Restiveness, you shall find them by these Signs; if he have no apparent sign either of inward Sicknes, or outward Grief, neither Sweateth much, nor sheweth any great Alteration of Countenance, yet notwithstanding Tireth, and refuseth reasonable Labour, then such Tiring proceedeth from Dulness of Spirit; but if after indifferent long Travel the Horse Tire, and then the Man descending from his Back, the Horse Run or Trot away as though he were not tired, the Man then Mounting again, the Horse utterly refuses to go forward, such Tiring proceedeth from Cowardliness; but if a Horse with one, two, or three Miles Riding being temperately used, and being neither put to any trial of his Strength, nor, as it were, scarcely warmed, if he in his best Strength refuse Labour, and Tire, it proceedeth only from Restiveness, and Ill Conditions. Then for the Cure of any of all these proceeding from Dulness, Fearfulness, and Unwillingness, you shall take ordinary Window-glass, and beat into fine Powder; then take up the Skin of each side the Spur-vein between your Finger and your Thumb, and with a fine Awl or Bodkin, make divers small holes through his Skin, then rub Glass-Powder very hard into those holes; which done, Mount his Back, and do but offer to touch his Side with your Heels, and be sure, if he have Life in him, he will go forward, the greatest fear being, that he will but still go too fast: but after your Journey is ended, and you alighted, you must not fail (because this Powder of Glass will corrode and rot his Sides) to anoint both the fore places with the Powder of Jet and Turpentine mixt together, for that will draw out the Venom, and heal his Sides again. There be others which use when a Horse is tired thus through dull Cowardliness or Restiveness, to thrust a burning Brand or Iron into his Buttocks, or to bring Bottles of Blazing Straw about his Ears; there is neither of the Cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tired Horse, which tireth through a natural Faintness, drawn from exceeding Labour, the Signs to know it, being long Travel, much Sweat, and willingness of Course during his Strength: The Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of some Farriers, is to pour Oil and Vinegar into his Nostrils, and to give him the Drink of Sheep's-Heads,

mentis-



mentioned in the Chapter of the *Consumption of the Elfe*, being the 57th Chapter of this Book, and to bathe his Legs with a comfortable Bath, of which you shall find Choice in the Chapter of Baths, or else Charge them with this Charge. Take of Bole-Armony, and of Wheat-Flower, of each half a Pound, and a little Resin beaten into fine Powder, and a Quart of strong Vinegar, mingle them well together, and cover all his Legs therewith, and if it be in the Summer, turn him to Grass and he will recover his Weariness. Others use to take a slice of fresh Beef, having steeped it in Vinegar, lap it about your Bitt, or Snaffle, and having made it fast with a Thread, Ride your Horse therewith, and he will hardly Tire: Yet after your Journey is ended, be sure to give your Horse rest, much Warmth and good Feeding, that is, warm Mashs and store of Provender, or else he will be the worse whilst he lives.

Now if it be so, that your Horse Tire in such a Place as the Necessity of your Occasions are to be preferred before the Value of your Horse, and that you must seek unnatural Means to controul Nature; in this Case you shall take (where the Powder of Glass before spoken of cannot be had) three or four round Pebble-Stones, and put them into one of his Ears, and then tie the Ear that the Stones fall not out, and the Noise of those Stones will make the Horse go after he is utterly tired; but if that fail, you shall with a Knife make a hole in the flap of the Horse's Ear, and thrust a long rough Stick, full of Nicks through the same; and ever as the Horse flacks his Pace, so saw and fret the Stick up and down in the hole; and be sure, whilst he hath any Life he will not leave going.

Many other Torments there are which be needless to rehearse, only this is my most general Advice, if at any time you tire your Horse, to take of old Urine a Quart, of Salt-peter three Ounces, boil them well together, and bathe all the Horse's four Legs in the same, and without Question it will bring the Sinews to their natural Strength and Nimbleness, and for other Defects, warm and good Keeping will Cure them.

And although some of our Northern Farriers do hold, that Oaten Dough will prevent Tiring, yet I have not approved it so, because I could never get any Horse that would eat it, the Dough will so stick and clam in the Horse's Mouth. Therefore I hold the Cures already recited to be fully sufficient. But for farther Satisfaction use these which I reserved for mine own Privacy.

Take a Quart of strong Ale, and put thereto half an Ounce of the Powder of Blicampane, and brew them well together, and give it the Horse with a Horn.

Take a Bunch of Penny-royal, and tie it to the Mouth of your Bitt or Snaffle, and it will preserve a Horse from Tiring. Now if all these fail, then take off your Horse's Saddle, and rub his Back all over very hard.

hard with the Herb called Arsemart, and lay Arsemart under his Saddle, and so ride him.

CHAP. LXII. Of the Diseases of the Stomach, and first of the loathing

**T**HIS Disease of the loathing of Meat, is taken two Ways; the one a forsaking of Meat, as when a Horse's Mouth, either through the Inflammation of his Stomach, doth break out into Blisters, or such like venomous Sores, or when he hath the Lampas, Gigs, Wolfs-teeth, and such like. The Cure of all which you shall readily find in the second Part of this Book, which treateth of Chirurgery: The other dislike of his Meat, through the Intemperature of his Stomach, being either too hot, as proceeding either from thicknes of Blood, or extremity of Travel, as you may perceive by daily Experience, when a Horse is set up in his Stable very hot, and Meat instantly given him, it is all things to nothing, but he will loath and refuse it. Hence it comes, that I do ever hate the Noon-tide Baiting of Horses, because Mens Journeys commonly crave Haste, the Horse cannot take such a natural Cooling as he ought before his Meat, and thereby breeds much Sicknes and Disease: For Meat given presently after Travel when a Horse is hot, is the Mother of all Infirmitie: Or else it proceedeth from the Intemperature of the Stomach, being too cold, as being caused by some natural Defect. Now if it proceed from heat only, which you shall know either by his sudden loathing of his Meat, or the extream heat of his Mouth and Breath; then to cool his Stomach again, you shall wash his Tongue with Vinegar, or give him to drink cold Water mingled with Oil and Vinegar. There be other Farriers which use to give this Drink: Take of Milk and Wine, of each one Pint, and put thereunto Mel Rosatum three Ounces, and having washed his Mouth with Vinegar and Salt, give him the Drink luke-warm with a Horn. But if the loathing of his Meat proceed from the coldness of his Stomach, which only is known by the standing up and staring of the Hair; then by the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall give him Wine and Oil mixt together divers Mornings to drink: But others of our late Farriers give Wine, Oil, Rue, and Sage, boiled together by a Quart at a time to drink. Others to the former Compound will add White Pepper and Myrrh. Others use to give the Horse Onions pilled and chopt, and Rocket-seed boiled and bruised in Wine. Others use to mix Wine with the Blood of a Sow-Pig. Now to conclude, for the general forsaking or loathing of Meat, proceeding either from hot or cold Causes in the Stomach, there is nothing better than the green Blades of Corn, (especially Wheat) being given in a good quantity, and that the time of the Year serve for the gathering thereof. Others instead thereof, will give the Horse sweet Wine, and



and the Seeds of Cith mixt together, or else Sweet Wine and Garlick well pilled and stampd, being a long time brewed together.

CHAP. LXIII. Of the casting out of the Horse's Drink.

THE ancient Farriers, especially the *Italians*, constantly do affirm, that a Horse may have such a *Palſie*, proceeding from the coldness of his Stomach, that may make him unable to retain and keep his Drink, but that many times he will vomit and cast it up again. For mine own Part from other Causes, as from Cold in the Head, where the Rheume bindeth about the Roots and Kernels of the Tongue hath as it were strangled, and made strait the Passages to the Stomach; there I have many times seen a Horse cast his Water that he drank, in very abundant sort back again through his Nostrils, and sometimes strive with great Earnestness to drink, but could not all. The signs of both (from which Cause soever it proceed) is only the casting up of his Drink or Water, and the Cure thereof is only to give him Cordial and warm Drinks, as is Malmſey, Cinamon, Anniseeds, and Cloves, well brewed and mixt together, and to anoint his Breast, and under his Shoulders, with the Oil of Cypress, Oil of Spike, or the Oil of Pepper, and to purge his Head with Fumes or Pills, such as will force him to Sneeze, of which you may see store in a Chapter following; for such Fumigation joyning with these hot Oils, will soon dissolve the Humours.

CHAP. LXIV. Of Surfeiting with glut of Provender.

THERE is not any Disease more easily procured, nor more dangerous to the Life of a Horse, than the Surfeit which is taken by the glut of Provender; it cometh most commonly by keeping the Horse extreame sharp and hungry, as either by long Travel, or long standing Empty; and then in the height of Greediness, giving him such superabundance of Meat, that his Stomach wanting Strength to digest it, all the whole Body is driven into an infinite great Pain and Extremity. These signs are great Weakness and Feebleness in the Horse's Limbs, so that he can hardly stand, but lieth down oft, and being down, walloweth and tumbleth up and down as if he had Bots.

The Cure thereof, according to the common Practice of our common Farriers, is, To take half a Pennyworth of Black Soap, and a Quart of new Milk, and as much Sweet-Butter as Soap, and having on a Chafing-dish and Coals, mixt them together, give it the Horse to drink, this will cleanse the Horse's Stomach, and bring it to its strength again.

But the ancient Farriers did use first, to let the Horse Blood in the Neck-vein, because every Surfeit breeds Distemperature in the Blood, then Trot the Horse up and down an hour or more, and if he cannot Stale, draw out his Yard, and wash it with White-wine made luke-warm, and

and thrust into his Yard either a Clove of Garlick, or a little Oil of Camomile, with a piece of small Wax-candle. If he cannot Dung, first with your Hand Rake his Fundament, and give him a Clister, of which you shall read hereafter ; when his Clister is received, you shall Walk him up and down till he have emptied his Belly, then let him up, and keep him hungry the space of three Days, observing ever to sprinkle the Hay he eateth with a little Water, and let his Drink be warm Water and Bran made Mash-wise : After he hath drank the Drink, let him eat the Bran if he please, but from other Provender keep him still fasting, at the least ten Days.

There be other Farriers, that in this Case, use only to take a Quart of Beer or Ale, and two Pennyworth of Sallet-Oil, and as much Dragon-water, a Pennyworth of Treacle, and make all these warm upon the Coals, then put in an Ounce of Cinnamon, Anniseeds, and Cloves, all beaten together, and so give it the Horse luke-warm to Drink.

All these Receipts are exceeding good ; yet for mine own Part, and many of the best Farriers confirm the same, I think there is nothing better for this Disease than moderate Exercise, much Fasting, and once in four or five Days a Pint of sweet Wine, with two Spoonfuls of the Powder of *Diapente*.

CHAP. LXV. *Of Foundring in the Body, being a Surfeit got either by Meat, Drink, or Labour.*

**T**HIS Disease of Foundring in the Body, is of all Surfeits the most vile, most dangerous, and most incident to Horses that are daily travelled ; it proceedeth according to the Opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much Provender suddenly after Labour ; the Horse being then, as it were, panting hot, (as we may daily see unskilful Horse-men do at this Day) whereby the Meat which the Horse eateth, not being digested, breedeth evil and gross Humours, which by little and little spread themselves through the Members, do at length Oppress and almost Confound the whole Body, absolutely taking away from him all his Strength, inso-much that he can neither go nor bow his Joints, nor being laid, is able to rise again : Besides, it taketh away from him his Instrumental Powers, as the Office both of Urine and Excrements, which cannot be performed but with extream Pain. There be other Farriers, and to their Opinion I rather lean, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the Horse to drink too much in his Travel, being very hot, whereby the Grease being suddenly cooled, it doth clap about, and suffocate the inward Parts with such a loathsome Fulness that without speedy Evacuation, there can be no hope but of Death only. Now whereas some Farriers do hold, that his Foundring in the Body, should be no other than the Foundring in the Legs, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution



of evil Humours which resort downward, they are much deceived; for it is not, as they hold, a dissolution of Humours, but rather a binding together of corporal and substantial Evils, which by an unnatural Accident doth torment the Heart. Now for the hold which they take of the Name of Foundring, as if it were drawn from the French Word *Fundu*, signifying Melting; truly I think it was rather the Ignorance of our old Farriers, which knew not how to Entitle the Disease, than any coherence it hath with the Name it beareth: For mine own Part, I am of Opinion, that this Disease which we call Foundring in the Body, doth not only proceed from the Causes aforesaid, but also and most ofteneft by sudden Washing of Horses in the Winter-season, when they are extream Fat and Hot with instant Travel, where the cold Vapour of the Water striking into the Body, doth not only astonish the inward and Vital Parts, but also freezeth up the Skin, and maketh the Blood to lose his Office. Now the Signs to perceive this Disease are, holding down of his Head, starting up of his Hair, Coughing, Staggering behind, Trembling after Water, Dislike of his Meat, Leanness, Stiff-going, Disability to Rise when he is Down; and to conclude, which is the chiefeft Sign of all other, his Belly will be clung up to his Back, and his Back risen up like a Camel.

↳ The Cure, according to the Opinion of the Farriers, is, First to Rake his Fundament, and then to give him a Clifter; which done, and that the Horse's Belly is emptied, then take of Malmsey a Quart, of Sugar half a Quartern, of Cinnaomon half an Ounce, of Licoras and Anniseeds, of each two Spoonfuls beaten into fine Powder; which being put into the Malmsey, warm them together at the Fire, so that the Honey may be molten, then give it the Horse luke-warm to Drink, which done, walk him up and down either in the warm Stable, or some warm Road the space of an Hour, then let him stand on the Bitt fasting two Hours more, only let him be warm Cloathed, Stopt and Littered, and when you give him Hay, let it be sprinkled with Water, and let his Provender be very clean sifted from Dust, and given by a little at once; and let his Drink be warm Mashs of Malt and Water. Now when you see him recover and get a little Strength, you shall then let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and once a-Day perfume him with Frankincense to make him Sneeze, and use to give him Exercise abroad when the Weather is Warm, and in the House when the Weather is Stormy.

Now there be other Farriers which use for this Disease, to take a Half-penny-worth of Garlick, Two-penny-worth of the Powder of Pepper, Two-penny-worth of the Powder of Ginger, Two-penny-worth of Grains bruised and put all these into a Pottle of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to Drink by a Quart at a time, Dieting him and Ordering him as aforesaid; and when he getteth Strength, either let him Blood in the Neck-vein,  
or

of the Spur-veins, or on both. To conclude, there is no Drink nor Diet which is comfortable, but it is most sovereign good for this Infirmary.

CHAP. LXVI. *Of the Greedy Worm, or Hungry Evil in Horses.*

**T**HIS Hungry Evil is a Disease more common, than found out by our Farriers, because the most of our Horse-Masters being of great Ignorance, hold it a special Virtue to see a Horse eat eagerly; whereas indeed this over-hasty and greedy Eating, is more rather an Infirmary and Sicknefs of the Inward-Parts; and this Disease is none other than an Insatiate and greedy Eating, contrary to Nature and old Custom, and for the most Part, it followeth some extream great Emptiness or want of Natural Food, the Beast being even at the Pinch, and ready to be Chap-fallen. There be some Farriers which suppose, that it proceedeth from some extream Cold outwardly, taken by Travelling in Cold and Barren Places, as in the Frost and Snow, where the outward Cold maketh the Stomach Cold, whereby all the inward Powers are weakened. The Signs are only an Alteration or Change in the Horse's Feeding, having lost all Temperance, and Snatching and Chopping at his Meat, as if he would devour the Manger: The Cure, according to the Opinion of some Farriers, is, first to comfort his Stomach by giving him great Slices of White Bread toasted at the Fire, and steeped in Muscadine, or else Bread untoasted, and steeped in Wine, and then to let him drink Wheat-flower and Wine brewed together. There be others that use to knead stiff Cakes of Wheat-flower and Wine, and feed the Horse therewith. Others use to make him Bread of Pine-Tree-Nuts and Wine mingled together, or else common Earth and Wine mingled together. But for mine own part, I hold nothing better than moderately feeding the Horse many times in the Day with wholesome Bean-bread, well baked, or Oats well dried and sifted.

CHAP. LXVII. *Of the Diseases of the Liver in general, and first of the Inflammation thereof.*

**T**HERE is no Question but the Liver of a Horse is subject to as many Diseases, as either the Liver of a Man or any other Creature; only through the Ignorance of our common Farriers, (who make all inward Diseases one Sicknefs) the true Grounds and Causes not being looked into, the Infirmary is let pass, and many times poisoned with false Potions; but true it is, that the Liver sometimes by the Intemperateness thereof, as being either too hot, or too cold, too moist, or too dry, or sometimes by means of evil Humours, as Choler, or Flegm overflowing in the same, Heat ingendring Choler, and Coldness Flegm, the Liver is subject to many Sicknefses, and is diversly pained, as by Inflammations, Apothumation, or Ulcer, or by Obstructions, Stoppings, or hard



Knobs; or lastly, by the Consumption of the whole Substance thereof. The Signs to know if the Disease proceed from hot Causes, is Leanness of Body, the Loathing of Meat, voiding Dung of a strong Scent, great Thirst, and Looseness of Belly. The signs to know if the Disease proceed from cold Causes, is good State of Body, Appetite of Meat, Dung not stinking, no Thirst, and the Belly neither loose nor Costive. Now to proceed to the particular Diseases of the Liver, and First of the Inflammation, you shall understand that it cometh by Means that the Blood through the Abundance, Thinness, Boiling heat, or Sharpness thereof, or through the violence of some outward Causes breaketh out of the Veins, and floweth into the Body or substance of the Liver, and so being dispossessed of proper Vessels, doth immediately putrify, and is inflamed, corrupting so much of the fleshy Substance of the Liver, as is either touched or imbrued with the same; whence it cometh, that for the most part, the hollow side of the Liver is first consumed, yea, sometimes the full side also: This Inflammation by a natural heat is sometimes turned to Putrefaction, and then is called an Apofthumation; which when either by the strength of Nature or Art, it doth Break and Run, then it is called an Ulcer or filthy Sore, Now the signs of an Inflammation on the hollow side of the Liver, (which is the least hurtful) is loathing of Meat, great Thirst, Looseness of Belly, and a continual unwillingness to lie on the Left Side: But if the Inflammation be on the full side of the Liver, then the signs be, Short-breathing, a dry Cough, much Pain, when you handle the Horse about the Wind-pipe, and an unwillingness to lie on the Right-side. The signs of Apofthumation is great Heat, long fetching of Breath, and a continual looking to his Side. The signs of Ulceration is continual Coldness, starting up of his Hair, and much Feebleness and Fainting, because the filthy Matter casting evil Vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the Heart, and occasion Death. Now for the Cure of these Inflammations, some Farriers use to take a Quart of Ale, an Ounce of Myrrh, an Ounce of Frankincense, and Drawing them well together, give it the Horse divers Mornings to drink. Others use to take three Ounces of the Seeds of Smallage, and three Ounces of Hyssop, and as much Southern-wort, and boil them well in Oil and Wine mingled together, and give the Horse to drink; keep the Horse Warm, and let him neither drink cold Water, nor eat dry dusty Hay.

CHAP. LXVIII. *Of Obstructions, Stoppings, or hard Knobs on the Liver.*

THESE Obstructions or stoppings of a Horse's Liver do come most commonly by Travelling or Labour on a full Stomach, whereby the Meat not being perfectly digested, breedeth gross and tough Humours, which Humours by the extremity of Travel, are violently driven into the small Veins, through which the Liver ought to receive good Nutri-

Nutrimēt, and so by that Means breedeth Obstructions and Stoppings. Now from these Obstructions, (when they have continued any long time) especially if the Humours be Cholerick, breedeth many times hard Knobs on the Liver, which Knobs maketh the Horse continually lie on his Right-side, and never on the Left; because if he should lie on the Left side, the weight of the Knobs would oppress the Stomach, and even sicken all the Vital parts of him.

The signs of these Obstructions and Stoppings, are heaviness of Countenance, Distention or Swelling, great Dulness and Sloath in the Horse when he beginneth his Travel, and a continual looking back to his short Ribs, where remaineth his greatest Pain and Torment. Now the Cure thereof, is, to see the continually in the Water which he drinketh, Agrimony, Fumitory, Camomill, Wormwood, Licoras, Anniseeds, Smal-lage, Parsley, Spikenard, Gentian, Succory, Endive and Lupins, the Virtues whereof are most Comfortable to the Liver. But forasmuch as the most part of our English Farriers are very simple Smiths, whose Capacities are unable to dive into these several Distinctions, and that this Work (or Master-piece) is intended for the weakest Brain whatsoever, you shall understand, that there be certain general signs to know when the Liver of a Horse is grieved with any Grief, of what Nature or Condition soever it be; and so likewise general Receipts to cure all the Grievs, without distinguishing or knowing their Natures: You shall know then if a Horse have any Pain or Grief in his Liver by these signs: First, by a Loathing of his Meats, next by the wasting of his Flesh, dryness of his Mouth, and roughness of his Tongue, and great swelling thereof, and refusing to lie on the side grieved; and lastly, a continual looking backward.

Now the general Cure for the Sicknes of the Liver, is, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, to give the Horse Aloes dissolved into sweet Wine, for it both purgeth and comforteth the Liver. Others use to give him to drink Ireos stamp and mixt with Wine and Water together, or instead of Ireos, to give him Calamint, called of the Latins Polimonia. Others give Savory with Oil and Wine mixt together. Others use Liverwort and Agrimony with Wine and Oil. Others use comfortable Frictions, and to steep his Provender in warm Water, and to mix with his Provender a little Nitrum, not forgetting to let him stand warm, and lie soft: But that which is generally praised above all Medicines, is, to give the Horse a Wolf's Liver beaten to Powder, and mix either with Wine, Water, Oil, or or any other Medicine.

Now for a Conclusion of this Chapter: If the Farrier's Skill be so good that he can distinguish the Nature of each several Infirmary about the Liver; then I would have him for to understand, that for Inflammations (which are the first beginners of all Diseases) would be used Simples that



that mollify and disperse Humours, as by these, Linseed, Fenugreek, Camomile, Anniseeds, Mellilot, and such like; to which mollifying Simples, would be ever added some Simples that are Astringent or Binding, as are these, Red-Rose-Leaves, Bramble-Leaves Wormwood, Plantain, Myrrh, Mastick, Storax, and such like. Now for Aposthumes, they are to be ripened and voided, and Ulcers must be cleansed and scoured downward, either by Excrement or Urine, and therefore the Use of such Simples as provoke either the one or the other, (of which you shall find plenty in other Chapters) is most necessary.

CHAP. LXIX. *Of the Consumption of the Liver.*

**O**F the Consumption of the Liver, I have spoken something in the Chapter of the *Mourning of the Chine*: Yet because amongst our best Farriers it is diversly taken, I will shew you their divers Opinions. First, Some hold it cometh only from sudden Cold after Heat, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it cometh of any Humour, especially of Cholerick Matter, shed throughout the whole Substance of the Liver, which rotting by leifurable degrees, doth in the End corrupt and confound all the Substance of the Liver, proceeding as they think, from corrupt Meats and sweet Drinks. And the last thinketh it cometh by extream heat gotten in Travel, which inflaming the Blood, doth afterward Putrify, Corrupt, and Exulcerate the whole substance of the Liver; because the Liver is Spongy like the Lungs, therefore the Cure of this Disease is held desperate; yet it bringeth no speedy or sudden Death, but a wasting and lingring Infirmary: For the Liver being corrupted, Digestion is taken away, and so the Body for want of good Nutriment, doth in time consume. The signs of this Disease is a loathing of Meat, and a stretching forth of the Horse's Body at length as he standeth, he will seldom or never lie down, his Breath will stink marvelously, and he will continually cast exceeding foul Matter, either at one Nostril, or both, according as one side, or both sides of the Liver is consumed; and on that side which he casteth, he will ever have betwixt his neather Jaws, about the middle of them, a hard Knob or Kernel about the bigness of a Wall-nut. Now the preservative of this Disease, (for in Truth it is Incurable) is, according to the Opinion of some Farriers, take half a Pint of Malmsey, and as much of the Blood of a young Pig, and to give the Horse Luke-warm to drink. Other Farriers use to give the Horse no other Food for the space of three Days, than Worm-wort, and Oats baked in an Oven, being sure that the Horse be kept fasting the first Night before he receive his Medicine. Others suppose, that if into the Wort which he drieth, you do put every Morning two or three Spoonfuls of the Powder made of Agrimony, Red-Rose-Leaves, Saccharum Rosaceum, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Disantelon, Licoras, and of the Liver of a Wolf, that

that is more excellent. Others hold that this Powder given with Goats Milk Luke-warm, is very good. Others hold that Malmsey, and the Juice of Featherfew given to drink is also good.

Others use (and hold it equal with the best) to take an Ounce of Sulphur, Vive, beaten into fine Powder, and a Penny-weight of Myrrh beaten into fine Powder, mix them together with a New-laid Egg, and give them to drink with half a Pint of Malmsey; use this divers times, and keep the Horse fasting, yet separate him from other Horses, for this Disease is Infectious.

CHAP. LXX. *Of the Diseases of the Gall.*

**A**S is the Liver, even so the Gall of a Horse is subject to divers and many Infirmities, as to Obstruction, according to the Opinion of old Farriers; from whence floweth the Fulness and Emptiness of the Bladder, and Stone in the Gall. And these Obstructions do Chance two several Ways. First, When the Passage by which Choler should pass from the Liver unto the Bladder of the Gall, as unto his proper Receptacle, is stopped, and so the Bladder of the Gall remaineth Empty: For you are to understand, that the Gall is none other thing than a long, slender, little greenish Bladder fixed underneath the Liver, which doth receive all the Cholerick bitter Moisture, which would otherwise offend not only the Liver, but the whole Body also. Now if the Passage of this necessary Vessel be stopped, there cannot chuse but follow many Infirmities, as either Vomiting, the Lax, the Bloody-Flux, or the Yellows.

Secondly, When the Way whereby such Choler should issue forth of the Bladder of the Gall, down into the Guts and Excrements, is closed up, and so superaboundeth with too much Choler; from whence springeth dulness of Spirit, Suffocating, Belching, Heat, thirst, and disposition to Rage and Fury; and truly to any Beast, there is not a more dangerous Disease, than the Overflowing of the Gall: But our latter Experience findeth, that a Horse hath no Gall at all; but that filthy and corrupt Matter is wasted and spent, either by Sweat, Exercise, or else doth turn to Infirmity. The Signs of both these kinds of Evils, or Obstructions, are Yellowness of the Skin, infected with the Yellow-Jaundise, and a continual Costiveness of the Body: and the Cures of them are, according to the most ancient Farriers, to give the Horse Milk, and great store of Saffron boiled together, or instead of Milk, to give Ale, Saffron, and Anniseeds mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I more do agree, which hold, that Selladine-Roots and Leaves chopt and bruised, and boiled in Beer; or for want of Selladine, Rue, or Herb of Grace, and given the Horse Luke-warm to drink, is most sovereign.

Now



Now for the Stone in the Gall, which is of a Blackish Colour, it cometh from the Obstruction of the Conduits of the Bladder, whereby the Choler being too long kept in, becometh dry, and so converteth first into Gravel, and after into a solid and hard Stone, of which both the Signs and Cures are those last before rehearsed.

CHAP. LXXI. *Of all such Diseases as are incident to the Spleen.*

**T**HE Spleen is a long, narrow, flat, spongy Substance, of a Pale Fleishy Colour, joyning with the Liver and the Gall, it is the Receptacle of Melancholy, and the dregs of the Blood, and is as subject to Infirmary as any inward Member whatsoever, as to Inflammations, Obstructions, Knobs, and Swellings; it is through the Sponginess, apt to suck in all manner of Filth, and to dilate and spread the same over the whole Body, The appearance thereof is on the Left-side under the Short Ribs, where you shall perceive some small Swelling, which Swelling gives much Grief to the Midriff, especially after a full Stomach, taking away much more of the Horse's Digestion than his Appetite, and being suffered to continue, it makes faint the Heart, and grows in the End to a hard Knob, or Stony Substance.

This Disease, or Diseases of the Spleen, are incident to Horses most in the Summer, proceeding from the Surfeit or greedy Eating of green Meats. The signs of which Diseases are these, Heaviness, Dulness, pain on the Left-side, and hard Swellings, Short-breath, much Groaning, and an over-hasty desire to his Meat. The Cure, according to the Opinion of our best Farriers, is, to make the Horse sweat either by Labour or Cloaths, then to give him to drink a Quart of White-wine, wherein hath been boiled the Leaves of Tamarisk bruised, and a good quantity of Cummin-seed beaten to Powder, and give it Luke-warm. Others use, after the Horse hath sweat, to pour into his Nostril every Day the Juice of Myrabolans, mixt with Wine and Water, to the quantity of a Pint. Others take Cummin-seed and Honey, of each six Ounces, of Laserpitium as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a Pint, and put all these into three Quarts of Water, and let it stand so all Night, and give the Horse a Quart thereof next Morning, having fasted all Night. Others make the Horse to drink of Garlick, Nitrum, Hare-hound, and Wormwood sodden in a sharp Wine, and to bathe all the Horse's Left-side with warm Water, and to rub it hard. There be other which use to Cauterise or Scarify the Horse's Left-side with a hot Iron; but it is Barbarous and Vile, and carrieth no Judgment in the Practice.

CHAP. LXXII. Of the *Yellows* or *Jaundice*.

**A**S before I said, from the Obstructions or Overflowings of the Gall and Spleen, both spring this Disease which our common Smiths call the *Yellows*, and our better Farriers the *Jaundice*; and you shall understand, that of this *Yellows* or *Jaundice*, there are two Kinds, the first an overflowing of *Choler*, proceeding from the Sickness of the Gall, and it is called simply the *Yellows*, or *Yellow-Jaundice*; because the outward parts of the Body, as Eyes, Skin, Mouth, inside of the Lips, and the like, are dried and coloured Yellow: The other an overflowing of *Melancholy*, proceeding from the Sickness of the Spleen, and is called the *Black-Yellows*, or *Black-Jaundice*; because all the outward Parts are Black. Now both these *Jaundice*, or *Yellows* have their beginnings from the Evils of the Liver; the *Yellow-Jaundice*, when the Liver by Inflammation hath all its Blood converted into *Choler*, and so overwhelmed the Body; and the *Black-Jaundice*, when some Obstructions in the Liver-vein, which goeth to the Spleen, hinder the Spleen from doing his Office, and receiving the Dregs of Blood from the Liver, or else when the Spleen is surcharged with such Dregs of Blood, and so sheddeth them back again into the Veins.

Now although this Distinction of the *Black-Jaundice*, or *Black-Yellows*, will appear strange unto our Common Farriers, yet it is most certain, that whensoever a Horse dieth of the *Yellows*, he dieth only of the *Black-Yellows*: For when it cometh unto the Case of Mortality, then are all the inward Powers converted to Blackness, and the *Yellow Substance* is clean mastered: But whilst the Matter is *Yellow*, so long the Horse's Body is in good State of Recovery. Besides, these *Yellows* do ever follow one the other, and the lesser hath no sooner got pre-eminence, but the greater pursues him; of all the inward Diseases in a Horse's Body, that is most common, ofteneft in Practice, and yet most Mortal, if it be not early prevented. The signs of this Disease of *Yellow-Jaundice*, are Yellowness of his Eyes, Nostrils, inside of the Lips, the Skin, the Yard, and the Urine: His Ears and his Flank will sweat, and he will Groan when he lieth down, and he will not only be faint, but utterly forsake his Meat also. The Cures which are at this Day in Practice for this Disease, are infinite, and a World of them Corrupt and Poisonous: Every Smith almost making a Medicine of his own Invention, God knows weak, and little to the Purpose, but for the best Receipts, which are at this Day are used by by any good Farriers whatsoever, I will deliver you the whole Catalogue.

First, For the antient Farriers both *Italian* and *French*, they did use to take of *Thyme* and *Cummin*, of each a like Quantity, and stamping them together, to mingle it with Wine, Honey, and Water; and then to let him Blood in the Pasterns.

M

But



But now the Farriers of later Days use, First, to let the Horse Blood in the Neck-vein, suffering him to bleed, till you perceive the Blood to grow pure, then to give this Drink: Take of White-wine, or Ale a Quart, and put thereto Saffron and Turmerick, of each half an Ounce, and the Juice that is wrung out of a great Handful of Selladine, and being Luke-warm give it the Horse to drink, then keep him warm the space of three or four Days, giving him warm Water with a little Bran in it. Others use after the Horse is let Blood in the Neck-vein, first to Rake him, then to give him a Suppository made of Salt, Honey, and Marjoram, and then give him to drink half an Ounce of Myrrh dissolved in a Quart of Wine or Ale. Others use to give after Blood-letting, only cold Water and Nitrum mixt together. There be others which after Blood-letting will only stop his Ears with Selladine, and then bind them fast up, and let him have no Exercise for twelve Hours after. Others use, after the letting him Blood, to give him a Clister, then to take Saffron and Turmerick, and mixing them with a Quart of Milk, give it him to drink luke-warm. Others use to let the Horse Blood in the Third Barr of the Roof of his Mouth with a sharp Knife, and after he hath bled well, to take an Half-peny-worth of English Saffron, and a Penny-worth of Turmerick, and a New-laid-Egg, with the Shell and all small broken, and mix it a Quart of Stale Ale or Beer, and so set him up warm.

Others use take after Blood-letting, of Turmerick, and Saffron a like Quantity, and two or three Cloves, and six Spoonfuls of Vinegar and Verjuice, and to put into each Ear of the Horse three Spoonfuls thereof, and then stop his Ears with Black Wool, and so tie them up for seven or eight Days after. Others take Long-Pepper, Grains, Turmerick, and Licoras, all beaten into fine Powder, then brew them with a Quart of Strong Beer or Ale, and give it the Horse to drink. Others use after taking and Blood-letting, to take the Juice of Ivy-Leaves, and mingling it with Wine, to squirt it into the Horse's Nostrils; and to let him drink only cold Water mixt with Nitrum, and let his Food be Grass, or New Hay sprinkled with Water.

Thus you have seen, I dare well affirm, all the best Practices which are at this Day known for this Disease, and where they all fail, there is no hope of Cure, as the (old Farriers affirm) yet let me thus far further inform you, This Disease of the Yellows, or Jaundice, if the Keeper and Master be not a great deal the more skilful and careful, will steal upon you unawares, and (as I have often seen) when you are in the midst of your Journey, remote and far distant from any Town that can give you Succour, it may be your Horse will fall down under you, and if you should let him rest till you fetch him Succour, questionless he will be Dead.

In this Extremity you have no help but to draw out a sharp-pointed Knife, Dagger, or Rapier for a need, and as near as you can, opening the Horse's Mouth, strike him Blood about the third Barr of the Root of his Mouth, and to letting him eat and swallow his own Blood a good while, then raise him up, and be sure he will go as fresh as ever he did: But after you come to a place of Rest, then be sure to Blood him, and give him half an Ounce of the Powder of Diapente in a Pint of Mustardine well brewed together, and thus do three or four Mornings together, and let him be fasting before, and fast two Hours after; and after the Paction give him a little moderate Exercise, or else there will be a worse Fit come upon him.

Now to Conclude, for the Black Jaundice, which of some Farriers is called the Dry-Yellows, though for mine own Part, I hold it to be incurable, yet there be other Farriers which are of a contrary Humour, and prescribe this Physick for the Cure therof: First, To give the Horse a Clister made of Oil, Water, Milk and Nitrum, after his Fundament is raked, then to pour the Decoction of Mallows, mingled with sweet Wine in his Nostrils, and let his Meat be Grass or Hay sprinkled with Water, and a little Nitre, and his Provender dried Oats; he must rest from Labour, and be often rubbed. Now there be other Farriers, which for this Disease would only have the Horse drink the Decoction of Wild Coleworts sodden in Wine; the Effects of all which I only refer to Experience.

CHAP. LXXIII. *Of the Dropsie or Evil Habit of the Body.*

Whereas we have spoken before of the Consumption of the Flesh, which proceedeth from Surfeits, ill Lodging, Labour, Colds, Heats, and such like: You shall now also understand, that there is another Dryness or Consumption of the Flesh, which hath no apparent Cause or Ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropsie, or evil Habit of the Body, which is most apparently seen, when the Horse by dislike doth lose his true natural Colour, and when Bayness turns to Dunness Blackness to Duskiness, and Whiteness to Ashiness, and when he loseth his Spirit, Strength, and Alacrity. Now this cometh not from want of Nutriment, but from the want of good Nutriment, in that the Blood is corrupted, either with Flegm, Choler, or Melancholy, (coming according to the Opinion of our best Farriers) either from the Spleen, or the Weakness of the Stomach or Liver, causing naughty Digestion.

Others think it cometh from foul Feeding, or much Idleness, but for mine own Part, albeit I have had as much Trial of this Disease as any one Man, and that it becometh not me to controul Men of approved Judgment: Yet this I dare averr, that I never saw this Disease of the evil Habit, or evil Colour of the Body, spring from any other Grounds, than



either disorderly or wild Riding, or from Hunger, or Barren Woody Keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropsie, there is small or no Difference. For the Dropsie being divided into three Kinds, this is the first thereof, as Namely, an universal Swelling of the Body, but especially the Lungs, through the abundance of Water lying between the Skin and the Flesh. The Second, a Swelling in the Covering or Bottom of the Belly, as if the Horse were with Foal, which is only a Watrish Humour abiding betwixt the Skin and the Rim: And the Third, a Swelling in the same Place by the like Humours abiding betwixt the great Bag and the Kell.

The common Signs of this Disease, are Shortness of Breath, Swelling of the Body or Legs, loss of the Horse's natural Colour, no Appetite unto Meat, and a continual Thirst; his Back, Buttocks, and Flanks will be dry, and shrunk up to their Bones: His Veins will be hid, that you cannot see them, and where ever you shall press your Finger any thing hard against his Body, there you shall leave the Print behind you, and the Flesh will not arise a good space after: When he lieth down he will spread out his Limbs, and not draw them round together, and his Hair will shed with the smallest rubbing. There be other Farriers which make but two Dropsies, that is, a Wet Dropsie, and a Windy Dropsie, but being examined, they are all one with those recited, have all the same Signs, and the same Cure, which according to the ancient Farriers is in this sort: First, To let him be warm covered with many Cloaths, and either by Exercise, or otherwise drive him into a Sweat; then let his Back and Body be rubbed against the Hair, and let his Food be for the most Part Colworts, Smallage and Elming Boughs, or whatsoever else will keep his Body soluble or provoke Urine; when you want this Food, let him eat Grasse or Hay sprinkled with Water, and sometimes you may give him a kind of Pulse called Ciche, steeped a Day and Night in Water, and then taken out and laid so as the Water may drop away.

There be other Farriers which only would have the Horse drink Parsley stamp and mixt with Wine, or else the Root of the Herb called Panax stamp and mixt with Wine. Now whereas some Farriers advise to slit the Belly a handful behind the Navel, that the Wind and Water may leisurely issue forth, of mine own Knowledge, I know the Cure to be most Vile; nor can it be done, but to the utter spoiling and killing of the Horse, for the Horse is a Beast, and wanting Knowledge of his own Good; will never be Drest but by Violence, and that Violence will bring down his Kell, so as it will never be recovered. Now for these Dropsies in the Belly, although I have shewed you the Signs and the Cures, yet they are rare to be found, and more rare to be cured; but for the other Dropsie, which is the swelling of the Legs, and the loss of the Colour of the Hair, it is very ordinary and in hourly Practice: The best Cure whereof, that ever I found amongst the Farriers is this:

Take

Take of strong Ale a Gallon, and set it on the Fire, and then skum off the white Froth which riseth, then take a handful of Wormwood with Stalks, and put them into the Ale, and let them boil till it be come almost to a Quart; then take it off, and strain it exceedingly. then dissolve into it three Ounces of the best Treacle, and put in also an Ounce and an half of Long-Pepper and Grains beaten to very fine Powder; then brew them till it be no more than lukewarm, and so give the Horse to drink; the next Day let him Blood on the Neck-vein, and anoint his Fore-Legs with Train-Oil, and so turn him into good Grass, and fear not his Recovery.

CHAP. LXXIV. *Of the Diseases in the Guts of a Horse, and First of the Cholick.*

A Horse's Guts are subject unto many and sundry Infirmities; as Namely, to the Wind-Cholick, Fretting of the Belly, Costiveness, Lax, Bloody-Flux, and Worms of divers Kinds. Now for the Cholick, it is a grievous and tormenting Pain in the Great-Gut or Bag, which because it is very large and spacious, and full of empty Places, it is the more apt to receive divers offensive Matters, which do breed divers Infirmities, especially Wind, which finding no ready Passage out, make the Body, as it were, swell, and offendeth both the Stomach and other inward Members. This Disease doth not so much appear in the Stable, as abroad in Travel, and the signs are these: The Horse will often offer to Stale, but cannot; he will strike at his Belly with his Hinder-Foot, and many times Stamp; he will forsake his Meat, and towards his Flank you shall see his Belly appear more full than ordinary, and he will desire to lie down and Wallow. The Cure thereof, according to the most ancient Farriers, is, only to give him a Clister made either of Wild-Cucumbers, or else of Hens-Dung, Nitrum and strong Vinegar, the Manner whereof you shall see in the Chapter of *Clisters*, and after the Clister, Labour him.

Others use to give the Horse the Urine of a Child to drink, or a Clister of Soap and Salt-water. Others use to give him five Drams of Myrrh in good Wine, and then Gallop him gently thereupon. Others use to give him Smallage and Parsly with his Provender; and then to Travel him till he Sweat. But for my own part, I hold it best to take a Quart of Malmsey, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinnamon, of each half an Ounce, of Sugar half a Quartern, and give it the Horse luke-warm, and then Ride him at least an Hour after; but before you Ride him, anoint all his Flanks with Oil de Bay, or Oil of Spike. Now if while you Ride him he will not Dung, you shall then Rake him, and if Need be, enforce him to Dung, by thrusting into his Fundament a pilled Onion jagged cross-ways, that the tickling of the Juice may inforce Ordure:

And



And by no Means, for four or five Days, let him drink no cold Water, or eat any Grass or green Corn, but keep him upon wholesome dry Meat in a warm Stable.

CHAP. LXXV. *Of the Belly-Ach, or Fretting in the Belly.*

**B**ESIDES the Cholick, there is also another grievous pain in the Belly, which Farriers call the Belly-Ach, or Fretting in the Belly, and it proceedeth either from eating of green Pulse, when it grows on the Ground, or raw undried Pease, Beans, or Oats, or else when sharp fretting Humours, or Inflammations, or abundance of gross Matter is gotten between the great Gut and the Panicle. The signs are, much Wallowing, great Groaning, and often striking at his Belly, and gnawing upon the Manger. The Cure, according to the Opinion of some Farriers, is, first to anoint your Hand with Sallet-Oil, Butter, or Grease, and then thrusting it in at the Horse's Fundament, pull out as much Dung as you can reach, which is called Raking a Horse; then give him a Clister of Water and Salt mixt together, or instead thereof, give him a Suppository of Honey and Salt, and then give him to drink, the Powder of Centuary and Wormwood, brewed with a Quart of Malmsey. Others use only to give the Horse a Suppository of Newcastle-Soap, and for mine own part, I hold it only the best.

CHAP. LXXVI. *Of the Costiveness, or Belly-Bound.*

**C**OSTIVENESS, or Belly-Bound, is, when a Horse is so bound in his Belly that he cannot Dung, it is a Disease of all other most incident to Running Horses, which are kept in dry and hot Diet. Now my Masters, the great Farriers affirm, that it proceedeth from Glut of Proven-der, or over-much Feeding and Rest; or from Wind, gross Humours, or Cold, causing Obstructions, and stoppings in the Guts; but I suppose (and imagine that all the best Keepers of Hunting or Running, Horses will Consent with me) that it rather proceeds from much Fasting, whereby the Gut wanteth fresh Substance to fill it, doth out of his own great Heat, bake and dry up the little which it containeth: For it is a certain Rule, that nothing can overflow before it be full: Or else it may proceed from eating too much dry and hot Food, which sucking up the Flegm and Moisture of the Body, leaves not sufficient whereby it may be digested; however it is a dangerous Infirmity and is the beginning of many other Evils. The Signs are only Abstinence from the Office of Nature, (I mean Dugging) which is most usual in all Beasts. The Cure whereof, according to the Opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is, To take the Water wherein Mallows have been long boiled, to the quantity of a Quart, and put thereto half a Pint of Oil, or instead thereof, half a Pint of Butter very sweet, and one Ounce of Benedicte Laxatu, and pour that into his Fundament Clister-wise; then with a String fasten his Tail hard to his Tuel,

Fuel, and then Trot the Horse up and down a pretty while, that the Medicine may work so much the better; then let his Tail loose, and suffer him to void all that is in his Belly; then bring him into the Stable, and stand a while, give him a little well-clarified Honey to drink; then cover him and keep him warm, and let his Drink for three or four Days be nothing but sweet warm Mashs of Malt and Water. Other Farriers use to take eleven Leaves of Laurel, and stamping them in a Mortar, give it the Horse to drink with one Quart of good strong Ale.

Others use to take an Ounce of Brimstone finely beaten to Powder and mixing it with Sugar, to give it the Horse in a Mash to drink. Now for mine own part, I could wish you, if the Disease be not very extreamly violent, only but to Rake the Horse's Fundament, and then to Gallop him in his Cloaths till he Sweat, and then give him a Handful or two of clean Rye, and a little Brimstone mixt with it; for Brimstone being given with Provender at any time will scour; but if the Disease be raging and violent, take a quarter of a Pound of White Sope, a handful of Spurge, and a handful of Hemp-seed, bray them very well together, and give it the Horse to drink with a Quart of Ale luke-warm, then let him fast, and exercise him more than half an Hour after; and be sure to keep him very warm, and let his Drink be only warm Mashs. A World of other scouring Receipts there be: But you shall find them more at large in the Chapter of *Purgations, Clusters, and Suppositories.*

CHAP. LXXVII. *Of the Lax, or too much Scouring of Horses.*

**T**HE Lax, or open Flux of a Horse's Body, is a dangerous Disease, and quickly bringeth a Horse to great Weakness and Faintness; It proceedeth sometimes from the abundance of Cholerick Humours, descending from the Liver or Gall down into the Guts: Sometimes by drinking over-much cold Water immediately after his Provender; Sometimes by sudden Travelling upon a full Stomach before his Meat be digested; sometimes by hasty Running or Galloping presently after Water; and sometimes by licking up a Feather, or eating Hen's Dung: There is no Disease that taketh more fore upon a Horse in a short time than this, and yet, since Nature her self in this Disease seemeth to be a Physician to the Horse's Body, I would not wish any Farrier to go about too suddenly to stop it; but if you find, that by the continuance, Nature both loseth her own strength, and the Horse the good estate of his Body, then you shall seek Remedy; and Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of ancient Farriers, is this: Take of Bean-flower, and Bole-armonick, of each a Quartern, mix them together in a Quart of Red Wine, and give it the Horse luke-warm to drink, and let him be kept very Warm, and have much Rest: Also let the Water that he drinketh be lukewarm, and mixt with Bean-flower; yet by no means let him.



him drink above once in four and twenty Hours, and then not to his full satisfaction. Others take a Pint of Red Wine, the Powder of one Nutmeg, half an Ounce of Cinnamon, and as much of the Rind of Pomegranate, and mixing them together, give it the Horse luke-warm to drink, and let him not drink any other drink, except it be once in four and twenty Hours, half a Horse's Draught of warm Water mixt with Bean-flower. Others take a half penny-worth of Allom beaten into fine Powder, and Bole-Armony beaten small, and a Quart of good Milk, mingle them together till the Milk be all on a Curd, and then give it the Horse to drink, observing the Diet before reheared: But if this Disease shall happen to a sucking Foal, as commonly it will, and I my self have seen many that for want of Experience have perished thereby; you shall then only give a Pint of strong Verges to drink and it is a present Remedy: For the Foal only feeding upon Milk, and that Milk avoiding in as liquid form as it was received, the Verges will Curdle it, and make it void in a grosser and more tougher Substance.

CHAP. LXXVIII. *Of the Bloody-Flux in Horses.*

**I**T is not to be doubted, but that a Horse may have the Bloody-Flux, for in my Experience I have seen it, besides the Confirmation of all my Masters the old Farriers. Now of the Bloody-Flux they make Kinds, for sometimes the Fat of the slimy Filth which is voided, is sprinkled with a little Blood; sometimes the Excrements is Watrish Blood, like the Water wherein Bloody-Flesh hath been washed; sometimes Blood mixed with Melancholy, and sometimes pure Blood: But all these proceeding from one Head, which is the Exulceration of the Gut, they may all very well be helped by the Cure. Yet that you may know whether the Exulceration be in the inward small Gut, or in the outward great Gut, you shall observe if the Matter and Blood be perfectly mixed together, then it is the inner small Guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out severally, the Blood most commonly following the Matter, then it is the thick outward Guts. Now this Bloody-Flux cometh most commonly of some sharp Humours, ingendering either by a naughty raw Food, or unreasonable Travel, which Humours, being violently driven, and having passed through many crooked and narrow Ways, do cleave to the Guts, and with their heat and sharpness fret them and cause Exulcerations and grievous Pains. Sometimes this Bloody-Flux may come from extream Cold, extream Heat, or extream Moistness, or through the Violence of some extream Scouring formerly given, wherein some poisonous Simple, as Simony, Stibium, or such like, may be applied in too great a quantity, or it may come from the weakness of the Liver, or other Members, which serve for Digestion. The Sign of this Disease, is only the voiding Blood

Blood with his Excrements, or Blood instead of Excrements: And the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, To take Saffron one Ounce, of Myrrh two Ounces, of Southern-wood three Ounces, of Parsley one Ounce, of Rue three Ounces, of Spittle-wort, and Hyssop, of each two Ounces, of Cassia, which is like Cinnamon, one Ounce, let all these be beaten into fine Powder and mingled with Chalk and strong Vinegar wrought into a Paste, of which Paste make little Cakes, and dry them in the Shadow, and being dried, dissolve some of them in a Pint and a half of Barley-Milk, or for want thereof, in that Juice which is called Crimor Prifame, and give it the Horse to drink; for it not only cureth the Bloody-Flux, but being given with a Quart of warm Water, it healeth all Grief and Pain either in the Belly or Bladder, which cometh for want of Staling.

Now for mine own part, I have ever used for the Bloody-flux, but this Medicine only: Take of Red Wine three pints, half a handful of the Herb called Bursa Pastoris, or Shepherds Purse, and as much Tan-ners Bark taken out of the Fat and dryed, boil them in the Wine till somewhat more than a pint be consumed, and then straining it very hard, give it the Horse luke-warm to drink; if you do add unto it a little Cinnamon it is not amiss. There be other Farriers which use to dissolve in a pint of Red Wine, four Ounces of the Conserve of Sloes, and give it the Horse to drink: but either of the other Medicines are fully sufficient.

#### CHAP. LXXIX. *Of the falling down of a Horse's Fundament:*

**H**orses sometimes, by means of the Disease formerly spoken of, which is the Bloody-flux, and sometimes by a natural weakness in the inward Bowels, coming through the Resolution of the Muscles, serving to draw up the Fundament, will many times have their Fundaments fall down in great length, both to the much pain of the Horse, and great loathsomeness to the Beholders. Now the Resolution or falling down, may come partly by over-much straining to Dung when a Horse is Costive, and partly by over-great Moisture, as it happens in young Children: For than a Horse, no Creature hath a moister Body. Now the Signs are apparent, hanging down of the Fundament, and the Cure is this: First, you shall look whether the Fundament be inflamed, that is, whether it be much swell'd or no, if it be not inflam'd, then you shall anoint it with Oil of Roses warmed on a Chafing-dish of Coals, or for want of such Oil, you shall wash it with warm Red Wine, but if it be inflamed, then you shall bath it well with a soft Sponge, dipt in the Decoction of Mallows, Camomill, Linseed, and Fenugreek, and also you shall anoint it well with Oil of Camomill and Dill mingled together, to assuage the Swelling, and then with a gentle Hand, and



warm Linnen Cloths, thrust it fair and softly up into his true Place, that done, Bath all the Tuel with Red Wine, wherein hath been sodden Acatium, Galls, Acorn Cups, and the Paring of Quinces, then throw upon it either the Powder of Bole-Armonick, or of Frankincence, or Sanguis Draconis, Myrrh, Acatium, or such like, and then give him to drink the dry Pills of Pomegranates beaten to powder, either with Wine or warm Water, and be sure to keep the Horse very warm, and in his Body neither too soluble or loose, nor too costive or hard bound, but of a mean and soft temper, for the extremity of either is hurtful.

CHAP. LXXX. *Of the Bots, Truncheons, and Worms in a Horses Body.*

**M**Y Masters, the old ancient Farriers are of Opinion, that the Guts of a Horse do breed Three sorts of Worms, that is to say, little short Worms with great red Heads, and long small white Tails, which we call Bots short and thick Worms all of a bigness like a Man's Finger, which we call Truncheons, and great long Worms as big as a Man's Finger, and at the least six Inches in length, which we call by the simple Name of Worms only.

Now in mine own Experience, and all other Mens, I find a fourth sort, which is of a middle size, and are Red and Fiery, with thick, short, sharp Heads, and are called Poisonous red Worms, and are of all other most Poisonous and Dangerous, for they will ascend up even to the Throat of the Horse, and will choak and kill him; sometimes they will eat through his Stomach, and so confound him.

Now for mine own Part I am of Opinion, That the first which are Bots, are not bred in the Guts, but the Stomach only, because having cut up many Horses, I never could yet find any one Bot in the Guts, yet great store of both the other Worms, nor ever cut up the Stomach of a Horse, but I found great abundance of Bots, and neither of the other Worms; whence I am confidently opinionated, that Bots are ever bred in the Stomach, and both the other sorts of Worms in the Guts: Truth it is, that all three doth proceed from one self-same Cause, which is a raw, gross, and Flegmetick Matter, apt to Putrefaction, and ingendred by foul and naughty Feeding, and as they proceed from one self-same Cause, so have they all one Sign, and all one Cure. The signs are, the Horse will forsake his Meat, and not stand upon his Legs, but wallow and tumble, and beat his Belly with his Feet, and sometimes the Pain will be so extream that he will beat his Head against the Ground, and truly, the Violence of the Red Worms are wonderful, for I have seen Horses whose Stomach have been eaten quite through with them, so that the Meat which they eat could not abide in their Stomach, but fell upon the Swallowing into the Body, making the Body swell like a Tun, and so died with huge Torment. Now the Cure according to the ancientest Farriers

Farriers is, To take a Quart of sweet Milk, of Honey a Quartern, and give it him luke-warm; then walk him up and down for the space of an Hour after, and so let him rest for that Day, with as little Meat and Drink as may be, and by no Means suffer him to lie down: Then the next Day when the Horse is Fasting, take of Rue a Handful, of Savin as much, and being well stamp'd, put thereunto a little Brimstone, and a little Soot of Chimney beaten into fine Powder, put all these things together in a Quart of Wort, or New Ale, and there let them lie in steep the space of an Hour or two; then strain it hard through a fair Cloath, and give it the Horse to drink luke-warm, then Bridle him, and walk him abroad the space of an Hour, then set him up, and let him stand on the Bitt two or three Hours after, and then give him a little Hay.

Other ancient Farriers use only to give the Horse for this Disease the warm Guts of a new slain Hen or Chicken, being thrust down the Horse's Throat, and sure it is passing good, especially if a little Salt be mixed with them; and this must be done three Mornings together fasting, keeping the Horse from drinking three or four Hours after. Others use to take three Ounces of the Roots of Caphers, beaten with half so much Vinegar, and put it down the Horse's Throat: Or else a Pint of Milk, and a Spoonful of Soap given the Horse to drink; or Brimstone and Milk given to drink, all very Sovereign. Others use to bind about the Snaffle or Bitt, Man's Dung new made, and so Ride him therewith.

Others take of Gentian, Aloes, and Savin, of each half an Ounce, and brew them together with Honey and strong Ale. Others use to take only a Quart of cold Sweet-Wort. Others take Savin and Southern-wort, or else Wormwood, and tops of Broom small chopt, and mix it with the Horse's Provender. Others use to give the Horse to drink luke-warm Elder-Berries sodden in Milk. Others use to give the Horse with his Provender, his own Hair chopt small, and mixt with Bay Salt. Others put hot Embers in Water and presently strain it, and give it the Horse to drink. Others make little round Balls of Honey, and the fine Powder of Chalk, and putting them into Ale, make the Horse swallow them. Others use to take, especially for the long Worms, half a Penny-worth of Fenugreek, of Anniseeds a quarter of a Pound, half a Penny-worth of Bay-Berries, as much Licoras, and as much Turmeric, and a little quantity of Brimstone, beat them into Powder, put them into a Quart of Ale, and give it the Horse fasting luke-warm to drink; then Ride him an Hour after, then set him up Warm four and twenty Hours after, Others use, especially for the Truncheons, to take two Spoonfuls of the Powder of Wormwood, finely searst and put it into a Pint of good Malmsey, and after it is brewed a while, let it stand



and foak all Night, and then give it the Horfe in the Morning faſting, then keep him without Meat or Drink four Hours after. Others uſe to give the Horfe to drink two Spoonfuls of Wormſeed, and as much Brimſtone as Powder of Savin, with a Quart of Malmſey, Ale, or Beer. Others uſe to take as much Black-Soap as a Walnut, and as much Brimſtone beaten to Powder, and a Head or two of Garlick pilled and bruifed, and put into a Quart of good Ale, and give it the Horfe luke-warm to drink.

This Medicine may alſo be adminiſtered to a Mare great with Foal, if ſhe be troubled with the Bots or other Worms, ſo that the Black Soap be left out, for it is a violent purger, and may kill the Foal in the Mare's Belly; yet for mine own part, I never give any inward Phyſical Medicines to a Mare great with Foal, but if I find her troubled with Worms, as is eaſie to be done by the ſtinking of her Breath, by the ſlimineſs of her Mouth, and by the greatneſs of the Worm-veins under her Lips, then preſently I do nothing but let her Blood in the Roof or Palate of her Mouth, and make her eat her own Blood; for that I know will both kill the Worms, and help moſt inward Maladies. But leaving Mares with Foal, let us return again unto Horſes. There be other Farriers which uſe to take a Handful of new Hen's-dung, and a Quart of ſtale Ale, and Bray them well together; then take a Handful of Bay-Salt, and put two Eggs to it, and having mixt them all well together, give it the Horſe to drink. Others uſe to take half a Penny-worth of Saffron, and as much Allom, and mix them with a Pint of Milk, and give it the Horſe to drink: Or elſe give him green Willow, and green Reed to eat. Others uſe (and think it the beſt of all other Medicines) to take the Guts of a young Hen or Pigeon, and roul it in a little Black-Soap, then in Bay-Salt, and ſo force it down the Horſe's Throat. Others uſe (eſpecially for the Truncheons) to let the Horſe drink Hens-dung, Mint, Sage, and Rue, with Beer or Ale, and to let him Blood in the Noſtrils. To conclude; except you ſee the Horſe very much pained, you ſhall need to give him nothing but Roſin and Brimſtone mixt together, and blended with his Provender, having Care that you ever give it Faſting, and long before the Horſe do drink.



Laſtly, And as the chief of all Medicines for all manner of Worms, Take as much precipitate, as will lie on a Silver Two-pence, and work it with as much Butter as a French Walnut, then lap it in another Piece of Butter as big as a Hen's Egg, and ſo give it the Horſe faſting in the Manner of a Pill. Ride him a little after it, and give him no Water that Night, and let him faſt two Hours, then feed as at other times.

CHAP. LXXXI. *Of the Pain in a Horse's Kidneys.*

**T**Here is no Question, but the same Infirmities which do belong unto the Liver or Spleen of a Horse, do also belong unto the Kidneys, as Inflammations, Obstructions, Aposthumes, and Ulcers; and truly in opening of Horses, I have found the Kidney sometimes wasted, which I imputed to some matter of Inflammation; I have likewise found much Gravel, which was only through Obstructions, and I have seen the Kidneys as black as Ink, which could not come without an Ulcerous Aposthumation: But forasmuch as a Horse is a Beast, who cannot tell the manner of his Pain, nor we so heedful as we might have been, to observe the Symptoms of every Grief, we are inforced to conclude all under one Name, which is the Pain in the Kidneys, gotten either by some great strain in Leaping, or by some great Burthen bearing.

The Signs are, the Horse will go rowling and staggering behind, his Urine will be blackish and thick, and his Stones (if he have any) will be shrunk up into his Body, if he have not, you shall perceive the sheath of his Yard to be drawn backward, and the great Vein which runneth up the side of his Thigh, called the Kidney-vein, will slack and beat continually. The Cure according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, First to bath his Back and Loins with Oyl, Wine, and Nitrum, warmed together, and after he is bathed, cover him with warm cloaths, and let him stand in Litter up to the Belly; then give him to drink Water wherein hath been sodden Dill, Fennel, Anniseeds, Smallage, Parsley, Spikenard, Myrrh, and Cassia, or as many as you can conveniently get of these Simples. The next Morning fasting, give him to drink a Quart of Ews Milk, or for want thereof, half so much Sallet Oil, and Deers Suet molten together; or if you can get it, the root of a Daffodill boiled in Wine, and let his Provender be dried Oats; and in this Diet keep him about ten Days, and he will recover.

CHAP. LXXXII. *Of the Diseases belonging to the Bladder or Urine, and First of the Strangury.*

**A**ccording to the determinate Opinion of all the best and Ancientest Horse-Leaches, the Bladder of a Horse is subject to three dangerous Diseases, as first, the Strangury, or Strangullion; the second, the Pain-piss, and the third the Stone, or Piss supprest. Now for the first, which is the Strangury; or Strangullion, it is, when the Horse is provoked to stale often, and voideth nothing but a few drops, it cometh without doubt, either by the heat and sharpness of Urine, caused either by great Travel, or by sharp and hot Meats and Drinks, or else by the Exulceration of the Bladder, or by means of some Aposthume in the Liver and Kidneys, which Aposthume being broken, the Matter resorteth down.



down into the Bladder, and with the sharpness thereof causeth a continual provocation of pissing. The Signs are (as I said before) a continual desire to piss, yet voiding nothing but a few Drops, and those with such pain, that he will whisk, wry, and beat his Tail as he pisseth.

The Cure whereof is, to bathe the Horse's hinder Loins with warm Water, and then take Bread and Bayberries, and temper them together with *May* Butter, and give him two or three Balls thereof down his Throat three Days together.

Others use (and I have ever found it the best) to take a quart of new Milk, and a quartern of Sugar, and brewing them well together, give it the Horse to drink six Mornings together, observing to keep the Horse from all sharp Meats, as Mow-burnt Hay, Bran, and such like.

CHAP. LXXXIII. *Of the Pain-piss, or pissing with Pain*

**T**His Disease of Pain-piss, is, when a Horse cannot piss but with great pain and labour, and doth proceed sometimes from the weakness of the Bladder, and the cold intemperance thereof, and sometimes through the abundance of Flegm and gross Humours, stopping the Neck of the Bladder. The Signs whereof are, the Horse will stretch himself out as though he would stale, and thrust out his Yard a little, and with a Pain clap his Tail betwixt his Thighs to his Belly, and having stood so a good while, in the end he will stale a good quantity.

 The Cure whereof, according to the Opinion of Farriers, is, To take the Juice of Leeks, sweet Wine, and Oil, and mingling them together, to pour it into his right Nostril, and walk him a little up and down upon it; or else to give him to drink Smallage feed, or else the Roots of wild Fennel sodden with Wine. Others use to put fine sharp Onions clean pill'd and a little bruised, into his Fundament, and then to chafe him immediately upon it, either by riding him, or running him in a Man's Hand: Or else to take the scraping of the inward parts of the Horse's own Hoofs, beaten into powder, and mingled with Wine, and pour it into his right Nostril, and then ride him upon it. Others use to lead the Horse to Sheep-coats, or Sheep-pens, where great store of Sheep are wonted, and making the Horse to smell of the Dung and Piss of the Sheep, it will provoke him to Stale presently. Others use to give the Horse white Dog's Dung dried and mingled with Ammoniacum, Salt, and Wine to drink; or else Hogs Dung only with Wine, or the dregs of Horse-piss and Wine.

CHAP. LXXXIV. *Of the Stone, or Piss supprest in a Horse.*

**T**He Stone or Piss supprest in a Horse, is, when a Horse would fain Stale but cannot at all, and therefore may well be called the suppression of the Urine. It proceedeth according to the Opinions of my Masters,

Masters, the old Farriers, sometimes from the Weakness of the Bladder, when the Water Conduit is stopped with gross Humours, or with matter descending from the Liver, or from some Inflammation, or hard Knobs, growing at the Mouth of the Conduit, or for that the Sinews of the Bladder are numbed, so as the Bladder is without feeling: Or it may come by keeping a Horse long in Travel, and not suffering him to Stale; but most commonly and ofttest it cometh from Obstructions of the Kidneys, where, by the Causes aforesaid, a certain red Gravel being bred; and a falling down into the Conduits, by a mixture of Flegm and others gross Humours, is there brought to be a hard Stone, and stopeth the Passage of the Urine. For the Signs, there needeth no more but this, that he would fain piss, but cannot.

The Cure, according to the Opinion of the most Antientest Farriers, is, First to draw out his Yard, and Bathe it well with White-wine, and Pick it, and Scour it well, lest it be stopped with Dirt and Filthiness, then put a little Oil of Camomill into his Yard, with a Wax Candle, and a bruised Clove of Garlick: But If that will not force him to Stale, then take of Parsley one handful, of Coriander one handful, Stamp them and Strain them with a Quart of White-wine, and Dissolve therein one Ounce of Cake Soap, and give it Luke-warm unto the Horse to Drink, and see that you keep him as warm as may be, and let him Drink no cold Water for the Space of Five or Six Days, and when you would have him to Stale, let it be either on good plenty of Straw or upon the Grass, or in a Sheeps Coat. Others (and those of the best Esteem for Horse-Leach Craft at this Day) use only to give White-Wine, Cake Soap, and Butter very well mixt together, and let the Horse Drink it warm.

Others use to Anoint the Horse's Belly first with warm Water, then when it is dried, to Anoint it again with Sallet Oil, Hogs Grease and Tar mixt together and made warm, and so hold a hot Iron against his Belly whilst it is Anointing, that the Ointment may the better enter the Skin: But I hold this Medicine to be much better for the Strangury, or any other Pain in the Belly, than for the Stone; yet it is approved good for all. Others use to take a Pint of White-Wine or Ale, and mix it with a little Garlick, and the Whites of Ten Eggs, and give it the Horse to Drink; or else give him the Juice of red Colewarts mixt with White-Wine, or the Root of Alexanders bruised and sodden in Wine to Drink, and wash his Yard with Vinegar. Others use to take either Wormwood, Southernwood or Galingal, or Mallows, or Pimpernel, some of these, or any one of these, Stamp and Strained, and give it the Horse with Ale to Drink. Others use to take a Pint of White-Wine, half a Pint of Burrseed beaten very small, two Ounces of Parsley-seed, half a Handfull of Hyssop, half an Ounce of black Soap, mix them all well together, and warm it, and give it the Horse to Drink; or else take unset  
Leeks,



Leeks, and stamp them small, and Soap, Milk and Butter, and being mixt together, give it the Horse to drink. Others use to take a Nutmeg, and a hadful of Parsley-seed, beat them to Powder, then take as much Butter, and mix them altogether in a Quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse luke-warm to drink: Or else take the Seed of Smallage, Parsley, Saxafras, the Roots of Philupendula, Cherry-stone Kernels, Grummel-seeds, and Broom-seed, of each a like Quantity, beat them into fine Powder, and give it the Horse with a Pint or a Quart of White-wine.

Now although these Medicines before rehearsed, are daily in Practice, and approved very Sovereign, yet for mine own part, I have found none more sovereign than this: Take a Quart of strong Ale, and put it into a Pottle-Pot, then take as many keen Raddish-Roots, clean washed, being slit through and bruised as will fill up the Pot; then stopping the Pot very close that no Air may come in, let it so stand four and twenty Hours, then strain the Ale and the Roots very hard into a clean Vessel, and give it the Horse fasting in the Morning to drink; then Ride him a little up and down, and so set him up warm, watch him, and you shall see him Stale. This you must do divers Mornings together.

CHAP. LXXXV. Of a Horse that Pisseth Blood.

**T**H E R E is nothing more certain, than that a Horse many times will piss Blood instead of Urine, the Cause (as the most ancient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these Grounds; either over-much Labour, or too heavy a Burthen, especially when the Horse is Fat: For by either of them the Horse may come to break some Vein in his Body, and then you shall see clear Blood come out and no Urine at all; but if the Blood be mixt with Urine, then they suppose it cometh from the Kidneys, having some ragged Stone therein, which through great Travel doth fret the Veins of the Kidneys, and maketh them bleed, through which as the Urine passeth, it taketh the Blood away with it also; but for mine own part, I have not found any greater Cause for the Pissing of Blood than the taking up of a Horse from Grass in the strength of Winter, (as about *Christmas*) and presently, without a Day's Rest in the Stable, to thrust him into a long and weary Journey; from this Cause I have seen many Horses after two or three Days Journey, to Piss Blood in most grievous Manner. The Signs are needless. The Cure according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is this: First, Let the Horse Blood in the Palate of the Mouth, to convert the Blood the contrary Way, then take of Tragacanth which hath been steeped in White-wine, half an Ounce of Poppy-seed, one Dram and one Scruple, and of Storax as much, and twelve Pine-Apple Kernels; let all these things be beaten and mingled well together, and give the Horse thereof every

every Morning the space of seven Days the Quantity of a Walnut, infused in a Quart of sweet Wine. Other latter Farriers use to let the Horse Blood in the Neck, and boil that Blood with Wheat, and with the Powder of dried Pomegranate Pills; then strain it, and give it him three or four Mornings together to drink, and let him by no means Travel thereupon; or else give him of husked Beans boiled with husks of Acorns beaten small, and mixt together. Others use to make him a Drink with the Roots of Daffodil mingled with Wheat-flower, and Summach Soddin long in Water, and so to be given to the Horse with sweet Wine: Or else to make him drink of Goats-Milk and Sallet-Oil, strain thereunto a little Frumenty: Or else to give him soddin Beans and Deer's-Suet in Wine, each of these are of like Force and Goodness. Now there be others which use for this Disease to take Barley, and seethe in the Juice of Gum-Folly, and give him the Barley to eat, and the Juice to drink: Or else take the Powder of Licoras and Anniseeds rouled up in Honey, and make round Balls thereof, and cast down the Horse's Throat two or three of them: Lastly, and the best, Take Licoras, Anniseeds, and Garlick bruised together with Sallet-Oil and Honey, and give it in a Quart of new Milk to the Horse to drink, it is very soverain also; and these two Medidines last rehearsed, are exceeding good also for any Cold or Glanders.

#### CHAP. LXXXVI. Of the Colt-Evil.

**T**HE Colt-Evil by the most ancient Farriers, especially the *Italians*, whose hot Country affordeth the Beasts of more hot and strong Natures than ours doth, is thought to be a continual standing Erection, together with an unnatural swelling of the Yard, proceeding either from some Wind, filling the Arteries and hollow Sinews, or Pipes of the Yard, or else through the abundance of Seed, provoked by the Natural heat of the Horse; but our Farriers, who have not seen that Experience, because our Horses are of a colder Temper, say, it is only a Swelling of the Sheath of the Yard, and of that part of the Belly about the Yard, together with the Cold also proceeding from corrupt Seed, which cometh out of the Yard, and remaining within the Sheath, there putrifieth: And this Judgment we find by Experience to be most true. Now you shall understand, that Geldings as well as Horses are subject thereunto, because they want Natural Heat to expel Seed any further.

The Signs are only the outward Swelling of the Sheath and Cod, and none other; and the best Cure is, first to wash the Sheath clean with luke-warm Vinegar, then draw out the Yard and wash it also; which done, Ride the Horse twice every Day, that is, Morning and Evening, into some deep running Water up to the Belly, tossing him to



and fro, to allay the heat of his Members, till the Swelling be vanished, and if you Swim him now and then, it will not do amiss. Others use to Bath his Cods and Yard with the Juice of House-leek, or with the Water wherein Kinholm hath been sod. Now this Colt-Evil will sometimes stop the Horse's Urine that he cannot Piss: Then you shall take New Ale, and a little Black Soap, and give it the Horse to drink. Others use to wash the Horse's Cods and Sheath with Butter and Vinegar made warm. Others use to wash his Yard and Cods with the Juice of Hemlock, or else take Bean-flower, Vinegar, and Bole-Armonick, and mixing them together, lay it Plaister-wise to his Sheath and Cods. Others make him a Pliafter of Wine-Lees, House-Leek, and Bran mixt together, and lay it to his Sheath and Cods: But if the first Receipt will serve, I would not wish you to use any other Medicine.

CHAP. LXXXVII. *Of the Mattering of the Yard.*

**T**HIS Disease of the Mattering of the Yard, is seldome seen but amongst the hot Races or Breeds of Horses, as the Jennet, the Barbary, and such-like; and it happeneth ever at Covering-time, when the Horse and Mare both being too Hot, do Burn themselves, by which Means there issueth forth of the Horse's Yard much filthy Matter. The Signs are, the falling down of the Matter, and a Swelling at the End of the Yard, and the Horse can by no Means draw up his Yard, or cover it within his Sheath. The Cure is, To take a Pint of White-wine, and boil therein a Quartern of Roch-Allom, and with a large Syringe or Squirt, squirt in three or four Squirts full into his Yard one after another, and be sure that your Squirt go home unto the Bottom, that the Liquor or Lotion may scour the Bloody Matter away: This do five or six times every Day till the Horse be whole.

CHAP. LXXXVIII. *Of the Shedding of the Seed.*

**T**HE Shedding of the Seed, or the falling away of the Sperm in Horses, is none other than that which we call in Men the Running of the Reins: It cometh, as our Old Farriers say, either by abundance and Rankness of the Seed, or by the Weakness of the Stones and Seed-Vessels not able to retain the Seed until it be digested and thickened; but truly for mine own part, I think it cometh oftener (especially among our English Horses) by some great Strain in Leaping, or by teaching a Horse to Bound, and making him Bound above the compass of his natural Strength. The sign are only the shedding of his Seed, which will be White, Thin, and Waterish. The Cure, according to the ancient Experiments, is, First to Ride the Horse into some cold Water up to the Belly, insomuch that his Stones may be covered with Water; which done; Bathe his Fundament with Water and Oil, then  
cover

cover him exceeding warm, and give him every Day to drink of Red Wine, and Hog's-Dung till the Flux of his Seed stay ; but latter Experience hath found this Receipt better : Take of Red Wine a Quart, and put therein a little Acatium, the Juice of Plantain, and a little Mastick, and give it him to drink ; and then Bathe all his Back with Red Wine and Oil of Roses mixt together : But other Farriers take Venice-Turpentine, and being washed, beat it well with half as much Sugar, and then make round Balls as big as Walnuts, and give the Horse five every Morning till the Flux stay.

CHAP. LXXXIX. *Of the Falling of the Yard.*

THE falling down of the Yard, is, when a Horse hath no strength to draw up his Yard within the Sheath, but lets it hang down between his Legs ill-favouredly : It cometh (as our best Farriers suppose) either through the weakness of the Member, by Means of some Resolution in the Muscles and Sinews, serving the same, caused by some great Strain or Stripe on the Back, or else through extream Weariness and Tiring. The sign is only the apparent hanging down of the Member ; and the Cure is, (according to some Opinions) to wash the Horse's Yard in salt Water from the Sea, or for want thereof with Water and Salt : But if that will not prevail, then prick all the outward Skin of his Yard with a sharp Needle, but yet as slightly as may be, and not deep ; and then wash all the pricks with strong Vinegar, and this will not only make him draw up his Yard again, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this Cure will put it up again. There be other Farriers which for this Disease will put into the Pipe of the Horse's Yard, Honey and Salt boiled together, and made liquid, or else a quick Fly, or a Grain of Frankincense, or a Clove of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, and Bathe his Back with Oil, Wine, and Nitre made warm and mingled together.

But the best Cure, according to our English Practice, is First, to wash all the Yard with White-wine warmed, and then anoint it with Oil of Roses and Honey mixt together, and so put it up into the Sheath, and with a little Bolster of Canvas keep it from falling down, and Dress him thus once in four and twenty Hours, until he be recovered, and in any Case let his Back be kept as warm as is possible, both with Cloath and a Charge of Plaister made of Bole-Armonick, Eggs, Wheat-flower, Sanguis Draconis, Turpentine, and Vinegar ; or else lay next his Back a wet Sack, or wet Hay, and a dry Cloath over it, and that will keep his Back exceeding Warm,



CHAP. XC. *Of the Diseases incident to Mares; and first of the Barrenness of the Womb.*

**T**HE only Disease incident to the Womb of a Mare, (as far forth as our Farriers are experienced) is Barrenness, which may proceed from divers Causes, as through the Intemperance of the Matrix, being either too Hot and Fiery, or too Cool and Moist, or too Dry, or else too Short or too Narrow, or having the Neck thereof turned awry, or by means of some Obstruction, or stopping in the Matrix, or in that the Mare is too Fat or too Lean, and divers other such like Causes. Now the Cure thereof, according to the Old Farriers, is, To take a good handful of Leeks, and stamp them in a Mortar with four or five Spoonfuls of Wine, then put thereunto twelve Flies, called Cantharides, then strain them all together with a sufficient Quantity of Water to serve the Mare therewith two Days together, by pouring the same into her Nature with a Clister-pipe made for the purpose, and at the End of three Days next following offer the Horse unto her that should Cover her, and after she is covered, wash her Nature twice together with cold Water.

There be others which use to take of Nitrum, of Sparrow's-Dung, and of Turpentine, of each a like Quantity well wrought together, and make a Suppository, and put that into her Nature, and it will cause her both to desire the Horse, and also to Conceive. There be some of Opinion, that it is good to put a Nettle into the Horse's Mouth that should Cover her. Of all which, let only Experience be your War-rant.

CHAP. XCI. *Of the Pestilent Consumption in Mares.*

**T**HERE is a certain Pestilent Consumption incident to Mares when they are with Foal proceeding from cold Flegm gathered by raw foggy Food in the Winter Season, which descending from the Kidneys, doth oppress the Matrix, and makes the Mare consume and pine away, so that if she be not holpen, she will want strength to Foal her Foal. The signs are, sudden Leanness, and a drooping of Spirit, with much dislike of Meat, a continual desire to be laid. The Cure is, to pour into her Nostrils three Pints of Fish-Brine, called Garume, three or four Mornings together, and if the Grief be very great, then take five Pints, and it will make her vent all Flegm at her Nostrils.

CHAP. XCII. *Of the Rage of Love in Mares.*

**I**T is reported by some of our English Farriers, that Mares being proudly and highly kept, will at the Spring of the Year, when their Blood begins to wax warm, if they chance when they go to the Water, to see their own Shadows therein, that presently they will fall into extreme Love therewith and from that Love into such a hot Rage, that they will

will forget either to eat or Drink, and never cease running about the Pasture, Gazing strangely, and looking oft about and behind them: The Cure of this Folly is, presently to lead the Mare to the Water, and there to let her see her self as before, and the second sight will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and so take away her Folly.

CHAP. XCIII. *Of Mares which cast their Foals.*

**T**HE occasion why Mares casts their Foals, that is, to Foal them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as Strains, Strokes, Intemperate Riding, Rushings, Hard Winterings, or too great Fatness, and such like. Now you shall understand, that this aborsment, or untimely casting of a Foal, is most dangerous to the Life of a Mare: For Nature being, as it were, detained from her true and perfect Custom, which is the preservation of Health, cannot chuse but give way to the contrary, which is Death and Mortallity, and the Body and Pores being set open to the Air, before it be able to defend the cold, cannot chuse but be suffocated with unwholesome Vapours. If therefore you have a Mare at any time which doth cast her Foal, and withal falleth sick upon the same, you shall presently take her into the House, and set her up very warm, then give her two spoonfuls of the Powder of Diapente well brewed in a Pint of Muscadine, and feed her with sweet Hay, and warm Mashcs, for at least a Week after.

CHAP. XCIV. *Of Mares that are hard of Foaling.*

**I**F it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the Passages or other Conduits, which lead from the Matrix, be so straitned that the Mare cannot Foal, and so be in Danger of her Life; then it shall be good that you help her by holding and stopping her Nostrils with your Hand in a gentle manner, that her Breath may not have Passage, and she will Foal with a great deal the more Ease, and much sooner; and sure the Pain is nothing, because a Mare always Foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your Mare hath Foaled, she cannot void her Secundine, which is the Skin wherein the Foal is wrapped, in that natural manner as she ought, you shall then take a good Handful or two of Fennel, and boil it in Wine; then take half a Pint of that, and another half Pint of old Wine, and put thereto a Fourth part of Oil, and mingle them altogether over the Fire, and being but Luke-warm, pour it into the Mare's Nostrils, and hold her Nostrils close with your Hand, to keep it in a pretty while after, and no Question but she will void her Secundine presently.



CHAP. XCV. *Of making a Mare to cast her Foal.*

**I**F at any time you would have your Mare to cast her Foal, as having present occasion to use her, or in that the Foal is not worthily enough begot, you shall take a Pottle of new Milk, and two Handfuls of Savin chopt and bruised, and putting them together, boil them till one half be consumed; then strain it very hard, and give it the Mare Luke-warm to drink, then presently gallop her a good Space, then let her up, do thus two Mornings, and before the third she will have cast her Foal. Others use with their Hands to kill the Foal in the Mare's Belly, but it is dangerous, and the former Medicine is more sufficient. And thus much of the Infirmities of Mares. Now let us return again to Horses and Mares in general.

CHAP. XCVI. *Of the Drinking of Horse-Leaches by Horses.*

**I**F a Horse at any time Drink down Horse-Leaches, they will suck his Blood and kill him. the Signs are, the Horse will hang down his Head to the Ground, and abundance of filthy flaver will fall from his Mouth, and sometimes some Blood also. the Cure is presently to give a Pint of Sallet Oil to Drink, and that will make them fall away, and kill them. but the best is, to give him half an Ounce of Diapente brewed in in a Pint of strong Beer or Ale.

CHAP. XCVII. *Of Swallowing down Hens Dung, or any Venomous Thing whatsoever.*

**I**F a Horse chance to swallow down any Hens Dung with his Hay, it will Fret his Guts, and make him to void much Filthy Matter at his Fundament. The Cure whereof, is, To take a Pint of Wine, half a Pint of Honey, and two Spoonfuls of Smallage-Seed bruised, and mixing them well together, to give it the Horse to Drink, and then to walk him well upon the same that he may empty his Belly. But if the Horse chance to lick up any other Venomous Thing, as Neut, or such like, which you shall know by the instant swelling of his Body, and the trembling of all his Members, then the Cure is, first to put him into a Sweat, either by Cloaths or Exercise, then to let him Blood in the Palate of his Mouth, and look how much he Bleedeth, so much let him Swallow down Hot; or else give him strong Wine and Salt mixt together: Or else take the Root, and Leaves, and Fruit of Briony, which being burnt to Ashes, give the Horse a good Spoonful thereof, with a Pint of sweet Wine to Drink.

Now for mine own Part, I have ever used to take a Pint of Sallet Oil, and two Spoonfulls of Sugar-candy beaten to Powder, and as much of the Powder of Diapente, and brewing them together, give it the Horse to

to drink; or for want of Diapente, so much of the shaving either of Ivory, or an old Stag's Horn, especially the Tips thereof burnt.

CHAP. XCVIII. *Of Purging Medicines in General, and first of the Suppository.*

**P**urging is said of our most ancient Farriers, to be an emptying and discharging of all and every superfluous Humours which Distemper the Body with their evil Qualities; for such Humours breed evil Nutrient, which, when it will not be corrected nor holpen with good Diet, Alteration, nor the benefit of Nature and kindly Heat, then must it by force either be taken away by Purgation, Clister, or Suppository. Now forasmuch as a Horse is troubled with many Diseases in the Guts, and that nothing can Purge the Gut with that gentleness which a Suppository doth, I will here first begin to speak of Suppositories.

Understand then, that a Horse being surfeited, and full of evil Humours needing to be purged, it is best first to give him a Suppository, lest if you should come up to apply a Clister, the great Gut being stopped with dry, hard, and hot Excrements, the Medicine not being able to Work beyond it, lose both Labour and Vertue; so that I make Account a Suppository is but only a preparative to a Clister, and but only to cleanse and make loose the great Gut, which cometh to the Tuel. The gentle Suppository then, and that which purgeth Flegm in the best Manner, is, To take a square piece of Cake-Soap, or White Newcastle-Soap, about five or six Inches long, and shaving it round till it be not above three Inches in the midst, and a little smaller at each end than in the midst; then anoint it over wth Sallet-Oil, and so with your hand thrust it up more than a full Span into his Fundament: Then suddenly clap his Taile to his Tuel, and hold it hard and close more than half an hour, in which space the most part of the Suppository will be wasted, then gently take away your hand, and let him void the Suppository at his Pleasure. The next Suppository to this, and which purgeth Choler abundantly, is, to take Savin stampt small, Stave-saker and Salt, and boil them in Honey till it be thick, then take and Knead it, and roul it up of a pretty thick long Roul, as before you were taught for the hard Soap, and Minister it at his Tuel. The next to this, and that which purgeth Melancholy, is, to take a keen Onion, and pilling off the skin, jagg it a little cross-wise with your Knife, and so thrust it up into the Horse's Fundament. There is, besides these Suppositories, one other Suppository which is to take a Quart of Honey, and boil it on the Fire till it come to be thick like a Salve, then pour it forth upon a Table, and Knead it like a piece of Dough; then when it begins to harden, or grow stiff, (as it will do when it begins to cool) then roul it up under your hand, and make it into the form of a Suppository as it was before shewed, and Administer



minister it in the same manner: this Suppository is good to Purge the Gut of any foul Humour, and therewithal is comfortable to the Body.

Now you must also understand, that as these Suppositories are preparative before Clifters, so they are likewise to be used simply of themselves, where the Sicknes of the Horse carrieth no great Danger; for upon every slight Occasion, or small Driness, which is to be dissolved with the most gentle Medicine, to administer a Clifter, were to bring the Horse's Body to such an intemperate looseness, as would prove much worse than the former contrary Driness, therefore I wish every careful Farrier because the Body of a Horse would not be tampered withal too much by Physick first, in the Case of Costiveness, or Inflammation of the inward Parts, to approve a Suppository: as namely the first prescribed and naked like a Man's Fist, or else like a Roul or Quantity of Roch-Allum, or else four Inches of a great Tallow Candle or Percher of four in the Pound; which if it works effectually, and keeps the Horses Body Soluble, then to proceed no further; but in Case it do not, but that the Offensive Matter still breedeth and increaseth, then to Administer a Clifter, and where that faileth to take away the Offence, to Administer a Purgation. Now by the Way, you are to take with you this general Rule, and never to fail in the performance, which is, never to Administer either Suppository or Clifter, but first immediately before you give it, to Rake your Horse, which Raking is in this Manner: First, you shall anoint all your Hand and Arm over either with Sallet-Oil, sweet-Butter, or fresh Grease, and then thrust it into the Horse's Fundament, and draw out all the Dung, Flegm, and filthy Matter that you can feel, even as high as the great Bag; which done, then either Administer your Suppository or Clifter, which you please, at your leisure, and in any Case, whilst the Horse is thus in Physick, keep him exceeding warm.

#### CHAP. XCIX. Of Clifters and Uses.

THE Nature and Properties of Clifters are divers, and therefore it is necessary that every careful Farrier learn to know to what End they serve, and of what Drugs or Simples they ought to be compounded: For every Clifter is to be made according to the Disease. Now of Clifters, some are to ease Grievs, and to allay the sharpness of the Humours; some to bind, some to loosen, and some to purge, and some to heal Ulcers. These Clifters by cleansing the Guts refresheth all Parts and prepare the Way before for every inward and strong Purgation. Therefore, whensoever a Horse, through grossness of Humours, corruption of Blood, or abundance of Flegm, Choler, or Melancholy, is brought unto that evil habit of Body, that of Necessity he must be purged, and that especially his Pain is in his Guts and Body, you shall then, as before I said (having made a Probation of a Suppository) first of all administer

administer a Clifter, left by Purging suddenly with any Purgation or Potion, you stir up a multitude of evil Humours, which finding no passage downward (because the Guts being stopped with Wind and Dregs) do strike upward, and so perhaps put the Horse into much greater Danger.

Now for the Composition of Clifters, you shall understand, that they be made of four Things; that is, of Decoctions, of Drugs, of Oil, or such like Unctious Matter, as Butter or soft Grease, and fourthly of divers Salts, to provoke the Virtue Expulsive. A Decoction is the Broth of certain Herbs and Simples boiled together in Water, until the third part be consumed. Now sometimes for want of such Decoctions, you may if you please, use some fat Beef-Broth, or the Broth of Sheeps Head, or such like, or Milk, or Whey, or some such like Liquor, mingled sometimes either with Honey or with Sugar, according to the Quality the Disease; the Clifter being either Lenitive, that is to say, easing of Pain, Glutinative, which is Joining of Things together; or else Absterfive, which is, wiping away, or cleansing of Filthy Matter. Now of this Decoction, or Broth, being very clean strained, you shall never take above three Pints at the most, and many times but a Quart; into which you shall put such Drugs as are needful, exceeding not at the most above three or four Ounces, according as the Simples be more or less violent: Of the Oil you shall never use in a Clifter above half a Pint, and of Salt not above three or four Drams. You shall also continually Administer your Clifter luke-warm, either with some long Horn or a large Clifter-pipe made for the purpose, and fixed to the largest Bladder you can get; and this Clifter-pipe is of all the best, and doth least lose Labour. When you do Administer a Clifter, you shall set the Horse's hinder-parts somewhat higher than the fore-parts, and then you shall put the Clifter-pipe in at his Tuel into his Fundament up to the Head, and having the Confection within the Bladder, wring it with a very good strength into his Body. A Clifter should be administered to the Horse when he is rather empty than full paunched, whether it be in the Fore-noon or After-noon. Now for the retaining or holding of the Clifter in the Horse's Body, three Quarters of an Hour is sufficient, of what Quantity soever it be. Now you are to Note by the Way, that assoon as the Clifter is administered unto the Horse's Body, you must draw out the Pipe with all the gentleness that may be, and suddenly clap his Tail to his Tuel, and so hold it with your hand, without any moving or stirring of the Horse, till the Medicine hath his full time of Working.

Now to come unto particular Clifters, that you may know which Clifter is for which purpose; the first is, Take of the Pulp of Coloquintida, half an Ounce, of Dragantium three quarters of an Ounce, of Centuary and of Wormwood, of each half a handful, of Castorum a  
P quarter



quarter of an Ounce, boil them in three Pints of Water, then being strained you shall dissolve therein of Gerologundinum three Ounces, of Salt three quarter of an Ounce, and Oil-Olive half a Pint, and so luke-warm Administer it Clister-wise, as hath been before expressed: This Clister is exceeding soveraign for the Pestilence in Horses, or for any Feaver of what Nature soever.

☞ The next is, To take the Decoction of Mallows, and to mix therewithal, either fresh-Butter or Sallet-Oil, and so luke-warm Administer it: This is of all Clisters the most gentlest, and as the former Clister is absterfiv or cleansing, so this is lenitive and a great easer of Pain: It is most soverain for a Horse that is taken, or that hath any Contraction or Convulsion, and generally for any Costiveness in a Horse whatsoever, proceeding from inward Surfeit or Sicknes, as from the Surfeit by Provender, foundring in the Body, and such like. The next is, to take of Salt-Water, or clean Brine a Quart, and dissolve therein a pretty Quantity of Soap, and then luke-warm Administer it: This Clister is very good for the Cholick, or any other Sicknes of the Guts or Belly. And thus from these three Clisters you may compound many Clisters; but in mine Opinion, if you use no more than them only, they will be fully sufficient.

CHAP. C. *Of Purgations and their Uses.*

THE Purging of Horses is ever by one of these two Ways, either by Pills, or by Potion; Pills are any solid and substantial Stuff fixed together in one Body, and being made into round Balls are cast down the Horse's Throat. And a Potion is, when you give the Horse any liquid purging Matter to drink, whether it be purging Powders dissolved in Wine or Ale, or that it be any other liquid stuff. Now for Pills, they only purge and make clean the Head and Brain, bringing Flegm and other gross Humours down into the Excrements: And Potions cleanse the Stomach, Guts, and every other inward Member. Now the Art of the true careful Farrier is is, in chusing of the Simples, whereof these Pills or Potions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying the same. First then, It is needful that every good Farrier (before he go about to purge his Horse) know with what ill Humour a Horse is oppressed, as whether it proceed from Choler, Flegm, or Melancholy, and where the Humours do most abound; and then what Simples are best to purge those Humours, and with what Property, Quality and Temperament they be endued: For some Simples are most violent, and next Cousins to strong Poisons, as Scammony or Colloquintida: Some again are gentle, and rather Nourishing than Medicinal, as Manna, Cassia, Whey, Prunes, and such like; and some are neither too violent, nor too gentle, but of a mean, as Rheubarb, Agarick, Sena, and Aloes,

**Aloes.** Now the ancient Farriers did use to Purge their Horses with the Pulp of Coloquintida, sometimes with the Roots of Wild-Cucumbers, and sometimes with the Broth of a sodden Whelp mixt with Nitrum and such like ; but at this Day they are not of our Practice, and therefore I wish him, that for his Experience, still to make a trial of strong Medicines, or know the working of every Simple, (which is a most Prize-worthy Ambition,) First to make his Proofs upon Jades, whose Loss he respecteth not, and so by that working to adventure on better Horses.

But to return to my former Purpose : The Farrier who goeth about to Purge a Horse by Purgation, must consider the Nature of the Horse's Disease, and the Strength of the Horse, and with them joyn the Nature, Strength and Quantity of the Medicine ; he must also consider the Climate under which the Horse is Bred, the time of the Disease, the time of the Year, and the time of the Day. For as the Diseases and the Humours which cause the Disease are fundry, so they must be avoided by fundry Medicines, fundry Ways compounded, according as Experience from a continual Practice shall instruct you ; wherein you are to observe and note, that Weak, Delicate, and Tender Horses are not to be purged with that Violence, which Strong, Stubborn and Sturdy Horses are, and therefore in such Cases, the Quality and Quantity is to be looked unto of every Simple. The Climate is to be respected, as whether it be Hot or Cold, and the time of the Disease : For some Diseases must be purged at the beginning, as Fevers, Pestilence, Yellows, Staggers, and all violent inward Diseases, and some not till the Water be thoroughly digested, as Cold, Strangles, and Apofthumations. Now although the Sicknes proceeds from cold Humours, yet you must not Administer as hot Simples in Summer as in Winter ; nor in the contrary Case so cold things in Winter as in Summer, whereby you see the Time and the Season of the Year is to be respected. Then touching respect of the Day, you are to observe that Day to be best that is most temperate, since too much heat maketh a Horse faint, and too much cold doth hinder the Medicine from Working. A little Regard is to be had in the Wind and Weather ; for a moist Day with a South Wind, is to be preferred before a North Wind with a dry Day. Now the best hour of receiving any kind of Potion, is ever in the Morning, after he hath fasted from Meat and Drink all the Night before, Assoon as your Horse hath received any Pill or Potion, let him be walked, or gently ridden up and down one hour at the least, and then set up and suffered to stand on the Bitt two hours after, well littered, cloathed and stopped ; but if you perceive that he beginneth to grow Sick or Ill (as most commonly Horses will) then you shall suffer him to lie down, and assoon as his Sicknes is past, you shall offer him to drink a



Mash of Malt and Water luke-warm: From any other Meat keep him fasting till his Medicine have done Working.

Now to come to particular Receipts and Medicines themselves; you shall easily understand, that although the ancient Farriers do make but two Kinds, that is to say, Pills and Purgations, yet I divide them into three, that is to say, Scourings, Pills, and Purgations: Scourings are those Wholefome, Natural, and gentle purging Medicines, which stirring up no great Flux of Humours, do only keep the Body clean from such Evils as would arise and grow, being every Way as wholefome in Health as in Sicknes, and may most properly be termed Preparatives, or preparers of the Body to entertain more stronger Medicines. To speak then first of the most gentlest and natural -scouring, it is only Grasse being given to a Horse only fifteen Days together, and no more for after that, it fatteth and not scoureth. Next unto Grasse is Forrage, which is only the Blades of green Corn, as Wheat, Rye, Barley, and such like, being given seven Days and no more. Next is green Thistles, being cut up, and given the Horse to eat the space of five Days and no more. And the last of this Nature is the Mash, made in this Manner: Take a Peck of ground Malt, and put it into a Pail, then take a Gallon and a half of Water boiling hot from the Fire, and put it into the Malt, then with a staff, Mash and stir them together at least half an hour, till tasting thee Water you feel it as sweet as Honey, then being luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink.  all these Scourings do only but cleanse the Guts and cool the Body, adding Comforts to the Spirits and engendring Strength, only the Mash is to be used after Labour, or instead of Drink in the time of any great Sicknes. Scourings of a little stronger Nature are these: First, when you give your Horse any Provender, to mix with half a Peck of Oats, a handful or two of clean dressed Hemp-seed: Or else to take a good Quantity of Box-tree Leaves, and put them into a Pewter-Dish, then set them before the Fire, and let them dry leisurely till they be so hard that you may crush them into Powder, then take as much of the Powder of Brimstone as there is Powder of Box, and mix them together, and amongst half a Peck of Oats, mix a handful of this Powder, and give it the Horse to eat; both these scourings are to be used after labour, especially when the Horse hath sweat much.

These two Scourings Work upon no Matter, but what Nature is willing to expel; they purge the Stomach, Head, and Entrails, they kill all kind of Worms and dry up Flegm. Scourings of the strongest Nature are to take of Sallet-Oyl half a Pint, and of New Milk from the Cow a Pint, brew it together, and give it the Horse luke-warm: Or else take a Pint of Muscadine and half a Pint of Sallet-Oyl and being mixt together, give the Horse to drink: Or else half a Pint of Oyl, and

and a Pint of Sack mixt together, and give the Horſe to drink lukewarm.

Theſe Scourings cleanſe the Head, Body, and Guts of all Flegm, or Molten-Greaſe, which any violent Labour hath diſſolved; they are exceeding good for any manner of Cold, or Stoppings in the Wind-pipes, and if you add unto them good good ſtore of Sugarcandy, it will preſerve and keep the Horſe from Sickneſs. Now for Pills, you ſhall very plainly underſtand, that the firſt and eaſieſt are theſe, either to take twenty Cloves of Garlick clean pilled and bruifed, then a quarter of a Pound of ſweet-Butter, and ſo roul up the Garlick in four or five Balls or Pellets as big as two Walnuts a-piece; and ſo taking out the Horſe's Tongue, thruſt them down his Throat one after another: Or elſe to take a quarter of a Pound of Butter, and as much Red Saunders; beat them well together in a Mortar, and then make it into four or five Balls, and then put them down the Horſe's Throat. Pills of ſomewhat ſtrong Nature are to take a handful of Roſemary-Leaves, and chopping them ſmall, mix them with a quarter of a Pound of ſweet-Butter, and then making it into round Balls, give them unto the Horſe: Or elſe take round pieces of raw Melons, and thruſt them down the Horſe's Throat: Or elſe to take five green Figs, and put them down the Horſe's Throat.

☞ The ſtrongeſt Pill is this: Take of Lard two Pound, laid in Water two hours, then take nothing but a quarter of a Pound of the clean Fat thereof, and ſtamp it in a Mortar, and thereto put of Liquoriſh, of Annifeeds, and of Fenugreek, of each beaten into Powder, one Ounce and a half, of Aloes likewiſe in Powder one Ounce, of Agarick half an Ounce, Knead all theſe together like a Paſte, and make thereof four or five Balls, and give it the Horſe. The laſt receipted Pill is ſingular good for the dry Cough, and all the other Pills are moſt ſoveraign for all Infirmities of the Head, which grow either from Flegm, Melancholy, or any other cold or moiſt Cauſe whatſoever. Now for Purgations, which are the ſtrongeſt cleanſers of the Body, they be theſe: Take two Ounces of Myrrh, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and it will purge all Sickneſs which proceedeth of Choler; the Signs whereof are, his Belly will ſwell, be very hot, and he can neither dung nor break-wind. Take a pint of Wine, and beat a raw Egg therein, and add to it a quarter of an Ounce of Brimſtone, and half an Ounce of Myrrh beaten to Powder, and give it the Horſe lukewarm, and it will purge all inward Diſeaſes proceeding of Melancholy. Two Spoonfuls of the powder Diapente, given with half a pint of Swine's Greafe, purgeth all Diſeaſes proceeding of Flegm. Take as much Black-Soap as a Walnut, a Quart of new Milk, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and give it the Horſe lukewarm, and it purgeth all cold Infirmities, but maketh the Horſe exceeding Sick. Take the Guts of a Tench or Barbel, being cut into little



little small pieces, and give it the Horse in a Quart of White-wine, and it will purge the Horse from all Costiveness or pain in the Guts. Rye being boiled, so that it burst not, then dried again, and given the Horse instead of Provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of Worms: Take of Radish-Roots one Ounce, of the Root called Panax, and of Scamony, of each half an Ounce, beat all these together, and boil them in a Quart of Honey, then give the Horse two Spoonfuls of this in a Quart of Ale luke-warm to drink, and it will purge all gross Humours, from whence proceedeth either the Falling-Evil, or any Disease of the Brain.

Take and Boil Elicampane-Roots in Milk till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pap, and then adding thereto half a pint of Sallet-Oil, give it the Horse to drink luke-warm, and this will purge and cleanse any kind of Glanders. Take of sweet Soap a quarter of a Pound, and make it into three Balls, and give them to the Horse, and it will purge all evil Humours whatsoever, both violently, and most abundantly.

CHAP. CI. *A most excellent Scouring for any Horse, Sick or Sound, and especially for Running or Hunting Horses, whose Grease must necessarily be Molten.*

**F**Orasmuch as the greatest Art which doth belong to the Keeper either of Running or Hunting Horses, consisteth in the taking away from the Horse his gross Glut and Fat, which not only offendeth the vital parts, but also stoppeth up the Conduits and Vessels of Wind, and that it cannot any way be done, but by Scouring after Exercise; you shall understand, that the best of all Scourings, which hath hitherto been approved, is this, which I will here set down: You shall take twenty Raisins of the Sun, and pick out the Stones, and ten Figs, which you shall slit in the midst round-wise, boil them in a Pottle of Running-Water till the Water be consumed, and thickned; then take the Powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, and Sugarcandy finely searsed, and mix it with the Raisins and Figs, stamping and working them together till it be brought to stiff Paste, then making round Balls thereof of a pretty bigness, role and cover them all over with sweet Butter, and give so many of them unto the Horse as you shall think meet for his strength; provided that the Day before, you must give your Horse such Exercise as will be sure to melt his Grease, and that immediately before you give him this Medicine, you also warm him thoroughly, that the Humours being again stirred up, the Medicine may work more effectually.

## CHAP. CII. Of Neezing or Fumigation, and the Use thereof.

**T**Here is yet also another manner of purging a Horse, and especially his Head, and that is, by forcing him to Neeze or Snort violently at his Nose, casting forth all filty and gross Matter, which otherwise will offend and oppress the Brain; and this Neezing is wrought sometimes by Fumes or Smoaks, sometimes by Powders, and sometimes by Oils, the sharpness of which, tickling the tender and quick parts of the Head, do compel this Snorting and Neezing: Surely there is no Purgation more wholesome, for it cleanseth and separateth gross Matter, so it comforteth and maketh strong the Brain. Now to come unto particular Medicines which do procure this Neezing, they be these: Squirt into a Horse's Nostrils either Man's Urine which is Old, or the Urine of an Ox which hath had much Rest, and it will force a Horse to Neeze, and is most wholesome for any Quotidian Fever. Take the Powder of Gum-Dracant, Eufens, and Damask Roses well mixt together, and blow it with a Quill into the Horse's Nostrils, and it is good either against the Feaver in Summer or Winter. Take warm Vinegar and squirt it into his Nostrils, and it is comfortable against the Feaver which cometh by raw Digestion.

Take Garlick Stalks a handful, being broke into little pieces, and a good Quantity of Frankincense, and being put upon a Chafing-dish and Coals, hold the Chafing-dish under the Horse's Nostrils, so that the Fume may ascend up into his Head: And this is most excellent against the Head-ach. Take Feathers and Brimstone, and burn them on a Chafing-dish of Coals under the Horse's Nose; or blow Pepper and Perithree beaten to powder up into his Nostrils, either of these are most excellent against the Sleeping-Evil. Take the powder of Motherwort, and blow it up into the Horse's Nostrils, and it is good against the Falling-Evil. Take two Goose-Feathers anointed over with Oil de Bay, and thrust them up and down in the Horse's Nostrils: Or else take Sage, Penny-royal, Wheat, long sodden together, and put into a Bag as hot as may be, which Bag should be so close fastened to the Horse's Head, that all the Smoak and Savour thereof may ascend up into his Nostrils: Or, take a Clout anointed with Soap or Oil de Bay, and rub it up and down his Nostrils as high as may be. Any of these, or all these together are most excellent against any Cold, Poze, or other Obstructions in the Head. Take Orpiment and Sulphur, and burn them on the Coals, and hold it under the Horse's Nose: Or take Oil de Bay, Euforbium, and White Hellebore, and anointing two Feathers therewith, thrust them up into the Horse's Nostrils: Both these are good against the Glanders.

Take of the Stalks of Briony, or Wild-Vine, two handfuls, and bruise them betwixt two Stones, and being so bruised, put them into a Linnen Bag,



Bag, and fasten the Bag to the Horse's Head that the Scent may go up into his Nostrils without touching the Herb with his Mouth, and this is excellent against the Mourning of the Chine, or any inward Cough. Take of Rosemary, of Naid, and of Sage dried and beaten into fine Powder, of each a like weight, and with a Quill blow them up into the Horse's Nostrils; or take the Powder of White Pepper, or of Salt Nitre, or of Iris Illirica, or Black Eleboris, and blow them with a Quill up into the Horse's Nostrils: Or take Linnen chopt, dipt in the Dregs of Oil, and setting it on Fire, then suddenly put it out again, and let the Smoak ascend up into the Horse's Nostrils: Or squirt into his Nostrils Aristolochia mixt with Wine: Or Salt Nitre mixt with Water, or Salt and Roch Allom mixt with Wine, or take Ground-Ivy beaten small and thrust up into his Nose: Or Bay-Berries beaten small, and burnt on the Coals under the Horse's Nose: Or a Coal of Fire put into a lump of wet Hay, making a smothering Smoak, and held under the Horse's Nose. And all of these are most excellent against any Disease of the Head, especially Staggers, Colds, Glanders, Strangle, and such like.

Yet all these have their several Imperfections: The best Fumes then of all others whatsoever is, To take the best Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamine, and bruising them grossly together, burn them under the Horse's Nose.

CHAP. CIII. Of Frictions and Baths, and of their several Uses.

**F**RICTIONS or Baths, are a certain Rubbing, Anointing, or Bathing of a Horse's Body all over, especially against the Hair, because the Medicine may sink in so much the better, with Comfortable and Sovereign Unguents whose Vertues do loosen the Skin, clear up the inward Spirits, and spread a lively heat and feeling over the whole Body: And of Frictions, both according to the Opinion of the Old Farriers and also the best of this present Age, these are the most Sovereign: Take of Damask Roses one Pound, of old Oil one Pint, of strong Vinegar one Pint and a half, of Mint and Rue beaten into Powder, of each one Ounce and a half, together with one old dry Nut, beat them, and mingle them well together: Then being strained and made luke-warm, if it be in the Summer-time, and that the Sun shine hot, take the Horse abroad; but if otherwise, keep him in the Stable, and heating a Bar of Iron exceeding hot, hold it over, and on each side the Horse, and with the Ointment rub and chafe the Horse all over against the Hair until the Horse begin to sweat; then cloath the Horse very warm, and let him stand. This Friction is excellent against all Winter Feavers, or any inward Sickneess that cometh of Cold. Take of Black Eleborus two or three handfuls, and boil it in a sufficient Quantity of strong Vinegar, and with that rub and chafe all the Horse's Head and Body quite over once or twice a Day, and  
it

it is most excellent against Frenzy, Madnes, or any Driness, or Scaliness of the Skin.

 Take Oil de Bay, or Dialthea, and anoint all the Horse's Body all over therewith, holding a Pan of Coals, or a hot Bar of Iron near the Ointment, to make it sink in; or else make him a Bath of Running Water, wherein is boiled Rue, Wormwood, Sage, Juniper, Bay-leaves, and Hyssop, and Bathe all his Body therewith: Either of these are most soveraign for the Mourning of the Chine, or any Disease of the Liver, Lungs, or Spleen. Take Wine and Oil, and having mixt them together, Chafe and Rub the Horse's Body therewith, and it is most soveraign for any inward Sicknes, especially the Liver. To Bathe a Horse in Salt-Water is very wholesome, both for the Horse's Skin, and also for any Disease in the Stomach.

Lastly, Take of Mallows, of Sage, of each two or three handfuls, and a Rose Cake, boil them together in water, then being boiled till the water be all consumed, add a good Quantity of Butter, or Sallet-Oil, and mixing them together, bathe all the Horse's four Legs therewith, and all the Parts of his Body also: and there is nothing more soveraign for a Horse that hath been tired or over-traveled. To let Blood, and with that Blood, and Oil, and Vinegar, presently to Anoint his Body, helps most sorts of Infirmities.

CHAP. CIV. *General Drenches or Medicines for all the inward Diseases or Surfeits in Horses.*

 **T** Here is no Medicine more soveraign for all Diseases which breed in a Horse's Body, than to take half an Ounce of the Powder called Diapente, and brew it either with a pint of Sack, if it be for Colds, as Muskadine, if it be for heart-sicknes, and to give it the Horse to drink fasting in the Mornning: And do this at least three Mornings together, especially when the Horse beginneth first to Droop. The next to this, is, To take Selladine two handfuls, both Root and Leaves, chop them and bruise them: Then take of Rue as much, Red-Sage and Mint as much, add of Aloes half an Ounce; boil these in a pottle of Beer or Ale till the one half be consumed, and then give it the Horse luke-warm to drink.

Take four Ounces of Diapente, and mix it with four Ounces of clarified Honey, and keep it in a close Glass, and give half an Ounce thereof with a pint of sweet Wine to the Horse to drink, and it is an excellent Drench, Take of Liquorish an Ounce, Anniseeds, Cummin-seeds, Elicampane-Roots, of each half an Ounce, of Turmerick and Bays, of each a quarter of an Ounce, of Long-Pepper and Fennugreek, of each two Drams, beat these small and searse them, and put five spoonfuls thereof into a Quart of Ale warmed with a little Butter or Oil, and it is



very soveraign for any Disease coming of old Causes. Take a Quart of good Ale or Wine, a raw Egg beaten and mingled with twelve Scruples of quick Sulphur, and four Scruples of Myrrh made into powder, and give it the Horse to drink; it is a good Drench. The Powder of Brimstone mixt with sweet Wine, is a good Drench also. The Root of the Sea- Onion, the Roots of Poplar, called the Greek Rhamnos, mingled with common Salt, given in Water, keepeth the Horse long in health. Take fine powder of Fenugreek, and bruise it; seethe it in Water till it wax thick, add a Pound of sweet-Butter, an Ounce of Linseed Oil, and as much of the Oil of Nuts; mingle them well together, and give it the Horse in three or four Days to drink, by a pretty Quantity at a time. Selladine simply of it self, or Rue simply of it self, boiled in Beer or Ale, and as much Brimstone as a Walnut, is an excellent Drench for any long taken Surfeit. Garlick and Housleek beaten together in a Mortar, and then boiled in Beer or Ale from a Pottle to a Quart, then mixt with Liquorish, Anniseeds, and Sugar-candy, and a pretty Quantity of Sallet-Oil, is an excellent Drench for any inward sickness, which doth proceed from hot Causes, as is the Frenzy, the Anticor, and such like. And thus much of general Drenches, and their Uses.

CHAP. CV. *How to make the Powder called Diapente.*

THIS Word *Diapente* is as much as to say, Composition of five Simples; for the Receipt is thus compounded: Take of Gentian, of Aristolochia, of Bay-berries, of Myrrh, and of the shavings of Ivory, of each a like Quantity, beat them into very fine Powder, and then searse it. This Powder is praised to be a preservative or Medicine against all inward Diseases: And therefore I would wish every Farrier, and all such as are the Masters of good Horses never to be without it.

CHAP. CVI. *A most Famous Receipt, which is both a singular Drench and singular Ointment, called of the Italians Accopum.*

TAKE of Euforbium half an Ounce, of Castoreum one Ounce of Adraces half a quarter of a pound, Bedellium half an Ounce an half a quarter, of Pepper a quarter of a Pound, Fox-Grease half an Ounce, Opoponax one Ounce, Laferpitium, three quarters of an Ounce, Amoniacum half a quarter of a pound, Pigeon's dung as much, Galbanum half an Ounce, Nitrum one Ounce one quarter, Spuma Nitrum three quarters of an Ounce, Laudanum a full quarter of a pound, Perethrum and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an Ounce, Cardamum two Ounces, Seed of Rue, half a quarter of a Pound, seed of Agnus Castus one Ounce, Parsley half an Ounce, dried Roots of Iraos, or Flower-de Luce, one Ounce one quarter. Hyssop and Carobalsamum a quarter

quarter of a Pound, Oil of Flower-de-Luce a Quarter of a Pound, and half a quarter, Oil de Bay as much, Oil of Ppikenard three quarters of a Pound, Oleum Cyprinum three quarters of a Pound, and half a quarter, the oldest Oil-Olive one Pound and a half, Pitch a quarter of a Pound and two Ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a Pound, melt every one of these that will melt, severally by themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest of the Simples beaten into fine Powder; and after that they have been a little boiled on the Fire, take it off and strain it into a fair Vessel, and whensoever you will give your Horse any thereof, give it him with Wine, or four or five Spoonfuls with a Pint of Sack or Muscadine: And if with long keeping it waxeth any thing stiff or hard, then soften it with the Oil of Cypress, so that it may be good and thick.

This Confection is both a Medicine and an Ointment; if you put it in the Horse's Nostrils, it will draw out all noisome Humours, and discharge his Head of all Grievs: If you anoint his Body therewith, it healeth all Convulsions, Colds, and Dizziness, or Withering of the Body; and if you Bathe his Limbs therewith, it driveth away all Weariness and Tiring; and if you give it him with Wine to drink, it cureth all inward Maladies.

CHAP. CVII. *How to make the Oil of Oats.*

**T**AKE of Milk two Gallons, and warming it on the Fire, put there- to a quarter of a Pound of burnt-Allom, which will make it run of Curds, then take out the Curds and cast it away, then strain the Whey thro' a course Cloath in a clean Vessel: Then take a quarter of a Peck of clean husked Oats that were never dried, and put them into the Whey, and set them on the fire till the Oats burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender that is full of Holes, so that the Whey may go gently from them without any pressing (for you must keep the Oats as moist as may be:) This done, put the Oats in a Frying-pan, and set them over the Fire, stirring them continually till you see the Vapour or Smoak of them not ascend upwards, but as it were run about the Pan, then suddenly take them off, and putting them into a Press, press them most exceedingly, and look what cometh from them, is only the Oil of them, which you must save in a close Glass. Now there are other more artificial and curious ways to Distill and Extract this Oil, but this of all other is the most easiest and surest for every mean Capacity. This Oil of Oats is of all Medicines and Simples whatsoever, the most excellent and soverain for a Horse's Body, as being extracted from the most natural, wholesome and best Food which doth belong unto a Horse's Body. This Oil being given by four or five Spoonfuls at a time in a Pint of sweet Wine, or a Quart of strong Ale, or some of the Whey poured into the Horse's Nostrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other Medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the



best of all Purgations; for it purgeth away all those venemous and filthy Humours, which feedeth the most incurable Farcy whatsoever. And for mine own part, as long as I can conveniently come by this Oil of Oats, so long will I never in any Medicine whatsoever, use any other Oil or Uunctuous Matter than it only; I having found by Experience, that it is the soveraign of all Simples of that Kind, whatsoever they be.

CHAP. CVIII. *Certain brief Observations to be observed at Home and Abroad, whilst the Horse is in Health.*

**T**H E S E Observations now following, are gathered from the most exact Principles, and infallible Grounds of the best and surest approved Horse-men either of this Kingdom, or any other Nation within *Christendom*.

First then, for the general Feeding of your Horse when he is in health, you shall feed him with Straw, Hay, Oats, fine little Wheat, Beans, Barley, Bread made of Beans, Pease, or Fitches, or any other Meat that swells not in the Horse's Body.

It is the Opinion of *Camerarius*, first to give Provender, then Hay, and lastly Water; but our English Custom is, first Hay and then Water, and lastly Provender.

In your Travel feed your Horse betimes for all Night, that thereby the Horse may sooner take his Rest.

The Quantity of Provender which you shall give your Horse at one time, shall be as much as you can hold in the Palm of both your Hands at six times, or three Pints by Measure.

Horse's Bread which is made of clean Beans, clean Pease, or clean Fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your Horse's Meat and Drink be exceeding sweet and clean, yet his Water by no means extream cold, running Water from the Rock; for it pirceth too much.

To rub your Horse's Mouth with Salt and Wine, will make him both eat and drink with a much better Appetite.

Let your Horse neither eat when he is hot, nor drink when he is hot, nor presently after his Travel.

Labour your Horse moderately, when the Weather is either extream hot or extream cold, that so you may avoid extream heats or sudden colds.

Travel not your Horse too late, that your own Eye may see him well dried, and well fed before you take your own rest.

Never take your Saddle from your Horse's Back suddenly.

Lend not your Horse, lest your self walk on Foot.

Let your Horse lie clean and dry, keep your Stable sweet, let no Swine lie near it, nor let any Pullen come within it.

Let your Horse be ever tied with two Reins.

Let

Let the Light of your Stable be ever towards South and North, yet so as the North Windows may in the Winter be shut close at pleasure, and opened in the Summer to give fresh Air.

Ride your Horse oft a little on Stony Ways, that he may the better feel his Feet, and harden his Hoofs.

Have ever near your Stable some close plain Green, that your Horse being let loose, he may oft tumble himself thereon.

Let your Horse's Bed be of soft sweet Straw, somewhat above his Knees, of which, Wheat-straw is the best: For though Barley-straw be the softest, yet a Horse will covet to eat it, and it is unwholesome, and Wheat-straw is not unwholesome to eat, yet it is hard to lie upon: As for Oat-straw it is the best in the Superlative, for it is both wholesome to eat, and soft to lie upon.

Curry or Dress your Horse twice a-Day, that is, before Water, and when he is curried, rub him with your Hand and with a Rubber; his Head should be rubbed with a wet Cloath, and his Cods made clean with a dry Cloth: His Foretop, his Mane, and his Tail, should be often wet with a wet Mane-comb, and ever where the Horse's hair is thinest, there Curry the gentlest.

Let the Plaunces of your Stable lye even and level, that your Horse may stand at his Ease, and not prove Lambe by too much oppressing his hinder-parts.

Let not any Mud-wall be within your Horse's reach, for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholesome.

Give your Horse plenty of Garbage (which is chopt Wheat-straw) both with his Provender, and without.

Let your Hay-bottles be very little, and tied very hard: For so your Horse shall eat with the best Stomach, and make the least Waste.

To sprinkle Water upon your Hay, is most wholesome, and to sprinkle Fenugreek upon your Provender, is as soveraign: The first is good for the Wind, the latter for Worms.

Give your Horse daily Exercise, for that gets the best Stomach to his Meat.

Purge your Horse once a Year with Grasse, or with green blades of Corn, called Forrage, for fifteen Days together; yet before you purge, in any Case let him Blood; and whilst he is in purging, by no means let him have any Provender.

A Horse after Travel hath ever more Blood than any Beast whatsoever.

Green Grasse or Forrage cleanseth the Blood, encreaseth Strength, healeth Diseases, avoideth Melancholy, helpeth the Horse's Growth, and maketh the Skin Smooth: Whilst the Horse is at Soil, by no means let him take Cold.

The Northern Man Watereth two Hours before he Rideth at the least, then



then lets the Horse eat a little Hay, then gives Provender, but not much, and Bridleth the Horse up a quarter of an hour before he rideth: At Night he Watereth two Miles before he taketh his Lodging, then Rideth easily: he neither walketh his Horse nor stalleth him, nor loofeth any Girt, but only rubbeth him very clean, and so lets him bite upon his Bridle half an Hour after, with good store of Litter under him; then he gives the Horse Hay, and after Provender, before he goeth to water again (yet but a little) then see the Horse thoroughly well dressed and rubbed, well littered and most sufficiently meated,

There be others which walk after Labour, then rub well, littereth and unbridleth; both which be good, so that the one hath not too much walking, not the other too cold a Stable. But howsoever stuff not your Horse backwards, but betwixt his fore Legs, and foremost girt: For backward stuffing is perillous, lest drawing his Yafd when he would stale, he draw back in his sheath any of the Litter that stops him. The Northern Man's use agreeth with the French Principles, which saith, Use no other walking than your self on your Horse-back by riding him gently till you come at your Inn, and so make him cold, then shake Litter under him, rub his Legs, his Belly and every part of his Body well, till he be dry, then unbridle him, rub his Head well, and give him Hay; slack no Girt till it be Night, that the Windows be shut; suffer the Horse to drink but a little at once, to avoid sudden cooling of the Stomach; or driving the Horse into a shaking Fever: At Night rub and curry well, and feed according to the Horse's Stomach.

Other good Farriers ride gently till the Horse's Sinews be chafed, and never water in Travel till the Horse have staled, and forbear to Travel him fast before he hath drank, that he may not drink in his great heat, and they hold the standing Water the best; after water for a Mile they ride softly till his Water be warmed in his Belly, and before they come to their Inn they do not Water, nor of an hour after they have unbridled; then they cloath well and give Provender, having a care that their Horses stand not in the Wind, and that they have been rubbed dry and clean. Now all these Principles are exceeding good, yet I would wish every Traveler to learn how his Horse hath been used, and that Custom (if it be not too much against Reason) still to follow.

If you come late to your Inn, and that your Journey be great and earnest, so that your Horse will not eat till he have drank, and yet is hot notwithstanding, then let his Drink be Milk given in the dark, lest the whiteness make him refuse it: This is both cordial and pleasant: If you cannot get Milk enough, then mingle Milk with water lukewarm, for no Drink should be given to a Horse hotter.

If your Horse either by Labour or any Surfeits be brought low, lean, and weak, you shall give him Mares Milk to Drink many Days together, and it will make him strong. It

It is not good to wash your Horse, especially if he be either hot or very Fat: Otherwise you may wash his Legs above his Knees, so that in no Case you wash his Belly, and that you ride him a good round Pace after his Washing, then by no means Walk him, but let him up and Dress him: The purer the Water is wherein you wash your Horse, the more wholesome it is, so that it is not too extream cold.

The best hours to wash your Horse in, (when he lives at rest) is betwixt seven and eight in the Morning, and four or five in the Evening.

When you Travel, at every steep Hill light, both to refresh your Horse and your self.

Let a fat or hot Horse have his Water at four times, and not so much as he will drink at once; give him Provender twice at Night, and but once in the Morning; let his Cloaths neither be too hot, nor with Straw too much stuffed: When he eateth good Hay, let him have less Provender than when he eateth Straw: Give his Meat by little at once to avoid glutting of him, and let him stand two hours every Day without Meat.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth, profit, preserve, and doth keep both strength of Body and Legs; for in rubbing and combing a Horse doth take much delight, and it doth better than much Meat.

To feed with Barley (according to the Opinion of the ancient *Italians*) ingendreth good Blood, increaseth Strength and Courage, and maintaineth Health; but with us here in *England*, we find Oats to be much better feeding.

In the Dog-days it is not wholesome to ride your Horse oft in the Water to allay his natural heat.

The Masters Eye to see his Horse well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the Stable sweet and clean kept, preserveth health, and wonderfully feedeth the Horse.

Cleanse and pick the soles and bottoms of your Horse's feet oft, and stuff them well with Ox-dung, anoint his Hoofs with fresh Grease, Tar, or Tupertine.

Much Rest is the Mother and Nurse of many Diseases.

When you Ride, look often to your Saddle, and your Horse's Shoes, and you shall find more ease in your Journey.

#### CHAP. CXI. *Certain special Principles in Foals and in Horses.*

**T**HE Foals whose Legs be long, will never be tall; for of all Beasts their Legs in length ever grow the least, and by the bigness of their Legs you shall guess the Strength and greatness of their Bodies.

Let your Colts, if you can possibly, never be housed till they be past three Years old.

The Greek Horse (which we call the Turkey Horse) is a most excellent Horse, swift, bold, well headed, tall and strong; many of them be White, some Bay, some Sorrel, and some Black. The



The Arabian Horse is most Swift and most Beautiful.

The Horse of *Africa*, which we call the *Barbary* Horse, is of good Courage, Swift, and Nimble, and therefore both the Turkey Horse and he must be used with all Lenity and Gentleness, and not with Beating.

The Friezeland Horse is Fiery, yet the worst of any.

The Flemish Horse is worse than the Friezeland.

The Spanish Gennet is Good, Swift, and Light.

The Neapolitan Courser for all Uses is most Excellent and Beautiful.

Observe to win your Horse by Patience and Gentleness, and never be Angry or Mad with your Horse, if he be of great Mettle; only the Dull Horse must with much Beating be quickned and inflamed.

Anoint your Bitt when you put it first into your Horse's Mouth, with Honey and the Powder of Liquorish, or else with Honey and Salt, and at no time put any Bitt or Snaffle into your Horse's Mouth before you have washed it.

Never take your Horse back before you have the Bridle-Rein fast in your hands, and when you walk down any Hill, by no Means drive your Horse loose before you.

If your Horse have a long Back, let him have a large Saddle, and if he have a low Back let the Saddle have a high Seat, and if his Back be short, let the Bolsters stand the nearer and closer together.

If your Horse be Dull, you must Spur him soundly, and after such Spurring rub his Sides with Salt.

#### CHAP. CX. *Certain general Observations concerning Mares.*

**I**N length and height, a Mare groweth till she be five Years old, and a Horse till he be six.

When a Mare is past two Years old she may be Covered, but the best time is after four Years old.

Common Mares may bring Foals every Year, but let your best Mares bring but every second Year, especially if they bring Horse-Colts.

After Covering by no Means Travel your Mare.

To get Horse-Colts, Cover before the Full of the Moon, and when the Sign is a Fe-male: And to get Mare-Colts Cover after the Full, and in the Male Signs: For note it, there be Twelve Signs, Six Male, and Six Fe-male.

To make a Mare stand to her Horfing, set her by the Horse two or three Days that he may much desire, and be acquainted before he Cover her, After bring them out, and let him Serve her, and have ready a Pail of Water, which, when the Horse shrinketh from her, pour upon the Ridge of the Mare's Back, the set them so far asunder as that the one may not hear the other: Do this three Mornings, and three Evenings together, the let her not come ner the Horse after, till she be knit,  
left

lest the Desire of him again make her to shoot out that which she kept before.

To know where your Mare be with Foal about Christnias, or no, pour a little Water into her Ear, and if she only shake her Head, she is then with Foal, but if she shake both Head and Body also, she is not with Foal.

When you wean your Foals, take them from the Mares four Days before the Full of the Moon, and after the Foals have so remained four and twenty Hours, let them again Suck till they wax very full, then remove them for altogether, and the next Morning give every one three slips of Savin, and so after let them have till they be three Years old, all plenty of Meat abroad, rather than in the Stable.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either Neapolitan Courser, or Arabian, Turk, or Barbary; and for Amblers, either the Spanish Gennet, or the Irish Hobby.

Put your Mares to the Horse, from Middle March to Middle May, or Middle June, the Moon having newly changed.

It is good to put the Horse and the Mare for three or four Nights together in some vast empty House, and in the Morning take the Horse away and feed him well; but feed your Mare sparingly, especially give her a little Water.

At the end of six Months, by no Means chafe your Mares, for then they are Quickning and may easily be made to cast their Foals.

The Wall-Eye either in Mare or Horse, doth never see perfectly, especially when there is any Snow on the Ground.

A Mare goeth with Foal Eleven Months and Ten Days.

Let your Mare be of a mean Stature, large and broad, and of good Shapes; and the Stallion of like Shape, but somewhat taller; and temper their Natures thus: Put unto the hot Horse the cool Mare, and to the hot Mare the cool Horse: And let your Ground wherein you Breed, be dry, hilly, and with running Streams in it.

CHAP. CXI. *Certain special Notes to be observed in the buying of a Horse.*

**FIRST**, Mark his Colour and his Shape, that is to say, a comely well proportioned Head, with an out-looking Eye, good well-raised Shoulders, and a thick large Breast, broad Brawn, large and broad flat Legs, short Pasterns, and little Feet: For long Pasterns shew Weakness, and broad Feet shew dulness; feel if he have no Glanders between his Chaps, no Splents, Curb nor Spaven; look he be not Purfick or Broken-winded, put your Hand before his Eyes, to know if he sees well, look into his Mouth for his Age: If he be past eight Years old, feel all down the strunt of his Tail with your Hand, and if you feel that it be smooth, then the Horse is not very old, but if it have any rough Knobs towards the End, buy him not, for his good Days are past. Let him run at the Halter's-end, for if he be lame having that Liberty he would favour that Leg which is amiss, and not lean upon it. If he turn up the White of his Eye, or lay his Ear to his Neck when he is ridden, he is a sullen Jade, and full of naughty Qualities: If when you stir him in the Stable, he stare and look back upon you with a stout Countenance, it is a Token of good Stomach in him; and great aptness to be taught; if he stir the end of his Tail as he passeth out, and is ridden, and yet doth not whisk it, it sheweth that his Pace is unperfect; be sure to see him turn as short as may be, that you may know whether he be swayed in the Back or no: The middle stature is the best, and the short knit Horse is the strongest. The Wall-Eye ever seeth worst.



The Horse that is of Nature gentle, swift, light, nimble, of easie pace and good colour, strong feet, and good loins, speedy in eating, good at his Proven-der is ever the best for Use, and the readiest Money in the Market at all times. See if the Hair in the Spurring place be White; for it argueth slowness and Spur-galling.

The Horse that will Paw and beat the Ground with his Foot when he is stayed from going forwards, is ever like to be good and durable in Travel.

Many other Notes there are that are needless to rehearse, which by the ob-serving of these will easily come into your Memory.

#### CHAP. CXII. *General Notes concerning some Simples already spoken of.*

**A**LL manner of Marrows, or Piths, of what kind soever they be, must be kept by themselves in a dry cool place, and preserved from all Filth or Uncleaness, and from the Annoyance either of Wind or Fire, and so they will last fully out a whole Year.

You shall keep no Syrups nor sweet Electuaries, nor Pills, nor Powders, nor Conserves of Flowers, nor any Ointments, Suets, or Emplastors, above one whole Year; only bitter Electuaries, or Conserves of Fruits or Roots, will last fully out two Years.

Of Oils, some will last long, some must be new made: Oils extracted out of Wood or Metals, will last long.

Gather Roots in Autumn, but take the small Sprigs from them, and make them clean and dry.

Dry small Roots in the Shade and Wind, and great Roots either in the Wind and Sun, or by the Fire; lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keep long, provided that neither Sun nor Moisture injure nor hurt them.

Gather all manner of Herbs when they do most flourish, and dry them in the Shade, except they be very moist and apt to putrify; they last for the most part a whole Year.

Gather Seeds and Fruits when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole Year.

Gather the Rind or Bark of any Simple when the Herb is ripe; dry them, and they will last many Years.

*The End of the First B O O K.*

**The**

# The TABLE of the First Book containing all Cures Physical.

**N**atural Composition of Horses Bodies. Page. 1. Of the four Elements their Vertues and Operations, *ibid.* Of Temperaments, their several Kinds, and how far they extend in Horses, p. 4. Of Humours, to what End they serve, p. 6. Of Members, and their several Kinds, p. 7. Of Powers, and how a Horse's Body is governed by them, p. 8. Of Actions or Operations, whereto they belong, p. 9. Of Spirits, and in what Part of the Horse's Body they remain, p. 10. Of the six Things not Natural, how they Profit and how they Hurt, p. 11. Of Horse's Complexion, p. 13. Of inward Sickneses, the Causes and several Kinds thereof, p. 15. Of the signs of Sicknes, and of what Nature it consisteth, p. 16. General Observations in the Physicking of Horses, p. 19. Of the Urine, and Excrements of a Horse, p. 21. Of Fevers in general, and the divers Kinds thereof, p. 23. Of the Quotidian or every Day's Fever, and the Cure, p. 25. Of the Tertian Fever, *ibid.* Of the Quartan Fever p. 26. Of the Fever Continual, *ibid.* Of the Heftick Fever, p. 27. Of the Fever taken in Autumn, or the Fall of the Leaf, *ibid.* Of the Fever taken in the Summer Season, p. 28. Of the Fever taken in the Winter Season, *ibid.* Of the Fever which cometh by Surfeit of Meat only, p. 29. Of Fevers Extraordinary, and first of Pestilent Fevers, *ibid.* Of the Plague and Pestilence in Horses, of some called the Gargil or Murrain, p. 30. Of the Fever Accidental, coming by some Wound received, p. 31. One general, certain, and approved cure for nll the Fevers and Sickneses formerly rehearsed, never yet disclosed from the Author's Breast, *ibid.* Of the Diseases in the Head, p. 32. Of Head-ach, or Pain in the Head, p. 33. Of the Frenzy, and Madness in a Horse, *ibid.* Of the Sleeping-Evil or Lethargy in a Horse, p. 34. Of a Horse that is taken, or of Shrow-running, *ibid.* Of the Staggers, p. 36. Of the Falling-Evil, p. 37. Of the Night-Mare, p. 38. Of the Apoplexy or Palsy, p. 39. Of the general Cramps, or Convulsion of Sinews, p. 40. Of the Cold, or Poze in the Head, p. 42. How certainly to take away any Cold, Poze, or Ratling in the Head, how violent soever, without giving any inward Medicine, p. 43. The Perfection and best of all Medicines for Poze or Cold, *ibid.* Of a Horse that is Hide-bound, p. 44. Of the Glanders, p. 45. Two most certain and lately found out Medicines, which will without all fail cure any Glanders, though our Farriers hold it impossible, d. 48. Of the Mourning of the Chine, p. 49. A most rare and certain approved Medicine, to cure any High-running Glanders, called, The Mourning of the Chine; held of all Men incurable, p. 51. Of the Cough, *ibid.* Of the inward, or wet Cough, pag. 52. Of the Dry Cough, p. 53. Two excellent true and well approved Medicines for any Cold, dry Cough, shortness of Breath, Purfiness, or Broken-winded, p. 55. The best of all other Medicines, for any dry Cough, never before revealed, p. 56. Of



the Frettized, Broken, and Rotten Lungs, *ibid.* Of the Putrid and Rotten Lungs, p. 65. Of Shortness of Breath, or Puffiness, p. 66. Of the Broken-winded, Purick Horse, p. 67. Of the dry Malady, or Consumption, p. 69. Of the Consumption of the Flesh, p. 70. How to make a Lean Horse Fat, p. 71. The Mirror and Master of all Medicines, teaching how to make the leanest and unsoundest that may be, fat, sound, and fit either for Market or Travel, in the space of fourteen Days, p. 65. Of the Breast-Pain, or Pain in the Breast, p. 66. Of the Sickness of the Heart, called the Anticor, *ibid.* Of tired Horses, p. 68. Of the Diseases of the Stomach, and first of the loathing of Meat, p. 71. Of the casting out of the Horse's Drink, p. 72. Of Surfeiting with glut of Proven-der, *ibid.* Of Foundring in the Body, being a Surfeit got either by Meat, Drink, or Labour, p. 73. Of the Greedy-Worm, or Hungry-Evil in Horses, p. 75. Of the Diseases of the Liver in general, and first of the Inflammation thereof, *ibid.* Of Obstructions, Stoppings, or hard Knobs on the Liver, p. 76. Of the Consumption of the Liver, p. 78. Of the Diseases of the Gall, p. 79. Of all such Diseases as are incident to the Spleen, p. 80. Of the Yellows or Jaun-dice, p. 81. Of the Dropsie or Evil Habit of the Body, p. 83. Of the Dis-eases in the Guts of a Horse, and first of the Cholick, p. 85. Of the Belly-ach, or Fraying in the Belly, p. 86. Of the Costiveness, or Belly-bound, *ibid.* Of the Lax, or too much Scouring of Horses, p. 87. Of the Bloody-Flux in Horses, p. 88. Of the falling down of a Horse's Fundement, p. 89. Of the Bots, Truncheons, and Worms in a Horse's Body, p. 90. Of the Pain in a Horse's Kidneys, p. 93. Of the Diseases belonging to the Bladder or Urine, and first of the Strangury, *ibid.* Of the Pain-piss, or pissing with Pain, p. 94. Of the Stone, or Piss suppress in a Horse, *ibid.* Of a Horse that Pisseth Blood, p. 96. Of the Colt-Evil, p. 97. Of the Muttering of the Yard, p. 98. Of the shedding of the Seed, *ibid.* Of the falling of the Yard, p. 99. Of the Diseases incident to Mares; and first of the Barrenness of the Womb, p. 100. Of the Pestilent Consumption in Mares, *ibid.* Of the Rage of Love in Mares, *ibid.* Of Mares which cast their Foals p. 101. Of Mares that are hard of Foaling, *ibid.* Of Making a Mare cast her Foal, p. 102. Of the Drinking of Horse-Leaches by Horses, *ibid.* Of swallowing down Hen's-dung, or any Venemous thing whatsoever, *ibid.* Of Purging Medicines in General, and first of the Suppository p. 103. Of Clusters and Uses p. 104. Of Purgations and their Uses, p. 106. A most excellent Scouring for any Horse, Sick, or Sound, and especially for Running or Hunting-Horses, whose Grease must necessarily be Molten, p. 110. Of Needing or Fumigation, and the use thereof, p. 111. Of Frictions and Bath, and of their several uses, p. 112. General Drenches or Medicines for all the inward Diseases or Surfeits in Horses, p. 113. How to make the Powder called Di-apente, p. 114. A most Famous Receipt, which is both a singular Drench and sin-gular Ointment, called of the Italians, Accopum, *ibid.* How to make the Oil of Oats, p. 115. Certain brief Observations to be observed at Home and abroad whilst the Horse is in Health, p. 116. Certain special Principles in Foals and in Horses, p. 119. Certain General Observations concerning Mares, p. 120. Certain special Notes to be observed in the buying of a Horse, p. 121. General Notes concerning some Simples already spoken of, *ib.*

MARKHAM'S

# MARKHAM's Masterpiece.

## The SECOND BOOK,

Containing all Cures Chyrurgical, or such Infirmities as being only outward, require the Use of *Chyrurgery*, and are called in Horse-Leach-Craft, *Horses Sorances*. Corrected and Enlarged.

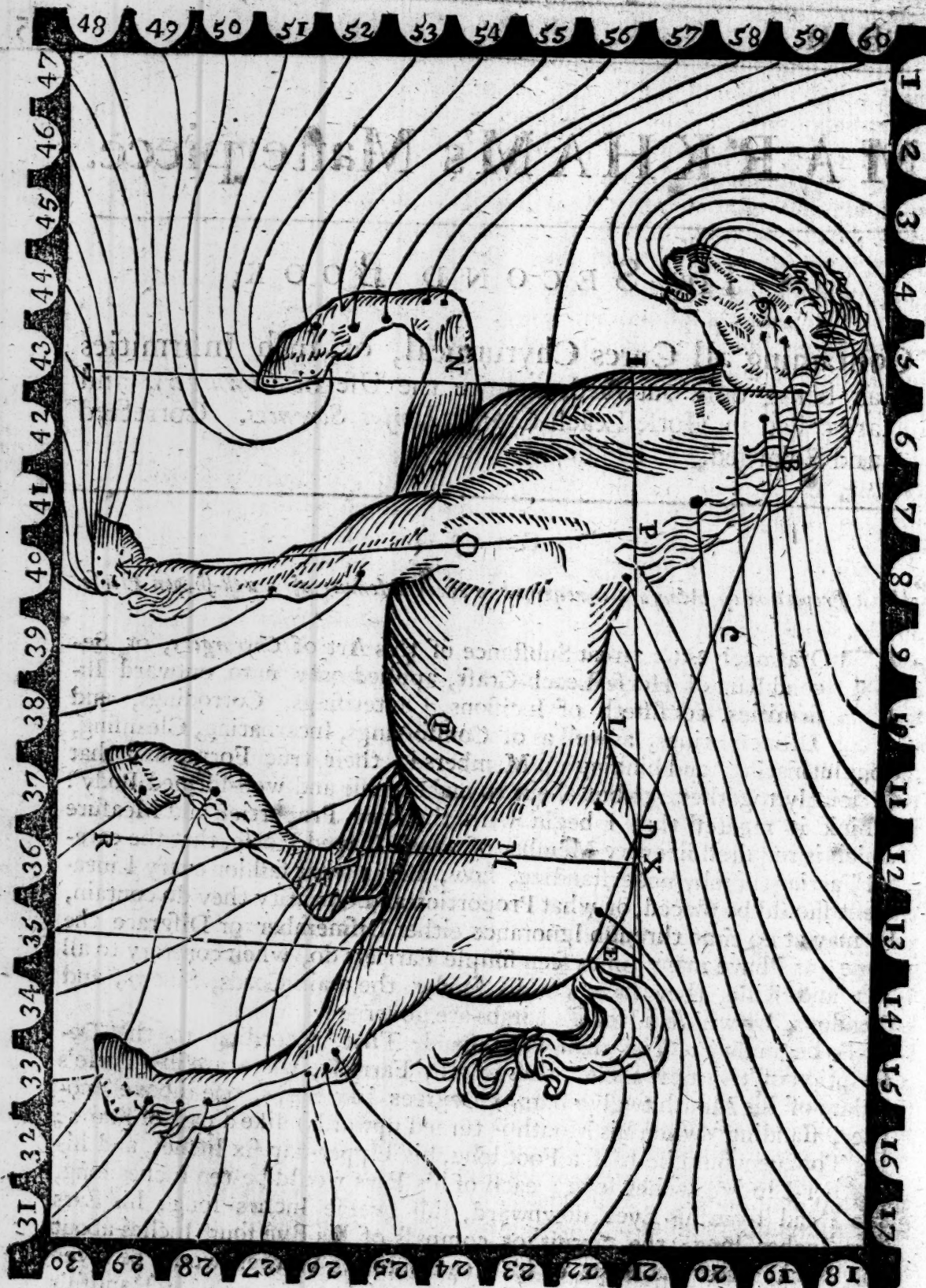
### CHAP. I.

*What Proportion of Measure is required in every Member of a well-shapen Horse.*

**F**Orasmuch as the great Substance of this Art of *Chyrurgery*, or Second Part of Horse-Leach-Craft, applied only unto outward Infirmities, consisteth of Incisions, Cauterisings, Corrodings, and Dismembrings, as well as of Comfortings, Incarnating, Cleansing, Conglutinating, and binding up Members in their true Form, and that all jointly together, go but about to make a true and well-formed Body: I think it meetest that I begin with the true Proportion and Measure which is required in every Member of a well-shaped Horse, that the careful Farrier thereby understanding, how, and in what fashion every Lineament should be placed, or what Proportion and Quantity they do contain, he may at no time through Ignorance either Dismember or Disgrace the same; as I have many times seen simple Farriers do, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they have cut in sunder the main Cords, Sinews, and Tendons, by which a Horse's Limbs are governed.

To begin then: You shall understand, That, according to the Description of the most ancient and worthy Farriers, there are in a Horse's Palate of his Mouth twelve Bars or Degrees like Steps, one above another, standing (when his Mouth is turned upwards) like a pair of Stairs; his Tongue would be half a Foot long, his Upper-Lip six Inches, and his Nether-Lip five Inches long; each of his Jaws would be ten Inches long, his Head from his Eyes downward, full twelve Inches long; his Ears five Inches long; the circuit or compass of his Eye four Inches about his Neck from the Nape of his Head unto the Withers would be seven Handfuls





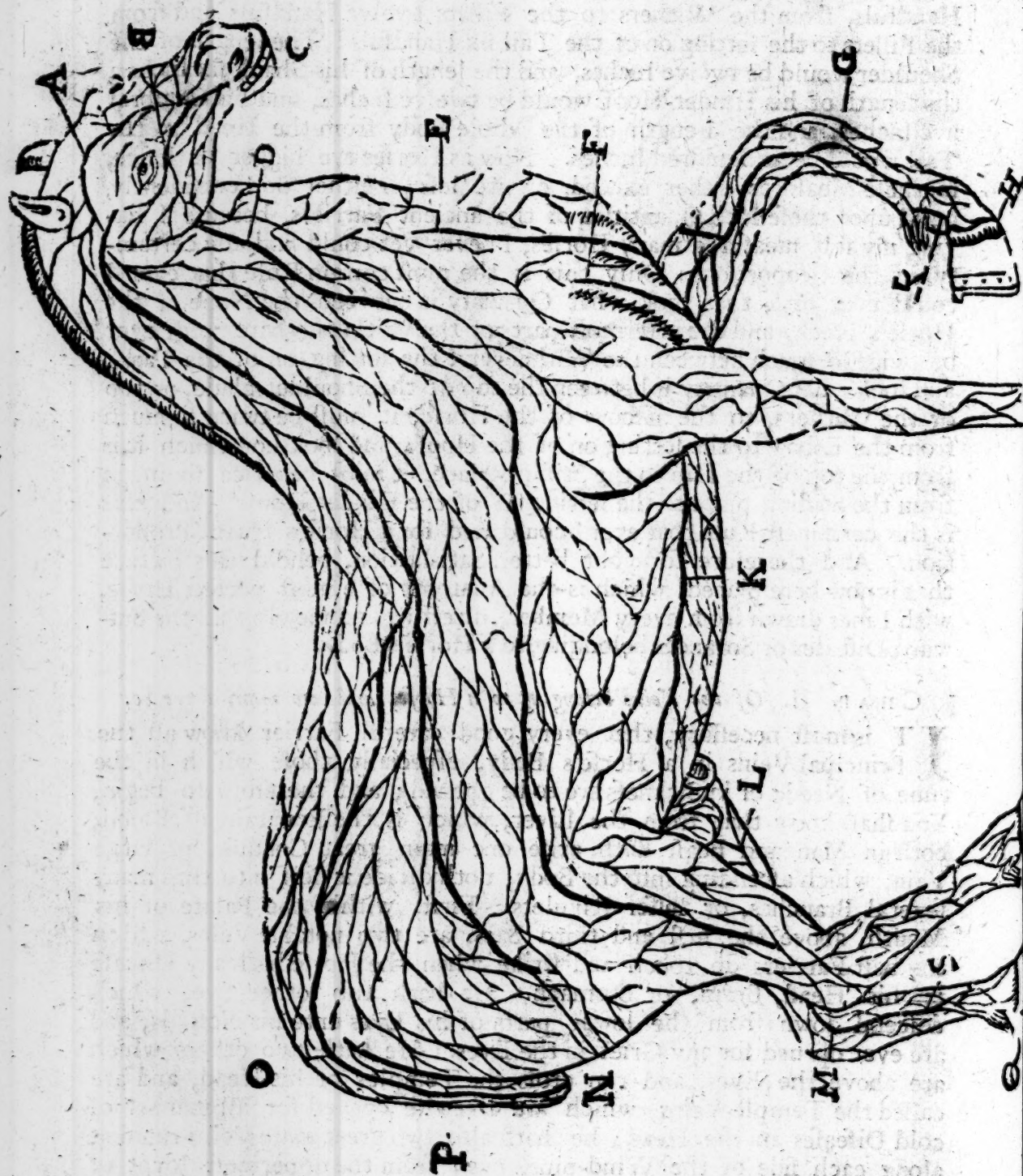
Handfuls, from the Withers to the Fillets twelve Handfuls and from the Fillets to the setting on of the Tail six Handfuls; The length of the Shoulder would be twelve Inches, and the length of his Shank six Inches, the length of his Hinder-Hoof would be twelve Inches, and his Cambrel five Inches, and the Length of the whole Body from the Head to the Tail would be an hundred Inches. Now as Horses are bigger or lesser, so these Measures either exceed, or are less; neither do I confidently build upon these Inch Quantities of the ancient Farriers, because I having my self measured many Horses, I never yet could find any certainty in the Proportions: Only this is the most certain Rule that ever I could ever find, that look what Quantity is between the Nape of the Horse's Neck, and the uttermost part of the Withers, there must ever be twice so much between the Withers and the setting on of the Tail; and look what Quantity is between the top of the Shoulder-blade, or top of the Withers, to the Elbow of the Horse, it must be twice so much from the Elbow to the setting on of the Hoof; and look how much it is from the top of the Hip to the Stifling-place, it must be twice so much from the Stifling-place to the setting on of the Hinder Hoof: And this is the certainest Rule that ever I could find for a Horse's truest Proportion. And therefore for your better Satisfaction, behold this Picture that is now here placed, which is the Anatomy of a most perfect Horse, with Lines drawn from every Member, directing and shewing all the outward Diseases or Sorances belonging to a Horse's Body.

CHAP. II. *Of the Veins belonging to a Horse, and how many there be.*

**I**T is most necessary, that every good careful Farrier know all the Principal Veins in a Horse's Body, especially those which in the time of Need, or in Sicknes are to be opened; and therefore to begin, You shall know that from the Liver, which is the Fountain of Blood, both in Man and Beast doth arise one main great Conduit, or large Vein, which ascending into the Body, doth divide it self into thus many several Branches, or lesser Rivulets. First, within the Palate of his Mouth, above the first and third Bars, are two notable Veins, which the best Farriers do touch and strike when the Horse hath any Disease in his Head, Brain, or Stomach. He hath also other two, which descend down from the lower parts of his Eyes unto his Nostrils, and are ever opened for any Grief in the Eyes. He hath two others which are above the Eyes, and run cross the Temples of his Head, and are called the Temple-Veins, which are likewise opened for all manner of cold Diseases in the Head; he hath also two great main Veins running along each side of the Wind-pipe, even from the uppermost Joynt of his Nether Chap down to the Breast, which are called the Neck-Veins, and are those which are ordinarily opened for any Disease whatsoever.

He





He hath then two Veins which arise upwards from between his Fore-legs to the top of his Breast, and are called the Breast-veins, and they are opened when the Horse hath any Fever, or is sick at heart. He hath other two which likewise ascend from between the Fore-legs, but do not mount so high as the Breast-veins, but rest upon the foremost Bough of the Fore-leg, and they be called the Plat-veins, and they be opened either for Foundring, or other grief in the Limbs. He hath other two Veins which run down from the Elbow of the Fore-shoulder, down all along the inside of the Fore-legs and are called the Shank-veins, which are opened for Splents, Mallander, or such like. He hath then four Veins which run along the Fet-locks of the Horse, and are called the Shackle-veins, which although they are but small, yet they are many times opened for stiffness in the Joints, or for Tiring: Then he hath four Veins about the Cornets in his Hoofs, and are called the Cornet-veins, and are opened for Foundring in the Feet, or for Ring-bones: Then he hath four Veins within his four Hoofs, running about his Toes, and are called the Toe-veins, and are only opened for Foundring or Frettizing in the Feet: He hath then two main great Veins which descend from his Stones along the inside of his Thighs to his Cambrel, and are called the Kidney-veins, which are only opened for Diseases in the Kidneys: He hath then two other Veins which descend from above the hinder Cambrels, all along the inside of the hinder Legs down to the Fet-locks, and are called the Spaven-veins, which are opened for the Blood-spaven only: He hath then two Veins in his Flanks, which are called the Flank-veins, and are opened for any grief in the Reins or Fillets: He hath then two Veins in his hinder Haunches, called the Haunch-veins, and are opened for any manner of Consumption of the Flesh, or such like: Then he hath two Veins which run along his Side, even from the Elbow or the Fore-leg unto the Flank, and are called the Spur-veins, and are opened for Foundring or Spur-galling. Lastly, he hath one single Vein in his Tail, which is called the Tail-vein, and is opened for the shedding of the Hair or Manginess. So there is in the Horse's Body of principal Veins, which upon Occasion must be opened, just Thirty seven, as you may perceive by this Figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the principal Veins, and others, in a Horse's Body; where you are to understand, that the Letter *A* sheweth the Temple-vein, *B* the Eye-veins, *C* the Palate-veins, *D* the Neck-veins, *E* the Breast-veins, *F* the Plat-veins, *G* the Shank-veins, *H* the Cornet-veins, *I* the Hoof-veins, *K* the Spur-veins, *L* the Kidney-veins, *M* the Spaven-veins, *N* the Flank-veins, *O* the Haunch-veins, *P* the Tail-veins, *Q* and *R* the Fet-lock-veins. Now for the other small Threds or Veins, which as it were over-spread the whole Body, because Nature will allow no Part or Member to be empty or void of Blood; they be also Veins derived from the other two main great Veins, yet of no Efficacy or Force, but such as



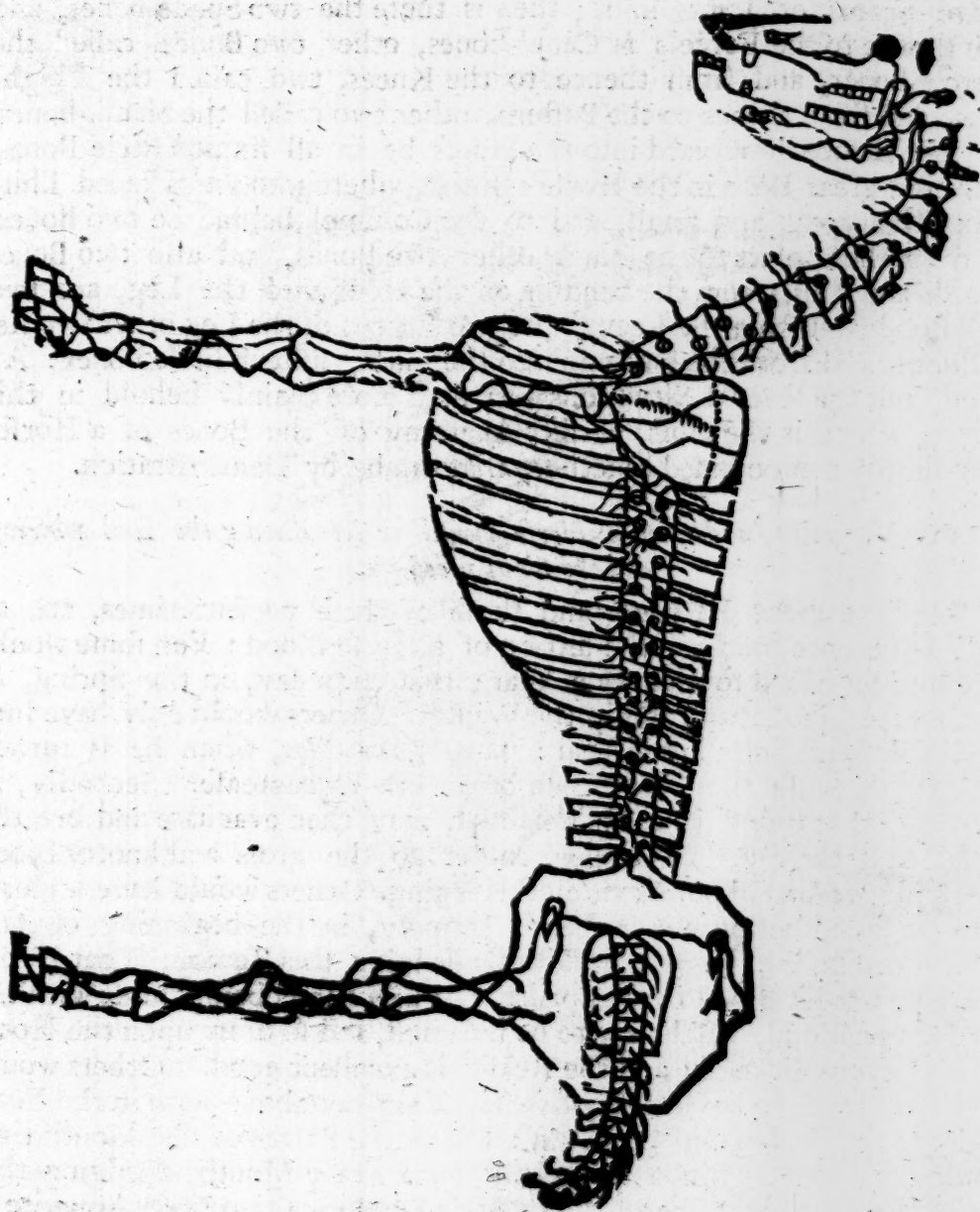
upon any necessary Incision may very well be cut asunder without any Flux of Blood. or other Danger: But for the other Master-veins, they may not be cut but with great Peril. And thus much for Veins, which are the Instruments of Heat.

CHAP. III. *Of the Sinews in a Horse's Body.*

**T**ouching the Sinews within a Horse's Body, you shall understand that from the Brain, which is the Principal Fountain or Well-spring of Sinews whatsoever, there is derived one main Sinew or Tendon, which passing through the hollownes of the Neck and Back-bone, doth extend it self even to the nethermost Joynt of the Horse's strunt: from his main Sinew is derived two small Branches, which passing through certain holes in the top of the Horse's Skull, run down along the Horse's Cheeks, even to the point of his Nostrils: Then hath he two other Branches, which passing through certain holes in his nether Chap, knit that and the other together, and so run down by his great Teeth, and meet just below his nether Lip: Then hath he Twenty eight small Threads, which running through so many small holes, in the seven Bones of his Neck, knit them fast together: So likewise to knit all his Chine even to the nether End of his Strunt fast together, the Number whereof is infinite and uncertain: Then hath he two main great Sinews, which extending themselves over both the Spade-bones, are divided into many Branches, and run down into the Fore-legs, even into the Coffins of the Hoofs, and knit every Joint fast and substantially together: Then hath he two other main Sinews, which coming through two holes to the great Columel or flat Bones of the Hips or Huckle, do extend themselves (being divided into many Branches) down both the hinder-Legs, even within the Coffins of the Hoof also, and bind all these several Joints fast and strongly together. Now lastly, you shall understand, that from the setting on the Horse's Neck unto the flat Columel or Huckle-bone, doth extend one great broad Sinew, of three Inches broad, being of one only thick and smooth Substance, without any one Thred or Branch derived from it, which not only hold together the Shoulder-blades, but also covereth all the Horse's Chine quite over, and this of the common Farriers is called Pax-wax: So that a Horse hath in all, of main and principal Sinews, from whence a World of other Sinews are derived, just Thirty eight, as you may more plainly perceive by the Picture afore-going, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the Sinews within a Horse's Body, and how they are divided.

CHAP. IV. *Of the Number and Situation of the Bones in a Horse's Body.*

**F**IRST you shall understand, that every Horse or Ox hath in his whole Body, just one hundred and seventy several Bones, and no more;

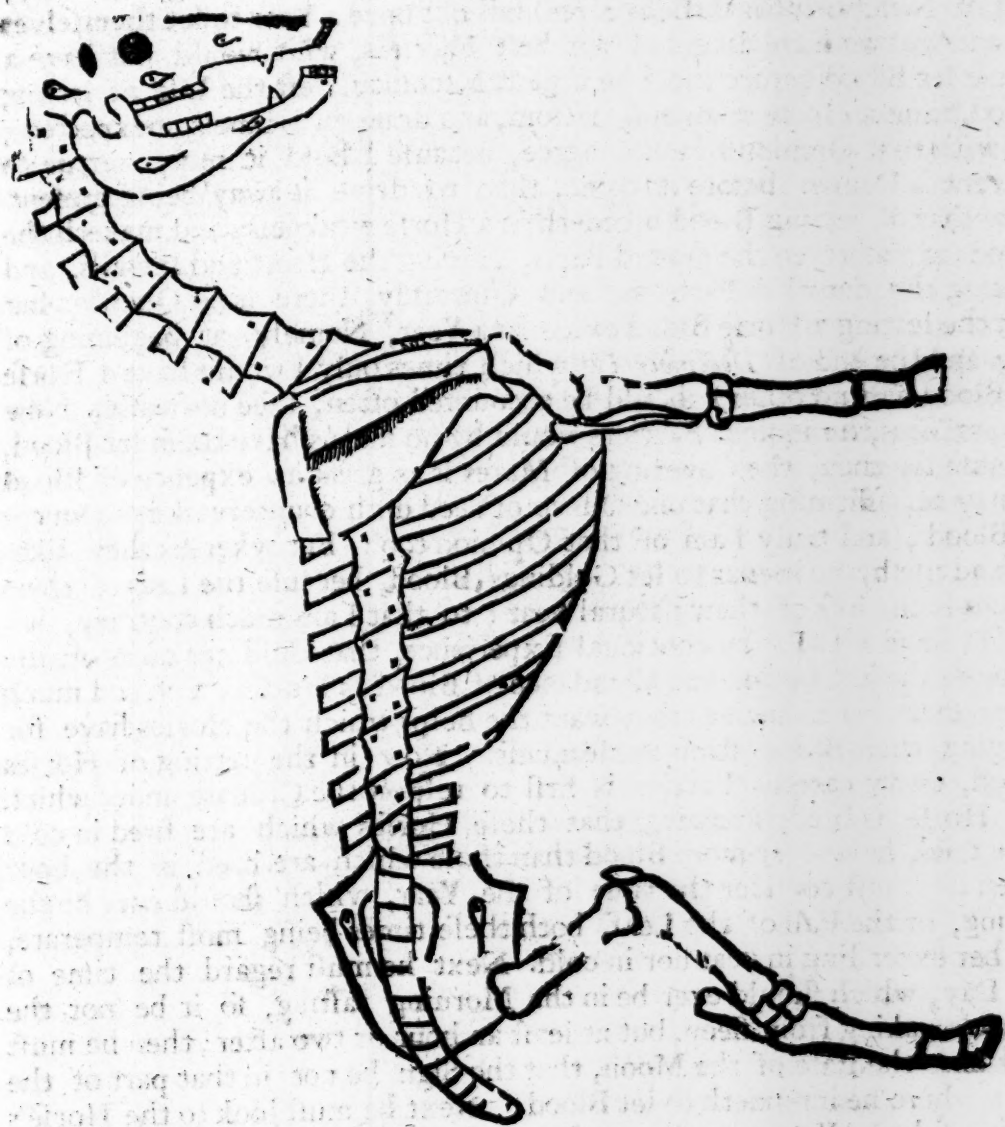




more ; that is to say, in the upper part of his Head two Bones, from the Fore-head to the Nose two Bones, his nether Jaws two Bones, of Fore-teeth twelve, of Tusshes four, of Grinders twenty four, from the Nape of the Neck to the points of the Spade-bones, seven ; for the Spade-bones to the Huckle-bones, eight ; from the Huckle-bones to the End of the Tail, seven ; Then is there the great broad hinder-bone, which hath twelve Seams or Joints in it ; then is there the two Spade-bones, and from thence to the Forcels or Canal-bones, other two Bones, called the Marrow-bones, and from thence to the Knees, two called the Thigh-bones, and from thence to the Pastern, other two called the Shank-bones, and from thence downward into the Hoofs be in all sixteen little Bones. There is a great Bone in the Horse's Breast, whereunto are fastened Thirty six Ribs great and small, and to the Columel behind be two Bones, and from the Molars to the Joints other two Bones, and also two Bones towards the Ribs, from the bending of the Hoof unto the Leg, are two small Bones, and from the Legs to the two Forcils of the Leg other two little Bones, and from the Pasterns into the Hoof, sixteen little Bones : All which, and the several Situations you shall more plainly behold in this Picture, which is the most perfect Anatomy of the Bones of a Horse, being simply compounded together, that can be by Demonstration.

CHAP. V. *How, and when a Horse should be let Blood ; the End whereof, and the Signs necessary.*

THE ancient Farriers, and those of these present times, are at Difference touching the letting of a Horse Blood : For some would have him let Blood four times a Year ; that is to say, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autum, and in the Winter. Others would only have him let Blood three times in the Year ; namely, in *May*, when he is turned to Grass, because the Blood then beginneth to encrease. Secondly, in *September*, that Blood if it be inflamed, may then evacuate and breathe forth, And thirdly, in *December*, to let go the gross and knotty Blood which is bred by Labour or careless Keeping. Others would have a Horse to be let Blood but once in a Year ; Namely, in the beginning of *May* only, when he is to be put to Grass, alledging this Reason, That if the Horse be not let Blood in the Spring, the new Blood being mixt with the old corrupt Blood, will be apt to be inflamed, and so draw upon the Horse some grievous Sicknes, and the Reason is excellent good. Others would have the Horse to be let Blood in the Vein not above once in the Year, Namely, at the beginning of *May* : But in the Palate of the Mouth they would have him let Blood at the least once every Month, alledging that it will clear the Sight, comfort the Brain, and give him good Appetite to his Meat : But to conclude, there is none of these Opinions but are found and good, so the Horse be young and in strength, his Blood increasing ;  
but





but if he be old, and his Blood in the Ebb, then you cannot let Blood too seldom. Now that it is fit a young Horse should be let Blood, is approved by the daily Experience of the Poland Horses, who being at Liberty, (out of Natural Instinct themselves) fail not once a Year to let themselves Blood; yet we have divers of our best Farriers, who would not have a Horse let Blood before there be urgent Necessity, lest the Use of letting Blood bring a Horse to an evil Custom, and draw on Sicknes unexpected; but with that Opinion I cannot agree, because I hold it more vertue to prevent a Danger before it come, than to drive it away being present. Now that of letting Blood breedeth in a Horse weakness; and maketh the Blood to resort to the inward Parts, cloying the Heart and Intrails, and making the outward Parts fat and Unweildy, there is no Question but that the letting a Horse Blood twice in a Year, Namely, at beginning of *May* and the end of *December* (at which times only I would have a Horse let Blood and no other) should be accounted often, I see no reason. Now for Stallions, the ancient Farriers would by no means have them let Blood, because say they, the Covering of Mares is as great an expence of Blood as may be, affirming that one Ounce of Seed doth countervail five Ounces of Blood; and truly I am of that Opinion too: But whereas they likewise advise by no means to let Geldings Blood, because the Loss of their Stones is the loss of their natural heat; to that I am much contrary, because I have found it by continual Experience, that Geldings do as oft die through the corruption and abundance of Blood as Horses; nay, and much more oftner, inasmuch as they want the helps which the Horses have for purging their Blood from uncleanness. Now in the letting of Horses Blood, every careful Farrier is first to respect the Climate under which the Horse is bred, knowing that those Horses which are bred in cold Countries, have ever more Blood than those which are bred in the hot: Then he must consider the time of the Year, which should ever be the Spring, or the Fall of the Leaf, both these times being most temperate, neither exceeding in heat nor in cold. Next he must regard the time of the Day, which should ever be in the Morning fasting, so it be not the Horse's waking from sleep, but at least an hour or two after; then he must look unto the state of the Moon, that the Sign be not in that part of the Body where he intendeth to let Blood. Next he must look to the Horse's Age; if he be Young, and not come to his Growth, it will hinder his waxing: And if he be Old and come to Decrepidness, his Blood had more need be repaired than wasted. Lastly, he shall look to the Horse's Strength and ancient Custom, and so accordingly he shall deal with him, observing that some Horses may better spare two or three Pound of Blood than other some one Pound. Now thus much I have spoken touching ordinary and natural letting of Blood, without compulsion of any Sicknes or Disease; but in Case where Sicknes or Infirmitie craveth this Office of letting

letting Blood, there you shall neither respect Climate, Season of the Year, Time of the Day, Sign, Age, Strength, nor Custom, but setting all aside, apply your self only to the removing of the Infirmary. Now the Signs to know if a Horse stand in need to be let Blood are these: His Eyes will look Red, and his Veins will swell more than ordinary; also he will have a certain Itch about his Mane and his Tail, and still be continually rubbing them; and sometimes will shed some of his Hair also: He will now and then pill about the roots of his Ears, or in those places where the Head-stall of the Bridle lies: His Urine will be Red and high-coloured, and his Dung will be black and hard: Also if he hath red Inflammations, or little Bubbles on his Back, or doth not digest his Meat well, it is a sign the Horse should be let Blood; or if he hath any apparent sign or Yellowness in the Whites of his Eyes or in the inside of his Lips, either upper or nether, it is a sign he should be let Blood: For after any of these Signs does most commonly follow some one or other grievous Sickness, which to prevent, is the true Art of a skilful Farrier. Now it is fit that when you intend to let a Horse Blood (having leisure to do the same) that you suffer him to be thinly dietted a Day or two before he be let Blood, to the End that his Body may be quiet, and not troubled with Digestion. Now for the Manner of letting a Horse Blood, you shall as near as you as can, let him stand upon even Ground, and if it be the Neck-vein which you would strike, you shall take a long small Cord with a Noose, and putting it over the Horse's Neck, as close to the setting on of the Shoulder you can, there draw it as strait as is possible, and then fasten it with a running Knot, and presently you shall see the Vein to appear as big as a Man's Little-finger, even from the nether Chap down to the Neck. Now you are to observe that the Place where you are to strike the Vein, is even within three Fingers or four Fingers at the most of the nether Chap: As thus; if your Horse have a long, fine, thin Neck and Skin, then you may strike the Vein within three Fingers or less of the Chap, (since the higher is ever the better) but if he have a short chub Neck, with a thick Skin, and many wreaths or rous about the setting on of his Chaps, then you shall strike the Vein at least four Fingers from the Chap, lest those wreaths, together with the thickness of the Skin, do so defend the Vein that your Fleim cannot reach it. When you have thus raised the Vein up, you shall cause one to stand on the contrary Side of the Horse, and with his Fist to thrust the Vein forth hard against you: then you shall either with a wet Sponge, or with a little Spittle, wet the part of the Vein which you mean to strike, and then separating the Hair, set your Fleim even and directly upon the Vein; and then with a good smart Blow strike it into the Vein: Which done, you shall cause one to put his Finger into the Horse's Mouth, and tickling him in the Roof thereof, make him Chaw and move his Chaps, for that will force the Blood to spin forth. Now the



the Blood which you take from the Horse, it is very necessary that you save in divers Vessels, for divers Causes: As First, that you may see when all the corrupt Blood is come forth, and that when the Colour thereof is grown pure and so remaineth being cold, that then you suffer the Horse to bleed no more; or else that you save it to Bathe the Horse's Body therewith, which is most wholesome; or else to make a Medicine therewithal, by mingling with the Blood Vinegar and Oil. And so Bathe the Horse's Body therewith, especially that place which was let Blood. For the ancient Farriers hold an Opinion, That it is endued with a certain Natural Vertue, and Power to comfort the weakness and feeble Members of a Horse, and to dry up all evil Humours. Now as soon as your Horse hath bled sufficiently, you shall let loose the Cord, and immediately the Vein will stop; then with that Cord you stroke down the Vein just over the Orifice twice or thrice, which will both close up the hole, and also turn the Course of the Blood. This done, set the Horse up in the Stable, and let him stand fasting two or three Hours after, and then after Diet him, according as in your Discretion you shall think meet; that is to say, if he be a sick Horse, then like a sick Horse, with good Provender and warm Mash: But if he be a sound Horse, then like a sound, either turn him to Grass, or keep him in the Stable after the ancient Custom.

Now if you would let your Horse Blood either in the Temple-Veins or Eye-Veins, you shall then Cord him hard about the midst of the Neck, and not near his Shoulders, having a care that you touch not his Wind-pipe, and so Throttle him: For it will make both these Veins shew most apparently. If you intend to let the Horse Blood in the Breast-Vein, or Plat-Veins, of some called therefore Thigh-Veins, you shall then Cord him behind the Shoulders, close to the Elbows of the Horse, and overthwart his Withers, and that will make these two Veins shew. Now you shall understand, that not any of these Veins last spoken of, as about the Head or the Breast must be let Blood by striking them with a Fleim (tho' it be the manner of our Common Smiths) for it most Beastly and Butcherly, and also full of much Danger by striking through the Vein, (if he be not skilful) but you shall with a fine sharp Launcet open the Vein, even such sort as you see a skilful Chirurgeon open the Vein in a Man's Arm. Now for the letting of a Horse Blood in the Palate of the Mouth, you shall but only with a sharp pointed Knife, pick the Horse between the second and third Bar, as deep as a Barley Corn is long, and he will bleed sufficiently: As for all the other Veins in a Horse's Body whatsoever, which are to be opened, you shall understand, that whensoever it is needful that they bleed, that then they must be taken up and not corded at all. Now touching the taking-up of Veins, and the Manner how to do it, you shall read more at large in particular Chapters towards the end of this Book.

CHAP. VI. Of Outward Sorances, what they are, and of certain general Observations in the Cure of them.

**O**utward Sorances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken too manner of Ways, that is to say, either it is an evil State and Composition of the Body, which is to be discerned either by the Shape, Number, Quantity, or sight of the Member evil affected and diseased: Or else it is the loosening and division of any Unity, which as it may chance diversly, so it hath divers Names accordingly. For if such a division or loosing be in the Bone, then it is called a Fracture: If it be in any fleshy part, then it is called a Wound, or an Ulcer: If it be in the Veins, then a Rupture: If in the Sinews, then a Convulsion or Cramp; and if it be in the Skin, then it is called an Excoriation: And of all these severally I intend to treat in the following Chapters.. Now forasmuch as in this general Art in Chyrurgery or Sorances, there are certain general Observations or Caveats to be held inviolate, I will, before I proceed any farther, give you a little taste thereof.

First, you shall therefore understand, that it is the Duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or cauterize with hot Iron, or with Oil, nor to make any Incision with a Knife, where there be either Veins, Sinews, or Joints, but either somewhat lower, or somewhat higher.

*Item,* You shall never apply to any Joint or Sinewy part, either Rosalgar, Arfnick, Mercury, Sublimate, nor any such violent Corrosive.

*Item,* It is ever better to Lance with a hot Iron than a cold; that is, it is better to Cauterize than to Incise.

*Item,* Blood doth ever produce white and thick Matter, Choler a watrish thin Matter, but not much; salt Flegm, great abundance of Matter, and Melancholy, many dry Scabs.

*Item,* When you let Blood, you must take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a grown Horse.

*Item,* You must never let Blood, except it be either to divert Sickness, and preserve Health, or to refresh and cool the Blood, or else to diminish Blood, or purge bad Humours.

*Item,* In all Impostumes and swelling Sores, called Tumors, you must observe the four times of the Sickness, that is to say, the beginning of the Grief, the increase of the Grief, the perfection and state of the Grief, and lastly, the declination and ending of the Grief.

*Item,* In the beginning of every such swelling Aposthumes (if you cannot quite destroy them) use repercussive Medicines, if they be not near some principal part of the Body; but then not, for fear of endangering Life; and in augmentation, use molifying Medicines and supplying to ripe them; and when they are ripe, Launch them and let them out, or dry them up, and in the declination of them, use cleansing and healing Medi-



*Item*, All Swellings are either hard or soft, the hard commonly will Corrode, the soft continue long.

*Item*, If you thrust your Finger upon any Swelling upon a Horse's Legs, then if it presently rise again, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the Dent do remain and continue still behind, then is the Hurt old, and cometh of cold Humours, and asks great Art in healing.

*Item*, When Sores begin to Matter, then they heal; but if the Putrefaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

*Item*, All Cauterising or Burning with hot Irons, straineth things enlarged, drieth up what is too much moistned, dissolveth things gathered together or hardned, draweth back things which are dispersed, and helpeth old Grievs: For it ripeneth, dissolveth, and maketh them to run and issue forth Matter.

*Item*, You must sometimes burn under the Sore, to divert Humours, and sometimes above, to defend and with-hold Humours.

*Item*, It is ever better to Burn with Copper than with Iron, because Iron is of a Malignant Nature, Steel of an indifferent Vertue betwixt both.

*Item*, All actual Burnings is to burn with Instruments, and Potential Burnings is to burn with Medicines, as are Causticks and Corrosives.

*Item*, If you use to blow Powders into a Horse's Eyes, it will make him blind.

*Item*, By no means take up any Veins in the Fore-legs, unless great Extremity compel you: for there is nothing that will sooner make a Horse stiff and lame. Many other Observations there are, which because they are not so general as these be, and that I shall have Occasion to speak of them in other particular Chapters, I think it here fit to omit them, and the rather, because I would not be tedious.

#### CHAP. VII. *Of the Diseases in the Eyes, and first of the Weeping and Watering Eye.*

**T**HE Eyes of a Horse are subject to many Infirmities, as first, to be Rheumatick, or Watery, then to be Blood-shotten, to be dim of Sight, to have the Pin and Web, the Haw, the Wart in the Eye, the Inflammation in the Eyes, the Canker in the Eye, or a stroke in the Eye: of all which, some come of inward Causes, as Heat, Cold, or else by some Stripe or Blow.

And first to begin with the Rhematick, or Watery Eye, you shall understand, that according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, it doth proceed many times from the Flux of Humours distilling from the Brain, and sometimes from the anguish of a Blow or Stripe received. The Signs are a continual Watering of the Eye, and a close holding of the Lids together, accompanied sometimes with a little swelling. The Cure, according

cording to the Opinion of some Farriers, is, To take of Bolearmonick, of Terra-sigillata, and of Sanguis Draconis of each a like Quantity; make them into Powder and then add unto them as much of the White of an Egg and Vinegar as will make them moist: and then spread it Plaster-wise upon a Cloath, and lay it to the Horse's Temples of his Head above his Eyes: and do this three Days together. Others use to let the Horse Blood in the Veins under his Eyes; then to wash the Eye twice or thrice in the Day with White-wine, and then to blow into the sore Eye with a Quill, the Powder of Tartar, Sal gemma, and Cuttle-bone, of each a like Quantity: Or else take the Yolk of an Egg roasted hard, and mix therewith the Bowder of Comen, and bind it hot to the Eye, and so let it rest a Night more. Other Farriers use to take of Pitch and Rosin, and of Mastick a like Quantity, melt them together: then with a little Stick, having a Clout bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, anoint the Temple-veins on both sides a handful above the Eyes, as broad as a Shilling, and then clap unto it immediately a few Flocks of like Colour to the Horse, holding them close to his Head, with your Hand until they stick fast to his Head, then let him Blood on both his Eye-veins, if both Eyes be sore, and then wash his Eyes with White-wine.

Others use only to take a pretty Quantity of Life-Honey, and to dissolve it in White-wine, and to wash the Horse's Eye therewith: and sure if it proceed from any Blow, it is Medicine sufficient enough; but if it proceed from any Rheum, or inward Causes, then you shall take Ground-Ivy beaten in a Mortar, and mixt with Wax, and so laid to the Eyes like a Plaster, or else boil Wormwood in White-wine, and wash the Horse's Eyes therewith; also to spirt Beer or Ale now and then into the Horse's Eyes, will clear the sight very well.

C. H A P. VIII. *Of the Blood-shotten Eye, proceeding from any Cause whatsoever.*

**F**OR any Blood-shotten-Eye, proceeding from any Cause whatsoever, either outward or inward, you shall take (according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers, of Rose-water, of Malmsey, and of Fennel-water, of each three Spoonfuls, of Tutty as much as you can easily take up between your Thum and your Finger, of Cloves a Dozen, beaten into fine Powder, mingle them together, and being luke-warm, or cold if you please, wash the inward parts of the Eye with a Feather dipt therein twice a Day, until the Eye be well: Or instead thereof, wash the Eye either with the White of an Egg, or with the Juice of Selladine. Others use to take the tops of Hawthorns, and boiling them in White-wine, wash the Eye therewith. Other Farriers take a Dram of Synoper, and as much Life-Honey, as much of Wheat-flower, mix them with fair Running-water, so they may be liquid and thin, then see the them with a



very soft Fire till they be thick like an Ointment, and therewith anoint the Eye.

But the best Receipt that ever I found for this Grief, is, To take the Whites of two Eggs, and beat it till it come to an Oil, then put to it two Spoonfuls of Rose-water and three Spoonfuls of the Juice of Housleek, mix them well together, then dip therein little round Plegants or flat Cakes of soft Tow, as big as a Horse's Eye, renewing them as oft as they grow hard, and in a Day or two it will make the Horse's Eye sound again.

#### CHAP. IX. Of Dimness of Sight, or Blindness.

**D**imness of Sight, or Blindness, may happen to a Horse divers ways, as by some strain, when the inward strings of the Eyes are stretched beyond their Powers, or by the Violence of great Labour, or by the supporting of a great Burden beyond the Horse's ability, or by some Blow or Wound: Any of these are mortal Enemies to the Eyes or Sight. The Sign is the apparent want of Sight, and an evil-affected Colour of the Eye. Now for the Cure it is thus:

✍ If the Sight be gone, and yet the Ball of the Eye be sound, then you shall take, according to the Opinion of some Farriers, a pretty Quantity of May-Butter, with as much Rosemary, and a little Yellow Rosin, with a like Quantity of Selladine, then stamp them and fry them with the May-Butter, then strain it and keep it in a close Box (for it is a Jewel for sore Eyes) and anoint your Horse's Eyes therewith, at least twice a Day; it is also good to heal any Wound. Other Farriers do use to let the Horse Blood in the Eye-veins, and then wash the Horse's Eyes with Red-Rose-water. Others use to take the Gall of a Black Sheep and beat it, and strain it, then to wash the Eyes therewith: Others use to burn the Horse under the Eye, that the ill Humours may distill forth, and then anoint his Eyes either with the Marrow of a Sheep's Shank and Rose-water mixt together, or else with the Juice of Ground-Ivy. Other Farriers use to take a Mould-warp and lapping her all over in Clay, burn her to Ashes, and then to take of that Powder and blow it into the Horse's Eyes. Others use to take an empty Egg-shell, and fill it with Bay-Salt, then burn it till it be Black: Then add to it Burnt-Allom the Quantity of your Thumb, beat them together to fine Powder, then mix some of this Powder with fresh Butter, and wipe it into the Horse's Eye with a Feather, then clap the White of an Egg dipt in Flax over his Eyes; do this once a Day for a Seven-night, and after but once in two Days: This is most excellent for any Film, and also for a Pearl. Others use to take two dry Tile-stones, and rub them together, and blow the Powder of it with a Quill into the Horse's Eye four Days together.

CHAP. X. *A most rare approved Medicine for any desperate Blindness in a Horse proceeding from any Rheumatick Cause, Surfeit, Strain, Stroke, or such like*

**T**AKE of Vermillion, Bettony and Lavender, and beat them in a Mortar with the best Venice-Turpentine, till they come to a thick Salve like Paste: Then make it into Cakes or Troches, each as broad as a Groat, and dry them: Then lay on one or two of them upon a Chafing-dish of Coals: And then covering them with a Tunnel, let your Horse receive the Smoak up into his Nostrils, and this do Morning and Evening: And every time you thus Fume him, you shall also wash his Eyes inwardly, either with the Water of Eye-bright, simply, or with the Water of Eye-bright and the Juice of Ground-Ivy mixt together. Now I have known many to mistake this Ground-Ivy, and suppose that the Ivy which is common, and runs along the Ground to be Ground-Ivy, but it is not so, for Ground-Ivy is a Weed which commonly grows in bottoms of Hedges by Ditch-sides, in good big tufts, it hath a little round rough Leaf, and is jagged on the edges, and of all Simples none is more soveraign for the Eyes.

CHAP. XI. *Another most excellent and approved Receipt for any desperate Blindness in a Horse, or any Beast whatsoever.*

**T**AKE the Shells of half a dozen Eggs, and cleanse away the inner Film from them so clean as may be, then lay those shells between two clean Tiles, and so lay them in hot glowing Embers, and cover them all over, and on every side, and so let them lie a good space till the shells be all dried, then take them up, and beat the shells to fine Powder, then searce it through a Launt to fine Dust, then with a Goose-Quill blow this Powder into the Horse's Eye that is offended with the Pin, Web, Film, or any thicknes or foulness, and it is a certain Cure, and this do Morning, Noon, and Night.

But if it be for any watred or inflamed Eye, for any Bruise, Stripe, Lunatick, or descending Humours, then take a Spoonful and a half of fine searfed Powder of White Sugar-candy, and mix it with the former Powder of shells, then with as much May-butter, (if you can get it) or for want thereof, the best Sweet-butter, without Salt. Work all into a gentle Salve, and therewith anoint the Horse's Eye Morning, Noon, and Night, for it cleaseth, purgeth, comforteth and cooleth.

CHAP. XII. *Of the Pearl, Pin, Web, or any Spot in a Horse's Eye.*

**T**HE Pearl, the Pin, the Web, or any unnatural spot, or thick Film over a Horse's Eye, proceedeth, for the most part, from some stroke received, yet the Pearl, which is a little round, thick, white spot like a Pearl, growing on the sight of the Horse's Eye, comes many times from natural Causes, and even from descent of Sire and Dam, as I have often found



found by Experience. The sign is, the apparent sight of the Infirmitie, and the Cure according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers, is, To take six Leaves of Ground-Ivy, and a Bunch of Selladine, and bray them in a Mortar, with a spoonful or two of Woman's Milk, and then strain it through a clean Linnen-Cloath, and put it into a close Glass, and then drop of it as much into the Horse's Eye at a time as will fill a Hazle Nut-shell; and it is the fittest to be done at Night only. Do this thrice at the least, and for three Days after, keep the Horse as much as may be from any Light. Other Farriers use to anoint the Horse's Eyes with the Marrow of Goats-shanks, and Deer's-shanks, and Rose-water mixt together, or else to wash his Eyes with the Juice of the Berries and Leaves of Ground-Ivy, or other Ivy mixt with White-wine; and to blow into his Eyes the Powder of Black Flint, or of Land-Oysters: But that Powder must be made so exceeding fine, as by art of Searcing can any ways be brought to pass: And for the taking away of any Film or Pearl, there is no Medicine more soveraign. There be other Farriers which use to take the Lean of a Gammon of Bacon and dry it, and thereof make a Powder and blow it into the Horse's Eye. Others use to take white Ginger made into very fine Powder, and blow it into the Horse's Eyes; yet before you do so, if the Webb have continued any long time, it shall not be amiss, First, to anoint the Horse's Eye with Capon's Greace. Others use to blow into the Horse's Eye, the Powder of Elder-leaves dried, or else the Powder of Man's-dung dried: Or the Powder of a grey Whetstone mixt with the Oil of Honey, and put it into the Horse's Eye: Others use to take the Yolk of an Egg with Salt burnt and beaten to Powder and blow it into the Horse's Eye: Or else the Powder of Cuttle-bone. Others use to take Elder-leaves dried, or Man's-dung dried, and mix it with the Powder of the Shell or Bone of the Crab-fish, and blow it into the Horse's Eye. Others take Tutte beaten to Powder, and with a Quill blow it just upon the Pearl.

Other Farriers use to take (and sure it is not inferiour, but better than any Medicine whatsoever) a good Quantity of White-Salt, and lapping it round up in a wet Cloath, put it into the Fire, and burn it to a red Coal: then taking it forth and breaking it open, you shall find in the midst thereof a white Coar as big as a Bean, or bigger: Then pick out that Coar and beat it to Powder, and mix it with a little White-wine, then after it hath stood a while, take the thickest of that which lieth in the bottom, and put it into the Horse's Eye, and with the thin, wash his Eye; do this once a Day till the Pearl be consumed.

Others use to take the Juice of Rue, and put it into the Horse's Eye: Or else to make an hole in an Egg, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the Shell with Pepper, and closing it in an Earthen Pot, put it into a hot burning Oven till it be quite hot, then take it forth, and beat the Pepper

per to Powder, and blow thereof into the Horſe's Eye. Others uſe to take of Pumis-ſtone, of Tartarum, and Sal-gemma, of each a like weight, and being beaten into very fine Powder, to blow a little of that into the Horſe's Eye; continuing ſo to do till the Eye be well. Others uſe only to blow the Powder of Sandevour into the Horſe's Eye, affirming that it alone hath ſufficient Force and Vertue to break any Pearl or Web in a ſhort ſpace, without any other Compoſition: But ſurely I have found the Powder of Flint, and the Powder of white Salt burnt, to be much ſtronger.

CHAP. XII. *A moſt excellent and infallible Cure for any Pin, Web, or Pearl, or Spot in a Horſe's Eye.*

**T**AKE an Egg, and make a hole in the top, put out half the White, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roaſt the Egg extream hard, ſo as you may beat it to fine Powder, having formerly lapt it in a wet Cloath; then Morning and Evening, after you have waſht the Horſe's Eye with the Juice of Ground-Ivy, or Eye-bright-water, you ſhall blow of this Powder therein, and it is a certain Remedy. 

CHAP. XIII. *Of the Haw in a Horſe's Eye.*

**T**HE Haw is a Griſtle growing betwixt the nether Eye-lid and the Eye, and it covereth ſometimes more than the one half of the Eye. It proceedeth of groſs and tough Flegmy Humours, which deſcending down from the Head, and knitting together, do in the end, grow to a Horn or hard Griſtle. the Signs thereof are a watring of the Eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether Lid, beſides an apparent ſhew of the Haw it ſelf, if with your Thumb you do put down the nether Lid of the Horſe's Eye. The Cure is, Take a Needle and a double Thred, put it through the tip of the Horſe's Ear, which done, put the Needle likewise through the upper Eye-lid of the Horſe upwards, and ſo draw up the upper Eye-lid, and faſten it to the Ear, then with your Thumb put down the nether Lid, and you ſhall plainly ſee the Haw: Then thruſt your Needle through the edge of the Haw, and with the Thred draw it out, ſo as you may lap it about your Finger, to hold it conſtantly, and then with a very ſharp Knife, cut croſs the Griſtle of the inſide next the Horſe's Eye, and ſo ſeparating the Skin and the Fat from the Griſtle, cut the Griſtle quite out; then cutting your Threds, draw them clean out, both of the Eye-lids, and out of the Haw: Then waſh all the Horſe's Eye with Ale, Beer, or White-wine, and pluck away all the long Hairs from about the Horſe's Eyes, being ſure to leave no Blood within the Horſe's Eye. And in this manner of Cure, you muſt obſerve, that by no means you cut away too much of the Waſh or Fat by the Haw, or any part of the Black that groweth about the end of the Haw, for that will make the Horſe Blear-eyed; there be other Farriers which uſe after they have cut out the Haw, to anoint the Eye  
fix



fix Days after with Sallet-Oil, the Marrow of Sheeps Shanks and Salt mixt together.

Others do take the Juice of Ground-Ivy stamp't in a Mortar, with the Juice of Ivy-berries, and mix them either with Water or White-wine, and so Plaster-wise lay it to the Horſe's Eye, renewing it Morning and Evening, and it will eat away the Haw. Others uſe after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the Eye a Plaiſter of Camomile and of Honey beaten together; any of all which is ſufficient enough. Now you are to note by the way, that the Horſe which hath one Haw, commonly hath two, for they continually go together.

#### CHAP. XIV. Of Moon-Eyes, or Lunatick Eyes.

**T**HE Moon-eyes, or Lunatick-eyes, are of all ſore Eyes the moſt dangerous and noiſome, and do proceed from hot Humours, deſcending from the Head, and ſtirred up by the extremity of over-riding or compelling a Horſe to do more than Nature will give him leave: As I have ſeen a ſlothful and heavy Horſe brought to be Moon-eyed by the folly of his Rider, who would force him to ſtand and Trot, and contrary to the vigour of his Spirit: So likewise I have ſeen delicate mettled Horſes brought to be Moon-eyed, when the Riders would not temper the Freeness of their Nature, but have given them leave to run with all violence. Now they be called Moon-eyes, becauſe if the Farrier do obſerve them, he ſhall perceive that at ſometimes of the Moon the Horſe will ſee very prettily, and at ſometimes of the Moon he will ſee nothing at all. Now the Signs here-of are, when the Horſes Eyes are at the beſt, they will look Yellowiſh, and Dim, and when they are at the worſt, they will look Red, Fiery and Angry.

The Cure is, To lay all over the Temples of the Horſe's Head, the Plaiſter of Pitch, Roſin, and Maſtick mentioned in the Chapter of Watry Eyes: Then under each of his Eyes with a ſharp Knife make a ſlit of an Inch long about four Fingers beneath his Eyes, and at leaſt an Inch wide of the Eye-veins; then with a Cornet looſen the Skin about the breadth of a Groat, and thruſt therein a round piece of Leather as broad as a Two-pence with a hole in the miſt, to keep the hole open; and look to it once a Day, that the Matter may not be ſtopped, but continually run the ſpace of ten Days; then take the Leather out, and heal the Wound with a little Flax dipt in this Salve. Take of Turpentine, of Honey, and of Wax, of each a like Quantity, and boil them together, which being a little warmed, will be liquid to ſerve your purpoſe; and take not away the Plaiſters which are upon his Temples until of themſelves they fall away; which being fallen, then with a ſmall hot drawing-Iron make a Star in the miſt of each Temple-vein, where the Plaiſters did lie, which Star would have a hole in the miſt, made with the Button-end of your hot Drawing-Iron in this ſort.

  
Now

Now there be other Farriers, which instead of the Slits under the Eye, and the Pieces of Leather, which is a plain Rowel, only take a small blunt hot Iron, and about an Inch and an half beneath the nether Lid, do burn some five holes all of a row, according to the compass of the Horse's Eye, and burn those holes even unto the Bone, and then once a Day anoint them with fresh Grease, or Sweet-Butter.

CHAP. XV. *Of the Canker in the Eyes.*

**A** Canker in the Eye cometh of a rank and corrupt Blood, descending from the Head into the Eye, where it congealeth, and breedeth a little Worm in manner, as it were, the Head of a Pismire, which groweth in the nether end of the Horse's Eye next to his Noseward; it proceedeth many times into the Gristle of the Nose, which if it chance to eat through, it will then pass into the Head, and so kill the Horse. The Signs hereof are, you shall see red pimples, some great and some small, both within and without the Eye, upon the Eye-lids, and also the Eye it self will look Red, and be full of very corrupt Matter. The Cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, To take as much Burnt-Allom as a Hazle-Nut, and as much of green Copperas, and Bake them both together upon a Tile-stone, and then grind them into Powder, and put thereto a quarter of a Spoonful of Honey, and mix them together, and then with a Clout dipt therein, rub the Sore till it bleed; and do thus seven Days together, and it will cure the Canker. There be other Farriers which for this Canker in a Horse's Eye, will first let the Horse Blood in the Neck-vein of the same Side the fore-Eye is, and take away the Quantity of a Pottle of Blood: Then take of Roch-Allom, and of green Conperas, of each half a Pound of white Copperas one Ounce, and boil them in three Pints of running-Water, until the half be consumed: Then take it from the Fire, and once a Day wash his Eye with this Water, being made luke-warm, with a fine Linnen Cloath, and cleanse the Eye therewith, so as it may look Raw, and do this till the Eye be whole.

CHAP. XVI. *For a Stripe or Blow upon a Horse's Eye.*

**I**F a Horse shall catch any Stipe or Blow upon his Eye, either with Whip, Rod, Cudgel, or any such like mischance, or by one Horse's Biting of another when they either Play or Fight: Then for the Cure thereof (if you take it when it is new done) you shall only blow into his Eye either the Powder of Sandevour, or the fine Powder of white Salt, after the Eye hath been washt with a little Beer: But if the Eye be more sore, and have continued longer, then you shall take a small Loaf of Bread and pull out all the Crums; then fill the Loaf full of burning Coals, until it be well burned within, then take of that Crust and put it into White-wine, and after it is well soaked, lay to the Sore, then take Soap-water

U



water, and cold Water mixt together, and wash all the Eye-brows therewith, and if for all that it go not away, then you shall let him Blood on the Temple-veins; and if he do rub or chafe his Eye, you shall let him Blood on the Veins under his Eyes, and wash his Eyes with cold Soap-water; but if his Eyes do chance to look red with the Blow, you shall lay unto them a Plaister of Red-Lead and Sallet-Oil well beaten together. Others use to take the Juice of Plantain, stamp and mixt with White-wine, and so laid to the fore-Eye. Others use both for this Disease, or any other sore Eye, to stamp strong Nettles with a little Beer, and then straining it, to squirt thereof into the Horse's Eye, twice or thrice together, then to put of the fine Powder of Sandevour a little in his Eyes, and then be careful to keep the Horse's Eye from Wind or Cold: But if you must needs Ride him, then put a Wollea Cloath before the Horse's Eye; also it is not amiss to let him Blood on his Eye-veins, and then twice Dressing will be sufficient.

Other Farriers use first to anoint the sore Eye three Days together with Hen's or Capon's-Grease to mollify it: Then take a little Live-Honey, and warming it, wipe it into the Horse's Eye with a Feather. Others take the Juice of Plantain mixt with Honey, or else the Juice of Thyme mixt with Honey, and put it into the Eye. Others use to take the Ashes of an old Shoe-sole burnt in an Oven, and put into the Horse's Eye; or else the Powder of a Grey Whet-stone blown into the fore-Eye; both are speedy Remedies. Others use to take the Juice of Smallage and Fennel, and mixing them with the White of an Egg, put it into the Horse's Eye once a Day till the Eye be whole.

#### CHAP. XVII. *For a Wart in the Eye.*

**A** Wart in a Horse's Eye, is a Fleshy Excrefcion, or a Fleshy Knot growing either upon the Eye, or upon the edge or inside of the Eye-lids; it proceedeth from a thick Flegm, which descendeth to the Eye, by means that the Horse is too much kept in a dark Stable without Light: and this Infirmitie will make a Horse's Eye consume and grow little. The Cure is, To take Roch-Allom, and burn it on a Tile-stone, and then put as much White Copperas thereunto not burnt, and grind them to Powder, then lay some of that Powder just upon the Head of the Wart, and do this once a Day till the Wart be consumed away.

#### CHAP. XVIII. *For an Inflammation in a Horse's Eye.*

**H**orses may diversly have Inflammations in the Eyes; as by long standing in the Stable, with foul Feeding and no Exercise, or by Moats falling into his Eyes, or by rankness of Blood, and such like, any of each will breed an Inflammation or Soreness in the Eye. The Signs are itching, and rubbing of the Eyes, and little swelling, with some loathness to

to open the Eye-lids. The Cure is, Firſt, to let him Blood upon the Temple-veins, and upon the Eye-veins, and then to waſh his Eyes with Milk and Honey mixt together. Others after Blood-letting, will waſh the Horſes Eyes with Honey and Aloes Epatica mixt together: And Others will waſh his Eyes with Aloes diſſolved in White-wine, any of which is appoſed to be moſt excellent for any ſore Eye.

CHAP. XIX. *Of the Impoſthume in the Ear of a Horſe.*

**I**mpoſthumes which breed in the Ear of a Horſe, proceed from divers Cauſes, as from ſome great Blow about the Head, or ſome wringing with a hard Halter, or from ſome evil Humour congealed in the Ears by ſome extream Cold. The Signs whereof appear plainly by the burning and painful ſwelling of the Roots of the Ears and the other Parts thereabout. The Cure thereof is, Firſt to ripen the Impoſthume with this Plaſter: Take of Linſeed beaten into fine Powder, and Wheat-flower, of each half a Pint, of Honey a Pint, of Hog's-greaſe otherwiſe called Barrow's-greaſe, one Pound; warm all theſe things together in an Earthen Pot, and ſtir them continually with a flat Stick or Slice, until they be thoroughly mingled and incorporated together, and then ſpread ſome of this Plaſter being warm, upon a Piece of Linnen-Cloath or ſoft White-Leather, ſo broad as the Swelling and no more, and lay it warm unto it, and ſo let it remain one whole Day and then renew it again, continuing ſo to do, until it either do break or elſe grow ſo ripe that you may Launce it downwards, ſo that the Matter may have paſſage out; then tent it with this Tent of Flax dipped in this Salve even to the bottom, that is to ſay, Take of Mel Roſatum, of Sallet-Oil and Turpentine, of each two Ounces, and mingle them together, and make the Horſe a Biggen of Canvas to cloſe in the Sore, ſo as the Tent with the Ointment may abide within the Sore, renewing the Tent once a Day until it be whole: But if the Horſe have Pain in his Ears, without any great Pain or Inflammation, then thruſt into his Ear a little Black-Wool, dipt in the Oil of Camomile, and that will eaſe him: But if the Impoſthume be broken before you perceive it, and that you ſee Matter run from the Horſe's Ears, then you ſhall take of Oil of Roſes, Venice-Turpentine and Honey, of each a like Quantity, and mixing them well together, warm it luke-warm upon a few Coals, and then dipping Black-Wool therein, thruſt it down into the Horſes Ear that runneth, renewing it once a Day till the Ear leave running.

CHAP. XX. *Of the Pole-Evil.*

**T**HE Pole-Evil is a great Swelling, Inflammation, or Apoſthume in the Nape of the Horſe's Neck, juſt between his Ears, towards his Mane, and proceedeth ſometimes from the Horſe's ſtrugling or ſtriving in his Halter, eſpecially if the Halter be of hard new twined Hemp;



sometimes it proceeds from evil Humours gathered together in that place, or else some Stripe or Blow given to the Horse by some rude Keeper, Carter, or Man of little Discretion; for that Part being the weakest and tenderest about the Head, is the soonest offended and grieved with Sorances. The sign of this Disease is an apparent swelling between the Horse's Ears, and on each side his Neck, which in continuance of Time, will break of its own accord, yet doth ever rot more inwardly than outwardly, from whence it comes that this Disease is more commonly called of our common and ignorant Farriers, the Fistula in the Neck, than the Pole-Evil; and in truth it is an Ulcer so hollow and so crooked, and so full of sharp Matter like unto like, that it differeth very little from a Fistula, and is of all Imposthumes, except the Fistula it self, the hardest to Cure: Therefore I would wish every careful Farrier to take this Cure in hand so soon as is possible, that is to say, before it break, if it may be.

Now for the general Cure (according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus; First, if it be not broken, ripen it with a Plaister of Hogs-grease, laid unto it so hot as may be, and make a Biggen for the Pole of his Head to keep it from Cold, which Biggen should have two holes open, so as his Ears may stand out, and renew the Plaister every Day once until that break, keeping the fore place as warm as may be; and if that you see it will not break so soon as you would have it, then look were it is softest, and most fit to be opened, take a round hot Iron, or a Copper Iron (for that is the better) as big as a Man's little Finger, and sharp at the point, made like an Arrow-head, and then about two Inches beneath the soft place. thrust it in a good deepness upwards so as the point of your Cauterising Iron may come out at the ripest place, to the intent that the Matter may descend downward, and come out at the nether hole, which should always be kept open: And therefore tent it with a Tent of Flax dipt in Hog's-grease warm, and lay also a Plaister of Hog's-grease upon the same, renewing it every Day once for the space of four Days, which is done chiefly to kill the heat of the Fire: Then at the four Days end, Take of Turpentine half a Pound, clean washed in Nine fundry Waters, and after that thoroughly dried, by thrusting out the Water with a Slice on the Dish's side! then put thereto two yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together: That done, search the depth of the Hole either with a Quill or a Probe, and make a Tent of a piece of dry Spune never wet, so long as it may near reach the bottom, and so big as it may fill the Wound, and anoint the Tent with the aforesaid Ointment, and thrust it into the Wound either with that Quill, or else by winding it up with your Finger and Thumb by little and little until you have thrust it home, and then lay on the Plaister of Hog's-grease made luke-warm, renewing it every Day once until it be whole: But if the Swelling cease, then you need not use the Plaister, but only

only to Tent it; and as the Matter decreaseth, so make your Tent every Day lesser and lesser, until the Wound be perfectly cured.

Now if this Disease of the Pöle-Evil have broke of its own self, and by neglecting looking into, have continued so long that it is turned to a Fistula, which you shall know both by the great and crooked hollownes inwardly, and by a sharp thin Water which would issue out there outwardly; then you shall take (according to the Opinion of the Farriers) of unslackt Lime, and of Arsnick, of each a like Quantity, beat them together into very fine Powder, put thereto the Juice of Garlick, of Onions, and of Wall-wort, of each a like Quantity, and of Holly as much as all the rest; boil them upon a soft Fire, and stir them all well together until they be as thick as an Ointment; then wash the Sore with strong Vinegar, and fill the hole full of the aforesaid Ointment, by dipping a Tent therein twice a Day; then lay a Plaister of Hog's-grease upon the Tent to make it keep in, and use this until the Horse be whole.

Our Farriers use to take Orpiment, unslackt Lime, and Verdigrease, of each a like Quantity, temper them with the Juice of Pellitory, black Ink, Honey and strong Vinegar, of each a like Quantity, boil them and stir them well together until they be very thick, then make thereof small Rouls, and put them into the hollow place of the same Sorance. Now you are to Note, that both these and the last recited Salve before this, are only to kill the Rankerous and sharp Humour which brings the Sore unto a Fistula, which as soon as you have killed, which you shall know by the Matter, which will be white and thick, then you shall heal up the Sore either with the Powder of Savin, or the Powder of Honey and Lime baked together, or else by anointing it with Tar and Sallet-Oil, or fresh Hog'-grease mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this Sorance do first open the Sore with a hot Iron, and then take Red-Lead and Black-Soap, and mixing them well with Water till they be good and thick, Tent the Horse therewith till it be whole.

Others use to take a Quart of Water, half a Pound of Roch-Allum, four Pennyworth of Mercury, a quarter of a Pound of Verdigrease, and mixing them well together, wash the Horse's Sore with this Water till it begin to dry up, and then heal it with the Powders beforemamed. See farther in the New Additions for the Fistula, marked thus 

CHAP. XXI. *A true and certain approved Cure for any Pole-Evil whatsoever.*

**F**IRST shave off the Hair from the Swelling, then lay on a Plaister of Shooemaker's black Wax, spread upon a white Allom'd Leather, and let it lie till it have ripened and broke the Imposthume: Then take a Pint of Wine-Vinegar, and when it is boiling-hot, mix with it as much Clay-Lome with the Straws and all in it, as will bring the Vinegar unto a thick Poultis, then apply this as hot as the Horse can suffer it to the Sore, and renew it once a Day till the Imposthume be whole.

CHAP.



CHAP. XXII. *Of a Horse that is Lave-Ear'd, and how to help him.*

**F**OR a Horse to be Lave-Ear'd, is as foul a Disgrace and as much Deformity to his Beauty, as to want the true Proportion and Use of any outward Member whatsoever. It proceedeth from a Natural Infirmary, and is ingendred even from the first Conception, and although few of our Farriers either have endeavoured themselves, or know how to help it; yet there is nothing more certain than that in this sort it may be cured. First, Take your Horse's Ears, and place them in such manner as you would have them stand, and then with two little Boards, or pieces of Trenchers three Fingers broad, having long Strings knit unto them, bind the Ears so fast in the places where they stand, that by no Means or Motion they may stir: Then betwixt the Head and the Root of the Ear, you shall see a great deal of empty wrinkled Skin, which with your Finger and your Thumb you shall pull up, and then with a very sharp pair Scizzars you shall clip away all the empty Skin close by the Head, and then with a Needle and red Silk you shall stitch the two sides of the Skin close together, and then with a Salve made of Turpentine, Deers Suet, and Honey, of each a like Quantity melted together and made into an Ointment, heal up the Sore; which done, take away the Splents which held up his Ears, and you shall see within a short time that his Ears will keep the same place still where you set them, without any alteration: And this you shall ever find to be as certain and true as the healing of a cut Finger.

CHAP. XXIII. *Of the Vives or hard Kernels between the Chaps and the Neck.*

**T**HE Vives are certain great Kernels which grow from the Root of the Horse's Ears, down to the lower part of his nether Jaw, between the Chap and the Neck; they are in proportion, long, narrow, and round, and are natural things, proper and due to every Horse: But when either through rapkness of Blood, or abundance of corrupt Humours resorting to that place, they begin to be inflamed, then they become very foul Sorances, and Imposthumations most dangerous: They are inwardly very full of little white salt Kernels, and they breed great pain in the Horse's Throat. This Disease as far forth as I can find by any Demonstration, is the Disease which in Men we call the Squinacy or Quinzy, and not as some of the old Farriers suppose, the Strangle; for that hath no coherence with the Infirmary. For the signs of the Disease, there needs small reception, insomuch as the Grief is apparent to the Eye: And the Cure, according to the Opinion of the oldest Farriers, is thus; if you see the Kernels begin to rankle and swell, you shall take the Horse's Ear and laying it down along the Neck of the Horse, at the very end

end or tip of the Ear, cut a hole through the Skin of the Neck the length of an Almond or better; and then with a crooked Wire pick out all those Kernels which you find inflamed; which done, fill the hole full of Salt: Then about the end of three Days, you shall find the Sore begin to Matter; then wash it either with Bark-water, or with the Juice of Sage: Then take of Honey, of sweet Butter, and of Tar, of each half a Spoonful, and melt them together, and as soon as you have washed the sore clean, put into it of this Ointment the Quantity of a Bean, and so Dress the Horse once a Day untill it be whole.

There be others of our most ancient English Farriers, which for this sorance use, First, to draw the sore right down in the midst with a hot Iron from the Root of the Ear, so far as the tip of the Ear will reach, being pulled down, and under the Root again draw two strikes on each side, like an Arrow-Head, in this Form: Then in the midst of the first Line, Launce them with a Launcet, and taking hold of the Kernels with a pair of fine thin Pinfors, pull them so far forward as you may cut the Kernels out without hurting the Vein: That done, fill the hole with Salt, and heal it up as is aforesaid. Now most of the Italian Farriers use this Cure: First, Take a Sponge steeped well in strong Vinegar, and bind it unto the sore place, renewing it twice a Day, until the Kernels be rotten; that done, Launce it then in the nethermost Part, where the Matter lieth, and let it out, and then fill up the Hole with Salt finely brayed, and the next Day wash all the Filth away with warm water and a Sponge, and then anoint the place with Honey and Fitch-Flower mixt together; but in any case beware, during this Cure, you touch not the Kernels with your bare Finger, for fear of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breed in. Now there be other English Farriers which use either to ripen the sore by laying on a Plaister of hot Hog's-grease, or a Plaister of Barley-meal mixt with three Ounces of Raisins, sod well together in strong Wine, or else they cut out the Kernels: Now whether you cut them out, or burn them out, or rot them out, (of all which, I hold rotting the best) you shall ever fill the hole with Nettles and Salt being chopt and mixt together, or else tent it with tents dipt in Water and mixt with Sallet-Oil and Salt. Others use to burn them downwards with a hot Iron in the midst from the Ear, to the Jaw-Bone, drawing two cross Stokes, and then Launce it in the midst, and pluck out the Kernels, and fill the hole with Bay-salt, and the Crops of Nettles well chopt and mixt together. Or else put only Bay-salt into the the hole, and take the Crops of Nettles well chopt and mixt with Bay-salt; and two Spoonfuls of strong Vinegar, and strain it, and put in either Ear a Spoonful thereof, and put some Black-Wooll after it, and so bind up his Ear.

Other



Others use to ripen them, either by laying to the Sore wet Hay, or wet Horse-Litter; and as soon as they are ripe, (which you shall know by the softness) to Launce the Skin, and take out the Kernels, and then fill the Hole with the Powder of Honey and unslacked Lime mixt together, and burnt upon a Tile-stone. Others use likewise after the Kernels are ripened and taken out, to take of Acrimony, Honey, and Violet-leaves, of each a like Quantity, and stamping them well together, to Plaister the Sore therewith till it be whole. Others use after the Kernels are taken out, To wash the Sore with Copperas-Water, and then to tent the Hole with Flax dipt in the White of an Egg, and after to heal it with Wax, Turpentine, and Hog's-grease molten well together.

CHAP. XXIV. *A more rare and certain approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives without either Burning, Melting, Rotting, or any such violent Extremity.*

**T**AKE a Pennyworth of Pepper beaten to fine Powder, of Swines-grease one Spoonful, the Juice of a Handful of Rue, of Vinegar two Spoonfuls; mix them all well together, and put it equally into both the Horse's Ears, and tie them up with two Strings, or else stich them together; then shake the Ears that the Horse's Medicine may sink downwards: Which done, you shall let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and in the Temple-veins. This Cure is infallible.

CHAP. XXV. *Another Cure for the Vives, most certain and approved.*

**I**F in any of the former Receipts you can find either Difficulty or Doubt, then to make certain and speedy Work, First, shave off the Hair from the swelled place, and then clap upon it a Plaster of Shoemakers Wax, and remove it not till the Sore break, then renew the Plaster, and it will both heal and dry it.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXVI. *Of the Strangle.*

**T**He Strangle (howsoever our old Farriers make a long Discourse thereof) is not (as they suppose) a kind of Quinzy, but a mean Inflammation of the Throat, proceeding from some Cholerick or Bloody Fluxion, which comes out of the Branches of the Throat-Veins into those Parts, and there breedeth some hot Inflammation, being stirred up either by some great Winter-cold, or cold taken after Labour: it is a great and a hard Swelling between the Horse's nether Chaps, upon the Roots of the Horse's Tongue, and about his Throat, which Swelling, if it be not prevented, will stop the Horse's Wind-Pipe, and so strangle or choak him: from which Effect, and none other, the Name of this Disease took its Derivation. The Signs of this Disease, besides the apparent Sign thereof, and the palpable Feeling of the same, is, the Horse's Temples of his Head will be hollow, and his Tongue will hang out of his Mouth, his Head and Eyes will be swoln, and the Passage of the Throat so stoppt, that he can neither eat nor drink, and his Breath will be exceeding short. The Cure thereof according to the most ancient Farriers, is, with a round small hot Iron, to thrust a Hole through the Skin on both Sides the Wezand, and then after it beginneth to Matter, to mix Butter, Tanners Water, and Salt together, and every Day anoint the Sore therewith 'till it be whole. Others of the ancient Farriers use first to bathe the Horse's Mouth and Tongue with hot Water, and then anoint the sore Place with the Gall of a Bull; that done, give him this Drink: Take of old Oil two Pound, of old Wine a Quart, nine Figs, and nine Leeks-Heads well stamped and brayed together, and after you have boiled these a while, before you strain them, put unto them a little Nitrum Alexandrinum, and give him a Quart of this every Morning and Evening. Also you may if you will, let him Blood in the Palate of the Mouth, and pour Wine and Oil into his Nostrils, and also give him to drink the Decoction of Figs and Nitrum sodden together, or else to anoint his Throat within with Nitre, Oil, and Honey, or else with Honey and Hogs Dung, mix'd together. Other Farriers use to rowel the Horse under his Throat, and to draw the Rowel twice or thrice a Day, anointing it with fresh Butter, and keeping his Head warm. Others of our later and better experienced Farriers, use first, (if his Years will permit him) to let the Horse Blood in the Neck-Vein, then to lay to the Sore this ripening Plaister: Take of Mallows, Linseed, Rue, Smallage, and Ground-Ivy, of each a like Quantity, boil these together in the Grounds of Beer, then put to it some Oil de Bay, and a little Dialthea, then take it off the Fire, and make of it a Plaister, and lay it to the Sore, suffering the Horse to drink no cold



Water : after the Sore is broken, lay Bran steep'd in Wine unto it, 'till it be whole. Others use to cut the Kernels out between the Jaws, and then to wash the Sore with Butter and Beer, giving the Horse to drink new Milk and Garlick, and the Juice of the Leaves of Birch, or in Winter the Bark of Birch, or else to anoint it with Tar and Oil 'till it be whole. Now, for mine own part, the best Cure that ever I found for the Strangle, was this :

As soon as I found the Swelling begin to arise between his Chaps, to take a Wax-Candle, and holding it under the Horse's Chaps, close unto the Swelling, burn it so long 'till you can see the Skin be burnt through, so that you may, as it were, raise it from the Flesh ; that done, you shall lay unto it, either wet Hay or wet Horse-Litter, and that will ripen it, and make it break, then lay a Plaister unto it only of Shooe-Makers Wax, and that will both draw and heal it. Now if it break inward, and will not break outward, and so avoideth only at his Nose, then ye shall twice or thrice every Day, perfume his Head, by burning under his Nostrils either Frankincense or Mastick, or else by putting a hot Coal into wet Hay, and so making the Smoak thereof to ascend up into the Horse's Head ; or else to blow the Powder of Euforbium with a Quill into his Nose ; and so note, that whatsoever cureth the Vives, cureth the Strangle also.

#### C H A P. XXVII. *Of the Cankerous Ulcer in the Nose.*

**T**HAT which we call the Cankerous Ulcer in the Nose, is only a fretting Humour, eating and consuming the Flesh and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time, will eat through the Nose. It cometh of corrupt Blood, or else of a sharp Humour ingendred by means of extream Cold.

The Signs are, The Horse will often bleed at the Nose, and all the Flesh within his Nose will be raw, and filthy stinking Savours, and Matter will come out at the Nose.

The Cure thereof, according to the ancient Farriers, is, Take of green Copperas and of Allom, of each a Pound ; of white Copperas one Quartern, and boil these in a Pottle of running Water, until a Pint be consumed : then take it off and put thereto half a Pint of Honey, then cause his Head to be holden up with a drenching-staff, and squirt into his Nostrils with a Squirt of Brass or Pewter, some of this Water being lukewarm, three or four times one after another ; but betwixt every squirting give him leave to hold down his Head, and to snort out the filthy Matter ; for otherwise perhaps you might choak him : and after this it shall be good also without holding up his Head any more, to wash and rub his Nostrils with a fine Clout bound to a Stick's End and dip'd in the aforesaid Water, and do thus once a Day until the Horse

Horse be whole. Other Farriers use, if they see this Canker to be of great heat, and burning in the Sore with exceeding great Pain, then you shall take the Juice of Purslane, Lettice, and Night-shade, of each a like Quantity, and mix them together. and wash the Sore with a fine Cloath dip'd therein, or else squirt it up into his Nostrils, and it will allay the Heat.

Others take of Hyssop, Sage, and Rue, of each a good Handful, and seethe them in Urine and Water to the third part of them: then strain them out, and put in a little white Copperas, Honey, and Aqua-vitæ, and so either wash or squirt the Place with it; then when the Canker is killed, make this Water to heal it: Take of Ribwort, Betony, and Dazies, of each a Handful; then seethe them well in Wine and Water, and wash the Sore three or four Times a Day therewith, until it be whole. Others use also to take Crystal, and beating it into fine Powder, to strow it upon the Canker, and it will kill it.

#### C H A P. XXVIII. Of Bleeding at the Nose.

**M**Any Horses (especially young Horses) are often subject to this Bleeding at the Nose, which I imagine proceedeth either from the much abundance of Blood, or that the Vein which endeth in that Place is either broken, fretted, or opened. It is opened many Times by means that Blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine or too supple, and so pierceth through the Vein. Again, it may be broken by some violent Strain, Cut, or Blow; and lastly, it may be fretted and gnawn through by the Sharpness of the Blood, or else by some other evil Humour contained therein. The Cure is, according to the ancient Farriers, To take the Juice of the Roots of Nettles, and squirt it up into the Horse's Nostrils, and lay upon the Nape of the Horse's Neck a Wad of Hay dip'd in cold Water, and when it waxeth warm, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers use to take a Pint of red Wine, and put therein a Quarter of Bole-Armoniack, beaten into fine Powder, and being made lukewarm, to pour the one half thereof the first Day into the Nostril that bleedeth, causing his Head to be holden up, so as the Wine may not fall out, and the next Day, to give him the other half.

Others use to let the Horse bleed on the Breast-Vein, on the same Side that he bleedeth, at several times: Then take, of Frankincense one Ounce, of Aloes half an Ounce, and beat them into fine Powder, and mingle them thoroughly with the Whites of three Eggs, untill it be as thick as Honey, and with soft Hair thrust it up into his Nostrils, filling the Hole full of Ashes, Dung, or Hogs-Dung, or Horse's Dung mix'd with Chalk and Vinegar.



Now for mine own Part, when none of these will remedy and help (as all have failed me at some time) then I have used this: Take two small Whipcords, and with them garter him exceeding hard about some ten or twelve Inches above his Knees of his Fore-legs, and just beneath his Elbows, and then keep the nape of his Neck as cold as may be, with moist Cloaths, or wet Hay, and it will staunch him presently.

C H A P. XXIX. *Of the Bloody Rists, or Chops in the Palate of the Horse's Mouth.*

**T**Hese Chops, Clefts, or Rists, in the Palate of the Horse's Mouth, do proceed (as some Farriers suppose) from the eating of rough Hay, full of Wins, Thistles, or other Prickling-stuff, Provender full of sharp Seed, which by continual pricking and fretting the Furrows of the Mouth, do cause them to rankle, swell, and breed corrupt Blood and stinking Matter, and without speedy Prevention, that Ulcer will turn to the foulest Canker.

The Cure thereof is, (according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers,) to wash the sore Places very clean with Salt and Vinegar mix'd together, then to anoint it with Honey and Allom mix'd together. Others Farriers use (especially if the Palate be much swelled) to prick the Roof of the Mouth with a hot Iron, that the Humours may issue out abundantly, and then to anoint the Place with Honey and Onions boiled together, till they be whole.

C H A P. XXX. *Of the Giggs or Bladders in a Horse's Mouth.*

**T**Hese Giggs, Bladders, or Flaps in a Horse's Mouth, are little soft Swellings, or rather Pustules with black Heads, growing in the Inside of the Horse's Lips, next under his great Jaw-Teeth; they will sometimes be as great as a Walnut, and are so painful unto him, that they make him let his Meat fall out of his Mouth, or at least keep it in his Mouth unchawed, whereby the Horse can in no wise prosper; they do proceed either of eating too much Grass, or naughty, rough, pricking Hay or Provender, they are most apparently to be felt: And the Cure is (according to the Opinion of the oldest and most experienced Farriers) first to draw out the Horse's Tongue of the one side of his Mouth, and then take a Launcet and slit the Swellings the length of a Date, and then with a probe pick out all the Kernels like Wheat-Corns, very clean: then take the Yolk of an Egg, and as much Salt as will temper it thick like leven: then make it into little Balls, and thrust into every Hole, and fail not to do so once a Day untill it be whole.

Other Farriers use, after they have slit them with an Incision-Knife, and thrust out the Corruption, only to wash the Sore Places either with  
Vinegar

Vinegar and Salt, or else with Allom-Water. Others use with a small hot Iron to burn the Swellings, and then wash them with Beer and Salt, or Ale and Salt, and it will heal them. Now that you may prevent this Disease before it comes, it shall be good to pull out the Horfe's Tongue often, and to wash it with Wine, Beer, and Ale, and so shall no Blisters breed thereon, nor any other Disease.

#### C H A P. XXXI. *Of the Lampas.*

**T**HE Lampas is a swelling or growing up of the Flesh, which overgreweth the upper Teeth, which are the Shears in the upper Chap, and so hindreth the Horfe from eating. They do proceed from abundance of Blood, resorting to the first Furrow or Bar of the Mouth, I mean, that which is next to the upper Fore-Teeth; it is most apparent to be seen, and therefore needeth no other Signs. The Cure is, (according to the Custom of the oldest Farriers) First with a Launcet to let him blood in divers Places of the swelling Flesh; then take



an Iron made at one End broad and thin, and turned up according to this Figure, and heating it red hot, burn out all that superfluous swell'd Flesh which overgrows the fore Teeth, and then anoint the sore Place with fresh Butter untill it be whole: Others use, after it is burnt out, only to rub the sore Place with Salt only, or wash it with Salt and Vinegar 'till it be whole. Others use to take a hooked Knife made very sharp and very hot, and therewith cut the swollen Places in two Parts, cross against the Teeth; but if they be a little swelled, then cut but the third Rank from the Teeth, and so let him bleed well; then rub it with a little Salt, and the Horfe will be well; but if you find afterwards that either through too much burning, or cutting, or through the eating of too coarse Meat, that the Wound doth not heal, but rather rankle, then you shall take a Saucer full of Honey, and twelve Pepper Corns, and bray them together in a Mortar, and temper them up with Vinegar, and boil them a while, and then once a Day anoint the Sore therewith, till it be whole.

#### C H A P. XXXII. *Of the Camery, or Frounce.*

**T**HE Camery or Frounce in Horses, are small Pimples, or Warts in the midst of the Palate of the Mouth above, and they are soft and sore, they will also sometimes breed both in his Tongue and in his Lips: it proceedeth sometimes from the eating of frozen Grass, or by drawing frozen dust with the Grass into their Mouths; sometimes by eating of moist Hay, that Rats or other Vermine have pist upon, and sometimes by licking up of Venom. The Signs are the apparent seeing of the Pimples, or Welks, and a forsaking of his Food, both



both through the Soreness of them, and through the Unfavouriness and Rankness of the Food that he had eaten before.

 The Cure (according to the Opinion of the oldest Farriers,) is, First to let him Blood in the two greatest Veins under the Tongue, and then wash all the sore Places with Vinegar and Salt : Then get the Horse new Bread, which is not hot, and give it him to eat, and the Horse will do well enough. But take heed you give but a small Quantity of such Bread for fear of Surfeit, which is both apt and dangerous.

Others use with a hot Iron to burn the Pimples on the Head, and then wash them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and Salt, untill they bleed, and they will soon heal. Other Farriers use to take out his Tongue, and to prick the Veins thereof in seven or eight Places, and likewise under his upper Lip also, and let him bleed well ; then rub every sore Place with Salt, well ; then the next Day wash all the sore Places with White-wine warm, or else with strong Vinegar, and rub it again with Salt ; then, for two or three Days, let the Horse drink no cold Water, and he will do well.

#### C H A P. XXXIII. *Of the Canker in the Mouth.*

**A** Canker is said by the ancient Farriers to be nothing but the rawness of the Mouth and Tongue, which is full of very sore Blisters, from whence will run a very hot and sharp Lie, which will fret and corrode, or rot the Flesh wheresoever it goeth. The Signs are, The apparent Sight of the Sore, besides the forsaking of his Meat, because he cannot swallow it down, but lets it lie half chewed between his Jaws, and sometimes when he hath chewed his Meat, he will thrust it out of his Mouth again, and his Breath will savour very strongly, chiefly when he is fasting.

This Disease proceedeth ofttest from some unnatural Heat coming from the Stomach, and sometimes from the Venom of filthy Food.

The Cure is, (as the oldest Farriers instruct us) To take of Allom half a Pound, of Honey a quarter of a Pint, of Columbine-Leaves, of Sage, of each a Handful, boil all these together in three Pints of running Water, untill one Pint be consumed, and wash all the sore Places therewith, so as they may bleed, and do thus once every Day untill it be whole. Other Farriers use first to cast the Horse, and with a Rolling-pin to open his Mouth, then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with Tow or Flax, to take out all the stinking Grass, or other Meat that lieth in his Jaws and under the Root of his Tongue ; then when you have cleansed it thus, you shall heat strong Wine Vinegar somewhat warm, and then with the same Iron wrapt in Tow, and dip'd in Wine Vinegar, you shall wash all the sore Places 'till they bleed ; then wash all his Tongue and Lips with the same Vinegar, and so  
let

let him rise; and then feed him at least seven Days with warm Mashcs and hot Grains; but in no wise with any Hay, and he will soon be whole.

Other Farriers use to take of the Juice of Daffodil Roots seven Drams, of Juice of Hounds-Tongue as much, of Vinegar as much, of Allom one Ounce; mix these well together, and wash the Canker therewith once a Day untill it be whole. Others use to take of Savin, of Bay-Salt, and of Rue, of each a like Quantity, and stamp them together with as much Barrows Grease, and anoint the sore Places therewith untill the Canker be killed, which you may know by the whiteness, and then healing it up only with Allom-Water.

Others use first to wash the Canker 'till it bleed with warm Vinegar, to take a good Quantity of Allom beaten into very fine Powder, and mix it with strong Vinegar 'till it be as thick as a Salve; then to anoint all the sore Places therewith, and do not fail thus to do twice or thrice a Day untill the Canker be whole.

Now for mine own part, the best Cure that ever I found for this Sorance, is, To take of Ginger and of Allom, of each a like Quantity, made into very fine Powder; then with strong Vinegar to mix them together 'till they be very thick like a Salve; then when you have wash'd the Canker clean, either with Allom-Water or with Vinegar, anoint it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dressing, the Canker will be killed, and after it will heal speedily.

C H A P. XXXIV. *Of Heat in the Mouth and Lips of a Horse.*

**T**HE unnatural and violent Heat which ascendeth up from the Stomach into the Mouth, doth not always breed a Canker, but sometimes only heateth and inflameth the Mouth and Lips, making them only swell and burn, so as the Horse can take no Joy in his Food, but through the Grief refuseth his Meat. The Cure thereof is, first to turn up his upper Lip, or that which is most swelled, and with a Lancet, jag it lightly, so that it may bleed, and then wash both that and all his Mouth and Tongue with Vinegar and Salt.

C H A P. XXXV. *Of the Tongue being hurt by a Bit, or otherwise.*

**I**F the Tongue of a Horse be either hurt, cut, or galled, by any Accident or Mischance whatsoever, the best Cure is, (as the oldest Farriers suppose) To take of English Honey, and of salt Lard, of each a like Quantity, a little unslack'd Lime, and a little of the Powder of Pepper; boil them on a soft Fire, and stir them well together 'till they be thick like unto an Ointment; then wash the Wound with White-wine warmed: after that, anoint the Wound with the said Ointment



Ointment twice a Day, and by no Means let the Horse wear a Bit till it be whole.

Other Farriers use first to wash the Sore with Allom-water, and then to take the Leaves of a black Bramble, and to chop them together small with a little Lard; that done, to bind it with a little Clout, making it round like a Ball; then having dipped the round End in Honey, to rub the Tongue therewith once a Day untill it be whole.

C H A P. XXXVI. *Of the Barbes or Paps underneath a Horse's Tongue.*

**T**HE Barbes are two little Paps which naturally do grow under every Horse's Tongue whatsoever, in the nether Jaw; yet if at any time they shoot out, and grow into an extraordinary length, or by the overflow of Humours become to be inflamed, then they are a Sorance, and with the Extremity of their Pain, they hinder the Horse from Feeding. The Cure of them is, both according to the Opinion of the ancient and late Farriers, absolutely to clip them away with a pair of Shears, close to the Jaw, and then to wash the Sore either with Water and Salt, or else with Tartar and strong Vinegar mixed together, or else with Vinegar and Salt; any of all which will heal them.

C H A P. XXXVII. *Of the Pain in a Horse's Teeth, of Wolf's-Teeth, and Jaw Teeth.*

**A** Horse may have a Pain in his Teeth through divers Occasions, as partly by the descent of gross Humours from the Head down unto the Teeth and Gums, which is very proper to Colts and young Horses, and plainly to be seen by the Rankness and Swelling of the Gums; and also he may have Pain in his Teeth, by having two extraordinary Teeth, called the Wolf's Teeth, which be two little Teeth growing in the upper Jaws, next unto the great grinding Teeth, which are so painful to the Horse, that he cannot endure to chew his Meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his Mouth, or else to keep it still half chewed. Again, a Horse will have a great Pain in his Teeth, when his upper Jaw-Teeth be so far grown, as they over-hang the nether Jaw-Teeth; and therewith also be so sharp, as in moving his Jaws, they cut and raze the Insides of his Cheeks, even as they were razed with a Knife. Lastly, a Horse may have a great pain in his Teeth, when either by Corruption of Blood, or some other natural Weakness, the Horse's Teeth grow loose and sore, in such manner, that thro' the Tenderness thereof, he is not able to chew or grind his Food. Now for the several Cures of these Infirmities, you shall understand, That first as touching the general Pains in a Horse's Teeth which do come by Means of the Distillation of Humours, it is thought fit by the

the ancientest Farriers, first to rub all the outside of the Horse's Gums with fine Chalk and strong Vinegar well mix'd together.

Other ancient Farriers use after they have so washed the Gums, to strow upon them the Powder of Pomgranate Pills, and to cover the Temples of the Head with the Plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Mastick, molten together, as hath been before sufficiently declared.

Now for the Cure of Wolfs-Teeth, or the Jaw Teeth (according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus: First, Cause the Horse's Head to be tied up high to some Post or Rafter, and his Mouth to be open'd with a Cord so wide, that you may easily see every Part thereof: Then take an Instrument of Iron made in all the Points like unto a Carpenter's Gouge, and with your left Hand set the Edge of the Tool at the Foot of the Wolfs Teeth on the outside of the Jaw, turning the hollow side of the Tool downwards, holding your Hand steadily, so as the Tool may not slip nor swerve from the aforesaid Teeth; then, having a Mallet in your right Hand, strike upon the Head of the Tool a good Stroke, wherewith you may loosen the Tooth and make it bend inward, then straining the midst of your Tool upon the Horse's nether Jaw, wrench the Tooth outward with the inside or hollow side of the Tool, and thrust it clean out of his Head; which done, serve the other Wolfs Teeth on the other Side in like manner, and then fill up the empty Holes with Salt finely brayed.

Other ancient Farriers use, (and I have in mine Experience found it the better Practice) only when the Horse is either tied up or cast, and his Mouth opened, to take a very sharp File, and to file the Wolfs-Teeth so smooth as is possible, and then wash his Mouth with a little Allom-water. Now if the upper Jaw Teeth over-hang the nether Jaw Teeth, and so cut the Inside of the Mouth as is aforesaid, then you shall take your former Tool or Gouge, and with your Mallet strike and pare all those Teeth shorter by little and little, by Degrees, running along them even from the first unto the last, turning the hollow-side of your Tool towards the Teeth, by which Means you shall not cut the insides of the Horse's Cheeks; then with your File, file them all smooth, without any raggedness, and then wash the Horse's Mouth with Vinegar and Salt. Lastly, if the Pain do proceed from the Looseness of the Teeth, then the Cure is, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, first to cast the Horse, and prick all his Gums over with a Launcet, making them bleed well, then rub them all over with Sage and Salt, and it will fasten them again.

Others use to let the Horse bleed in the Vein under the Tail, next the Rump, and then to rub all his Gums with Sage, and to give him in his Provender, the tender crops of Black Briars; or else wash all his Mouth with Honey, Sage, and Salt beaten together, and by no means



means let the Horse eat any moist meat, for cold, moist, and Marish Feeding in the Winter, only breedeth this Disease of Looseness in the Teeth, and it is of all other, most proper to the Sorrel Horses.

C H A P. XXXVIII. *Of Diseases in the Neck and Withers, and first of the Crick in the Neck.*

**T**HE Crick in the Neck of the Horse, is, when he cannot turn his Neck any way, but holds it still right forth, insomuch that he cannot bow down his head to take up his Meat from the ground, but with exceeding great Pain; and surely it is a kind of Convulsion of the Sinews, which proceedeth from cold Causes, of which we have spoken very sufficiently before; it also proceedeth sometimes from over-heavy Burthens that be laid upon a Horse's shoulders, or by over-much drying up of the Sinews of the Neck. The Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, is, First to thrust a sharp-hot Iron through the Flesh of the Neck in five several Places, every one distant from the other three Inches, (but in any case beware of touching any Sinew) then rowel all the aforesaid Places either with Horse-hair, Flax, or Hemp, for the Space of fifteen Days, and anoint the Rowels with Hogs-grease, and the Neck will soon be restor'd. Others use, if the Crick causeth the Horse to hold his Neck strait forward, which sheweth that both sides are equally perplexed, to take a hot Drawing-Iron, and draw the Horse from the Root of the Ear, on both sides the Neck, from the midst of the same, even down the breast, a straw deep, so as both ends may meet on the breast; then make a hole through the skin of the Forehead, hard under the foretop, and thrust in a Cornet upward between the skin and the flesh, a handfull deep; then either put in a Goose-Feather doubled in the midst, and anointed with Hogs-grease, or else a Rowel of either Horn or Leather with a hole in the midst; any of which will keep the hole open, to the intent the Matter may issue forth; and this you shall keep open the space of ten days, but every day during the Time, the Hole must be cleansed once, and the Feather or Rowel also cleansed and fresh anointed and put in again; and once a day let him stand upon the bit an hour or two, or else be ridden abroad two or three miles, by such an one as will beat the Horse's head, and make him bring it in; but if the Crick be such that it maketh the Horse to hold his Head awry upon the one side, which sheweth that but one side of the Neck is troubled, then you shall not draw the Horse with a hot Iron on both sides of the Neck, but only on the contrary side, as thus: if he bend his head towards the right side, then to draw him, as is aforesaid, only on the left side, and to use the rest of the Cure as is abovesaid, and if Necessity do require, you may splent the Horse's Neck also strait with strong splents of Wood.

I have cured this Crick in the Neck only by bathing the Horse's Neck in the Oil of Peter, or the Oil of Spike very hot, and then rolling it all up in wet Hay or rotten Litter, and keeping the Horse exceeding warm, without using any burning, wounding, or other Violence.

C H A P. XXXIX. *Of the Wens in the Neck.*

**A** Wen is a certain Bunch or Kernel on the Skin, like a Tumor or Swelling; the inside whereof is sometimes hard like a gristle, and spongy like a skin full of soft Warts; and sometimes yellow like unto Rusty Bacon, with some white Grains amongst. Now of Wens, some are great, and some be small; also some are very painful, and some not painful at all. They proceed, as some imagine, of naughty, gross, and flegmatick Humours, binding together in some sick part of the Body. And others say, they proceed from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that be most extreame cold; but I say, that altho' they may proceed from these Causes, yet most generally they proceed from some pinching, bruising, biting, ripping, or galling, either of girths, halter, collar, or any other Thing whatsoever.

The certaineſt Cure thereof, is this, Take of Mallows, Sage and red Nettles, of each one handful; boil them in running Water, and put thereto a little Butter, and Honey, and when the Herbs be soft take them out, and all to bruise them, and put thereunto of Oil de Bay two ounces, and of Hogs-grease two ounces, and warm them together over the fire, mixing them well together: that done, plaister it upon a piece of Leather, so big as the Wen, and lay it to so hot as the Horse can endure it, renewing it every day in such sort the space of eight days, and if you perceive it will come to no Head, then Launce it from the midst of the Wen downward, so deep, that the matter in the bottom may be discovered and let out; which done, heal it up with this Salve; Take of Turpentine a quartern, and wash it nine Times in fair Water, then put thereunto the Yolk of an Egg, and a little English Saffron beaten into Powder, and make a Tent or Rowl of Flax, and dip it in that Ointment, and lay it to the sore, renewing the same every day once or twice, until the Wen be cured.

Others use in this case, with a hot Iron to burn and sear away all the superfluous flesh, and then to heal up the Sore either with the Ointment last rehearsed, or else with the Powder of Honey and Lime mixt together; and this manner of Cure is by much the speedier.

C H A P. XL. *Of Swelling in the Neck after Blood-letting.*

**T**HE Swelling of a Horse's Neck after Blood-letting, may come through divers Occasions, as namely, by striking through the Veins, so as some of the Blood being gotten betwixt the flesh and the Vein, it there corrodeth and turneth to an Imposthume, or else by stri-



king the Vein with a rusty Fleam, whereby the Vein rankleth, or by some cold Wind striking suddenly into the hole, or lastly, by suffering the Horse too soon to thrust down his Head, and graze or feed, whereby Humours resorting to that Place, breed a great Imposthuration: The Cure is, according to the Opinion of some Farriers, to take Hemlock and stamp it, and then to mingle it with Sheeps-dung and Wine-Vinegar, and so making a Plaister thereof, to lay it to the Swelling, renewing it once a day until it be whole. Other Farriers use first to anoint the Place with the Oil of Camomile warmed, and then to lay upon it a little Hay wet in cold Water, and bind it about with a Cloth, renewing it every Day for the Space of a Week, to see whether it will grow to a head, or else vanish away; if it grow to a head, you may then lance it, and thrust out the matter; then heal it up by tenting it with Flax, dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, dressing it once a day until it be whole.

C H A P. XLI. *How to Staunch Blood.*

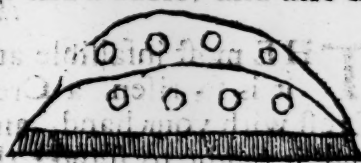
**I**F your Horse either by Wound or other Accident, or by the ignorance of any unskilful Farrier that letteth him bleed when the Sign is in that place, bleedeth so exceedingly that he will not be staunched, you shall then according to the Opinion of old Farriers, lay unto the Wound a little New Horse-Dung Tempered with Chalk and Strong Vinegar, and not to remove it from thence the space of three days; or else to lay unto it burnt Silk, burnt Felt, or burnt Cloath, any of which will staunch blood. Others use to pour into the Wound the Juice of Coriander, or else to let the Horse chew in his Mouth the leaves of Periwinkle. Others use to take of bruised Nettles, and lay them to the Wound; or else wild Tansey bruised, or hot Hogs-dung. Others use to take bruised Sage and lay it to the Wound; or else the Coame about the Smiths Forge; or else a clod of Earth, or bruised Hyssop; or soft crops of Hawthorn bruised; or else to take two ounces of the Horse's Blood and boil it until it come to a Powder and then put that Powder into the Wound.

But when all these fail, as in some Extremities, I have found them do; then for your only refuge, you shall take the soft Down either of Hares Skin, or a Coney Skin, and stop the Wound well therewith, holding it to with your hand till the Blood staunch: if it be a grievous fire Wound, then as soon as the blood is staked, spread a Plaister of Bole-Armoniack and Wine-Vinegar mixt, over the Wound.

C H A P. XLII. *Of the falling of the Crest.*

**T**HE falling of the Horse's Crest, is, when the upper part of a Horse's Neck, which is called the Crest, leaneth either to the one or the other side, and will not stand upright as it ought to do. It proceedeth

ceedeth most commonly from poverty and very hard keeping, and especially when a fat Horse falleth away suddenly upon any inward Sicknes. The Cure (according to the oldest Farriers) is, first to draw his Crest well, a full straws breadth deep on the contrary side with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would be half an Inch broad, and make both your Beginning and Ending somewhat beyond the Fall, so as the first Draught may go all the way hard upon the edge of the Mane, close by the Roots of the same, bearing your right Hand downward into the Neckward: Then answer that with another draught beneath, and so far distant from the first, as the fall is broad, compassing as it were all the fall; but still on the contrary side, and betwixt those two draughts, right in the midst, draw a third draught; then with an Iron Button of almost an Inch about, burn at each end a Hole, and also in the spaces betwixt the draughts, make divers Holes distant three fingers one from another as this Figure doth plainly shew you. That done, to kill the Fire, anoint it every Day once with fresh Butter for a Week or more; then take of Mallows and of Sage, of each one handful, boil them well in running Water, and wash the burning away till it be raw Flesh, and then dry it up with the Powder of Honey and Lime.



Other Farriers use for this Infirmary, first to cast the Horse upon some soft Dunghil, or other easie Place, and with a Knife to cut away the flesh on the hanging or under side of the Crest, even from the fore end thereof to the hinder end, six Inches broad and two Inches thick, or somewhat more in the middle thereof where it is the thickest, then groping the Crest with your hands, to pare the thickest part thereof, till it come all to one thinness. then holding the Horse still fast bound, to cover all the place with great handfuls of Swines Dung prepared for the purpose, and hold it to the sore place an hour together until the blood be staunched; Then let the Horse arise, and lead him into the Stable tying him in such sort, that he may neither rub his Neck nor lie down: then the next Morning take good store of burnt Allom beaten to Powder, and strow it all over the sore place, and so let him stand for two days after, without any stirring, lest the Wound should bleed again, then at the end of these two days you shall bathe the sore gently with a fine Linen-Cloth, dipt in warm Urine, and then drying the sore again, throw more burnt Allom upon it, and after anoint all about the outside of the Edges of the Sore with Unguentum Album Camphoratum, more than an Inch broad; thus you shall dress him every day once on that side of the Crest which did fall; then for the contrary side you shall draw his Mane thereon, and plat it



it in many Plats; which done, you shall to those Plats with thongs of Leather, fasten a Cudgel of a foot and a half long; then to the midst of that Cudgel you shall hang a piece of Lead with a hole in it, of such weight as will poize the Crest up even, and hold it in his right place. Then shall you draw his Crest on that side the weight hangs with a hot Drawing-Iron, even from the top of the Crest, down to the point of the shoulder, making divers stroaks one an Inch and an half from another; then shall you lay upon the burnt Places a Plaister of Pitch, Tar, and Rozen molten together, and so let the weight hang till all the sore places be healed, and there is no question but the Crest will stand both upright and strongly.

C H A P. XLIII. *A certain and approved way, how to raise up the Crest that is fallen.*

**T**HE most infallible and certain way to raise up, and to keep when it is so risen, a Crest that is fallen, is, First to raise up the fallen Crest with your hand, and to place it in such wise as you would have it, and it ought to stand; then having one standing on the same side the Crest falleth from, let him with one hand hold up the Crest, and with the other thrust out the bottom or foundation of the Crest, so as it may stand upright; then on that side to which it falleth, with an hot Iron (somewhat broad on the Edge) draw his Neck first at the bottom of the Crest, then in the midst of the Crest, and lastly, at the setting on of the hair, and be sure to draw it through the Skin, but be sure no deeper, for this will enlarge and open the Skin.

Then on the other side (from whence the Crest falleth) gather up the skin with your hand, and with two Plaisters of Shoe-makers Wax laid one against another at the edge of the Wound, and with smooth Splints to stay the skin, that it may shrink neither upwards nor downwards; then with a pair of sharp Scizars clip away all the spare skin which you had gathered up with your hand, then with a needle and some red silk, stitch the skin together in divers places, and to keep the skin from breaking, stitch the edges of the Plaister together also, then anoint the Sore with Turpentine, Honey and Wax molten together, and the places which you drew with the hot Iron, with piece-grease made warm; and this do twice a day, till all be whole, and have great care that your Splints shrink not.

C H A P. XLIV. *Of the Manginess in a Horse's Mane.*

**T**HE Manginess which is in the Mane of a Horse, and maketh him shed his Hair, proceedeth either from the rankness of blood, poverty, or lousiness, or else of rubbing where a Mangy Horse hath rubbed, or else of fretting dust lying in the Mane for want of good dressing.

dressings. The Signs are, the apparent rubbing and itching of the Horse about the Mane and Neck, and the Scabs fretting both the flesh and the skin, besides the shedding and falling away of the hair. The Cure (according to the Opinion of some of our old Farriers) is, first let him bleed on the Neck-vein, and cut away all the hair from the Scabs, then with a hot Iron as big as a Man's Finger, sear all the sore place even from the one end to the other; then anoint all the place you so burnt, with Black Soap, and now and then wash it with strong Lye and Black Soap mixt together.

Other good Farriers for this Manginess only take of fresh grease one Pound, of Quick-silver one ounce, of Brimstone one ounce, of Rape-Oil half a pint, mingle them together, and stir them continually in a pot with a slice, until the Quicksilver be so wrought with the rest, as you shall perceive no Quick-silver therein: that done, take a blunt Knife, or an old Horse-comb, and scratch all the Mangy places therewith until it be raw and bloody, and then anoint it with this Ointment in the Sun shine, if it may be to the intent the Ointment may sink in, or else hold before it either a hot Fire-pan, or a hot Bar of Iron, to make the Ointment melt into the flesh, and if you see that within three days after thus once anointing him he leave not rubbing, then mark in what place he rubbeth, and dress that place again, and questionless it will serve.

#### C H A P. XLV. *Of the shedding of Hair in the Mane.*

**H**Air, for the most part, shedderh or falleth from the Mane of a Horse by reason of certain little Worms which eat and fret the roots of the Hair asunder. The Cure whereof is, first to anoint the Mane and Crest with black Soap, and then to make a strong Lye, either of running Water, and Ash-ashes, or else of Urine and Ash-ashes, and with that to wash the Mane all over, and it will help him.

#### C H A P. XLVI. *Of the Pain and Grief in a Horse's Withers.*

**B**oth to a Horse's Withers, and also to his Back, do happen many Infirmities and Sorances, some proceeding from inward Causes, as of the Corruption of Humours, and sometimes of outward Causes, as through the galling, pinching, and wringing of some naughty Saddle, or some heavy Burthen laid on the Horse's Back, or such like. And of these Grievs some be small, and some be great. The small are only superficial Blisters, Swellings, Light-galls, or Bruisings, and are easily cured; but the great are those which pierce to the very Bone, and be most dangerous, especially if they be nigh to the back Bone. Then to speak first to the smaller gallings, whensoever you shall see any swellings to arise, either about your Horse's Withers, or any other part:



part of his Back, the Cure is, (according to the Opinion of some of the old Farriers) first of all if the place be much swoln and festered, then to pierce it with a sharp hot Iron in many parts on both sides of the Neck, and then put into the same Tents of Linen Cloth, dipt in warm Sallet-Oil, and then after to dry and heal it up with the Powder of Honey and Lime mixt together.

Others use to take Butter and Salt, and to boil them together until they be black, then to pour it hot on the swelling; and then to take warm Horse-dung, and lay it on the sore Back until it be whole, dressing it once a day.

Others (especially the best of the ancient Farriers) use as soon as they see any swelling to arise, to bind unto it a little hot Horses dung to see if that will assuage it, which if it will not, then to prick it round about the swelling with a Fleim, Knife, or Launcet, yet not too deep, but so as it may pierce the skin, and make the Blood issue forth; that done, take of Mallows, of Smallage, two or three handfuls, and boil them in running-Water until they be so soft as Pap; then strain the Water softly from it, and bruise the Herbs in a green dish, putting thereunto a little Hogs-grease, or else Sallet-Oil, or Sheeps-suet, or any other fresh grease; boil them and stir them together, not frying them hard, but as they be soft and supple, and then with a clout lay it warm upon the sore, renewing it every day once until the swelling be gone, for it will either drive it away, or bring it to an head, which lightly chanceth not in these small swelling, except some Gristle or Bone be perished. Others of the ancient Farriers use, when they see any swelling to arise about a Horse's back, first to shave the place with a Razor, and then to lay thereto this Plaster: Take a little Wheat-flower and the White of an Egg beaten together, and spread it on a Linen Cloth, which being laid unto the swelling two or three days, and not removed, will bring it to an head; and when you come to take it off, pull it away so softly as you can possibly, and where you see the Corruption gathered in a head together, then in the lowest place thereof, pierce it upward with a sharp Iron somewhat hot, that the matter or corruption may come out, and forget not to anoint the sore place every day once with fresh Butter and Hogs grease until it be whole.

Others of our late Farriers use, when they see any swelling only to lay wet Hay unto it, for that either will drive it away, or bring it unto a head, and then when it is broken, you shall lay upon it a Plaster of Wine-Lees, renewing it as often as it grows dry, and if your Lees be too thin, you may thicken them with Wheat-flower: or if you like not this Medicine, then you may make a Plaster of thick Barm, as great as the Sore, and renew it once a Day until the swelling be assuaged; but if you see that any Corruption be knit together then  
you

you shall Launce it in the nethermost part, and let out the Matter, then wash the fore either with Urine, Ale, or Beer, made scalding hot, then dry up all the moisture from the fore, either with a Linnen Cloth, or with a Sponge; then cover all the fore over with burnt Allom beaten to Powder: And thus dress the Horfe once a day until the flesh be grown up so high as you would have it, then shall you dress the fore but once in two or three Days. But if you see it skinneth but slowly, then may you anoint the edge of the fore all about after it hath been washed as aforesaid, with Unguentum Album, for that will make the skin come fast; but if you do perceive that by dressing it too seldom, there doth begin to grow any proud flesh, then you shall take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of Unguentum Album, and anoint all the fore places therewith once in two days: This will correct the proud Flesh, and cause it to skin and heal suddenly.

Others use for the abating of these swellings, to boil Mallows in the grounds of Ale, and to clap it hot to the swelling; and if the swelling do break, wash it with Piss, and pour hot molten Butter upon it. Others use to shave away the Hair, and then to lay very hot unto it a handful of Leeks stamp'd and mix'd with Boars grease, or else to take a turf of Earth burned red, and laid to as hot as the Horfe can suffer it. Others use to take Nettles beaten to pieces, and mix'd with hot Urine, and so lay it on hot, and then set on the Saddle; and then if after two or three days dressing, the swelling break, then look if there be any dead flesh within the fore, and either eat or cut it out: then take a pound of fresh grease, and a Pound of Sallet-Oil, three ounces of white Wax, one ounce of Turpentine and three drams of Verdigrease, melt all these together, and tent the fore therewith till it be whole, for this will both eat away the ill Flesh, and incarnate good. Others take green Coleworts and stamp them in swines-grease, and lay it plaisterwise on the fore, and it will assuage it, especially if you ride the Horfe a little to make the Medicine enter in. Now if there be no great swelling, but only the skin chafed off, then you shall wash the raw place with Water and Salt, or else with warm Wine, and sprinkle upon it the Powder of Honey and Lime; or else the Powder of Myrrh, or the Powder of burnt Silk, or Felt, or Cloath, or of any old Post.

Other Farriers use when only the skin is galled off, to take a spoonful of thick Cream, and to put as much Chimney-foot into it as will make it thick like an Ointment, and then to lay it upon the fore, and questionless it will heal it presently if the Wound be not very deep.



CHAP. XLVII. *Of any galled Back or Withers, how great soever the Swelling or Inflammation be.*

**I**F the Swelling, Pinch, Wringing, or Gall, either upon the Withers, or any part of the Back of a Horse be extraordinary great, and much inflamed, so that there is no apparent hope that it can be got away without much Apofthumation; then the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is, To take Barm, and mix it with so much Soot of a Chimney, and make it so thick therewith that it shall seem like Tar, and with that make a Plaister, and lay it to the sore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will very suddenly both draw and heal it perfectly.

Others use to take a handful of Bay-Salt, and a handful of great and small Oatmeal, and put a quantity of old stale Urine thereto, and stir them all together, and temper it like pap, or paste, and then make round balls thereof, then throw them in a Fire, and make them red hot; then take them forth and beat them to fine Powder, and then strow of that Powder all over the sore, so oft as you shall see any part thereof bare, and it will heal it. Other Farriers use if they see the swelling to be any thing great, first to draw round about the swelling with a hot Iron, and then cross him with the same Iron, in manner of this Figure: then take a round hot Iron, having a sharp point, and thrust it up into the swelling on each side upwards towards the point of the Withers, or top of the Back, to the intent that the Matter may issue downwards at both the holes; that done, tent both the holes first with a tent dipt in Hogs-grease to kill the Fire, and also anoint all the burnt places therewith, continuing so to do until the swelling be asswaged, renewing the tent every day once until the fiery matter be fallen away; then tent him again with washed Turpentine, mingled with the Yolks of three or four Eggs, and Saffron, renewing the Tent every day once until it be whole.



But if for all this the swelling do not go away, then it is a sign of some inward Impoſthumation; and then it shall be good that you lance it, and let out the Corruption; then take of Honey half a pint, of Verdigrease two ounces beaten to Powder, and mix it together with Honey, then boil them in a Pot until they look red, then being lukewarm, make either a Tent or a Plaister, according as the Wound shall require, renewing the same every day once until it be whole. But the sore may be so vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it be on the Withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the Shoulders, even unto the Body, which is most dangerous and very mortal,

mortal, therefore whensoever you shall fear any such hollownes, you shall tent the hole with the Salve last mentioned, and thrust after it a good piece of dry Sponge, as well to keep the hole open, as also to suck out the Corruption, and this you shall renew once a day until the fore be whole.

✍ Others of our late Farriers use to take Butter, Vinegar, and Bay-Salt, and melting them together, lay it to the fore warm until it break, then strow upon it either Soot, or the Powder of Clay Wall, but if it be much festred, then take a pottle of Verjuice, two penny-worth of green Copperas, and boil it unto a pint and a half: Then wash and searh the hollownes therewith, then fill the hole with red Lead, and so let it remain three days untouched, then wash it with the same water again, and fill the hole again with red Lead, and so every other Day wash it with that Water, and lay red Lead thereon, and it will heal the forest Back whatsoever. Now all these Medicines already rehearsed are sufficient enough for the healing of any gall'd back whatsoever; yet forasmuch as divers Farriers hold divers Opinions, and think what they know to be only best approv'd, and inasmuch as you shall not be ignorant of any Man's Skill or Knowledge, which beareth any ground of reason in it; I will repeat you a Catalogue of other Medicines, which assuredly are all good in their kinds, and you may use them as occasion shall be administred.

First then know, That the Powder of Briar-Leaves will dry and heal up any galled Back. Also Rye-flower, the White of an Egg, Honey, Barley straw burnt, and Soot, will dry up, and heal a sore Back: the Powder of Honey and unslackt Lime will skin any Gall; the Powder of wild Cucumbers dried in an Oven, will heal any Gall, provided the Sore be first washt with Vinegar. Onions boiled in Water, and laid hot to a swoln Horse's Back, will assuage the swelling; and the yolk of an Egg, Salt, and Vinegar beaten together, will heal it when it is broken, provided that you wash the fore first with Ale, wherein Rosemary hath been sod. The Soot or Grime of a Brass Pot, the Powder of the bone of Crab-fish, or the Powder of Oyster-shells, any of these will dry and skin a galled Back.

Lastly, (and besides it, a Man needeth no more Medicines) for this purpose, Take Hay and boil it strong in Urine, and lay it to the swelled place, and it will either assuage it, or bring it to a Head, then Lance it, and let out the matter; then stop the hole with Rozin, Wax, and fresh Grease molten together; but if you find any dead flesh to grow within the fore, then eat it out with either Verdigrease beaten to Powder and strewed thereon, or else with Mercury calcined, called of some Precipitate, being likewise strowed on the proud flesh; and when the proud flesh is gone, you may dry up the Sore only with the



Powder of Rozin, and nothing else. See farther of this Disease in the new Addition for the Fistula, marked thus 

C H A P. XLVIII. *Of a Canker in the Withers of a Horse.*

**I**F a Horse after he hath been violently wrung upon the Withers, be suffered to go unlooked to, and that the sore breaketh upward through its own violence, yet the greatest substance of the Matter or Corruption descending and rotting still downward, it cannot chuse but breed a Cankerous and Vile Ulcer, as dangerous as is any Fistula, which you shall know by these Signs; First, the Matter that issueth from the sore, will be sharp, hot, and waterish lye, fretting the hair away where it runneth down, and about the hole of the sore will be a kind of spongy, proud, dead flesh, which stoppeth the passage of the gross Matter. Now the Cure of this Cankerous Sore is, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, To take a Razor, and cut open the hole of the Ulcer, so that you may see into the hollownes; then cut out all the dead flesh till you come to the quick, then take a quart of old stale Urine, and put thereto a handful of Salt; then boil it well on the fire, then having cleansed the sore either with a Cloth or a wisp of Hay, wash it well with the Liquor; then take the Yolks of four Eggs, and a Penny-worth of Verdigrise, and a spoonful of Flower, and make a Plaister thereof and lay it to the sore, dressing him in this sort once a Day until it be whole.

Others of our ancient and latter Farriers use to take of the strongest Beer a pint, put into it a quarter of a pound of Allom, and half a handful of Sage, seethe it to the one half, then take out the Sage-leaves, and with the rest dress the Horse once a Day, and it will heal any Cankerous Sore in any part whatsoever.

C H A P. XLIX. *Of the Stick-fast, or Sit-fast, Horns, or hard Bones growing under the Saddle.*

**T**Hese Stick-fasts, Sit-fasts, or Horns, that grow in a Horse's skin under the Saddle, is a certain dead skin like a hard piece of Leather, growing fast in the flesh; it cometh of some old bruise, which not imposthumating, the Skin falleth dead, and sticketh hard and fast to the flesh.

 The Cure is, Take either a sharp crooked Instrument made for the purpose, or else a long Nail, with the point turned inward, and catching hold on the edge of the dead Skin, or Horn, which will clap or rise from the sound skin, and with a sharp Knife cut away all the dead hard skin from the sound flesh; and if when it is cut out, the hollownes be somewhat deep, then you shall heal it up by pouring hot molten Butter into it Evening and Morning; then when the flesh is made even, dry

dry and skin it either with the Powder of Honey and Lime, or with Soot and Cream mixt together. Others use first to anoint the Stick-fast or hard Skin with fresh Butter or Hogs-grease, until it be mollified and made soft, so as you may either cut them or pull them away, and then wash the Wound either with Man's Urine, or with White-wine, and then dry it up with the Powder of Oyfter shells, or Bole-Armoniack.

C H A P. L. *Of Wens or Knobs growing about the Saddle-Skirts.*

**T**HE Wens or Knobs which grow about the Saddle-Skirts, do most commonly grow betwixt two Ribs, and do ever proceed of old Bruises; and the Cure is, first to mollifie them by anointing them twice or thrice a Day with Hogs-grease, for more than a Week together, and sometimes to bathe them with hot Wine-Lees; but if in that space it will come to no head, then Lance it from the middle downwards, and Tent it with washed Turpentine, Yolks of Eggs, and Saffron mingled as well together as is before shewed, renewing the Tent every Day once, until the Sore be sufficiently and perfectly healed. Look unto the Cure for the Splent, and what cureth that, helpeth this.

C H A P. LI. *Of the Navel-Gall.*

**T**HE Navel Gall is, when a Horse at any time is bruised on the top of the Chine of the Back, behind the Saddle, right against the Navel, whence it taketh the Name: it cometh either by spitting of the Saddle behind, or for lack of stuffing, or by means of the Crupper-Buckle sitting down in that place, or through some hard weight or knobs lying directly behind the Saddle; of all bruising on the back, it is the most vile and dangerous, and you shall perceive it by the puffed up and spongy flesh, looking like old rotten Lights about the Mouth of the Sore. The Cure thereof is, according to some of the ancient Farriers, first to cut away all the dead or proud flesh even to the Bone, then burn a hole four Inches lower than the Navel-Gall, and put a Rowel of Horse-hair through it; then take the Powder of Oyfter-shells, or of any old Shoe-sole burnt, and strow it on the sore, and as it groweth moist put on more Powder.

Other Farriers for the Navel-gall, do take the White of an Egg, Wheat-flower, Honey, Mustard and Soap, of each a like quantity, and mixing them together, make a Plaister thereof, and after the dead flesh is taken out, and the sore wash'd with Ale, Butter, and Urine, then lay on the Plaister; and if the proud flesh begi to grow again, then the Powder of an old burnt Shooe, or Nerve-Oil, or Verdigreaf will kill it, and the Powder of Oyfter-shells will skin it. Others of the

and



ancient Farriers use, after they have cut out all the rotten and dead flesh, to take the White of an Egg and Salt beaten together, and lay that Plaister-wise to the Sore upon a little Tow, renewing it once a day the space of two Days; then take of Honey a quarter of a pint, and of Verdigrease one ounce beaten into Powder, and boil them together in a pot, stirring it still, until it look red, and being lukewarm, make a Plaister with Tow, and clap it to the Wound, washing and cleansing well the Wound first with a little warm Vinegar or White-wine, continuing so to do once a Day until it begin to heal and to skin; then dry it up with sprinkling thereon this Powder following: Take of Honey a quartern, and as much of unslackt Lime as will thicken the Honey, and make it like a PASTE, and in a Fire pan over the Fire, stir it still until it be hard baked, so as it may be beaten into Powder; but ever before you throw on the Powder, wash the Wound first with warm Vinegar, continuing so to do until it be perfectly skinned. Others use to heal this Gall by laying on the Sore, a Plaister of Chimney-soot and Barm mixt together, or else mix Nettle-Seeds and Sallet-Oil together, and anoint the Sore therewith.

There be others which use only to wash the sore with warm Urine and Salt, and then to anoint the place with fresh Grease and Salt mixt together, or else to take of Betony, Powder of Brimstone, Ellebore, Pitch, and old grease, of each a like quantity, and stamp them together, and when you have washed the Sore with old Urine, then anoint it with this Ointment until it be whole. See also for this Disease in the new Additions for the Fistula, thus marked 

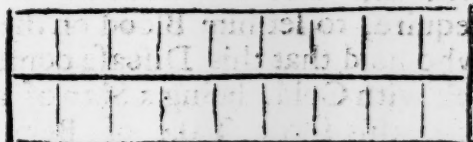
#### C H A P. LII. *Of the Swaying in the Back.*

**A** Horse is said to be swayed in the Back, when either by too great a burthen, or by some slip, strain, or over-hasty and strait turning, he hath taken an extream Wrench in the lower part of his Back below his short Ribs, and directly between his Fillers; the Signs whereof are continual reeling and rolling of the Horse's hinder Parts in his going, and also he will falter many times, and sway sometimes backwards, and sometimes side-long, and be ready to fall to the Ground; besides, the Horse being laid, will with a great deal of Difficulty rise up again.

The Cure, according to the Opinion of the old Italian Farriers, is, To take of the Fat of the Fruit of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, of Rozin four ounces, of Pitch four ounces, of Bole-Armoniack one ounce, and of Sanguis Draconis half an ounce; incorporate all these well together, and lay it Plaister-wise all over the Reins of the Horse's back, not taking it by any means away until it fall off.

Others

Others of our own Farriers use first to cover the Horse's back with a Sheep-skin coming hot from the Sheeps Back, laying the fleshy side next to his Back, and then lay a warm Housing-Cloth upon the same, to keep his Back as hot as may be, and so let it continue until it begin to smell; then take the old Skin away, and apply a new unto it, continuing so to do the space of three Weeks, and if he amend not with this, then draw his Back with a hot Iron right out on both sides of the ridge of his Back, from the pitch of the Buttock unto a handful within the Saddle; and then again overthwart, according to this Figure, and let every Line be an Inch one from another, neither let the stroke be deep, and burned no more than that every one may look yellow; then lay upon the burning this Charge or Plaister: Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozin half a pound, of Bole-Armoniack half a pound made into Powder, and half a pint of Tar, and boil all these together in a pot, and stir it till every thing be molten, and thoroughly mingled together; then being lukewarm, daub all the burning therewith very thick, and thereupon clap as many flocks of the Horse's Colour as you can make to abide on, and remove it not before it fall away of it self, and if it be in Summer, you may turn the Horse to Grass.



C H A P. LIIE. *Of special Weakness in the Back.*

According to the Opinion of our oldest Farriers. (though my self have taken little notice of the Infirmary;) there is another kind of Weakness belonging to a Horse's Back, which they call the fretting or biting of the Reins, which doth proceed from abundance of Humours resorting to that place, whereby all the hinder Parts of the Horse do lose their feeling and strength, and such a Horse falleth down to the Ground; yea, and the Humours many times resorting to the Heart, do suffocate the same, and in two or three hours do cause the Horse to die. The Cure, according to their Opinion, is, First to let the Horse blood abundantly in the Neck-vein, and to draw his Back with a hot Iron, in such sort, as is declared in the last Chapter, and then to make him swim a pretty while in some River; then rowel him upon the Haunches near unto the Huckle-bones, and then to anoint the sore place with Hogs-grease, and three-leaved Grass, stamped together, until he be whole.

C H A P. LIV. *Of the Swelling of the Cods or Stones.*

This kind of Swelling or Inflammation of the Cods, cometh either by some Wound received, or by the stinging, or else biting of some venomous Beast, or else by some great strain either in running or



or leaping, or by the biting of one Horse with another. The Cure is, according to the Opinion of the most ancient Italian Farriers, first to bathe the Cod with Water, wherein hath been sodden the Roots of wild Cucumber, and Salt, and then to anoint it with an Ointment made of Oil, Goats-grease and the White of an Egg, or else to bathe the Cod in warm Water, Nitrum and Vinegar mingled together, and also to be anointed with an Ointment made of Chalk, or of Potters-Earth, Ox-Dung, Comin Water and Vinegar mingled together; or else to be anointed with the Juice of the Herb called Night-shade, or with the Juice of Hemlock, which grows on Dunghills; and if need require, to let him Blood on the Flank-veins. But our latter Farriers, who hold that this Disease cometh ofttest after some Sicknes or Surfeit with Cold, being a Sign of amendment from that Sicknes, do cure it in this sort: Take of Bean-flower, Wheat-meal, Comin, and Hogs-grease of each a like quantity, and making a Plaister thereof, spread it all over the Horse's Cods and Stones. Others boil Ground-sel in Wine-Vinegar, and so bathe the Horse's Cods therewith; or else take a quart of good Ale-wort and set it on the Fire with Crums of Brown Bread strongly leavened, and better than a handful of Comin made into Powder: Then with Bean-flower make a Plaister of them all, and apply it to the Grief as hot as can be suffered. Or if this help not, take Cows Dung, and see the it in Milk, and lay it upon the swelling as hot as may be, and it will assuage it. But if this Inflammation proceed from rankness of Seed, which you shall see by the much moist sliminess of his Yard, then you shall first make him cover a Mare, then keep him without Provender, and let him Blood, above the great Vein, which is between his Lips, and lay thereto hard Eggs beaten in his own Dung, and make a Plaister of the same, and lay it to his Cods, and once a day wash his Cods with cold Water.

Other ancient Farriers use to let the Horse blood in his flank Veins, and then take Oil of Roses and of Vinegar, of each half a Pint, of Bole-Armoniack half a quartern beaten to Powder, mix them together in a Cruize, and being lukewarm, anoint the Cods therewith, with two or three Feathers bound together; and the next day ride him into the Water, so as his Cods may be within the Water, giving him a turn or two therein, and so return fair and softly home unto the Stable; and when the Horse is dry, anoint him again as before, and do this every day until the Horse be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which hold that this Disease may come by means of evil Humours, and corrupt Blood, which resort unto the Cods; and the Cure is, To cover all the Cods over with a Charge made of Bole-Armoniack, and Vinegar wrought together, renewing it every Day once until the swelling go away, or that it break  
of

of it self, and if it break, then to tent it with Mel-Rosatum, and make him a Breech of Canvase to keep it in, renewing the Tent every Day once, until it be perfectly well.

C H A P. LV. *Of Incording, or Bursting, or the Rupture in Horses.*

**T**His Rupture, as our old Farriers call it, this Incording or Burstness in Horses, is, when the Rim or thin Film which holdeth the Guts up in a Horse's Body is broken, so that the Guts fall down either into the Cods of the Horse, or into the Horse's Flank, as I have seen divers. Now this Burstness cometh either by some stripe or Blow of another Horse, or else by some strain in leaping over a hedge or a ditch, or by teaching a Horse to bound when he is too young, or when a Horse goeth himself upon some Pole or Stake, or by forcing a Horse when he is full to run beyond his Strength, or by stopping a Horse too suddenly upon naughty and hollow Ground, whereby the stradling and slipping of his hinder Feet, may stretch or tear the Rim.

The Signs to know this Sorance before it be apparent to the eye, are, The Horse will forsake his Meat, and stand shoaring or leaning always on that side he is hurt; and on that side if you search with your hand betwixt the Stone and the Thigh, upward to the Body, and somewhat above the Stone, you shall find the Gut it self big and hard in the feeling, whereas on the other side you shall find no such Thing.

Now for the Cure, although for mine own part I both do and shall ever hold it uncureable, as long as a Horse is a Beast without Reason, yet for your Satisfaction, I will not stick to repeat what the best Farriers, and my self have practised, inasmuch as it worketh much good, though no absolute Cure.

The Cure then is, To bring the Horse into some House or Place which hath over-head a strong baulk or beam going overthwart, and strow that Place thick with straw, then put on four strong Pasterns, with four Rings on his Feet. and fasten one end of a long Rope to one of those Rings, then thred all the other Things with the loose end of the Rope, and so draw all his four Feet together, and cast him on the straw; that done, cast the Rope over the baulk, and hoist the Horse so as he may lie flat on his Back, with his Legs upward without strugling, then bathe his Stones well with warm Water and Butter molten together, and the Stones being somewhat warm and well mollified, raise them up from the Body with both your hands, being closed by the Fingers close together, and holding the Stones in your hands in such manner, work down the Gut into the Body of the Horse, by striking it downwards continually with your two Thumbs, one labouring immediately after

A a

another,



another, until you perceive that side of the Stone to be so small as the other; and so having returned the Gut into his right place, take a Lift of two Fingers broad, throughly anointed with fresh Butter, and tie his Stones both together with the same, so nigh the Body as may be, yet not over hard, but so as you may put your Finger between; that done rake the Horse quietly down, and lead him gently into the Stable, where he must stand warm, and not be stirred for the space of three Weeks; but forget not the next day, after you have placed his Gut in its true place, to unloosen the Lift and take it away, and as well at that time, as every Day once or twice after, to cast a Dish or two of cold Water upon his Cods, and that will make him to shrink up his Stones, and thereby restrain the Gut from falling down; and at the three Weeks end, to make your Cure so much the surer, it were not amiss to geld the Stone on that side away, so shall he hardly be bursten again on that side; and during the Cure, let him not eat much, nor drink much, and let his drink be always warm.

C H A P. LVI. *Of the Botch in the Groins of a Horse.*

**I**T is the Opinion of the best Horseleaches, that if a gross Horse which is full of Humours, be suddenly and violently laboured, that then the Humours will resort into the weakest part, and there gather together and breed a Botch, and especially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighs, not far from the Cods: The Signs are, The hinder Legs will be all swoln, especially from the Cambrels or Hoofs upward, and if you feel with your hand, you shall find a great knob or swelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head.

The Cure according to the general Practice, is, First to ripen it with this Plaister: Take of Wheat-flower, of Turpentine, and of Honey of each a like quantity, stirring it together to make a stiff Plaister, and with a Cloth lay it to the Sore, renewing it once every day, until it break or wax soft; and then Launce it, so as the Matter may run downward, then Tent it with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

C H A P. LVII. *A most certain and approved Cure for the Botch in the Groins, or any Imposthumation.*

**A**S soon as you perceive the swelling to appear, lay upon it a Plaister of Shooe-maker's Wax, spread upon Allom-Leather, and let it lie until the Sore grow soft; then open it with a Launcet, or let it break of it self; when the filth is come out, wash the Sore very well with strong Allom-water, then Tent it with the Ointment called *Ægyptiacum* till it be whole.

C H A P.

C H A P. LVIII. *Of the Itch, Scab, or Manginess in the Tail, or general falling of the Hair.*

**H**Orses, through the Corruption of Blood, or the fulness of Rank feeding, or through over-heating and labouring, or by the infection of other Horses, do many times get the general Scab, Itch, or Manginess in the Tail, and sometimes in the Spring-time Horses are often troubled with the Truncheon Worms in their Fundament, which will make them rub their Tails, and fret the Hair, yet are free both from Mange and Scurf. Wherefore if then you only Rake the Horse with your Hand, anoint it with Soap, and pull out the Worms, you shall cause the Horse to leave his rubbing; but if you perceive the Hair to shed and fall from the Tail, through some small Worms that grow at the Roots of the Hair, or through some little fretting Scurf, then you shall anoint all the Tail with Soap even to the Ground, and then wash it with very strong Lye after, and that will both kill the Worms, and scour out the Scurf; but if much of the Tail be fallen away, then you shall keep the Tail continually wet with a sponge dipt in fair Water, and that will make the Hair to grow very fast. Now if in the Horse's Tail shall grow any Canker, which will consume both the Flesh and Bone, and make the Joints to fall away one by one, then you shall wash all his Tail with Aqua-Fortis, or strong Water made in this sort: Take of green Copperas and of Allom, of each one Pound, of white Copperas a quartern, boil all these together in three Quarts of Running-Water, in a very strong Earthen Pot, until one half be consumed; and then with a little of this Water, being made lukewarm, wash his Tail with a little Clout or Flax bound to the end of a Stick, continuing so to do every day once till it be whole. But if, as I said before, through the Corruption of Blood, Food, or Labour, this Scab, Itch, or Manginess, spread universally into many Parts of the Tail, you shall then likewise wash it with the same strong Water until it be whole.

C H A P. LIX. *Of the general Scab, Manginess, or Leprosie over the whole Body.*

**T**He general Manginess, or Leprosie, which runneth all over the Horse's Body, is a cankered filthy Scurf which covereth the same, proceeding from abundance of melancholy corrupt Blood, ingendred by infection or unwholesome Food, or else by indiscreet Labour. The Signs whereof are, the Horse will be all mangy, and covered over with a white filthy scurf, full of Scabs, and raw plats about the Neck and Flanks, and ill favoured to look on, and rubbing, scratching



scratching, and biting: of all Diseases there is no one more infectious, nor will more certainly kill a Horse if it be not prevented.

Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of skilful Farriers, is, First to let the Horse blood in the one side of the Neck-vein, and within two days after on the other side of the Neck, and within two days after that, in the Flank-veins, and last of all, in the Vein under the tail: then wash all the sore Places with Salt-brine, and rubbing them hard with a wisp of straw hard twisted, so as they may bleed well, and be all raw; that done, anoint the places with this Ointment: Take of Quicksilver one ounce, of Hogs-grease one pound, of Brimstone beaten into Powder a quartern, of Rape-Oil a pint, mingle these things well together, until the Quicksilver be thoroughly incorporated with the rest, and having anointed all the raw places with this Ointment, make it to sink into the flesh, by holding and waving up and down over it, a hot broad Bar of Iron, and then touch him no more again the space of two or three days; during which time, if you see that he rubbeth still in any place, then rub that place again with an old Horsecomb, or a Hair-Cloth, to make it raw, and anoint it with fresh Ointment. But if all this will not help, then with a hot Iron round and blunt at the point, so big as a Man's little Finger, burn all the mangy places, making round holes, passing only through the Skin and no further: For which Intent, it shall be needful to pull the Skin first from the Flesh with your left Hand, holding it still until you have thrust the hot Iron through it, and let every hole be a span one from another, and if need be, you may anoint those holes with a little Soap, and let the Horse be very thin dieted during his curing Time.

Now for mine own part, I do utterly dislike this burning, for it is a foul manner of Cure, and breedeth much Eye-sore in the Horse, and therefore other of our latter Farriers use for this Disease, after the Horse is let blood in the Neck-vein, to take a good quantity of fresh Grease, and mix it well with the Powder of Chalk, then put thereto a good quantity of the Powder of Brimstone and Elecampane roots, and stir them all well together, and take a pretty quantity of Quicksilver, and kill it with your fasting spittle, or Sallet-Oil, and mix it with all the rest very well together, and so anoint all the sore places about the Horse with this Ointment. Others use to take of Lamp Oil, the fine Powder of Brimstone, of black Soap, of Tar, of Hogs-grease, and the Soot of a Chimney, of each a like quantity, and then mix them all well together, by boiling them on the Fire, and then anoint all the sore places therewith, as hot as the Horse can endure or suffer it, always provided that the Horse be let blood before you use the Ointment.

Others

Others use, after the Horse is let blood, to take of Oil de Bay a pound, and of Quicksilver one ounce, and mixing them together, never leave stirring thereof 'till the Quicksilver be killed and incorporated with the Oil, then anoint all the sore places therewith, after you have made them raw by rubbing them.

Other Farriers use first to let the Horse bleed, then to wash all the sore places within two days after, with Water wherein young Broom, or the Herb Arsmart hath been well sodden and smally chopt and mixt with a little Soot, and rub him well untill the sore places breed; then take a pound of black Soap, a pottle of keen Mustard, four pennyworth of Brimstone made into Powder, three pennyworth of Quicksilver well killed with fresh Grease, two pennyworth of Verdigrease, a quarter of a pint of Grease, stir all these together in a Vessel 'till the Grease and other things be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithal anoint all the sore places, and with once anointing, and twice washing, this will cure him.

Other Farriers use, if the Horse be young, to let him bleed, on both sides the Neck, and then to cut the Skin down the midst of his Forehead two Fingers in length; then with a Cornet open the Skin an inch wide on both sides the slit, and put therein thin slices of the green Root of Elecampane, or Angelica, which is better: So let them remain under the Skin 'till the Matter rot, then crust it forth after two or three days, and in twelve days the Roots will fall out as it healeth; but this will cure the Mange provided that you anoint all the sore places with the Powder of Brimstone, Verdigrease, and Oil-Olive mixt upon a fire very well together. Others use after Blood-letting, to rowel the Horse under the Neck, that the evil Humours may issue forth, then to rub all his Body quite over with an hard hair Cloth, or with an old Curry-Comb, until the Horse bleedeth; after that, take of Sulphur, Salt and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beat them and temper them with very strong Vinegar, and as much common Oil, and therewith anoint all the sore places; or else take very strong Wine-Vinegar, the Urine of a Boy under twelve Years of Age, and the Juice of Hemlock, mix them together, and wash the Horse therewithal.

Other Farriers use after Blood-letting, to anoint the Horse with one of these Ointments, the sore having been before rubbed till it bleed, either with Brimstone, Oil, Vinegar, Salt, Soot, Swines-Dung, and unslackt Lime, of each a like quantity, well mixt and boiled together, or else with Brine-Water sod with Nettles, or else with Vinegar, Allom, and Salt Nirre boiled together, or else wash the Sore with Beef-broth; then boil Pepper beaten to Powder, Verdigrease, and Chervel in fresh Grease, and anoint the Horse all over therewith, holding a Chafing;



Chafing-dish and Coals, or a hot Bar of Iron to his Body, to make the Ointment sink in.

Lastly, and as good as any of the rest, after the Horse hath been let Blood, Take an old Curry-Comb, or a Wool-Card, and rub every sore place about the Horse till it bleed; then take of the oldest Piss you can get, a Pottle, and of Green Copperas three quarters of a Pound, mix and stir them well together, then set them on the Fire, and boil them a while, then as hot as the Horse can suffer it wash him with the same: After his washing is a little dried, Take of Oil one ounce and a half, of Quicksilver two ounces, of white Elleborus one ounce, with a good quantity of Swines-grease, mingle all these well together, till no part of the Quicksilver can be seen, and then anoint the Horse all therewith; and if the first Time doth not cure him, the second will most assuredly; provided, that during the time of Cure, you keep the Horse with a very thin Diet.

**C H A P. LX.** *Two most excellent and approved Medicines, (especially the latter) for the foulest Mange or Leprosie that can possibly happen to any Horse.*

**T**AKE Hogs-grease, Bay-Salt, Wormwood, and Rue, of each a pretty quantity, stamp them together well in a Mortar, and when it is brought to one entire Salve, stop it hard into the Horse's Ears, then either bind them up, or stitch them together, that the Medicine may not fall out, and do thus three or four days together, and it will not only Cure the Mange, but any foul Farcy whatsoever.

The second Medicine, and most assured for the Mange, is, To take fresh Grease, Yellow, and White Arsenick, and mix them very well together till it come to a pale yellow Salve, then your Horse having been let blood, and all the Scurf taken away, either with an old Curry-Comb, or such like hard Thing, so as the sore places may lie Raw, then anoint them all over with this Ointment, and let the Horse stand so tied, that he may by no means touch any part of his Body with his Mouth, and when he hath stood thus two or three Hours, then take old Urine warmed, and wash away all the Ointment, and then give the Horse his Meat: thus dress the Horse twice or thrice at the most, and it is sufficient for any Mange whatsoever.

**C H A P. LXI.** *How to know when a Horse halteth before, and in what Part his Grief is.*

**T**HERE is nothing more necessary for any Man's understanding, that shall have occasion at any time to use a Horse, especially for the skilful Farrier, than to know the Reason why a Horse halteth, and where the Grief remaineth, as well because those Grievs lie most concealed,

ceated, as also because our Kingdom is so very full of subtile unconscionable Horse-Courfers, that they are careful most to conceal that which may soonest cozen their Neighbours. You shall know then, that no Horse halteth before, but his Grief must be either in his Shoulders, in his Legs, or in his Feet: If it be in his Shoulders, it must either be on the top of his Shoulder-blade, which we call the Withers, or the bottom of the Shoulder-blade joining to the Marrow-bone, which is the forepitch of the Breast, or in the Elbow of the Horse, which joins the nether End of the Marrow-bone and the Leg together.

Now for the general knowledge whether the Grief be in the Shoulder or no, look if the Horse do not lift up his Leg, but trailerh it upon the Ground, then it is in the Shoulder, and is a new hurt: If he cast his Leg more out in his going than the other, and that almost with an unbended Knee, then it is also in the Shoulder, and it is an old hurt: If you take him by the head-stall of the Bridle, and turn him as short as you can possibly with both Hands, if then you see him when he is turned on the lame Side to favour his Leg very much (as he cannot chuse but do) then also his Grief is in his Shoulder: Or if when a Horse standeth in the Stable, he stretcheth out his fore-Leg, and setteth it more forward than the other, it is partly a Sign the Grief is in the Shoulder, but not absolutely.

Now when you know generally that the Grief or Pain is in the Shoulder, then you shall learn to know in what part of the Shoulder, as thus: If the Horse halteth more when the Rider is upon his Back, than when he is off, then the Grief is in the top of the Withers; if when with your Hand you gripe and handle him upon the top of the Shoulder-blades, you find that he shrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not having any galled Back before, for that may deceive you) then assuredly the Grief is on the Withers. If the Horse goeth bowing unto the Ground, and tread his steps very thick, then it is a Sign the Grief is in his Breast, between the nether part of the Spade-bone, and the upper part of the Marrow-bone, and therefore if with your Thumb you press him hard in that part, you shall see him shrink, and be ready to fall down.

Now if when you take his Elbow in your Hand betwixt your Finger and your Thumb, and gripe it, the Horse presently taketh his Foot from the Ground and lifts up his Leg, offering therewithal to bite or snap at you, then the Grief is only in the Elbow.

Now if the Grief whereof a Horse halteth be in his Leg, it is either in his Knee, in his Shank, or else in his Pastern joint: If it be either in his Knee or Pastern-joint, he will not bow them in his going like the other, but will go very stiffly upon them; if the Pain or Grief be  
in.



in the Shank, then it is by means of some Splent, Screw, Wind-gall, or such apparent Grief, most apparent to be beheld.

Now if the Grief of this halting be in his Foot, then it is either in the Cronet, in the Heel, in the Toe, in the Quarters, or in the Sole of the Foot; if it be in the Cronet, either the Grief will be apparent, the Skin be broken or swoln some manner of way, or else laying your Hand upon the Cronet, it will burn and glow exceedingly, and then he hath got some strain of the Joint within the Hoof; if it be in the Heel, as by over-reach, or otherwise, then it is to be seen, and he will tread altogether upon the Toe; if upon any of the Quarters, which is to be understood from the middle Hoof to the Heel, then going on the edge of a Bank or hilly Ground, he wilt halt more than on the plain Ground, and by the Horses coming toward you, and going from you upon such Edge or Bank, you shall perceive whether his Grief be in the inward Quarters or outward Quarters: Also he may halt upon his Quarters by the pricking of a Nail, and then you shall with a pair of Pinsons nip the Head of every Nail and his Hoof together, and where he complaineth, there draw the Nail; and if the Nail sink, then there is his pain. If he halt in the Toe, which is seldom or never seen, then he will tread altogether upon his Heel: If his Grief be in the Sole of his Foot, as by the treading upon some Nail or Stub, or by Surbayting, or such like, then he will halt all after one sort, upon any Ground whatsoever, unless it be upon the stones, and then he will halt the most.

Now to be sure in what part of the Foot the Grief is, it shall be good, first to make him go upon the plain Ground, and then upon a hard and stony way, and after upon a banky Ground, and by taking careful Notes, and careful handling him, you shall easily see of what Member he halteth.

#### C H A P. LXII. *Of Halting behind, and where the Grief is.*

**I**F a Horse halt behind, his Grief of Necessity must either be in his Hip, (of some called the Huckle-bone, or in the Hiff, in the Hough, in the Ham, in the Leg, in the nether Joint, in the Pastern or in the Foot. If he halt in the Hip of any new Hurt, the Horse will go side-long, and not follow so well with that Leg as with the other, neither will be able to turn upon that side without much favouring of his Leg; but if it be any old hurt, then the sore Hip will shrink, and be lower than the other; and it is best seen when he goeth up a Hill, or upon the edge of some Bank, so as the worst Leg may go on the higher side, for then he will halt so much the more, because it is very painful unto him to go so unevenly wrenching his Leg; if the Grief be in the stiff, then the Horse in his going will cast the stiff Joint

Joint outward, and the Bone on the inside will be somewhat bigger than the other, neither can he any more than touch the Ground with his Toe. If his Grief be in his Hoof, then it is by means of some Spaven, which is apparent both to be seen and felt, or else some strain or blow, and then the swelling will most evidently appear; and the like is to be said of the Ham, wherein may be seen the Sallander, or such like apparent Sorance, causing the Horse to halt; If the Grief be either in the Leg, Pastern, or Foot, you shall find it by such Signs as have been taught you in the former Chapter.

**C H A P. LXIII.** *How to know if a Horse hath any hidden Grief in him, that maketh him to halt when he cometh to Travel, and whence it proceeds.*

**N**OW forasmuch as there are some Horses, which through long rest and running at Grass will wear out the worst of their Grievs, so that when they come to be but gently ridden, they will cover their halting, and through a Natural Awe they bear unto the Man, will, whilst he is on their Backs, go as if they were as sound as might be, yet be truly of themselves very imperfect; in this Case, both to keep your self from couzening, and to discover the most hidden Infirmary; you shall first take the Horse out of the Stable in a long String, and causing one to run him in his hand, at the length of the halter, mark how he sets down his Legs, for if any be imperfect, then that he will favour; but if at first he go upright and favour no Leg, then take his back, and ride him a while roundly up and down a Road; then alight from his Back, and let him stand still an hour; then as before, let him run in a Man's hand, at the halter's length, without any Man on his Back, and believe it is a most certain Rule, if he have the least Grief that may be, he will then shew it, and favour that Limb which is most pained or grieved; for by this Rule only, are many bad Horse-Couriers discovered.

Now to know whereof these Grievs proceed, you shall understand, that if the Grief proceed from a hot Cause, then the Horse halteth most when he Travelleth or is chafed. But if it proceed from cold Causes, then he halteth most when he is cold, and least when he is hot and much Travelled.

**C H A P. LXIV.** *Of the Grief and pinching of the Shoulder.*

**T**HE Grief or pinching of the Horse's Shoulder, cometh either by labouring and straining the Horse too young; or by the carriage of too great Burthens. It is to be known by the narrowness of the Breast, and by the Consumption of the flesh of the shoulders, inasmuch that the fore-part of the Shoulder-bone will stick out and be



much higher than the flesh, and if it be of any longer continuance he will be very hollow upon the Brisket towards the fore-booths, and he will go wider beneath at the Feet than at the Knees. The Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of some Farriers, is, to make a slit of an inch long, with a sharp Knife, upon both sides, an inch under the Shoulder-bone, and blowing the skin well from the Flesh with a Swans Quill, both of the one and the other Shoulder, even up to the top of the Withers, and stroaking the Wind up equally with your Hand into both the Shoulders, and then when they are full, stick the Windy places with a Hazel-Stick over all the Shoulder, then loosening the Skin from the Flesh again, Rowel both the slits, either with Tampins of Horse-hair, or with round pieces of the upper Leather of an old Shooe, with an hole in the midst, which is called a French Rowel, for the Matter to issue forth at, and let the Tampins be at least two handfuls long in the Skin, and the round Rowel at least three Inches broad, and being so put as they may lie plain and flat within the Cut, then once a Day you shall turn the Rowels into the Skin, and thrust out the Matter; but if the hole grow so strait that the Matter cannot easily come out, with a sharp Knife you shall enlarge it, then put a pair of Pasterns on his Fore-legs, and so let him stand fifteen Days, at the end whereof walk him abroad, and try how he goeth, and if he doth not go to your liking, then continue him in the same manner other fifteen Days, and he will go sound.

But our best Farriers use, after they have rowelled the Horse, as is aforesaid, then to lay this Charge or Plaister all over his Withers, Shoulders and Breast: Take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound; of Tar, half a pint, boil all these together in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a Stick with a woollen Cloth bound to the end of it, and dip it into the Charge, and cover or daub all the Shoulder therewith: that done, clap flocks of the colour of the Horse (or as near as you can get it) upon the Charge, and every other day make your Rowels clean, and put them in again, continuing to do thus the space of fifteen days; then take out the Rowels, and heal up the Wounds with two Tents of Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, renewing the same every day once, until the Wounds be whole, but let the Charge lye still until it fall away of it self; and if you let the Horse run at Grass 'till he hath had a Frost or two, there is no question but he will be a great deal the sounder.

There be other Farriers which use to Rowel the Horse, as is aforesaid, yet cross-wise, that is, one overthwart the other, then draw all the Shoulder over with a hot Drawing-Iron in the comeliest wise you can, making many scratches down his Shoulders, then anoint both them and the Rowels once a Day with sweet Butter, and walk the

the Horse up and down Evening and Morning, that the Humours may flow to the sore places, and issue forth, and with your hands once a day at the least, thrust out the Matter; this Cure is likewise to be continued the space of fifteen Days, and then the Horse will be whole; yet for mine own Part, insomuch as the Cure is foul, I do not much affect it.

#### CHAP. LV. *Of the Wrench in the Shoulder.*

**T**HE Wrench or Strain in the Shoulder, cometh of some dangerous slipping or sliding, either in the Stable or abroad, or of too sudden stopping, when a Horse gallops, or by falls either on the Planks or on slippery Ground, or by too sudden turning on unsure Ground, or by going too rashly out of some Door, or by the stroke of another Horse; you shall perceive it by his trailing his Leg upon the Ground close after him.

The Cure is, To let him Blood upon the Plat-vein, and take away the quantity of three pints of Blood, which Blood you must save in a Pot, and put thereunto, first of strong Vinegar a quart, and half a dozen broken Eggs, Shells and all, and so much Wheat-flower, as will thicken all the Liquor; that done, put thereunto of Bole-Armoniack beaten into fine Powder a pound, of Sanguis Draconis two ounces, and mingle them together so as the Flower may not be perceived, and if it be too stiff, you may add a little more Vinegar; then with your hand daub all the Shoulder from the Mane downward, and betwixt the fore-bowels, all against the hair, and let not the Horse depart out of that place until the Charge be surely fastened unto the Skin; that done, carry him into the Stable, and tie him up to the Back, and suffer him not to lie down all the Day; and give him a little Meat, dieting him very moderately the space of fifteen Days, during which time he may not stir out of his Place, but only to lie down; and every day once refresh the Shoulder Point with this Charge, laying still new upon the old, and at the fifteen days end, lead him abroad to see how he goeth, and if he be somewhat amended, then let him rest without travelling, the space of one Month, and that will bring his Shoulder to Perfection: But if he mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you shall Rowel him, as is before shewed in the former Chapter, just upon the Shoulder-Point, and so keep him rowelled the space of fifteen Days, not forgetting to stir the Rowel, and cleanse the Wound each other Day, and then walk him up and down fair and softly, and turn him always on the contrary side to the Sore: And when he goeth upright, pull out the Rowel, and heal up the Wound with Turpentine and Hogs-Grease molten together, as is before said.



But if all this will not serve, then it shall be very requisite and needful to draw him Checquer-wise with a hot Iron, over all the Shoulder-Point; and also to make him to draw a Plow every Day two or three Hours at the least, to settle his Joints, for the space of three Weeks or a Month; and if any thing will help, these two last Remedies will set him sound.

Now there be other Farriers which for this Grief, first let the Horse Blood in the Breast-Vein, and then Rowel him from the nether part of the Spade-Bone down to the point of the Shoulder, which done, you shall set a Patten-Shoe upon the sound Foot, and to turn the Horse to Grass for the space of a Month, not forgetting every other Day, to stir and remove the Rowels, and so thrust out the Matter. Then as soon as you see him go sound, you shall take off his Patten-Shoe, and pull out the Rowels, and then let him run still at Grass, till he hath taken a Frost or two, and no doubt but he will continue sound.

C H A P. LXVI. *Of the Wrench in the Nether Joint.*

**T**HIS Wrench cometh by treading his Foot in some hole, or in some rough or stoney way; the Signs whereof are chiefly these, the Horse will halt, and the top of his Back upon the Points of his Shoulder will be swollen, and somewhat hard to handle.

**T**he Cure is, Take of Black Soap half a Pound, and having made it hot in a Pan, take a handful or two of Tow, and dip it into the Soap, then lay it very hot over all the Horse's Withers, then clap a Plaister of Wax, Turpentine, and Hogs-Grease molten together over it, then cover it with two or three warm Cloths, and keep the Joints as warm as may be: thus let him stand twenty four Hours e'er you dress him again, and continue this manner of dressing for fifteen Days, and the Horse will go soundly.

Now there be other ancient Farriers, that instead of this Black Soap will take Wine-Lees, and Wheat-Flower mingled together, and making a Plaister thereof, lay it very hot to the grieved place, and so renew it once a day until the Horse go sound.

C H A P. LXVII. *Of splating the Shoulder, or of Shoulder torn.*

**T**HIS splating of the Shoulder, is, when by some dangerous slip or slide, either upon the Side of some Bank, or upon the Planchers, the Horse hath his Shoulder parted from his Breast, and so leaves an open cleft, not in the Skin, but in the Flesh and Film next the Skin, whereby the Horse halts, and is not able to go; it is to be seen by the trailing of his Leg after him in going.

The

The Cure whereof is thus, First put a pair of strait Pasterns on his fore Feet, keeping him still in the Stable without disquieting of him; then take of Dialthea one pound, of Saller-Oil one pint, of Oil de Bay half a pound, of fresh Butter half a pound; melt all these Things together in an Earthen Pot, and anoint the grieved place therewith, and also round about the inside of the Shoulder; and within two or three days after, both that place and all the Shoulder will swell, then either prick him with a Launcet or Fleam, in all the swelling Places, or else with a sharp hot Iron, and then anoint it still with the Ointment before said; but if you see it will not go away, but swell still, and gather to a head, then launce it where the Swelling doth gather most, and is softest under the Finger; and then tent it with Flax dipt in Turpentine, and Hogs-grease molten together, as is before shewed, renewing that Tent twice a Day till the Sorance be whole.

C H A P. LXVIII. Of the Shoulder-Pight.

**T**HE Shoulder-Pight is, when a Horse by reason of some great fall, rush or strain, hath the point of his Shoulder thrust out of joint, which is easie to be seen, in that the point of the fore Shoulder will stick out much farther than the other, and the Horse will halt downright. The Cure whereof, as the old Farriers hold it, is, First to make him swim in a deep Water, up and down a dozen turns, for that will make the Joint return into its true Place; then make two tough Pins of Ashen-wood, as big as your little Finger, being sharp at the points, each one five Inches long; that done, slit the Skin an Inch above the point, and an Inch beneath the point of the Shoulder, and thrust in one of these Pins from above downward, so as both the ends may equally stick with the Skin; and if the Pin of Wood will not easily pass through, you may make its way first with an Iron Pin; that done, make other two holes cross to the first holes, so as the other Pin may cross the first Pin aright in the midst, with a right Cross; and the first Pin should be somewhat flat in the midst, so the insert that the other being round, may pass the better without stop; and close the juster together; then take a piece of a little line somewhat bigger than a Whipcord, and at one end make a loop, which being put over one of the Pins end, wind the rest of the line good and strait about the Pins ends, so as it may lie betwixt the Pins ends and the Skin, and fasten the last end with a Pack-needle and a Pack-thred unto the rest of the Cord, so as it may not slip; and to do well, both the Pins and the Cord should be first anointed with a little Hogs-grease; then bring him into the Stable, and let him rest the space of nine days; and let him lie down as little as may be, and put a Pastern on the fore Leg, so as it may



may be bound with a Cord unto the foot of the Manger, to keep that Leg always while he standeth in the Stable, more forward than the other, and at the nine days end take out the Pins, and anoint the fore place with a little Dialthea, or with Hog's-grease, and then turn him to Grass. Other of our late Farriers use, First to lay good store of straw under the Horse, and then put a pair of strong Pasterns on his fore Legs, and another on his hinder; then having thrown him upon his Back, to hang him up by the Legs from the Ground, with two Ropes drawn over some Beam or Baulk, which will put the Bone into its true place again: Then having let him down again fair and softly, loose the fore Pastern of the sound Leg, and with a Cord, before you let him rise, tie the same Leg to the foot of the Manger, so short, as in his rising he shall be forced to hold his Leg before him, for fear of putting his Shoulder out of Joint, and let him stand so tied for the space of three Days; and presently when he is up, burn all the point of the Shoulder with a hot Iron, drawing it Checquerwise, a full Foot square at the least, and let every stroke be no more than an Inch distant one from another; and having burned him well, charge all these burned places, and all the rest of his Shoulder with Pitch, Rozen, and Tar molten together, and laid on something hot with a Cloth tied to a stick's end; then clap Flocks of the colour of the Horse upon it, then Charge him again over the Flocks, and at three days end loose his Foot and put a pair of Pasterns upon his Feet, and let him neither lie down nor stir out of the Stable for the space of fifteen or twenty days; then you may lead him abroad, and see whether he goes well or no, and if he be not perfect, you may then give him as much more rest, and that will recover him.

**C H A P. LXIX.** *A General and certain Cure for any desperate and curable Strain in the Shoulder, or any other hidden Parts.*

**T**AKE a large earthen Vessel, and fill it full of the Herb of Asf-mart and Brook-lime, equally mixt together, then put to them as much of the oldest and strongest Urine that can be got, as will cover the Herbs all over, then cover the Pot close, and keep it in some safe cool place.

Now when you have occasion to use it, take an Earthen Pipkin, and put therein both of the Urine and the Herbs, so much as shall be convenient for the Grief, and boil it well, then if it be for a Shoulder-strain, you shall take an old Boot, and cut off the Foot, that you may draw it over the Horse's Foot, and above his Knee almost to the Elbow of his Shoulder, keeping the nether part of the Boot as close about his Legs as may be, but the upper part wide and spacious; into this Boot thrust all your Mixture as hot as the Horse can suffer it, and lay it fast  
and

and close about the Shoulder, especially before and behind, then drawing up the upper part of the Boot, so fasten it to the Mane of the Horse that it may not slip down, and thus do once a Day till the Grief depart; for this Medicine is so violent, that if there be any foul Matter that must come forth, it will bring it to an head, ripen, break and heal it; if there be no such thing, then in a short time it will draw away the offending Humours and give present ease.

C H A P. LXX. *Of the swelling of the Fore Legs after great Labour.*

**H**orses not much used to travel, will after great Labour swell upon their Fore Legs, because heat and violent Excess will cause Humours to resort down into the Legs, especially if such Horses shall be inwardly fat; for the indiscreet Labour will melt that inward Grease, and make it descend down into the Legs.

The Cure according to the Practice of some Farriers, is, To take a pound of Nerve Oil, a pound of Black Soap, and half a pound of Boars-grease molten, and boil them all well together, and then strain it and let it cool; then anoint your Horse's Legs therewith, being made lukewarm again; and then keep his Legs clean from Dust. Other Farriers use to bathe his Legs in Butter and Beer, or in Vinegar and Butter, some with Sheeps-foot Oil, some with Neats-foot Oil, some with Train Oil, and some with Piss and Salt-Peter boiled together, of all which, Piss and Salt-Peter is the best; and after any such bathing you must roll up the Horse's Legs with Hay-ropes wet in cold Water, even from the Pastern to the Knee, but in any wise not too strait, for fear of doing hurt, so let him stand continually when he resteth.

Now other Farriers somewhat more curious, use for the swelling of the Legs this Bath: Take of Mallows three handfuls, a Rose-cake, of Sage one handful, boil them together in a sufficient quantity of Water, and when the Mallows be soft, put in half a pound of Butter, and half a pint of Sallet-Oil, and then being somewhat warm, wash the Swelling therewith every day once, the space of three or four Days; and if the Swelling will not go away with this, then take Wine-Lees and Cumin, and boil them together, and put thereunto a little Wheat-flower, and charge all the Swelling therewith, and walk him often; and if all will not serve, then take up the great Vein above the Knee on the inside, suffering him not to bleed from above, but all from beneath, and it will take away the swelling.

C H A P. LXXI. *Of a Horse that is Foundred in his Feet.*

**A** Horse is said to be foundred of his Feet, when he hath such a Numbness, and pricking or ringing within his Hoofs, that he hath neither Sense nor Feeling of his Feet, but is in all respects like a Man,



a Man, that by hard or crooked sitting hath both his Feet asleep (as we call it) during which Passion we know we can neither well go nor stand; and even so it fareth with a Horse in this Case; for the Course of the Blood being stopped, those Obstructions cause this Torment. It cometh most commonly when a Horse is very fat, and hath his Grease molten within him, and then suddenly cooled by taking his Saddle off too soon, or by standing up in the cold unstirred, or else by letting him stand in some shallow Water little higher than his Fetlock.

A Horse also may be foundred by wearing strait and uneasy Shoes, especially in the Summer Season, when a Horse travelleth upon the hard Ground.

The Signs to know it, are, The Horse goeth crouching, and drawing all his four Feet within the compass almost of a Peck, and will stand so fearfully as though he stood upon Needles.

Now you shall understand, that a Horse will sometimes be only Foundred of his fore Feet, and not of his hinder, which you shall know in that the Horse will tread only upon his hinder Feet, and not on his fore Feet, and go as though his Buttocks would touch the Ground; and sometimes he will be foundred upon his hinder Feet, and not upon his fore Feet, and that you shall perceive by this Fearfulness to set his Feet to the Ground, being also so weak behind, that he will stand quivering and quaking, and covet always to lie down; and sometimes he will be Foundred of all his four Feet, the Signs whereof were first declared.

Now forasmuch as the Cures are all of one and the self-same Nature, and what cureth the first cureth also the rest; I will join them all together with this Advice, that if you find the Horse to be Foundred on the fore Feet only, then to apply your Medicine to the fore Parts only; if on the hinder Feet, then to the hinder Parts; but if of all four Feet, then to apply your Medicine to all the several Parts of the Body, as shall be presently declared.

To come then to the Cures, (according to the Opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this Disease) If your Horse be Foundred of all his fore Feet, you shall cause him to be let Blood on his two Breast Veins of his two fore Legs, somewhat above his Knees; also you shall let him Blood on his two Spur Veins, and on the Veins of his two hinder Feet a little above the Hoof, between the Hoof and the Pastern: you shall let these Veins bleed well, to the quantity of a Quart or three Pints, which Blood you must save in some Vessel, and stir it with a Stick to keep it from clearing; and when it hath bled as abovesaid, put it all into one Vessel, then stop the Wounds with some Horse-dung, or some Earth, and make a Charge with the Blood in  
this

this sort : Take as much Wheat-meal, Bran and all, as will make the Blood somewhat thick, and put it into the Blood, take eight or ten Eggs, and break them also into the Blood, Shells and all ; take a pint of strong Vinegar, and a quantity of Bole-Armoniack brayed, and put them into the Blood also ; which done, you shall stir them all together ; then shall you with your Hand lay the Charge all along upon the Reins of the Horse's Back, upon his Buttocks and down his Shoulders ; when you have laid on this Charge thus, you shall take two long Linen rags dipped in the same Charge, with which so dipped, you shall garter the Horse above the Knees of his fore Legs somewhat hard ; and likewise with two other like Rags, so dipped, you shall garter him hard above both his hinder Hoofs also ; that done, cause him to be walked upon the hardest Ground you can find, for the space of two or three hours ; if he be loath to go, as commonly he will be, let one follow him and beat him with a Stick or Wand to force him to go, then after his walking let him be set up and tied to the Rack, that he lie not down, and there let him rest two or three hours ; which done, let him be walked again two or three hours more aforesaid, then set him up, and let him feed, and when you give him Drink, which you may do within two or three hours after his feeding, let it be a warm Mash of Malt and Water, then let him feed a little after it, then ride him a little ; and if you let him stand an hour or two in a Pool or standing Water up to the Belly, and one upon his Back, it is good also, and after that ride him again a little ; then let him be set up well dressed and covered, so by little and little ride him a day or two, and then you may boldly journey him ; for it is Riding, that brings the Horse to the Perfection of his Feet, and you shall find your Horse as sound as ever he was.

Now during this Cure, you are to take these Observations into your Memory.

*First*, You shall not need to remove or stir the Horse's Shoes ; then you must after twenty four hours, rub off the Charge from the Horse's Back.

*Item*, You shall take away his Garters after twelve hours, and rub his Knees and Houghs with your hand, and with Wisps, to take away the Numbness.

*Item*, If you cannot get Wheat-meal, you may take Oaten-meal.

*Item*, If he will not bleed in the Veins before-named, then you may take your Blood from the Neck-Vein.

*Lastly*, If you take the Horse in hand to Cure within twenty four hours after he is Foundred, he will be sound again within twenty four hours after ; so if he go longer, the Cure will be longer in doing.



Now the ancient Farriers of this Kingdom, and amongst the Italians, differ not much in their Practice from this already rehearsed, only into the Charge they add of Sanguis Draconis half a quartern, and as much Bean-flower as Wheat-flower, and of Turpentine half a pound; then if they did see that within four Days the Horse did not recover, then they did know that the hurtful Humours did only lie in the Horse's Feet, and there you shall search his Feet with your Butters, paring all the Soles of his Feet so thin, that you may see the Water issue through the sole; that done, let him bleed at the Toes, and let him bleed well; then stop the Vein with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, and laid upon a little Flax, and then tack on his Shoes, and cram the place where you did let him bleed, hard with Tow, to the intent it may be surely stop't; then fill all the soles of his Feet with Hogs-grease and Bran boiled or fried together, so hot as is possible, and upon that stopping, clap a piece of Leather, and two cross Splints, to keep in the stopping; and immediately after this, take two Eggs, and beat them in a Dish, and put thereunto as much Bole-Armoniack and Bean-flower as will thicken the same, and mix them well together, and make thereof two Plaisters, such as may close each Foot round about somewhat above the Cronet, and bind it fast with a Lint or a Rowler, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the space of two Days, but let the Soles of his Feet be cleansed and new stopped every Day once, and the Cronets to be removed every two days until the Horse be sound; during which Time, let him rest unwalked, for fear of loosening his Hoofs; but if you see he begins to amend, you may walk him fair and softly once a Day upon some soft Ground to exercise his Legs and Feet, and let him not eat much, nor drink cold Water; but if his Foundring break out above the Hoof, which you shall perceive by the Looseness of the Coffin above the Cronet, then when you pare the Sole you must take all the fore part of the Sole clean away, leaving the Heels whole, to the intent the Humours may have the freer Passage downward, and then stop him, and dress him about the Cronet, as is before said. Now if the Horse during this Cure chance to fall sick, or grow so dry in his Body that he cannot dung, then you shall first rake him, and after give him a Glister of Mallows, three handfuls boiled in Water from a Pottle to a Quart; then after it is strain'd, put to it half a pound of Butter, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet Oil, and so administer it; then when the Horse hath emptied his Belly, give him this comfortable Drink; Take of Malmsiey a quart, and put therein a little Cinnamon, Mace and Pepper beaten in fine Bowder, and of Oil a quarter of a pint, and give the Horse to drink of this lukewarm; that done, let him be walked up and down a good while together, if he be able to go, if not,

not; then tie him up to the Rack, and let him be hanged with Canvas and Ropes, so as he may stand upon the Ground with his Feet, for the less he lieth down the better; but these Extremities do seldom happen. Now there be other Farriers, which, for the Foundring of a Horse, only take Verdigrease, Turpentine, Sallet-Oil and Hogs-grease, of each a like quantity, of Wax one Ounce; boil all together, and so dip Flax or Tow in it: Then having pared his Feet thin, and let him Blood on the Toes, stop all his Feet with that Ointment very hot; or else they take the Roots of Nettles, and Hemlock, with Eldern Peels, of each a handful, and boil them tender in Boars-grease, or Hogs-grease, so let him blood in the midst of the Foot on the Toe-Vein, then bathe and chafe his Joint and Leg therewith all about from his Knee unto the Fetlock, and then clap it to, and bind a Cloth fast to it, as hot as you can. So use this once a Day till it be well.

Now for mine own part, although there is not any of these former recited Practices, but are found perfectly good in their kinds, yet I have not found any so absolute either from old or new Founders, as this which I shall rehearse: First, you shall with a very sharp Drawing-knife, draw every part of the Soles of the Horse's Feet so thin as possible, even till you see the very Water and Blood issuing forth, and being sure to draw or pare every part alike, which can hardly be done with a Butteris; then at the very sharp end of the Thrush of the Horse's Foot you shall see the Vein lie, then with your Knife's end lift up the Hoof, and let the Vein bleed, (which as long as you hold open the Hoof, will spin a great way forth) when it hath bled better than a Pint, you shall close the Hoof, and so stop the Vein: Then tack on his Foot a hollow Shooe made for that purpose; that done, clap a little Tow dipt in Hogs-grease and Turpentine upon the Vein very hard; then take two or three hard Eggs roasted, and coming burning hot out of the Fire, and burst them in the sole of the Horse's Foot; then pour upon them Hogs-grease, Turpentine, and Tar boiling hot, and as much Flax dipt therein as will fill up the hollow Shoe, then lay on a piece of Leather to keep all the rest in, and splent it sure; and in this manner dress his four Feet, if all be Foundred, otherwise no more than are Foundred; and thus you shall dress the Horse three Times in one Fortnight, and without any further Trouble, you shall be sure to have the Horse as sound as ever he was.

Now if the Horse be Foundred through the straitning of a Shoe, which in truth is not a Founder, but a fretting, which is a Degree less than Foundring; then you shall for that Sorance, first take off his Shooe, and let him Blood on the Toes, then stopping the place



with bruised Sage, tack on his Shooe again, and stop it with Hogs-Grease and Bran boiled together, as hot as is possible; and do this twice in one fortnight, and it will help him.

C H A P. LXXII. *Of the Splent as well on the inside of the Knee, as of any other part of the Leg.*

**A** Splent is to the outward feeling a very Gristle, or rather a hard Bone, sometimes as big as a Hazle-Nut, sometimes as big as a Walnut, according to the Age thereof, growing upon the inside of the fore Leg, between the Knee and the upper Pastern joint, and sometimes just underneath, and close unto the Knee, which is of all other the most dangerous Splent, and doth the soonest make a Horse Lamé: It cometh by Travelling a Horse too young, or by overpressing him with heavy Burthens, whereby the tender Sinews of his Legs are offended.  Now for the Knowledge thereof, it is easie, because it is apparent unto the Eye, and most palpable to be felt. The Cure according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, To take an Onion, and picking out the Core, put into it half a Spoonful of Honey, and a quarter of a Spoonful of unslack'd Lime, and four penny Weight of Verdigrease; then closing up the Onion, roast it in hot Embers until it be soft; then bruise it in a Mortar, and as hot as the Horse can suffer it, lay it to the Splent, and it will take it away: But in any Case cut no Skin. Other of the ancient Farriers use first to wash the Splent with warm Water, and then shave off the Hair, and lightly to scarifie or prick the Skin with the Point of a Razor, so as the Blood may issue forth: Then take of Cantharides half a Spoonful, and of Euforbium as much, beaten into fine Powder, and mingle them together with a Spoonful of Oil de Bay, and then melt them in a little Pan, stirring them well together, so as they may not boil over, and being so boiling hot, take two or three Feathers and anoint all the sore places therewith; that done, let not the Horse stir from the place where you so dress him for an hour after, to the intent he shake not off the Ointment; then carry him fair and softly into the Stable, and tie him so as he may not reach with his Head beneath the Manger; for otherwise he will covet to bite away the Smarting and Pricking Medicine, which if it should touch his Lips, would quickly fetch off the Skin; and also let him stand without Litter all that Day and Night; the next Day anoint the place with fresh Butter, continuing so to do every Day once, for the space of nine Days, for this will allay the heat of the Medicine, and cause both that and the Crust of the Splent to fall away of it self. There

There be other Farriers which use with a fine hot Drawing-Iron to burn the Sorance down in the midst, the full length of the Splent, and then overthwart like this Figure; then four hours after such burning, take Cows dung new made, and Sallet-Oil mixt and well beaten together, and therewith anoint all the Sore Places, and this must be done when the Splent is very young.

Others use to slit the Sorance with a Knife, the whole length of the Splent, and then with a Cornet to open the slit, and lay the Splent bare; then to make about the Wound a Coffin of Clay all open to the top; then take Boars-grease made scalding hot, and pour it into the Wound until the Clay Coffin be full, then let it rest until the Grease be cold; after that, let the Horse rise, and this with once dressing will take the Splent clean away without any Blemish or Eye-sore. Others use to beat the Splent with a Stick, and to bruise it well, then prick it with an Awl, and thrust out the Blood, then lay on a piece of white Leather, and with a hot Iron make the Grease scald it, or else melt into it Pitch and Verdigrease, and then lay a Plaister of Pitch over it, not removing it until it fall off by it self; or else after you have beaten and prickt the Splent, take out the Core of an Onion and fill it with Bay-Salt, then roast it soft, and lay it hot to the Splent, and instead of the Onion, you may if you will, bind too a hard roasted Egg, being fire hot. Other Farriers use to slit the Skin the length of the Splent, then to dip a little piece of Linnen in warm Wine, and sprinkle Verdigrease thereon, and so lay it to the Slit, renewing it once a Day until the Splent be gone. Others use to shave off the hair and to rub the Splent twice a Day with Tar very hard, until the Splent be gone; but the Splent must be very young and tender; for fasting Spittle is as good as Tar. Other Farriers use to take a Black-Snail and slit her, and put in Bay-Salt, and lay it to the Splent being opened, renewing it once a Day until the Splent be gone: Then let the Vein above the Knee be taken up, and let it bleed from below, lest it feed the Splent again. Others use, if the Splent be upon the Knee, to burn it, as is before said; then take Wormwood, Smallage, Pellitory of the Wall, Brank Urfine stampd with Swines-grease, and lay it to the Burnings, provided that first the hair be shaved off, and if the Splent be below the Knee, this Cure is good also, and much the safer.

Now after all these former recited Practices, you shall understand, that the cleanliest way to take away a Splent, is, First, after you have cast your Horse with a Hazel-stick of a pretty Poise and Bigness, gently to beat the Splent at the first, then by degrees a little harder and harder, till the Splent grow soft in every part, then with the Point of  
your



your Launcet let out all the Blood and Water; then take a Brick-bar, and having laid it on the Fire when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a Red Cloth, and therewith rub the Splent, and smooth it upon the top till you have dried away the Blood, and that no more Moisture cometh out; then take of Pitch, of Rozin, and Mastick, of each a like quantity, melt them well together, and being very hot lay it over and all about the Splent; then clap Flocks of the Colour of the Horse's Leg upon it, and so let it rest upon the Splent until it fall away of it self: and if when it is fallen away, you perceive that any part of the Splent remain behind, which hardly will be, if it be orderly beaten; then you shall dress that remained as you did the other before, and the Splent will be perfectly cured. Now for the surest and most certain way to take off a Splent, it is thus: With the Point of a sharp Knife, make a slit of more than a Barley-corn length, just upon the top in the midst of the Splent, and let it be so deep that you may be sure that the Bone of the Splent is bare, then put into that slit with the Point of your Knife, as much Mercury Sublimate as the quarter of a Hazel-Nut-kernel, and within three or four Days, it will so have eaten the Splent, that it will fall out of it self; then you shall heal up the Sore either with fresh Butter molten, or with a Plaister of Hog's-grease, and Turpentine mingled and melted together; only in this Cure you must beware, that you tie the Horse so, as for Four and Twenty Hours he may not touch the sore Place with his Mouth. Now in conclusion, I am to give you this small Precept, to bear ever in your Mind, that is both for the healing of this, and for all other Humours whatsoever; you must first stay the falling down of the new Humours to the place troubled, as by binding Plaisters, as Pitch, Rozin, Mastick, Red Lead, Oil, Bole-Armoniack, and such like; then to draw out Matter which is there gathered with drawing Simples, as Wax, Turpentine, and such like; and lastly, to dry up the Relicks with drying Powders, as Honey and Lime, Oyster-shells, Soot, and such like; and also you must know, that all Splents, Spavens, or Knobs, must either be taken away at the Beginning, or after the Full of the Moon.

C H A P. LXXIII. *An approved and certain way to take away any Splent without breaking any Hair.*

 TAKE the Root of Elecampane well washed and cleansed, and lap it in a brown Paper, wet it and roast it in the hot Embers, as you would roast a Warden; then as hot as the Horse can suffer it, (for I would not have you scald) after you have rubbed and chaf'd the Excrefcion, clap this unto it, and bind it fast on, and in two or three Dressings it will consume away the Splent.

Also,

Also, if Morning and Evening you rub the Splent with the Oil of Origanum, it will take it away.

#### C H A P. LXXIV. *Of the Screw, or thorough Splent.*

**A**lthough divers of our Farriers do distinguish and make a Difference betwixt a Screw and a Splent, saying, that the Screw is ever of the outside of the Leg, as the Splent is of the inside; yet it is most certain that the Disease and Infirmary is all one, and may as well be called a Splent on the outside of the Leg, as a Splent on the inside of the Leg, and this Splent on the outside is ever least dangerous. Now a Horse many times will have both these Splents at one Time, and upon one Leg; nay, I have seen them so just opposite one to another, that one would have thought they had gone through the Horse's Leg; whence it hath come to pass, that many foolish Farriers being of that mind, have intitled them a thorough Splent, and I have seen my self some well reputed Farriers, that having the Cure brought unto them, have refused the same, saying, it was a thorough Splent, and therefore most incurable; but the Opinion is most absurd and ridiculous; for the Shin bone being hollow, and full of Pith and Marrow, there can nothing grow through it, but it must confound the Marrow, and then the Bone cannot hold, but must presently break in sunder, especially when such a weak spongy substance as a Splent, shall possess the whole strength of the Leg. Now for the Cure, as the Splent and it are all one, so they have all one Cure, and what helpeth the first, with more ease helpeth the latter, inasmuch as it is not full so dangerous, nor so near the main Sinews.

#### C H A P. LXXV. *Of the Mallander.*

**A** Mallander is a kind of a dry Scab, growing in the form of Lines or Streaks, overthwart the very tough or inward bent of the Knee, and hath hard Hair with Rubborn Roots, like Swines Bristles, which corrupteth and cankereth the Flesh, like the Roots of a Child's scabbed Head; and if the Sore be great and deep, it will make the Horse go stiff at his first setting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the Corruption of Blood, or from negligent keeping when the Horse wanteth clean dressing; for you shall know that some Horses naturally are given to have long hair from the top to the bought of the Knee down to the Fetlock, and that Hair in the bought of the Knee is apt to Curl; whereby those Horses, if they be not very carefully and clean kept, are much subject to this Disease.

Now for the Cure, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus: Take a barrel d Herring out of the Pickle with a soft row, and two spoonfuls of Black Soap, and so much Allom; beat all these in a

Mortar



Mortar well together, and then lay it to the Sore, renewing it once a Day for three Days, and it will kill the Mallander, provided always that before you lay any Thing unto the Mallander, you ever pull off the dry Scab first, and leave no Hair growing within the Sore. Other Farriers use to take a paring of a Cheese, and roasting it very hot, anoint it with Honey, and so lay it hot to the Mallander, and renewing it once a Day till the Mallander be whole; or else beat Hens dung and Gilliflowers well together, and lay it to the Sore till it be whole.

Other Farriers use, after they have washed the Sore clean with warm Water, and shaved off the Hair and the Scabs, To take a Spoonful of Soap, and as much Lime; mingle them together that it may be like Paste, then spread as much on a Clout as will cover the Sore, and bind it fast on with a Lint, renewing it every day once, the space of two or three days; and at the three days end, take away the Plaster, and anoint the Sore with Oil of Roses, made lukewarm, and that will fetch away scurf or crusty asker, bred by means of the burning Plaster; which scurf being taken away, wash the sore place well every Day once with his own Scale, or else with Man's Urine, and then immediately strow upon it the Powder of burnt Oyster-shell, continuing so to do every day once until it be whole.

Other of our later Farriers use to take a quart of Water, half a pint of Oil, and as much Flower as will thicken it with seething; then lay that hot to the sore twice a Day, for four Days together; then take Mastick, Frankincense beaten into fine Powder, Quicksilver, killed either in the Juice of Lemons, or in strong Vinegar, of each an ounce; then of Liturgy half an ounce, of Cerus ten ounces; and as much of Swines-grease clarified; incorporate and mingle all these together with Vinegar and Oil, and lay it to the sore until the Mallander be killed; then heal it up as is before shewed. Others use, after they have washed it and shaved it, to rub it with Piss and Soap until it be raw; then lay to it Nerve-Oil, Honey, and strong Mustard, until it be whole. Others use to take Sulphur, Vitriol, Sal-nitre, Sal-gem, mixed with Oil de Bay, and to rub the Mallander well therewith. Now to conclude, you shall understand, that some Horses will have two Mallanders upon one Leg, one above another, and sometimes one a little above the inward bending of the Knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the Knee, but the Cure is all alike; and as you dress one, so you may dress two or three.

Now for mine own part, I have not found any Thing better for a Mallander, than after the Sore is cleansed, to take the Ordure or Dung of a Man, and anoint the Sore therewith, and it will kill it and heal it.

C H A P. LXXVI. *Of an Upper Attaint, or Over-reach upon the Back Sinew of the Fore-Leg, somewhat above the Pastern joint.*

**T**HIS which we call an Upper Attaint, is nothing else but a painful Swelling of the Master Sinew, or Back Sinew of the Shank-Bone, by reason that the Horse doth sometimes over-reach and strike that Sinew with the Toe of his hinder Foot, and thereby causeth the Horse to halt much. Now the Signs are, both the Swelling and the Halting; and the Cure, according to some of the old Farriers, is, to dress the sore place with a Plaister made of Wine-Lees and Wheat-flower, laid hot to; or else to take of Black Soap and Boars-grease, of each a like quantity, scalding hot; make a Plaister of Sear-Cloth thereof, and clap it all about the sore place; or else if the swelling by no Salve will dissolve, take a fine thin hot Drawing Iron, and draw his Leg all downward with the Hair in many small strikes from the one end of the swelling to the other, and make the strikes very thick together, and somewhat deep; then anoint his burning for two or three Days with Black Soap, and so turn the Horse to Grass; but if he will not run at Grass, then every Day give him some moderate Exercise. But this burning I fancy not much, for it is foul, and altho' it take away the Swelling, yet the seams of the burning, when they are cured, will keep the Member big, as if it were still swelled. Now other of the ancient Farriers use first to wash the Leg with warm Water, then to shave off the Hair as far as the swelling goeth, then to scarifie the sore place with the point of a Razor, that the Blood may issue forth; then take of Cantharides and Euforbium of each half an ounce, mingle them together with half a quartern of Soap, and with a slice spread some of this Ointment over all the Sore, suffering him to rest there where you dress him for one half Hour after, and then you may carry him into the Stable, and there let him stand without Litter, and so tied as he may not touch the sore with his Mouth; and then the next Day use him in the same manner again; then the third Day anoint the Place with fresh Butter, continuing so to do the space of nine Days, and at the nine Days end make him this Bathe: Take of Mallows three handfuls, a Rose Cake, of Sage an handful, boil them together in a sufficient quantity of Beer; and when the Mallows be soft, put in half a Pound of Butter, and half a pint of Saller-Oil; and then being somewhat warm, wash the sore Places therewith every Day once till it be whole. Others use to cleave a Chicken or a Pigeon, and to clap it hot to the Swelling, and it will abate it; or else take Dialthea, Agrippa, and Oil, and mixing it together, lay it to the swelling. Others use to take of Frankincense, of Rozen, of Tar, of Euforbium, of Turpentine, and Fenugreek, of each a quarter of an ounce,

D d



ounce, of Suet one ounce, of Oil an ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh; mix and melt them all together, and Plaister-wise lay it to the sore place till it be whole; or else take for this Sorance, three quarters of an ounce of Sanguis Draconis, an ounce of Bole-Armoniack, as much Oil, three ounces of Mastick, and as much Suet, and as much Swines Grease, the Whites of half a dozen of Eggs, melt and mix them together, and lay them together, and lay it to the Swelling, and it will take it away, then make the Shoes of his hinder Feet shorter than the Horn of his Toes by a quarter of an Inch, and let the Horn hang over uncut away, and make the fore-Shoe no longer than his Heel, but rather shorter.

C H A P. LXXVII. *An excellent approved Medicine for any Sinew-Strain whatsoever.*

**T**AKE of Vinegar a pint, the Whites of three or four Eggs, and as much Bole-Armoniack, and Bean-Flower, as will bring it to a thick Salve over the Fire; then when it is very hot, lay it Plaister-wise upon the strain, and round about the Leg, and do this not only till the Grief be gone, but also till the Swelling be taken away.

C H A P. LXXVIII. *Of a Nether Attaint, or Over-reach on the Pastern Joints.*

**T**HE Nether Attaint, or Over-reach on the midst and in the hollow of the Pastern-Joint, is a little Bladder full of Jelly, like unto a Wind-Gall; and though it be not apparent to the Eye, yet it is easie to be felt, and may come as well by some Wrench or Strain, as by an Over-reach, and it will make a Horse halt much: The Signs are, the nether Joint towards the Fetlock will be very hot, and somewhat swelled, and the little soft Bleb will easily be felt.

The Cure, after the Opinion of the old Farriers, is, Take a small Cord, and Rowel him somewhat strait from the Knee to the nether Joint, and then in the Pastern, between the Hoof and the Joint with a Fleam strike him in the midst of his swelling, and let out the Matter; then take the White of an Egg, and beat it with a little Salt, and then dipping Flax therein, lay it unto all the Swelling, and then unrowel his Leg, and renew the Salve twice a Day until the Grief be gone: But in any Case let him not be laboured or ridden whilst he is in Curing.

C H A P. LXXIX. *Of an Attaint or Over-reach on the Heel.*

**A**N Attaint, or Over-reach upon the heel, is, when a Horse striketh the Toe of his hinder Shoe into the Heel, just upon the setting on of the Hoof, and this Over-reach, if it be not looked unto, will

will fret and rankle so much inward, that it will endanger the Horse's Hoof, and you shall commonly see by the cut the Skin hang over the Horse's Heel, and it will make a Horse halt. Now the Cure is, First to cut away the Skin, and also the Hoof, and the Flesh, till you have made the Sore even and plain without any Hollownes; then wash it very well with Beer and Salt, then bind unto it a little Flax dipt in the White of an Egg, mingled with a little Bole-Armoniack, renewing it every Day once, the space of three or four Days, and that will heal it.

C H A P. LXXX. *Of the Mellet on the Heel.*

**A** Mellet is a dry Scab that groweth upon the Heel, sometimes through the Corruption of Blood, and sometimes for want of clean rubbing and dressing, when he is wet set up: It appeareth like a dry Chap without any Moisture, and it will be sometimes as well on both Heels as on one. The Cure, according to the Practice of the old Farriers, is, To take half a pint of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of Black Soap, and mix them together; then put thereto four or five Spoonfuls of Vinegar, and as much Allom unburnt as a Hen's Egg, and two spoonfuls of Rye-flower; mix them all well together, and then take it away, and wash all his Leg and Foot with salt Beef Broth, and then rope his Leg all the Day with wet Hay-ropes, and he will be sound; provided always, that before you dress him, you ever take off the dry Scab or Scurf, and make the Sore as clean and as plain as is possible.

C H A P. LXXXI. *Of False Quarters.*

**A** False Quarter is a rift or open back Seam, sometimes in the outside, but most often in the inside of the Hoof, because the inside is ever the weaker part, which sides are ever called Quarters, whence this Sorance taketh this Name, and is called a false Quarter, as much as to say, a sick and unsound Quarter; for it is as if it were a piece set unto the Hoof, and the Hoof not all of one entire piece as it ought to be. It cometh many times by evil shooing, and evil paring; and sometimes by pricking the Horse, and such like hurts. The Signs to know it are, the Horse will halt much, and the Rift will bleed; and when the Shooe is off, the whole Sorance is apparent to be seen. The Cure, according to the ancient Farriers is, To take off the Shooe, and cut away so much of the Shooe on that side where the Sorance is, as the Shooe being immediately put on again, all the whole Rift may be uncovered; then open the Rift with a Drawer, and fill all the Rift with a Rowel of Tow dipt in Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, renewing it every Day once until it be whole; and the



Rift being closed in the top, draw him betwixt the Hair and Hoof with a hot Iron overthwart that place, to the Intent that the Hoof may shoot all whole downward; and when the Horse goeth upright, ride him either with no other Shooe than this or else with such a Shooe as may bear in every part but only upon the false Quarter until the Hoof be hardned. Others use to anoint it once a Day with Sheep-Suet, and Oil mixt together, and that will close the Rift.

Others use to cut away the old corrupt Hoof, and then take seven Whites of Eggs, the Powder of Incense, of unslackt Lime, of Mastick, of Verdigrease, and of Salt, of each three ounces; mix them well together, then dip in as much Hurds as will cover the fore Hoof, lay it on, and then about it lay Swines Grease an Inch thick; and likewise below it also: Bind this on in such sort that it may remain unstirred a Fortnight, then renew it so again, and it will make perfect his Hoof. But if there be any corrupt Matter gathered within the false Quarter, and thereby causeth the Horse to halt, then you shall lay your Finger upon it, and if the Horse shrink thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a Drawing-Knife, and let out the Matter, then lay on Horse dung, Oil, Salt, and Vinegar mixt together, Plaister-wise, and that will heal it, and make the Hoof good; yet however, you must have a care in shooing him 'till his Hoofs be hardned, as is before shewed you.

C H A P. LXXXII. *Of a Horse that is Hipped, or hurt in the Hips.*

**A** Horse is said to be hipped, when either by strain, blow, or other accident, the hip-bone is removed out of his right place. It is a Sorance as hard to be cured as any whatsoever; for if it be not taken even at the first instant, there will grow within the Pot of the Huckle-bone, such a thick hard substance, that it will leave no place for the Bone, and then it is utterly incurable. The Signs to know the Sorance are, the Horse will halt much, and go side-long, and will trail his Legs a little after him; the fore Hip also will be lower than the other, and the Flesh will fall away on the side of his Buttock. The Cure is, according to the best Farriers, if you take him in good time, First to cast him on his Back, and then having a strong Pattern on his grieved Leg, with a Rope draw that Leg upright, and with your Hands on each side his Thigh-bone, guide it directly into the Pot; that done, let him down gently, and so suffer him to rise with all Meekness; then go with him into the Stable, and there Charge all his Hip and Back with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on warm, and then some Flocks of his own Colour to be clapt upon the same, and so turn the Horse to Grass until he go upright.

✂ But if the Horse be not hipped, but only hurt in the Hip, and that newly, then first take of Oil-de Bay, Dialthea, of Nerve Oil, and of Swines Grease, of each half a Pound; melt them all together, stirring them continually until they be thoroughly mingled together, then anoint the sore place therewith against the Hair, every Day once the space of a Fortnight, and make the Ointment sink well into the Flesh, by holding a hot Bar of Iron over the place anointed, waving your hand to and fro till the Ointment be entered into the Skin; and if at the Fortnights end you see the Horse not any thing amended, then slit a hole downward in his Skin, an Inch beneath the Hip-bone, making the hole so wide, as you may easily thrust in a Rowel with your Finger; and then with a Cornet and a Quill, blow the Skin from the Flesh above the Bone, and round about the same, so broad as the Rowel may lie flat and plain within the Skin and the Flesh; and this Rowel will be made of soft Calves Leather, with a hole in the midst, and a thred tied unto it, to pull it out when you would cleanse it, and the hole; and if the Rowel be rolled about with Flax fast tied on, and anointed with the Ointment under-written, it will draw so much the more.

Now you must thrust in your Rowel first double, and then spread it abroad with your Finger; that done, Tent it with a good large Tent of Flax dipt in a little Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together and made warm, and cleanse the Hole and the Rowel every Day once; and also renew the Tent for the space of a Fortnight, and before you dress him, cause him every Day to be led up and down a foot Pace a quarter of an Hour, to make the humours come down; and at the Fortnights end pull out the Rowel, and heal up the Wound with the same Salve, making the Tent every Day lesser and lesser, untill it be whole; and so soon as it is whole, with a hot Drawing-Iron draw cross Lines of eight or nine Inches long, right over the Hip-bone, so as the rowelled place may be in the very midst thereof, and burn him no deeper but as the Skin may look yellow; and then Charge all that place, and over all his Buttocks with this Charge: Take of Pitch one Pound, of Rozen half a Pound, and of Tar half a Pint, boil them together, and then being good and warm, spread it on with a Clout tied in a riven Stick, and then clap on a few Flocks of the Horse's Colour; and if it be in Summer, let the Horse run to Grass a while, for the more he travellet at his own Will, the better it is for him.

C H A P. LXXXIII. *Of Stifling, and Hurts in the Stifle.*

**T**Hat Horse is said to be Stifled, when the Stifling-bone, which is a little bone of two Inches in length, lying between the nether end of the Thigh-bone, and the upper-end of the great Hough-bone



of the hinder Leg, is by any Strain, Stroke, Slip, or such-like, thrust out of his right Place; but if the Stifling-bone be not removed nor loosened, and yet the Horse halteth by means of some grief in that place, then we say the Horse is hurt in the Stifle, and not Stified. The Signs are these; if the Horse be stified, the Stifle-Bone will stick out more of the one side than of the other, and it is apparent to the Eye, and in his halting he will no more but touch the ground with his Toe.

The Cure, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, is, To thrust two round Pins cross the Stifling-bone, through the Skin, in such sort as you were taught for the Shoulder Pight; but the Pins would not be any thing near so big, nor so long, because the Stifling-bone is not so broad as the Shoulder; and standing in the Stable, let him have a Pastern and a Ring upon his fore Leg, and thereunto fasten a Cord, which Cord must go about his Neck, and let it be so much strained, as it may bring his fore Leg more forward than the other, to keep the Bone from starting out: But this Cure is foul and troublesome, wherefore other Farriers of better Experience, use only to set a Patten-Shoe upon his sound Foot, and so turn him abroad, that he may be compelled to tread upon his Lane Foot, and that straining of it, will in a Day or two make him as sound as ever he was, and put the Stifling-bone into its true Place again. ¶ But if you cannot readily get a Patten-Shoe, then you shall take either a plain Surcingle, or any other broad binding Web that will go three or four times about the Horse's Leg, and with it you shall Garter up the Horse's sound Leg three Fingers above the Ham, even upon his main great Sinew, so strait as your self and another Man can draw it, and then turn the Horse abroad where he may go up and down, and in eight and forty hours the Horse will be as sound as ever he was; then take off the Garter, and rub the place that was Gartered up, with Fresh Butter, for it will be much swelled.

Now if this mischance of Stifling happen unto your Horse in your Travel, and that your Occasions will not suffer you to stay for any of these Cures, then you shall take your Horse either to some deep Pond, or deep River, that hath easie going in and out, and there swim him up and down a dozen turns; which done, you may after travel him at your Pleasure; for the more he is laboured the sounder he will go. Now if your Horse be not Stified, but only hurt in the Stifle, either with some Stripe or some Strain, then the Bone will not stand out, yet perhaps the place will be much swelled. The Cure, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, is, To make a little slit in his Skin, a handful below the sore place; and then with a Quill blow all the Skin from the Flesh upwards, and then with your hand press out the  
Wind

Wind again, and then thrust in a Rowel of Horse-hair, from the first slit to the upper part of the Stifle-bone; this done, take a Pottle of old Piss and boil it to a Quart, and cleanse it well; then take a handful of Mallows, and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and add them to the Piss, and then boil them well together; then bathe all the sore place therewith every Day once, the space of seven or eight Days, and let him not stir out of the Stable during the Cure, and in twenty one Days he will be sound.

Other Farriers use only to take a Pound of Bole-Armoniack, a quart of red Wine-Vinegar, six Eggs beaten, Shells and all, two pennyworth of English Honey, and as much Venice-Turpentine, one quart of Flower, and one good handful of Bay-Salt; put all these in a Pot, and incorporate them well together, then keep them close one Night, and the next day anoint the sore place with some of it, and thus dressing it once a Day the space of nine Days, it will make the Horse sound.

C H A P. LXXXIV. *Of the Bone Spaven, or the dry Spaven.*

**T**HE bone Spaven, or dry Spaven, is a hard Knob as big as a Walnut, growing in the inside of the Hoof hard under the Joint, near unto the Master-vein; it groweth at the first like a tender Gristle, and by process of time, it cometh to be a hard Bone, and causeth the Horse to halt much. This Sorance will come sometimes by Nature or Descent, as when either the Sire or Dam of the Horse have had the same Disease; and sometimes (which is most generally) it cometh when a Horse is laboured too young; for a Horse in that part of his hinder Leg hath small Bones knit altogether upon one Cluster, which being pressed before they be naturally hardened, cannot chuse but thrust forth these unnatural Excretions. Otherwise it proceedeth from extream Labour and Heat, dissolving Humours which do descend through the Master-Vein, continually feeding that place with evil Nutriment, and causes the place to Swell, which Swelling in continuance of time becometh so hard as a Bone, and therefore is called the Bone Spaven. The Signs are, the apparent sight of the Sorance; and truly for my own part, I am of the mind of other Farriers, that it is very hard absolutely to cure it, yet that the Eye-sore may be taken away, and the halting much eased. is not hard, for I have done it many times: Then to proceed to the Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers. is thus; First slit the Skin just over the head of the Spaven or Excretion, and open it with a Cronet, and in any case have a care that you touch not the Master-Vein, but put it by; then with your Lancet lay the Spaven all bare, then with a fine Chizel about a quarter of an Inch broad, or a little more, strike off the head of the Spaven, to the quantity of a quarter of an Almond, or according to the



the bigness of a Spaven; then take two penny-weight of Verdigrease beaten to fine Powder, and two penny-weight of Nerve-Oil, and beat them all well together; then laying some of it upon fine Lint, lay it upon the Spaven; then lay dry Lint betwixt the Medicine and the Vein, that the Medicine may not touch the Vein; then lay a Plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine, and Hogs-Grease molten together, all over the Hough, both to comfort the Joint, and to keep in the Medicine. And thus dress him the space of three Days, and it will cleanse away the Spaven even to the bottom; at the end of three Days you shall wash away the Corrosive and the Matter, either with Tanners Water, or with Vinegar, and lay no more of that Salve thereto for hurting the Bone; then make a Plaister of Diaculum, and lay it upon a Linen Cloth, and lay that Plaister upon the Spaven, renewing it every Day once for the space of seven Days, and it will heal him up.

Others of the old Farriers use, First to wash the Spaven with warm Water, and shave off the Hair so far as the Spaven extendeth, and then scarifie the place and make it bleed: Then take of Cantharides one dozen, and of Euforbium half a Spoonful, beat them into Powder, and boil them together, with a little Oil de Bay, lay this boiling hot upon the Sore, and let all his Tail be tied up from wiping away the Medicine; and then within half an hour after, set him up in the Stable, and tie him so as he may not lie down all that Night, for fear of rubbing off the Medicine; and the next day anoint it with fresh Butter, continuing thus to do every Day once the space of five or six Days; and when the Hair is grown again, draw the sore place with a hot Iron in this sort, just upon the Spaven: then take another hot Iron like a Bodkin somewhat bowing at the point and thrust it in at the nether end of the middle Line, and so upward betwixt the Skin and the Flesh, an Inch and an half, and then Tent it with a little Hogs-grease and Turpentine molten together, and made warm, renewing it every day once, the space of nine Days; provided that first immediately after his burning, you take up the Master-vein, suffering him to bleed a little from above; then with a red Silk tie the upper end of the Vein, and leave the nether end open, to the intent that he may bleed from beneath until it cease of it self; and this will diminish the Spaven, but not take it clean away.

Now there be other Farriers which use it after they burn it in manner aforesaid, and taking up the Master-vein, to anoint it with fresh Butter, till the burning begin to scale; and then take of Sage, and Nettles, of each a handful, and boil them with four handfuls of Mal-lows in fair Water, and then put thereto a little Butter, and with that Bathe him every Day once for three or four days till the burning be whole, and let him not wet his Feet during the Cure.

Others

Others use to prick the Spaven with a sharp-pointed Knife, then take a piece of Candle, and lay a piece of brown Paper upon it, and with an hot Iron melt the Tallow, and after anoint it with Butter. Others use first to prick the Spaven well, then to lay upon it, for three or four days together, every day, Man's Dung: after that, lay to it Galbanum till the sore Matter and Rheum, and the Humour come forth, then wash it with Urine; and lastly, heal it up with Oil and Honey boiled together, for that will bring on the Hair.

Now to conclude, that which I have ever found to be the surest and the clearest way to take the Bone-Spaven quite away, if it be used with discretion and care, is, To take of Unguentum Apostolorum, and of white Mercury, of each a little quantity, but of Mercury rather the more; mix them well together; then after you have cast your Horse, make a slit just the length of the Spaven, so that you touch not the Master-vein; then opening it, and laying all the Spaven bare, with a sharp Instrument scale the Spaven a little; then make a plegant of Lint just so big as the Excretion or Bone-Spaven is; then spreading some of the Salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry Lint defend all other parts of the Member, especially the Master-vein from the Corrosive; then lay the Plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and Hogs grease before spoken, round about his Hoof, and so let him rest four and twenty Hours; then take away all that Medicine, and scaling the Bone a little, if you find the Corrosive have not gone deep enough, then dress it in the same manner the second time, and that will be altogether sufficient; then take of Turpentine, of Deers-suet, and of Wax, of each a like quantity, and mix and melt them well together, then dress the sore place therewith, being warmed, and Lint or Tow dipt therein, and within a Day or two you shall see the whole crust of the Spaven come clean away, then may you with the same Salve, heal up the Wound; and this Bathe never failed me in any Practice.

Also understand, that whatsoever taketh away the Splent, taketh away the Spaven also.

C H A P. LXXXV. *Of the Blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven.*

**T**HE Blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven, (for all is one Disease) is a soft Swelling growing on both sides the Hoof, and seems as though it went through the Hoof, whereby it is called a through Spaven; but for the most part, the Swelling on the inside (because it is fed continually of the Master-vein) is greater than the swelling on the outside; it proceedeth from a more fluxible and flegmy Humour, and not so viscous and slimy, as the other Spaven doth; and therefore this never waxeth hard, nor groweth to a Bone,

E e

and



and therefore it is a much easier Cure than the other. The Signs thereof are like the other, the apparent Sight thereof; and for the Cure, it is according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner; First, wash the Spaven with warm Water, and then dress it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in such sort as was at large shewed in the former Chapter; only you shall not boil them, but only mix them together, and dress the Sore therewith two Days together; then anoint it with Butter, and after burn it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner as is shewed also in the former Chapter; but you shall by no means Tent it; then immediately you shall take up the Master-vein, and let it bleed, as was shewed before; and then for the space of nine Days, anoint him every Day once with Butter, untill the burning begin to scale, and then wash it with this Bathe: Take of Mallows three handfuls, of Sage one handful, and as much of red Nettles; boil them in Water until they be soft, then put thereto a little fresh Butter, and bathe the place every day once for the space of three or four Days, and until the burning be whole, let the Horse come in no wet.

Other Farriers use, after they have shaved off the Hair, and taken up the Vein, to take of Mustard-seed, of the great Mallow-root, and of Ox-dung of each a like quantity, and as much strong Vinegar as will mix them together like a Salve, then beat them all well together, and make thereof a soft Plaister, or else an Ointment, and lay it upon the Spaven; change it Evening and Morning, and bind it in such sort to the Sorance with some piece of Cloth, that it may not fall off or be removed; and when the Spaven is clean gone, lay upon the place a Plaister of Pitch very hot, and take it not off, until it fall away of its own accord. Other Farriers use unto this former Medicine to add Oil de Bay, Turpentine, and Bole-Armoniack.

And other Farriers use but only to take up the Vein, both above and below the Spaven, and suffering it to bleed well; then to knit up the Vein, and anoint it with Butter till it be whole, and it will consume the Spaven.

C H A P. LXXXVI. *A most rare and well-approved Medicine, which will take away any Blood Spaven whatsoever.*

**A**fter you have taken up the Vein, Knit it fast above, and then cut it in sunder, you shall take of Linseed two or three handfuls, and bruise it well in a Mortar, then mix it with new Cow-dung, and putting it in a Frying-Pan, heat it well upon the Fire, and very hot apply it to the Spaven, renewing it Morning and Evening till it bring the Spaven like a Boil to Imposthumation, and to break it; then after

ter it hath run a Day or two, you shall only apply to the Sore a Plaister of Pitch, till it be whole.

C H A P. LXXXVII. *Of the Sellender.*

**T**HE Sellender is a certain kind of dry Scab, growing in the very bent of the Ham of the hinder Leg; and it extendeth out into ill favoured Chaps or Chinks, which if it be not prevented by Medicine, it will fret in sunder the Sinews of the Hoof. It is in all Points like unto a Mallander, and it proceedeth from the self like Causes, and requireth the self same Cures; therefore look into the Chapter of the Mallander, and whatsoever you find there, that will Cure the Mallander, the same will also Cure the Sellender.

C H A P. LXXXVIII. *Of the Hough Bonny.*

**T**HE Hough Bonny is a round Swelling like a Paris Ball, growing upon the very tip or elbow of the Hoof, and cometh ever of some Stripe or Bruise; but especially when he beateth his Hoof either against the Post which standeth behind him, at the nether end of his Stall, or against the Bar which doth divide him from another Horse, which many Rammish Jades will do, when they seek to strike at the Horse which standeth next them.

Now the Cure thereof is thus, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers: Take a round Iron somewhat sharp at the end, like a good big Bodkin, and let it be somewhat bending at the Point; then holding the Sore with your left Hand, pulling it somewhat from the Sinews, pierce it with the Iron, being first made red hot, thrusting it beneath in the bottom, and so upward into the Jelly, to the Intent that the same Jelly may issue downward out of the Hole; and having thrust out all the Jelly, tent the Hole with a Tent of Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-Grease molten together; and also anoint the outside with Hogs Grease made warm, renewing it every Day once until the Hole be ready to close up, making the Tent every Day lesser and lesser until it be whole. Now for my own part both for this Sorance, or any other Bruise in this Part, I have found this Cure ever the best: First, either with rotten Litter or Hay boiled in old Urine, or else with a Plaister of Wine-Lees and Wheat-Flower boiled together, to ripen the Swelling, and bring it to Putrefaction, or else to drive the Swelling away; but if it come to a Head, then to lance it in the lowest part of the softness, with a thin hot Iron, and so let out the Matter; then to tent it with Turpentine, Deers-Suet, and Wax, of each a like quantity molten together, laying a Plaister of the same Salve over it, to hold in the Tent until it be perfectly well.



C H A P. LXXXIX. *Of the Curb.*

**A** Curb is a long Swelling a little beneath the Elbow of the Hoof of the great Sinew behind, hard above the top of the Horn, which causeth the Horse to halt after a little Labour; for the more his Sinew is strained, the greater is his Pain, and the more he hath Rest, the lesser is his Grief; it cometh as the Spavens come, either from Descent, or from great Burthens when the Horse is young, or else from some Strain or Wrench. The Signs are, the apparent View thereof; and the Cure according to the old Farriers, is, First to shave off the Hair, then prick it with a Fleam in three or four Places, and for three or four Days together, lay unto it twice a Day Man's Dung; then lay Galbanum to it likewise twice a Day until it rot, and that the Matter doth issue forth; then wash it with Urine; and lastly, heal it up with Honey and Oil boiled together, renewing the same twice a Day till the Curb be gone; and in any case let all your Salves be applied warm and new made, and if you make an Issue with a hot Iron in the bottom of the Curb, it will not do amiss.

Others use to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the sore as may be, but not touching it; then when it is warm, vent it in six or seven Places; then take a spoonful of Salt, half a spoonful of Nerve-Oil, and a Penny-weight of Verdigrease, and the White of an Egg; mix these well together, and dipping Flax in the same, lay it to the Curb, and this in few dressings will take it away. Other Farriers use to chafe and rub the Curb well with their Hands; then take red Wall-wort Leaves, and Burrage, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curb, renewing it once a day for a seven-night together. Others use to slit the Curb all the length, then take a piece of linen-cloth, and wet it in Wine made warm; then strow Verdigrease thereupon, and bind it to the Sore, renewing it once a day until the Curb be gone. Others of the Ancient Farriers take of Wine Lees a Pint, of Cummin half an Ounce, and as much Wheat-Flower as will thicken it, and stir them well together; and being made warm, Charge the sore place therewith, renewing it every day once the space of three or four Days, and when the Swelling is almost gone, then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin in this sort, and cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on good and warm, and clap thereon some Flocks of the Horse's Colour, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remove them not until they fall away of themselves; and for the space of nine Days let the Horse rest, and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers, which to this last recited Salve, will add Tar, and it is not amiss, only it will not stick so well.



Now

✂ Now for mine own part, I have ever found this Practice the best :

First, With a broad Incle to bind the Hoof strait a little about the Cod ; then with a smooth hazle-Stick to beat, rub, and chafe the Curb ; then with a Fleam strike it as deep as you can in two or three Places of the Curb ; then thrust out the corrupt Blood ; and after upon the Point of your Knife, put into every hole, as deep as you can thrust it, the quantity of two Barley-Corns of white Mercury, and so let the Horse rest four and twenty hours after ; then after, only anoint the sore Place with hot molten Butter till it be whole, once a Day at the least. And likewise here understand, that whatsoever cureth the Splint or the Spaven, that cureth the Curb also.

C H A P. XC. *Of the Pains.*

**T**HE Pains is a certain Ulcerous Scab growing in the Pasterns of a Horse, betwixt the Fetlock and the Heel, full of fretting matterish Water, and cometh only for want of good rubbing and clean dressing, after the Horse hath been journeyed in the Winter-ways, by means whereof the Sand and Dirt remaining in the Hair, fretteth the Skin and Flesh, and so breaketh to a Scab ; and therefore your Friesons, and Flanders-Horses and Mares, which are now so much in use with us for the Coach, are the soonest troubled with this Disease, if the Keeper be not much the more careful. The Signs hereof are, his Leg will be swoln and hot, the Scab will be palpable to be felt, and the Water will issue out of the Scab, which Water is so hot and fretting, that it will scald off the Hair, and breed Scabs where it goeth. The Cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, Take of Turpentine, Hogs-grease, Honey and Black Soap, of each a like quantity, and having molten them upon a soft Fire, take it off, and put in a little Bole-Armoniack, finely beaten into Powder ; then work all these things well together with a Stick in your right hand, and a Dish of Wheat-flower by you, that with your left hand, you may put it in by a little at once, till you have made it thick like an Ointment, or soft Salve ; then spread it upon a Linen Cloth, as big as the Sore, having first cut away the hair, and made the Sore raw, apply to the Salve, and dress him thus once a Day until it be whole.

This Medicine is well approved to cure all sorts of Pains, Scratches, mouldy heels, or any other skirvy Scalls whatsoever, that may breed in Horse's legs or heels, whether they come by means of evil Humours, or for lack of good dressing or clean keeping, whether they be mattry or filthy running Sores, or else dry Scabs. Others of the old Farriers use for this Sorance to take a Pint of red Wine-Lees, and a handful of Wheat-bran, a Sancer full of Honey, and half a pound of the



the Powder of Powdered Beef burnt, and as much of Bark-Dust, and half a pound of Allom, and a quarter of a pound of Swines-grease, and half a handful of Vervain: beat all these together in a Mortar and then fry them over the Fire, and make a hot Plaister thereof, and lay it to the Sore, as hot as the Horse can suffer it, letting it abide there, the space of three Days; and in once or twice thus dressing him, it will make him sound. Yet some hold, if you do with a hot Drawing-Iron sear the great Vein overthwart, a handful above the Ferlock, and then put a spoonful of Tar, a spoonful of Butte, and a spoonful of Honey, and warming them well together, anoint the Vein therewith every Day till the Cure be perfected. and it is much available.

Other Farriers use, First to wash all the Horse's Pasterns with Butter and Beer well warmed together, and then his Leg being somewhat dried, clip away all the Hair that doth annoy the Sore; then take of Turpentine, of Hogs-grease, and of Honey, of each a like quantity; mingle them well together in a Pot, and put thereunto a little Bole-Armoniack, the Yolks of two Eggs, and as much Wheat-flower as will thicken the things aforesaid, and so by long working it make it like a Plaister; then spread it upon the Linen Cloth, and lap it round about the Horse's Pastern, and bind it fast on with a Rowler renewing it once a Day till the Horse be whole; and in no wise let the Horse come in any wet during the Cure. Others use, First to chafe the sore Place with a Hay-rope, or with a hair-cloth, till it either bleed or be raw; then take a little strong Mustard, Bean-flower, and fresh Grease with a little Fenugreek; then mix all together in a Dish, and make thereof a Salve, and therewith anoint the Sore, until it leave Mattering; then take Honey, the White of an Egg, and fresh Butter; mix them together, and anoint the sore Place therewith until it be whole. Others use only to bathe the sore with Beef-broth, and then for four or five Days after, to anoint it with Soap, or else first to plunge his Feet in scalding Water twice or thrice; and then bathe the sore in scalding Water; then have ready a hard roasted Egg, cleave it in the midst, and lap it to as hot as you can, and let it lie bound all Night; use this once or twice, and you may adventure to ride him.

Others use to take Pepper, Garlick stampd, Coleworts, and old Hog's-grease, of each a like quantity; then beat them in a Mortar till they be come to a Salve, and so lay it to the sore, renewing it once a Day till it be whole.

Others use first to take up the Shackle-Veins on both sides, then take the soft Row of a red Herring, and Mustard, and Black Soap, and when they are well beaten together, boil them in Vinegar till they come to a Salve, and apply it to the sore; this will cure the Pains, although you do not take up the Shackle-Veins. If you cannot readily

dily get this Salve, you may take Butter and Honey molten together ; and it will help them ; or else take a pound of Hogs-grease, a penny-worth of Verdigrease, two ounces of Mustard, half a pound of Honey, half a pound of English Wax, one ounce of Arsenick, two ounces of Red-Lead, and half a pint of Vinegar ; boil all these together, and make an Ointment of it ; then having clipt and made the Sore all bare, apply the Medicine thereunto very hot, and renew it once a Day until it be whole. Others use to take five Ounces of Orpiment, five of Tartar, one of Verdigrease, half an ounce of Sulphur, as much of Vitriol made into Powder, the Juice of four Citrons, the Whites of two Eggs, with three ounces of Saller-Oil ; let all these be very well beaten together, and applied once a Day to the Sore, and it will not only heal this Disease, but any salt Humour whatsoever : mingle with soft Grease, Vinegar, Honey, Orpiment, and Arsenick ; but let Arsenick be the least, and it will cure this Disease ; so will also White-wax, Turpentine and Camphire mixt together. Others use to take an Hundred Black-Snails in the Month of *May*, slit them, and put them in a Bag with a pint of Bay-salt, then hang them over the Fire, with a Vessel set under to receive what drops from them, and keep it in a close Glass ; then anoint the Sore every Day therewith, and it will heal this Sorance. Others take Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oil, and Suet of a He-Goat, of each a like, also boil them with a soft Fire and stir it well : when it waxeth red, add of Verdigrease and Vitriol, of each a like quantity made into Powder, stirring it till it be red and thick ; then being warm, anoint the sore place therewith once a Day, after it hath been washed with warm Water ; and this not only helps the Pains, but also any Sorance whatsoever of like Nature about the Legs.

Also green Copperas and Roch-Allom, of each half a pound, and a handful of Bay-salt boiled in a Gallon of running Water, will heal it ; or else unto it add a pint of Honey, and boil it over again, and it will be the better ; then when you have anointed the Sore therewith, rub it with the Powder of Glass, Mustard and Vinegar mixed together, and afterwards skin it with Cream, and the inner Rind of Elder beaten to a Salve, which must be applied to the sore twice a Day at the least.

#### C H A P. XCI. *Of the Mules, or Kibe-Heels.*

**T**Hese Mules, or Kibed Heels, are certain dry Scabs or Chaps breeding behind upon the Heels of a Horse, and so a little inward even to the Fetlock, in long Chaps and Chinks ; it proceedeth either from Corruption of Blood, or from being bred in wet marriish Grounds, or else from unclean and negligent keeping, in such manner as the Pains are bred ; this Sorance will make the Horse's Leg to swell.



swell much, especially in the Winter, and about the Spring-time, and he will go stiffly, and halt much.

Now for the Cure, you shall understand, that whatsoever healeth the Pains, the same will in like sort heal those Kibed Heels; yet for more particularity, you shall know, that the old Farriers did use for this Sorance, if they took it at the beginning, but only to anoint it for two or three Days with Soap, and then after to wash it with strong Urine, or Beef Broth till it were whole; but if it were of any long Continuance, then, first to cut away the Hair and lay the sore open and plain; then take two ounces of unslacked Lime, one ounce of Soap, and the White of an Egg, or else an ounce of unslacked Lime, and as much Salt, and three ounces of Soot, and mingling them with strong Vinegar, anoint the sore therewith, and it will heal and kill them.

Other Farriers use to calcinate Tartar, and dissolve it to Water; then congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Soap like an Ointment, and then dress the Sore therewith, and this will in eight and forty hours heal any Mules, Pains, or Scratches whatsoever. If you take the Juice of the Leaves and Roots of Elder, it is very good to dry up any of these evil Humours.

#### C H A P. XCII. Of Wind-Galls.

**T**HE Wind-Gall is a little Bleb or Bladder full of corrupt Jelly, and like the White of an Egg, growing on each side of the Master Sinew of the Leg, hard above the Pastern. Now of them some will be big, and some will be little, and there will be sometimes more than one or two of a Cluster, and they are so painful, especially in the Summer-season, when the Weather is hot, and the Ways hard, that the Horse is not able to travel, but halteth downright; they proceed commonly from extream Labour in the Summer-time upon hard Ways, whereby the Humours being dissolved, do flow and resort into the hollow Places about the nether Joints, which are most beaten and feebled with Travel, and there are congealed and covered with a thin Skin like a Bladder; they are most apparent to be seen and felt.

The Cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is, To take a Knife, and open it in the length of a Bean, piercing no further into it than through the skin of the Bladder, and then thrust out the Jelly, which as I said before, will be like the White of an Egg; then take the Yolk of an Egg, and as much Oil de Bay as a good Nut, and mixing them together, make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, and in two or three Days it will heal it. Others of the old Farriers dress it with Euforbium and Cantharides, in such sort as is shewed for the taking

taking away of the Splent; but if that will not serve, then with a hot Drawing-Iron to draw the Wind Gall in this sort:  then to open the middle Lane with a Lancet, the length of a Bean and thrust out the Jelly, then lay Pitch and Rozen molten together upon it, and then a few Flocks, and that will take it clean away. Other Farriers use to take up the Master-Veins on the inside of his Legs, and suffer him only to bleed from below: Then having put up the Vein, cover all his Leg over with a Plaister of Wine-Lees and Wheat-Flower mingled together, and Rowl it with a long Rowler; dress him in this sort once a Day till it be whole.

Others use to open the Skin and put out the Jelly, then a Spoonful of Oil de Bay, a Spoonful of Turpentine, a Pennyworth of Verdigrease, the White of an Egg, and a quarter of an ounce of Red Lead, boil them together till it come to a Salve; then lay it to the Wind-Gall, and it will cure it; or else, after you have let out the Jelly, take Rozen, Sheeps-Suet, and Brimstone, of each alike, and melt them together, and lay that upon the Wind-Gall, so it be not too hot, and it will cure it. Others take the Roots of Cummin, and beat them well with a little Salt, and lay that to the Wind-Gall; or else anoint them with the Juice of Onions or Leek-blades, and that will allay them, or else Ground-Ivy and Wormwood with the Roots sod in Wine, and laid to the Wind-Gall, will take them away.  Others of our latter experienced Farriers, Take an ounce of white Wax, an ounce of Rozen, two ounces of raw Honey, three ounces of Swines-grease, two ounces of Oil of the Yolks of Eggs, five ounces of Oil de Bay; mix all these well together, and strain them; then rub them into the Wind-Gall, by holding a hot Bar of Iron against the Ointment and it will take the Wind-Gall away. Now for the making of the Oil of the Yolks of Eggs, it is thus: First, seethe the Eggs hard, and then stamp and seethe them in an Earthen Pot with a soft fire, and so strain them. Now this Medicine will not only heal the Wind-Gall, but the Ring-bone also; it is very good for the abating of the Wind-Gall, and for making the Medicine to work the better, to let the Horse stand in a cold running Stream an Hour, Morning and Evening. The scum of the four Salts sod in Man's Urine, and laid to the Wind-Gall, will take it away.

There be others which take a pottle of Vinegar, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of Galls, and as much of the Herb Mullein stamped small; mingle these well together, and put them into a Pot, then every Day therewith bathe the Wind-Gall; and in three Weeks it will dry them clean up; it will also take away a Curb, or a Spaven, or a Ring-bone, if you take them at the Breeding. Other Farriers take of Sevil-Oil and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, and

F f

seethe



seethe them in Man's Urine, and stir them well together; after put in the quantity of a Walnut of Soap, to keep the Hair from scalding off; then bathe the Wind-Gall with this hor, thrice together, rubbing it well in; then anoint it above with Nerve Oil, and Oil de Bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot Bar of Iron, or a hot Fire-pan, to sink into the Flesh, and in three Days it will dry up any Wind-Gall.

 Now for mine own part, the best Medicine I have found in my Practice for this Sorance, and the easiest, is, with a fine Lancer to open the Wind-Gall, making the Hole no bigger than that the Jelly may come forth; then having thrust it clean forth, lap a Wool-len wet Cloth upon it, and with a Taylors hot Pressing-Iron, rub upon the Cloath till you have made the Cloath suck in all the Moisture from the Wind-Gall, and that the Wind-Gall is dry; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and of Mastick, of each a like quantity, and being very hot, daub it all over the Wind-Gall, then clap good store of Flocks of the Colour of the Horse upon it, and so let the Horse rest or run at Grass, till the Plaister fall off by its own accord, and be sure the Wind-Gall will be gone.

Now I would give you this for a Rule, that by no means you use to a Wind-Gall, either Arsenick, or Rosalgar; for commonly then the Wind-Gall will come again; neither must you burn much, nor make any great Incision; for any of these will turn the soft Substance of the Wind-Gall to hardness, and then the Horse will be Lame without Cure.

#### C H A P. XCII. Of a Strain in the Pastern Joint, or Ferlock.

**A** Horse may be Strained in the Ferlock, or Pastern Joint, either by some Wrench in the Stable, when the Planchers are broken under him, or by treading awry upon some Stone, or upon some Cart-rut as he travelleth by the way. The Signs whereof be these; the Joint will be swoln and sore, and the Horse will halt; and the Cure, according to the old Farriers, is, Take a quart of stale Urine, and seethe it till the Foam arise; then strain it, and put thereto a handful of Tanse, and a handful of Mallows, a Saucer full of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of Sheeps-Suet; then set it on the Fire, and seethe them all together till the Herbs be sodden soft; and then being very hot, lay this Poultis to the Joint, and cover it over with a Blue-Cloth, and in three Times dressing it will help the Strain.

Other Farriers take of Dialthea half a pound, and as much Nerve-Oil, mingle them well together, and anoint the sore place therewith, chafing it well with both your Hands, that the Ointment may enter in; continuing so to do every day once until the Ointment be all spent, and

and let the Horſe reſt; but if this will not prevail, then they will uſe Cantharides, as in caſe of the Splent; but I do not hold that Cure convenient, becauſe it will make a double Grief; therefore I had rather you ſhould take Pompilion, Nerve-Oil, and black Soap, of each alike, heat them hot on the Fire, and then anoint the ſore place therewith, and it will make the Horſe ſound.

C H A P. XCIV. *To Remedy any manner of Halting that cometh by Strain, Stroak, or any other Accident.*

**N**OW forasmuch as Halting is ſuch a general Sorance amongst Horſes, that not any Man that is Maſter of a Horſe, but even in his ſmalleſt travel, is at one time or other vexed with the ſame, I will here, before I do proceed any further, ſet you down certain general Receipts, ſelected and culled out of the private Practice and Experiment of the beſt Farriers in *Chriſtendom*, of which I may give the bold-er Teſtimony, becauſe I have made Practice of their Vertues.

If then your Horſe have taken any halt, either by ſtiffneſs of Sinews, Strain, Wrench, Stroak, or any other Accident, if the Grief be in his Leg, you ſhall take Smallage, Ox-Eye, and Sheeps-fuet, of each a like quantity, chop them all together, and boil it in Man's Urine, and bathe all the Leg therewith; then with Hay-Ropes wet in cold Water, rowl up his Leg, and he will be able to travel the next day.

¶ If you ſeethe a pound of Black Soap in a quart of ſtrong Ale till it look like Tar, and anoint the Leg therewith, it will ſupple the Sinews, and bring them to their true courſe. If you waſh his Limbs with the Grounds of Beer or Ale made warm, and then rope them up with Hay-ropes wet in the ſame, it will recover a Strain. If you take of the Flower of Linſeed, of Turpentine, and Life-Honey, of each alike, and boil them with White-Wine until they be thick like unto an Ointment; then ſpread it on a Cloth, and lay it to the Grief, and it will take away any Ach or Pain in the Sinews; likewise a Plaifter of Wine-Lees and Wheat Flower, or a Plaifter of Black Soap and Boars-Greaſe will do the like.

¶ If you mix Nerve Oil, Oil de Bay, and Aqua-vitæ together, and warm it, and chaſe it in, and upon, and about the Strain, it will take the Anguiſh quite away. If the Grief be in the Shoulder, or the hinder Leg, then burn him upon the very Joint, by taking up the ſkin with a Pair of Pinſors, and thruſt the ſkin through with a hot Iron overthwart; and if this cure him not, then his Pain is betwixt the thin ſkin and the bone, which muſt then be Rowelled. If the Grief be in the Shoulder, or in the Hip, or elſewhere, then let him Blood, and ſaving the Blood, mix therewith the Powder of Frankincenſe, and



anoint the Horse with the same. If the Grief be only in the Sinews, then take the Plaister called Sologliatium, made of Gum-dragant, new Wax, Pitch and Turpentine mixed together, or else take the Yolks of two Eggs, an ounce of Frankincense, and a little Bran, and beat them well together, and lay it to the Pain. If the Grief do proceed from a hot Cause, then let the Horse bleed, and with that Blood mix Vinegar and Oil, and anoint him, and chafe it well: But if it proceed from a cold Cause, then let him bleed a little; and with Figs soaked a day in warm Water, and as much Mustard-seed, make a Plaister, and lay it to the Grief. If it come either by any Rush or Stripe, let the Horse bleed, and with that Blood mingle strong Vinegar, Eggs, shells and all, three ounces of Sanguis Draconis, four of Bole-Armoniack, and five of Wheat-Meal, and daub it all over the sore place. If the Grief be in the Shoulder, and the skin broken, take Galls of Soria punned, and mingle them with Honey, and lay it to the sore. If his Pain come from the stiffness of his Joints, Take a Pound of Black Soap, and boil it in a Quart of Ale till it be thick, and it will comfort the Joints. If the Joints be swelled, then take Rôzen, Pitch, Turpentine, and Sanguis Draconis molten together; and lay it to the swelling warm, and it will either take away the Swelling, or else ripen it and make it run. If you take of the Oil of Camomil, Oil of Dill, Butter and Agrippa, of each a like quantity; or else make a Plaister of an ounce of Turpentine, half an ounce of Verdigrease, and the Marrow of a Stag; or bathe the Horse with warm Water, wherein Rosemary hath been sod, and it will ease any Pain whatsoever. If the Horse's Pain be in his Shoulder, first with a Lancet prick the Skin through between the Spade-Bone and the Marrow-Bone; then putting in a Quill, blow the Skin from the Flesh, even all about; then thrusting out the Wind with your hand, put in a Rowel; then take a Potle of stale Urine, see the it with a pound of Butter, and as much Swines-Grease, and a handful of Mallows, a handful of Tansie, a handful of Vervain, a handful of Red Nettles, a handful of Southernwood, and a handful of Balm-Leaves; then beat them all well together, and so anoint his Shoulder therewith, and let him not go forth of the Stable for seven Days. If his Grief be in any nether Joint, then take a handful of Lawrel Leaves, and of Primrose-Leaves, of Ground-Ivy, of Crow-foot, of Mallows, of red Fennel, and of fine Hay, of each of them several as much; see the them well together, and then let them stand fourteen days, then bathe the Joint once a day, and bind on the Herbs unto it four days together; then after chafe into the Joint fresh Grease and Oil mixt together, and it will ease his Pain. Now to conclude, if any Joint or Member about the Horse be by any Flux of Humours swelled, and grown out of shape, whereby  
the

the Horſe goeth ſtiff and halteth; then to diſſolve thoſe Humours, take Wormwood, Sage, Roſemary, the Bark of the Elm-Tree, and of a Pine, together with Linſeed, and boiling theſe together, make a Bath or Poultis thereof, and lay it to the ſick Member, and it will diſſolve the Humours; and ſo likewiſe will Figs, being ſtamped with Salt, and applied to the Sore.

**C H A P. XCV.** *Three rare and well approved Medicines, which will cure any manner of Strain or Swelling whatſoever, be it hard or ſoft, by what Accident ſoever it ſhall come.*

**I**F the Strain be newly taken, you ſhall then take Vinegar of the beſt, a pint, and of ſweet Butter better than a quarter of a pound, and melt them over the Fire; then with fine Wheat-Bran, make it into a Poultis upon the fire, and lay it as hot to the Strain as the Horſe is able to endure it without ſcalding, and do thus Morning and Evening until the Strain be aſſwaged. But if the Strain be of no longer continuance, then take of Mallows, and Chickweed, and boil them either in the grounds of Ale or ſtrong Urine, and lay them very hot to the ſtrain. Laſtly, if your ſtrain, by length of Time, or evil Medicines, be grown, in Mens Imaginations paſt Cure, the Sinews and Swelling being boney, hard, and knotted; then you ſhall take Peece-greaſe which is made of Shoos-makers threds, and melting it on the Fire, anoint and bathe the Strain therewith very hot, not only chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but alſo holding a hot bar of Iron againſt it to make the Ointment ſink in; then take a fine Linen-Rowler, and rowl up the Leg gently; do thus once a Day, and it will take away the greateſt and moſt deſperate ſtrain that may be.

**C H A P. XCVI.** *Another certain approved Cure for any Strain whatſoever.*

**T**AKE Boars-greaſe, Bole-Armoniack, Black Soap and Nerve-Oil, of each a like quantity, boil them well together, and then apply it hot to the Grief, rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, and alſo heating it in very well, either with a hot Brick-bar, a hot Fire-ſhovel, or a hot Bar of Iron: And thus do once a Day till the Pain depart.

**C H A P. XCVII.** *Of Enterfering.*

**E**Nterfering is either when a Horſe through a natural Straitneſs in his Pace, or through evil and too broad ſhooin, goeth ſo narrow behind with his hinder Feet, that he heweth the one againſt the other upon the inside of his Legs, even with the Paſtern Joint; and by means of his hewing, there groweth hard mattery Scabs, which are ſore,



fore, that they many times make the Horse to halt much : The Signs are, the straitness of his going, and the Apparentness of the Seabs. Now the Cure consisteth as much in prevention, as in Salve : For the prevention, which is, To keep a Horse from hewing one Leg upon another, it consisteth only in the Office of the Smith, and the making of his hinder Shooes, whereby he may go wider, and not touch : Of which we shall speak more at large, when we treat of paring and shooing of each severall Foot. For the Salve, which is to cure the Hurt being once received, it is thus : You shall take of May-Butter (if you can get it) or else fresh Grease, or fresh Butter, with a quantity of Rozen, and as much Nerve-Oil ; then fry them all together in a Pan, and then let it stand till it be cold, and put it in a Pot, and put to it a little Cow-dung ; and then Plaister-wise apply this unto the Sore, renewing it once a Day, and it will not only heal this Sore, but also any Prick by a Nail whatsoever.

C H A P. XCVIII. *Of the Shackle-Gall, or Gall in the Pastern, either by Shackle or Lock.*

**I**F a Horse be galled in the Pastern, on the Heel, or upon the Cronet, either with Shackle or Lock, as it many times happens in the Campaign Countries, where the Farmers use much to reather their Horses ; then for such a Sore you shall take Honey and Verdigrease, and boil them together till the one half be consumed, and that it look red ; then after it is a little cooled, you shall anoint the sore Place therewith twice a Day, and then strow upon it a little chopt Flocks to keep on the Salve. This is excellent for any Gall whatsoever, and chiefly for the Scratches.

C H A P. XCIX. *Of Hurts in the Legs, which come by Casting in the Halter.*

**T**HE Hurts which a Horse getteth by being cast in the Halter, are many, and proceed from divers Accidents, as when the Reins of the Collar are so long, and will not run to and fro, that the Horse gets one or both his fore Legs or hind Legs over them, and then with struggling, woundeth and galleth them much ; or else when a Horse having a desire to scratch his Ear with his hinder Foot, rubbing it to and fro, in the end fasteneth his Foot either in the Collar, or the Reins, and then the more he striveth to loosen it, the more he galleth and woundeth it, even sometimes to the very Bone. Now for the Cure, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus ; Take of Oil-Olive one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces, melt them together over the fire, and then put thereunto a little Wax, and working them all well together, lay it Plaister-wise unto the Sore, renew-

renewing it once a Day until it be whole. Now there be other Farriers which only anoint the Sore with the Whites of Eggs and Sallee-Oil mixed together; and then when the Sore cometh to a Scab, anoint it with Butter, being molten, until it look brown.

Now for mine own part, the Cure which I principally use for this Sorance, is, To take of Wax, of Turpentine, and of Hogs-grease, of each one Ounce, and having mingled and molten them well together, put them into a pot; then take an ounce of Verdigrease beaten to Powder, and an ounce of Hogs-grease, and mix them very well together, and put that into another pot; then when you dress the Sore, take of the first Salve two parts, and of the latter a third part, and mix them well together in the palm of your hand, anoint all the sore place therewith, doing thus once a Day until it be whole.

*C H A P. C. Of the Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-Tails.*

**T**HE Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-Tails being all but one Sorance, are long, scabby, and dry Chops or Rifts, growing right up and down, and overthwart on the hind Legs, just from the Fetlock unto the end of the Curb; and as the Pains are under the Fetlock, so the Scratches are above the Fetlock, and do proceed either from dry melancholy Humours, ingendred by outward Filth, or else by fuming of the Horse's Dung, lying either near or under him. The Signs are, both the apparent Sight and the easie feeling of the same, beside the starting, dividing, and curling of the Hair; as also that the Sorance will stink much. The Cure is, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, To take any of those former Medicines whatsoever, which are already recited, either for the Pains or Mules: Yet for your more particular understanding you shall know, these Medicines are most proper for this Sorance: First, you shall shave away the Hair, and make the sore raw; then take of Turpentine half a pound, of Honey half a pint, of Hogs-grease half a quartern, and three Yolks of Eggs, and of Bole-Armoniack a quartern, beaten into Powder, of Bean Flower half a pint; mix all these well together, and make a Salve thereof, and then with your Finger anoint all the sore place therewith, and let the Horse come in no wet during the Cure.

Other Farriers use (and sure it is the better Practice) first after they have shaved away the Hair, and laid the Sore raw, to wash it well with old Urine very warm, then take black Soap, Mustard, and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mix therewith some of an Ox Gall; then stir them well together, and chafe and rub the Place therewith, and bind thereto a Cloth, so use it once a day 'till it be whole; then after anoint it with Neats-Foot Oil to supple the Sinews again. Others use to take the finest Hay, and burn it to ashes upon a fair Board;



Board ; then mix it with Neats-Foot Oil, and make a Salve thereof ; then rub the Sores until they bleed ; and then anoint them with the said Salve, and rope his Legs, and keep them from wet. Others use after they have washed the Sore with old Stale, then to take a quantity of strong Mustard, Vinegar, Gray Soap, Barrows Grease, and some Quick-Silver ; mix them together, and therewith anoint the Sore.

✚ Other Farriers take a quantity of unslacked Lime, half so much Black Soap, and so much of strong Vinegar as shall suffice to make it like an Ointment ; then the Hair being cut away, and the Sore washed with Urine, lay to this Ointment, renewing it not the space of two Days, and it will kill the Sorance ; then wash the Place once or twice with warm Wine ; then after heal it with Turpentine and Hogs-Grease molten together ; and in no wise let the Horse come in any wet. Others use after they have washed the sore Place with Urine, and clipt away the Hair, and made the Wound raw, to take Butter and Tar, of each alike, and boiling them together, anoint all the sore Place therewith every Day 'till it be whole.

Others take of Honey and Verdigrease of each alike, and boil them together until half be consumed, and then anoint the Sore therewith once a day until it be whole. ✚ Others of our later Farriers use either to shave off the Hair, or scald it off with Orpiment and unslacked Lime boiled in strong Lye ; then wash it with warm Vinegar or White-Wine, then when it is dry anoint it with this Ointment :

Take of Orpiment one ounce, of Verdigrease three ounces, of Soot five ounces, a little unslack'd Lime, and of Honey one pound ; mingle them all well together upon a soft Fire, and being made like an Ointment, use it as aforesaid once a day to the sore ; or else take Honey, Soap, Verdigrease, unslack'd Lime and Vinegar, and boil them with Allom, Galls, and Mail, 'till it come to a Plaister, and then apply it unto the sore ; or else boil Sallet Oil, with a little Suet and Soap, then skim it, and take it from the Fire, then add an ounce of Quick-silver dissolved, two ounces of Verdigrease, three ounces of unslack'd Lime, and one ounce of white Wax ; when all these are well mixt together, and made into a Salve, then apply it once a day unto the Sore, until it be whole.

Other Farriers use, after they have shaved the Place, to boil Vinegar and the skin of Lard or Bacon together ; apply that to the Sore three days together ; then take Lard, molten Lithargy, Mastick, Verdigrease and Soot mingled together with Goats Milk, and lay it to, renewing it once a day until the Sore be healed. The scraping of a Pan's bottom, mixt with the inner Pills of Elder, are also good for the Scratches ; or new Man's Dung applied for five Days, and after ancint the

the Sore with Oil and Soap mixt together. Others take of unslack'd Lime, the Powder of Glais, and of Verdigrease, of each an ounce, of Orpiment an ounce, of Oil and of fresh Grease, of each four ounces, mix all these well together, and apply it to the Sore until it be whole; if you take black Snails and Bur Roots and beat them together, it will also help this Sorance. Other Farriers take an ounce of Soap, two ounces of unslack'd Lime, and as much Lye, or strong Vinegar as will temper it, and so dress the Sore until it be whole. Others take Fenugreek and beat it, three Oranges cut in Pieces, half a pound of Sheeps Suet, new Sheeps Dung, boil all these in the grounds of good Ale, and then bathe the Horse therewith as hot as may be; then Rope him up with Hay-Ropes, and so let him stand three Days, then bathe him so again.

✂ Others take Hogs Grease, Soap, Brimstone, Soot and Honey, boil and lay them to cool; you may also add Verdigrease; but before you lay on this Ointment, scrape the Scabs off, and make them bleed, and rub them with Soap, Mustard, and Vinegar mixt together.

#### CH A P. CI. *A most certain and approved Cure for the Scratches.*

✂ **A**fter you have cut away the Hair, rub off the Scabs, and wash the Sore with old Urine, Allom and Salt mixt together, and applied as hot as the Horse can suffer it; then take the tops and tender buds of Elder, and the green Briar Berries, and boil them in a Pottle of new Wort, and put thereto good store of Allom, and with this hot, wash the Horse's Leg once, twice, or thrice a Day; and it is a certain Cure.

#### CH A P. CII. *Of the Ring-bone.*

**T**HE Ring-bone is a Sorance, which appeareth above, upon the Cronet of the Foot, being a certain hard Gristle growing sometimes round about the same. It proceedeth, as some Farriers hold Opinion, either from some blow of any Horse, or by striking the Horse's Foot against some stub or stone, or such like Accident: But surely I hold, That also it proceedeth from some Imperfection in Nature, for as much as I have seen many Foals foaled with Ring-bones on their Feet; these Ring-bones do breed a viscous and slimy Humour, which resorting to the Bones that are of their own Nature, cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some Bone, and so in process of time becometh a Bone. The Signs of this Sorance are, The apparent sight of the Sorance, being higher than any Part of the Corner, the staring of the Hair, and the halting of the Horse.

The Cure, according to ancient Farriers, is, First to scarifie the skin above the Ring-bone with a Lancet; then take a great Onion and



pick out the Core; then put into it Verdigrease and unslack'd Lime, then cover the hole, and roast the Onion soft, then bruise it in a Mortar, and so very hot lay it to the Ring-bone; do thus four Days together, and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers use, first to wash the Sorance with warm Water, and shave away the Hair; then scarifie it lightly with the point of a Razor, so as the blood may issue forth; then dress it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in such sort as hath been taught for the Splent, using him, and curing him after the same manner; but when the Hair beginneth to grow again, then draw the Sore Place with a hot Drawing-Iron in strait Lines from the Pastern down to the Coffin of the Hoof, in this manner:  And let the Edge of the Drawing-Iron be as thick as the back of a Meat Knife, and burn him no deeper than that the Skin may look yellow: That done, cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and clap thereon Flocks of the Horse's own colour, and about three Days after lay again some of the last mention'd Plaister, and also new Flocks upon the old, and there let them remain 'till they fall away of themselves. Others use to shave off the Hair, and to scarifie the Sore with a Lancet 'till it bleed; then strow upon it the Powder of Tartar, and Salt, of each alike mixt together, and bind it strait; then after anoint it with fresh Grease, or else soften the Ring-bone with the skin of old Bacon, the fat being scraped off, that you may see through the skin, and laid to after it is shaven and made bleed; after lance it, and let out the Ring-bone. Others use to lance the skin with a Razor, then opening the skin with a Cronet, prick the Ring-bone. Lastly, strow upon it the Powder of Vitriol, and bind it on so as it may not stir in nine Days; then thrust out the Matter which is dissolved: Lastly, Wash it with Salt, Urine, and Vinegar, mixt together. Other Farriers do use after they have shaved, to lay unto it a Plaister made of Bran and Honey, with the young Leaves of Wormwood, Pellitory, and Brank Urine, mingled with Swines Grease, beaten together, and boiled, and used as hot as the Horse can suffer it. This Medicine will not only cure the Ring-bone, but any other Swelling whatsoever. Also a Plaister of the Leaves of Smallage being beaten to Pieces, is not only good for this Sorance, but for any Wind-Gall also. To wash a Ring-bone continually with strong Vinegar will abate it; or else to shave away the Hair, and take half a Lemon and sprinkle Arsnick thereon, and lay it to the Ring-bone, and it will eat it away; if twice or thrice a Day you bind a hard Egg burning hot unto the Ring-bone, it will take it away. Lastly, if you take Euforbium, and mingle it with Oil of Juniper, Salt, and Pepper, and so apply it to the Ring-bone, it will in a very short space consume the

the Ring-bone quite away; always provided that you keep the Horse from any Wet during his Cure.

**C H A P. CHL.** *Of Hurts on the Cronet by crossing one Foot upon another.*

**I**F your Horse by crossing one Foot upon another, chance to wound or hurt the Cronet of his Hoof, you shall then, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, first wash it well with White-Wine, or with warm Urine, and then lay unto it the White of an Egg mixt with Chimney Soot and Salt; and that, if it be renewed once a Day, will in two or three Days dry up the Sore. Other Farriers use first to pare or cut away the Hoof that it touch not the hurt, and keep it clean from Filth by washing it with Urine; then seethe two Eggs hard and take off the Shells, then press them with your hand long, and first roast one hot, and tie it hard to; when that is cold, use the other; after make a Plaister of Soot, Salt and Oil boiled together, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a Day until it be whole.

**C H A P. CIV.** *A most certain and approved Cure for any Hurt upon the Cronet whatsoever.*

**T**AKE of Soap and Salt, of each a like quantity, and mix them together like a PASTE, then having cut out the over-reach or hurt, and laid it plain, First wash it with Urine and Salt, or Beer and Salt, and with a Cloth dry it; then bind on the mixt Soap and Salt, not renewing it in twenty four hours, and thus do (if the Wound be great) for three or four Days together: Then, having drawn out all the Venom (as this Salve will quickly do) take a spoonful or two of Train-Oil, and as much Ceruse, which we call White Lead, and mix it together to a thick Salve, then spread that upon the sore, Morning and Evening till it be whole, which will be effected suddenly; for nothing doth dry up sooner, nor is more kindly and natural for the breeding of a new Hoof.

**C H A P. CV.** *Of the Crown Scab.*

**T**HE Crown Scab is a stinking and filthy Scab, breeding round about the Corners of the Hoof, and is a cankerous and painful Sorance, it cometh oft-times by means that the Horse hath been bred in a fenny marsh Ground, where the cold striking corrupt Humours up to his Feet, ingendreth this Sorance, which is ever more painful in the Winter than in the Summer. The Signs are, The Hairs of the Cronet will be very thin and staring like Bristles, and the Cronets will be always mattering and run on Water. Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of many Farriers, is, To take the Skin of



Bacon, and lay thereon Soot and Salt beaten together, mingled with Grease or Suet, Wax, and Pitch molten together; and if the Flesh chance to grow proud, eat it away either with Verdigrease beaten to Powder, or with the scrapings of a Hart's-horn, or an Ox-horn made into fine Powder.

☞ Other Farriers use to take of Soap, and of Hogs-Grease, of each half a pound, of Bole-Armoniack a little, of Turpentine a quartern; mix them well together, and make a Plaister, and bind it fast on, renewing it every day until it leave running; and then wash it with strong Vinegar being lukewarm, every day once, until the Sore be clean dried up, and let the Horse come in no wet until the Sorance be whole. Others use only to bathe it continually with old Stale sod with Salt, and that will dry up the Humour and heal it.

#### C H A P. CVI. Of the Quitter-bone.

**T**HE Quitter-bone is a hard round Swelling upon the Cronet of the Hoof betwixt the Heel and the Quarter, and groweth most commonly on the inside of the Foot, it breeds most commonly by means of Gravel gathered underneath the Shooe, which fretteth inward, and forceth an Ulcer to break upward; or else it cometh by the cloying or pricking of some Nail driven by an ignorant Smith, the anguish whereof looseth the Gristle, and so breedeth evil Humours whereof the Quitter-bone springeth: The Signs are, The Horse will halt much, and the swelling is apparent to the Eye, which in four or five days cometh to a head, and will break out with Matter at a little deep hole like a Fistula; and surely than this Quitter-bone there is no outward Sorance whatsoever more dangerous to a Horse. The Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of some of the ancient Farriers, is, First to cut the Hoof to the Quick, then teethe a Snake or an Adder till the Flesh part from the Bone, and be molten as an Unguent; then anoint the sore place therewith very warm even to the bottom, and during the Cure, keep the Foot clean from any Filth; for this both drieth and killeth the Quitter-bone. ☞ Others of the old Farriers, first burn about the Quitter-bone with a hot Iron in manner of a half Circle, and then with the same Iron draw another right through the midst thereof in this sort; Then take of Arsenick the quantity of a Bean beaten into fine Powder, and put it into the Hole, thrusting it down to the bottom with a Quill, and stop the Mouth of the Hole with a little Tow, and bind it so fast with a Cloth and a Rowler, that the Horse may not come at it with his Mouth, and so let it rest for that Day; and the next Day if you see that the Sore looketh black within, then it is a Sign that the Arsnick did work well; then to allay the burning of it, Tent the hole with Flax dipt

dipt in Hogs-Grease and Turpentine molten together, cover the Tent with a Plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Wax and Turpentine molten together, but there must be as much Turpentine as of all the rest; and thus you must continue to do until you have gotten out the Core, which the Arfnick did eat; then you shall see whether the loose Gristle in the bottom be uncovered or not; and if it be not uncovered, then feel with your Finger, or with a Quill whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raise the Gristle with a little crooked Instrument, and pull it clean out with a pair of small Nippers, or Mullets made for the Purpose; that done, thrust it again with a full Tent, dipt in the aforesaid Ointment, to assuage the anguish of the last dressing, and stop it hard, to the intent that the hole may not shrink together or close up; and the next day take out the Tent, and tent it anew with Honey and Verdigrease boiled together till they look red, renewing it every day once until it be whole, keeping always the Mouth of the Sore as open as you may, to the Intent that it heal not up too fast, and let not the Horse come to any wet, nor travel untill he be perfectly whole. Other Farriers use to cut the Hoof open to the Quick; then take Galbanum, Sagapenum, Pitch of Greece, Olibanum, Mastick, Oil and white Wax, of each one ounce, with half a pound of Sheeps-fuet, melt them upon a soft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dress the sore Place until it be whole. Others use, after the Sore is opened, to put in Salt of Tartar, and when it hath eaten away the Quitter-bone, to heal it up with Honey and Verdigrease boiled as aforesaid. Others, take of Goats-dung two ounces, of Sheeps-tallow three ounces, and as much strong Vinegar as will suffice to boil them well in, and then therewith to dress the Quitter-bone until it be clean whole.

#### C H A P. CVII. Of Gravelling a Horse.

**G**Ravelling is a certain fretting of Gravel, Sand, or Dirt, under the Foot, betwixt the sole and the shooe, sometimes on the inside, sometimes on the outside of the foot, and sometimes on both sides of the Heel. It cometh, as I said, by means of little Gravel-stones, getting between the Hoof, or calking or sponge of the Shooe, which by continual Labour and Travel of the Horse, doth eat through the Hoof into the quick of the foot; and the rather, if the Horse's heels be soft and weak, or that the Shooe do lie flat to his foot, so as the Gravel being gotten in it, cannot get out again.

The Signs whereof are these: The Horse will halt much, and covet to go most on his Toe to favour his Heel, and the softer the way is, the more is the Horse's ease. Now for the Cure, according to the old Farriers, it is thus; First pare the Hoof till you may see the Sore, then



then take an ounce of Virgin's-wax and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Deers-suet, and half an ounce of Boars-Grease, and beat them all well together in a Mortar, and then melt them together on the Fire; that done, dip good store of Flax therein, and so stop up the Sore close and hard, and then you may travel the Horse whither you please; and do thus once a Day untill the Foot be sound. Others of the old Farriers use, First to pare the Hoof, and to get out the Gravel with a Drawing-Knife, leaving none behind; then stop the fore place with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, and laid on with a little Tow or Flax, and then clap on the Shooe, to keep in the stopping, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and suffer the Horse to come in no wet until it be healed. Now you must understand, That if a Gravelling be not well stopt to keep down the Flesh, it will rise higher than the Hoof, and so put the Farriers to much more pains both in bolstring it, and abating that ill grown Substance.

Others use only to pare the Foot, and pick out all the Gravel clean, then wash it well with Beer and Salt; then melt into it Tallow, Rozen, and Pitch; then covering it hard and close with Flax, set on the Shooe again, and do thus once a Day. Others use, after they have cleansed the Sore, to lay hards into it, being dipt in the Whites of Eggs; then after heal it with Salt beaten small, and mixt with strong Vinegar, or else with the Powder of Galls, Salt, and Tartar mixt together, which also is good for any Cloying or Pricking.

#### C H A P. CVIII. Of Surbaiting.

**S**urbaiting is a continual beating of the Hoof against the Ground, and it cometh sometimes by means of evil Shooing, lying too flat to his Foot, or by going long bare foot; and sometimes by the hardness of the Ground, and the high lifting of the Horse's Feet, either in his trot, or in his amble; and the Horses which are most subject to this Sorance, are those which have either great round Feet, or such as are flat-footed, the Coffins whereof are weak and tender, and also those which have weak Heels. The Signs of the Grief are, The Horse will halt much, and go creeping and stiff, as if he were half foundred.

The Cure according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, is, To roast a couple of Eggs exceeding hard, and then in the very Violence of their heat, to burst them in the Horse's Feet, and then pour hot boiling Sallet-Oil amongst them, and so stop the Shooe up close with a piece of Leather, and two cross Splents of Wood; and do thus thrice in one fortnight, and it will help him.

Other

Other of the Ancient Farriers take off the Horse's Shoes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the Shoes be not easie, that is to say, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them so, and tack them on again with four or five Nails; that done, stop his Feet with Hogs-Grease and Bran boiled together, so hot as may be, and also cover all the Coffin round about with the same, binding all in together with a Cloth, and a Liff fastened about the Joint, renewing it every Day once until it be found; and give the Horse during the Cure, warm Water to drink, and let him stand dry, and not have much Travel.

Now if your Horse surbait in your Travel, if every Night you stop his Feet well with Cows-dung, or with Cows-dung and Vinegar, it will make him endure out his Journey; or Cows-dung and new-laid Eggs beaten together.

C H A P. CIX. *Of the Prickle in the Sole of the Foot, either by treading on a Nail, or any other sharp thing.*

**I**F a Horse in his Travel chance to tread either on a Stub, Nail, Thorn, or any other sharp thing whatsoever, by means whereof he is prickt in the sole of the Foot, the Rider shall perceive the same by the sudden faulting of the Horse, who will instantly stand still and lift up his Foot, as desiring help: And if it chance at any other time, then the halting of the Horse, and the diligent searching of a careful Farrier must find out the Mischiefe.

Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, First to pull off the Shoe, and pare the Foot, and with a Drawing-Knife uncover the whole, making the Mouth so broad as a Two-pence; then tack on the Shoe again; that done, do it by pouring into the hole Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, and lay some Flax or Tow upon it, and then stop all the Horse's Feet with Cows-dung, and so covering it with a piece of Leather, spint it with two cross Sticks, so as the stopping may abide in, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and let the Horse tread in no wet.

Now you must be very careful in the curing of this Sorance; for if it be not healed from the bottom, besides, that it is dangerous to the Life of the Horse, it is also a great hazard that the Sore will break out at the top of the Hoof, and so loosen the Hoof round about, and perhaps make it to fall clean away; but if you see that it begin to break out above, then make a greater issue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the sole away, that the Flesh may have the more Liberty; then take of Bole-Armoniack half a quartern, and of Bean-flower as much, and two Eggs; beat them, and mingle them well together, and make a Plaister thereof upon Tow, and lay it round about the Cronet, bind it fast on, and so let it remain the space



space of two days, and then renew it again, not failing to do so every two days, until you see it wax hard and firm above ; for this Plaister being restrictive, will force the Humours to resort always downward ; which Humours must be drawn out with Turpentine and Hogs-grease as before, until it leave Mattering, and then dry it up with burnt Allom beaten into Powder, and strowed upon the Sore, with a little Flax laid again upon that, continuing so to do every day once until it be hardned ; and let not the Horse come in any wet until it be whole.

Other Farriers use to tent the Sore with Tallow, Tar, and Turpentine being molten together, and anoint all the Coffin and Cronet of the Hoof with Bole-Armoniack and Vinegar beaten together, 'till the Sore be whole, especially if the thing which did prick the Horse was venomous or rusty.

C H A P. CX. *To draw out either Stub, Thorn, or Iron, either out of the Foot, or any other part of the Body.*

**I**F either the Stub, the Thorn, the Iron, or any thing whatsoever, wherewith your Horse is wounded, be gotten so deep into the Flesh, that you cannot get hold upon it to pull it out ; then according to the Opinion of the Old Farriers, (if you find that altho' it be too deep, yet it is not much too deep) you shall take a good quantity of Black-Soap, and lay it to the Sore for a whole Night, and it will make it to appear, so as you may pull it out with a pair of Nippers ; but if it lie very deep, then you may open the Place with a Lancet, and thrusting in your Mallets or Nippers, pull it out by strength, and afterwards heal up the Wound as was before taught in the last Chapter.

Other Farriers say, That the Roots of Reeds being stamp and mixt with Honey, will draw out any Stub or Nail ; so will also black Snails, being stamp and wrought with fresh Butter. Now if the place be much swoln, then it is good to mollifie it with a Plaister made of Wormwood, Parietary, Bears-foot, Hogs-grease, and Honey well boiled and mixed together, which will assuage any new Swelling that cometh by Stripe, or otherwise. Now when you have gotten out that which you sought for, then you shall pour into the Wound scalding Oil of Olive ; when that is cold, pour into it as hot Turpentine ; when that is cold, strow on the Powder of Sulphur, and then bolster his Foot or the Sore with hurds, and keep it from all wet and filthiness.

C H A P. CXI. *Of the Fig.*

**I**F a Horse having receiv'd any hurt, as is before said, either by Stub, great Nail, Thorn, Bone, Splint, or Stone, either in the Sole or any other part of the Foot, and be not well dressed, and perfectly cured, there

there will grow in the Place a certain superfluous piece of Flesh like unto a Fig, full of little White Grains, as you see are in a Fig. The Cure whereof, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, First with a hot Iron to cut the Fig clean away, and keep the Flesh down with Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and a little Wax molten together, and laid on with a little Tow, stopping the hole hard that the Flesh rise not, renewing it once a day until the Sore be whole.

Now other of our later Farriers use after they have, as before is said, cut away the Fig, then to take the Crops of young Nettles, and chopping them very small, lay them upon a Cloth just as big as a Fig; then take the Powder of Verdigrease, and strow it thin upon the chopt Nettles, and so bind it to the Sore, renewing it once a Day until the Hoof have covered the Sore: And this is a most certain Cure.

#### C H A P. CXII. *Of a Retrait.*

**A** Retrait is, when a Horse by the ill Government of the Smith, is pricked in the Foot with some ill driven Nail, yet in such sort, that it is immediately espied, and the Nail drawn back again; and although it proceedeth oftest from the Negligence of the Smith, yet it may also come by reason of the weakness of the Nail, and the hollowness of the Shank; for when the Nail is a little too weak, the point many times bendeth awry into the quick, when it should go right forth; and when it is hollow, it shivereth in the driving into two Parts, whereof one part razeth the quick in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh asunder, and so remaineth still behind. And this kind of pricking is the worst of all other, because it will rankle worst, in as much as the flaw cankereth, and remaineth still in the Foot. The Signs hereof are, First the apparent shrinking and strugling of the Horse, so soon as the quick is touched; and next, his much halting: Lastly, you shall search his Foot with a Hammer, by knocking on the Clench of every Nail; for when you knock upon that Nail where the Grief is, the Horse will shrink up his Foot; and if that will not serve, then grope the Foot with a pair of Pinsons round about, until you have found the Place grieved. Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, First to pull off the Shoe, and then open the Place grieved, either with a Butteriss, or with a Drawing-Knife, so that you may perceive either by feeling or seeing, whether there be any piece of Nail, or not; if there be, then pull it clean out: After take of Nettles half a handful, and bruise them in a Mortar, and put thereto a spoonful of red Vinegar, and a spoonful of Black Soap, and two ounces of Boars-grease, or the Fat of salt Bacon, and bray all these well together, and stop well the Hole of the Sore with this, and then



tack on the Shooe again, and you may safely adventure to travel him. Other Farriers use, after they have opened the Sore to stop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, and so poured hot into the hole; and then lay a little Tow upon it, and clap on the Shooe again, renewing it thus once every Day until it be whole; during which time, the Horse must not come in any wet, and it must be stopped in this sort, though it be but a prick, without any piece of Nail remaining; and if for lack of looking to in time, this Retrait causes the Horse to break out, then you shall cure it either with a restrictive Plaster of Bole-Armoniack, Bean-Flower and Eggs, mentioned in the 78th Chapter, or else with chopped Nettles and Verdigrease spoken of in the last Chapter.

Now there be many Farriers, which not only for this Retrait, but for any prick on the Horse's Foot, use after they have laid open the Wound, to take of Turpentine one ounce, of Tar one ounce, of Pitch one ounce, of Beef Suet one ounce, and one head of Garlick, boil them all together, and lay them to it so hot as may be suffered; and if it chance to break out above the Hoof, then apply also the same Medicine unto it, and it will cure it.

#### C. H. A. P. CXIII. Of Cloying.

**A** Horse is said to be Cloyed with a Nail, or pricked with a Nail, when the whole Nail is stricken into the quick of the Foot, and so remaineth still in the same; and is clenched as other Nails be, by means whereof the Horse halteth extreamly. Now this Grief is known by searching the grieved place with a Hammer or Pinsons, as is before said. Now for the Cure, according to the Opinion of the old Farriers, is thus: If the Horse halt immediately, then pull off his Shooe, and open the Hole until it begin to bleed, and then stop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheep-suet molten together, and poured in very hot, renewing it once a day until it be whole, and let the Horse tread in no wet; and let his Shooe be tacked on again as soon as he is drest. Others use only to pour into the hole hot scalding Butter, and that will heal it; or else to burn the hole with another Nail, and that will heal it. Other Farriers use after they have open'd well the Sore, to take half a pound of Frankincense, a pound of Rozen, a pound of Pitch of Greece, half a pound of Black Pitch, a pound of New Wax, a pound of Goats-Grease, half a pound of Varnish, half a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of Oil Olive, and melt them altogether, and lay this to the Hoof Plaster-wise, and it will not only heal any Prick whatsoever, but also any cracks, chinks, or clefts in the Hoof, howsoever they breed; provided that you let the Horse tread in no wet during the Cure: but if the fore chance to break out on the top of the Hoof,

then

then you shall take two or three Yolks of Eggs, Whites and all, beaten together, and add thereunto an ounce of Bole-Armoniack, and as much Bean or Wheat-flower as will thicken the same: Then make a Plaister thereof two Fingers broad, and as long as will go round about on the top of the Horse's Hoof; bind it fast on with a Rowler, and renew it once a Day until it be whole.

Other Farriers use, after they have searched and laid open the Wound, to put into it hurds dipt in the White of an Egg; then stop the hole with Salt beaten very small, mingled with Vervain and strong Vinegar, and cover it with Flax dipped in strong Vinegar; or else holding up the Horse's Foot, pour into the Wound hot scalding Oil-Olive, and when that is cold, pour in hot Turpentine, and that being cold, strow upon it the Powder of Sulphur, then lay on the bolster of Flocks, then shooe him, and keep him from treading in any wet.

Others use to take Tallow, the Powder of Sulphur, Mallows, and very strong Vinegar; boil them together until they be thick like an Ointment; then lay the same to the sore as hot as the Horse can endure it, renewing it once in twelve hours till it be whole.

Others use to take of Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oil, and Suet of a He-Goat, boil them with a soft fire, and stir it; when it waxeth red, add Verdigrease and Vitriol, of each a like made into Powder, still stirring it till it be thick and red; then stop the sore every day therewith until it be whole, after you have washed it well with Salt and Vinegar. Others take Pepper, Garlick, and Cabbage Leaves beaten with Swines Grease, and lay that to the sore; or else take Tallow and Horse-dung, and mixing them well together, stop the sore therewith, and in short space it will cure it.

Other Farriers use to take off the shooe, and having open'd the sore, to wash it with Wine; then lay upon it the inner rind of Elder, and through that melt in Grease with a hot Iron; then tack on the shooe again, and do thus divers days together; and it is a certain Cure.

#### C H A P. CXIV. General Observations for the Feet and Hoofs of a Horse.

**F**Orasmuch as the Feet and Hoofs of a Horse are the only Instruments of Labour, and that a small Grief in that part deprives a Man of the Benefit and use of the rest; I think it not amiss before I speak of particular Diseases of the Hoofs, to shew you some general Notes and Observations which you shall observe for the Benefit of the feet. Know then, that first it is meet that you let your shooes before, be rather too short than too long, with strong Spunges, but no Cawkins, and your Nails to have special good heads.



Let your shooes behind have no Cawkins on the outside ; but if he enterfere, let the Cawkins be on the inside, to make him cast outward, and let the inside of that side inward have a Welt an Inch deep, or be twice as thick as the outside ; but if all this help not his enterfaring, then bring him unto an Amble ; but if he will not Amble, burn him with a hot Iron between the Legs, that the forenefs there of may make him go wide behind, which is an ordinary Practice amongst the Italians and Frenchmen.

Let your shooes be made of Iron that will not break, of which our English is the best, the Spanish next, and the Dantzick worst. Let them also be light, yet so as they may be able to bear the Burthen of the Horse, being broader at the Toes, than at the Cawkin or Spunges.

Let your Cawkins be short, and blunt at the Points, and your Spunges long and thick.

Let your shooe be full as strait as the Horn of the Hoof, so far as the Nails go, and from the two Heel Nails backward, let the shooe be broader than the Hoof, that the shooe may be without the Horn.

Give unto every shooe nine Nails, on each side four, and one in the midst, and let the shanks of the Nails be very flat and thin, that if the Hoof be naught, they may yet keep the shooe firm with little hold ; and the nearer that your Nails are driven backward towards the Heel, (so it be without danger) the faster the shooe will sit, and the harder to be pull'd away.

Let your Cawkins sit a straws breadth behind the corner of the Coffin, and let your Nail head enter into the shooe, especially on the outside, and by all means hollow your shooe so little as possible you can.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the Heel of a Horse ; yet open his Heels as sufficiently as may be, because ever the Heel must be thick and the Toe thin.

In fair ways pare the foal thin, but in frost, or stony ways, pare as little as may be.

To conclude : When the Hoof is higher on the outside than on the inside, it will make a Horse enterfere ; and when it is higher on the inside, it will make a Horse straddle, so that a fair smooth Table is of all most convenient. After Travel, ever stop the inside of the Hoof with Cows-dung, and rub the outside and the Cronet with a sward of fat Bacon : For that will keep a tough, smooth, and a sound Hoof. As your Nails have strong heads, so let them have thin shanks, for that will best prevent hurting, and keep the shooe close unto the Hoof.

## C H A P. CXV. Of loosning the Hoof, and how to make the Hoofs grow.

**A** Horse is said to be loosned where there is a Dissolution or parting of the Horn or Coffin of the Hoof from the Flesh, at the setting on of the Cronet. Now if this Dissolution or parting be round about the Cronet, then it proceedeth by means of some Foundring; but if it be but in part, then it proceedeth from some anguish, caused either by the Pricking of some Channel Nail, or other Nail piercing the Sole, or Quarters of the Foot; or by some Quitter-bone, retrait, gravelling, or cloying, or such like Accident. The Signs of the Disease be these: When it is loosened by foundring, then it will break first, and the Dissolution will appear on the fore-part of the Cronet, right against the Toe, because the Humour doth covet always to descend towards the Toe; but if it proceed from Pricking, Gravelling, or such like, then the Hoof will loosen round about equally, even at the first; but when it proceeds from some Quitter-Bone, or hurt from the Cronet, then the Hoof will break right about the place that is offended, and most commonly will go no farther.

Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, of what cause soever the loosening proceeds, first to be sure to open the Hoof in the soal of the foot, so as the Humour may have free Passage downward; and then to bind about the top of it the restrictive Plaister spoken of in the 78th. Chapter, and in the 117th. Chapter, and in such sort as is there written; and then heal it up with Turpentine and Hogs-grease moken together. Others of the ancient Farriers take three spoonfuls of Tar, and a quarter of a pound of Rozen, and a handful of Tanisie, and half a handful of Rue, and half a handful of Red Mint, and half a handful of Southern-wood, and bray all these together in a Mortar; then add half a pound of Butter, and a pennyworth of Virgins-Wax; then melt them all together over the Fire, until it come to a thick Plaister or Salve; then spread some of it upon a Cloth, and lay it to the fore, renewing it once a Day for seven Days, and it will heal it.

Others use to take the Brains of a Swine, or a Pig, and to stop his Hoof very well therewith three Days together, renewing it twice or thrice a Day; and it will grow fast, and endure as well, or rather better than ever it did. Other Farriers use to cut out the soal below, letting it bleed well; after stop it with hurds dipt in the Whites of Eggs; tie this to for twenty four Hours, then wash it with strong Vinegar warm, after fill it with Tartar and Salt, of each a like quantity; let that remain two Days, then anoint it with the Ointment made of Olibanum, Mastick, Pitch of Greece, of each alike, and a little Sanguis Draconis,



Draconis, and of new Wax and Sheeps-Suet, as much as of the first, and melt and boil them very well together, and let this Ointment be applied once a Day till the Sore be whole. But if you perceive that any new Hoof come, then cut away the old, lest the hardness of the one hinder the tenderness of the other; and then anoint the new Hoof with Suet, Oil, and Wax, of each alike, boiled together, to make it grow; or else with the Pitch of Greece, Mastick, Olibanum, Sanguis Draconis, and Galbanum of each alike, being molten with Suet; for this will make the new Hoof to grow also.

So will also new Wax, Honey, Oil, Swines-grease, and Sheeps suet, being boiled together; and when it is cold, add Mastick, Sanguis Draconis, and Frankincense, and incorporate them all together; for nothing sooner than this will make either new or old Hoofs grow. Others use to take Shell-Snails, and stamp them and lay them twice a Day to the Sore, and it will either fasten the old Hoof, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there be other Farriers, which first fill the sore with Turpentine, and after it has lain twenty four hours, then wash the Sore with Urine and Copperas-Water, then fill it either with Verdigrease, or with Sheeps Tallow, Pitch, and Rozen boiled together; in which, having dipt hurds, lay it to the Sore very hot twice a Day till it be whole.

#### C H A P. CXVI. Of Casting the Hoof.

THE Casting of the Hoof, is, when the whole Coffin thereof falleth clean away from the Foot, which cometh of all the former Causes rehearsed in the last Chapter, and is so apparent to the Eye, that it needeth none other Signs. Now for the Cure, it is thus: Take of Turpentine one pound, of Tar half a pint, of unwrought Wax half a pound, of Sheeps-Suet half a pound, and of Sallet-Oil half a Pint; boil all these things together and stir them continually until they be thoroughly mixt together; then make a Boot of Leather, with a strong soal fit for the Horse's foot, to be laced fast about the Pastern; then dress his foot with the Salve aforesaid laid upon Flax or Tow, and bolster and stop his foot with soft Flax so that the Boot may grieve him no manner of ways, renewing it every Day once until the new Hoof come; then as the Hoof beginneth to harden, if it grow either thick, crumpled, or out of order, with a fine Rape File keep it smooth and plain, until the Hoof be perfect, and then put him to Grails, that there it may take a kindly hardning and toughness.

C H A P. CXVII. *Of the Hoof-bound.*

**T**HE Hoof-bound is nothing else but a shrinking in of the whole Hoof in the upper part thereof, and at the heels, making the Skin to stare above the Hoof, and to grow over the same. It proceedeth from keeping the Horse's Hoofs too dry in the Stable, or from strait shooing, or from some unnatural heat after Foundring; and the Signs of the Disease are, that the Horse will halt much, and his Hoofs will be hot; and if you knock upon them with a Hammer, they will sound hollow like an empty Bottle; and if both his feet be not Hoof-bound, then the sore foot will be ever the lesser; and you shall also understand that this Disease, of some Farriers, is called a dry foundring. Now for the Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take a Pound of the Sward of Bacon, and a quarter of a Pound of White Soap, and a handful of Balm, and a handful of Bay-Leaves, and four or five Branches of Rue, and stamp them well together; and then fry them, and lay them about the Cronet of the Hoof very hot, suffering it so to abide the space of five or six days, and then renew it; but in no case let him tread in any wet place, and this will help him.

Others of the ancient Farriers use, first to pull off his shooes, and to shooe him with half Moon shooes, called Lunets, or Lunet, the shape whereof you shall see in another place; then raze both the quarters of the Hoof with a Drawing-Knife, from the Cronet unto the soal of the Foot, so deep that you may see the Dew come forth; and if you make two Razes on each side, it shall be so much the better, and enlarge the Hoof the more; that done, anoint all the Hoof above, next to the Cronet round about, with the Ointment described before, in the last Chapter of Casting the Hoof, continuing so to do every day once until he begin to amend; and let him be ridden upon some soft ground an hour or two every day once for the space of a Month; and if he go not well at the Months end, then take off the half shooes, and pare all the Soals, Frushes, and all so thin, that you may see the Dew come forth, and tack on a whole shooe, and stop all the Foot within with Hogs-grease and Bran molten together, and laid very hot to the Foot, renewing it every day once the space of nine days, to the intent the soal may rise; but if this will do no good, then take away the soal clean, and clap on a whole shooe, and stop the Foot with Nettles and Salt brayed together; yet stop it not too hard, to the intent the soal may have liberty to rise; and let this be renewed every day once until the soal be grown again; and let him be shod with Lunet, and so sent to Grass. Other Farriers use only to raise the Hoof from the Cronet to the Verge of the Hoof in four or five places, and rub it twice or thrice.



thrice a day with Salt, and that will open the Hoof. Others use only to open the Horse exceeding much at the Heels once a Week, and to shooe him with very wide open Shooes, and then for a Month or two to draw him in some Cart, that being forced to set his Foot hard on the Ground, he may thereby stretch forth and widen his Hoof. Now to prevent this Sorance, it is good to anoint his Hoofs with Neats-foot-Oile, or Turpentine, and stop them underneath with Cow-dung.

C H A P. CXVIII. *Of the Running, or Rotten Frush.*

**T**HE Frush, which of some is called the Frog of the Foot, is the tenderest part of the Hoof toward the heel, and is fashion'd like a forked Arrow-head, being only that part of the foot which Farriers cut forth when they say they cut forth the soal of the Horse's foot. Now this Frush breedeth many times a Rottenness or Corruption proceeding of Humours, which come out of the Legs, by which the Leg is kept clean from Wind-Galls, and all other Humours or Swellings, by means that the Humours have Passage that way; notwithstanding the mischief of this Sorance is greater than the Benefit, because it maketh the Horse's foot so weak and tender, that he is not able to tread upon any hard Ground. The Signs of the Sorance are, the Horse will halt much when he travellethe either upon loose stony Ground, or upon stiff dirty Ways, and goeth ever best upon green Swarth; but above all, he halteth most when the Passage of the Humour is stopped with any Gravel gathered into the Frush, and not being stayed or stopped, it will continually run, and stink so extreamly, that a Man can hardly endure the scent of it; besides in some places it will look raw.

Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is thus: First, take off the Shooe, and pare away all the corrupt places and make them raw, so as you may see the Water issue out of the raw places; then tack on the Shooe again, being first made wide and large enough; that done, take of Soot one handful, of Salt as much, bruise them well together in a dish, and put thereto the Whites of three Eggs, and temper them all together; and with a little Tow dipped therein stop all the Foot, and especially the Frush, and Splent it in so, as it may not fall out, renewing it once a Day the space of seven Days, and certainly it will cure him. Now during the Cure, the Horse must rest, and come in no wet; and at the seven days end leave stopping him, and ride him abroad, and always when he cometh in, let his sore foot be clean washed; for there is no greater Enemy unto the Sorance than Gravel and Dirt. Others of our latter Farriers only take off the Shooe, and pare him well, and keep the Sore clean both from Dirt and his own Dung, by washing it three or four times a day with Urine, and that only will cure him as well as any Medicine.

C H A P. CXIX. *An approved and certain Cure for the running and rotten Frush.*

**A**fter the Foot is cleansed, take a quart of old Urine, and boil it with a quarter of a pound of Allom beaten to Powder, and keep it in a close Vessel by it self; then take a good handful or two of green Nettles strong and keen, and spread them on some Plate or other Vessel, and dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven after household-bread is drawn, then crush and bruise them into a very fine Powder, then look what quantity of Powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten to as fine Powder, and mix them both very well together, then keep this Powder in a close Gally-pot, or Bladder.

Now when you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore place with the Urine and Allom made very warm, and the Sores thoroughly scoured, after dry them well by drawing through them a fine Rag of Lawn, Cambrick, or fine old Linen, and strow or pounce the Powder upon them, so much as may cover all the sores, and thus do ever after Travel, as once a Day in the Time of rest.

C H A P. CXX. *Of the Evil Hoofs.*

**H**orses partly through a natural Inclination, partly through the Stoniness of the Soil wherein they are bred, and partly through Mischance or ill-government, will have ill-favoured and naughty Hoofs, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or else moulded awry, or such like; all which need no Signs, because of the apparent Sight thereof: Then to amend them, the best Cure is, with a fine Rape File to smoothe the wrinkles away, and to anoint the Cronet of the Hoof with a fat sward of Bacon rubbed in Soot, then let the Horse stand for at least a Fortnight upon his own Dung, whereon you shall cast good store of Water, only remove away the Dung every Night; and then presently after the change of the Moon, shooe the Horse with strong shooes, keeping the soal of the foot by paring, so hollow as you can possible, and it will shape his Hoof to your pleasure.

C H A P. CXXI. *Of Brittle Hoofs.*

**I**f a Horse either through the heat of his own Nature, or in that he hath been either heated on his Foot by labour, or foundred, and evil cured, shall happen to have his Hoofs so brittle and short, that they will hardly bear a Shooe, the Signs whereof are, the Hoof will be white and crumbling; then the best Cure, according to the Opinion of the best Farriers, is, To take Ox-dung and Vinegar, and mixing them very well together, warm them on the fire, and so bind it both under and above round about the Horse's foot, and then lace on



his Boot of strong Leather, as is aforesaid in the Chapter of *Casting of the Hoof*. Other Farriers use to let the Horse stand upon his own dung, and anoint all the upper part of his Hoof with the Fat of Bacon sod and mixt with Turpentine; and this you must do every Day once till you see his Hoofs come to some toughness.

Others use to take Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and Honey, of each alike; melt them well together, and being warm, anoint all the Hoof therewith; then dip Tow therein, and fold it all about the Horse's Foot both under and above; and then put on his Boot, dress him once a Day, and once in two Days let him stand four hours without his Boot, that his Hoof may grow as well hard as tough.

#### C H A P. CXXII. *How to preserve Hoofs.*

**I**F you mean to preserve your Horse's Hoofs, either from any of the former Sorances, or any other Grief whatsoever, you shall, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, Take three heads of Garlick, a little bundle of Rue, six ounces of Allom beaten into Powder, two pounds of old Grease, and the Dung of an Ass; boil them all very well together, and stop your Horse's Hoof therewith once a Day. Other Farriers take of Vinegar a quartern, of Tar half a pint, of Hogs-grease half a pound, of Oil a pint, and a good handful of Wormwood, and four or five heads of Garlick; boil all these together to a thick Ointment, and therewith anoint all the Horse's Hoofs. Others use to boil Beans till they burst, and then temper them with Honey, and therewith anoint all the Hoofs; or else wash all the Hoofs with warm Vinegar, and then anoint them with Horehound, Wormwood, and Grease molten together.

Other Farriers take of Olibanum, and new Wax of each one ounce, of Dialthea and Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Butter four ounces, and of old Oil six ounces, and of Sheeps-suet and Plantane, of each a pound; boil them all well together, and therewith anoint the Hoofs twice a Day. Other Farriers use to anoint his Hoofs with Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and Honey warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the Foot well, and shooe him in the New of the Moon two or three Days after the Change.

**U**S Others use to take Chalk and White Lead mingled other, or else Bark-dust and Honey mixt together, and being heated in a Posnet, laid hot on the bare Flesh, is most excellent to make any Hoof grow.

To conclude: If a Horse stand upon his own Dung, (being very well watred) so he do not lie in it, it is most Sovereign for the preserving of Hoofs.

C H A P.

C H A P. CXXIII. *For any Hurt upon the Hoofs.*

**I**F your Horse shall receive any hurt upon his Hoofs, either outwardly, or inwardly, as either by any false treading, or crossing one Foot upon another, or by any bruise upon cogle Stone, Flint, or such like, then for the Cure thereof, you shall first stop the Hoof with Honey and Vinegar mixt together, for the space of three Days at the least; and then afterwards with Leaves of Tamarisk well bruised and beaten together, until the Hoof be found again.

Other Farriers use only to stop the Hoof with Sheeps-grease and Horse-dung mixt together, renewing it once a day until it be well.

C H A P. CXXIV. *How to soften the Hoofs.*

**T**HE Hoofs of Horses will by long and dry standing upon dry Plaunchers, grow so hard, that they will not be pared, nor cut by any Butteris; besides, they will so take from the Horse the sense and feeling of his Feet, that he will go very stiff and unnimble: Wherefore, when you shall perceive any such defect, which is best known by offering to pare the Hoof, then presently you shall take an ounce of Soap, two ounces of unslackt Lime, with as much strong Lye as will make it soft like a Lenwick Salve, then with that, stop the Horse's Feet daily till they come to a convenient Softness. Hot glowing Embers put upon the Hoof will soften it.

C H A P. CXXV. *How to harden Hoofs.*

**A**S dry standing, and dry keeping doth harden the Hoofs too much, so wet and moist keeping, as continual going in marish Grounds, or continual standing either upon Dirt, or the Horse's own Dung, or too hot stoppings will make a Horse's Hoofs too soft; insomuch that the Horse thro' the tenderness thereof, will neither be able to go, nor bear any Shooe, which you shall perceive by the soft and easie cutting of the Hoof. The manner then to harden and cure them, is, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, first to burn an old shooe soal, then seethe it well in Vinegar, and therewith bathe the Horse's Hoofs at least twice a Day, and it will harden them.

Other skilful Farriers use to take of the Powder of Galls, or Bran, and of Salt, of each a handful; boil these well in a Pottle of strong Vinegar, and therewith bathe the Hoofs, and in a short space it will harden them.

C H A P. CXXVI. *Of the Malt-long of the Hoof.*

**T**HE Malt-long, or as some Farriers call it, the Malt-worm, is a cankerous Sorance above the Hoof, just upon the Cronet, which will break out into Knobs and Branches, and out of the same will run



a watrish sharp Lye or Humour, which will venom the whole Foot; As for the Signs, they are the apparent sight of the Sorance, and the continual running out of the thin Water. Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, if it be in the Summer-time, to take Black Snails, and Bur-Roors, and beating them well together, lay them unto the Sore, and renew them once in 24 hours. But if it be in the Winter, then take the Scrapings of a Pans bottom, or of a Cauldron, and put thereto a handful of the inner Green Bark or Pills of the Elder-Tree, and having beaten them well together in a Mortar, lay it unto the Sore, and renew it once a Day, and it will heal it. Others use to take Garlick, Pepper, and Honey of each a like quantity, stamp them very well together, then anoint his Tongue with a little thereof, and then lay some to his Pasterns, and that will cure the Sorance.

C H A P. CXXVII. *How to skin any sore Foot.*

**T**HERE is nothing better to skin any fore foot, of what accident or Sorance soever it proceed, then to take Turpentine simply of it self, and therewith every Day to anoint the sore Foot, and it will not only gather Skin but Hoof also, if it be in a Place where any need requireth. Also White Lead, and Train-Oil beaten together, will do the like.

C H A P. CXXVIII. *Of Gourded or Swoln Legs.*

**T**HE Gource, or Gourded Legs, is an ill Sorance, being a grievous swelling in the nether part of the Legs, proceeding either from the melting of the Grease by immoderate Labour, and then wanting wherewith to void that Grease out in Excrements, it falleth down into the Limbs, and there breedeth this Swelling; or else when a Horse is exceedingly heated, and then without care set up, and taketh cold, insomuch, that the Blood falleth down into his Legs and there congealeth and maketh his Legs to swell. To conclude: They do sometimes proceed from hard beating in hard Ways, in the Summer-time; which first raiseth up Wind-Galls, and then those Wind-Galls offending the Sinews, make them to swell, and this is the worst Gourding, because ever for the most part, Lameness doth follow it.

The Signs are, the Horse's Legs will ever be most Swoln when he standeth still in the house, and least when he is in Travel, especially if he travel in much Water; and the Swelling most commonly is accompanied with some small Scabs, and in the end it will break out into the Scratches. The Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, To draw him with a hot Iron a handful above the Knee, and then Rope his Legs with a soft Rope of Hay wet in cold Water, and  
let

let it so remain a Day and a Night, and it will take away all the Swelling. Other Farriers take two pound of Nerve Oil, two pound of Black-Soap, a pound of Boars-grease, and melt and boil all these well together; then strain it, and so let it cool: Then when you have any need, anoint and chafe the Horse's Legs therewith, and to make it sink in the better, anoint him first with Nerve Oil, and hold a hot Iron against his Legs to make it melt; then use the other Ointment in the same manner, which done, keep his Legs clean from Dust by lapping a linnen Rowler about them.

Others of our later Farriers use to take up the Veins beneath the Knee, and let him bleed well; then knit the Vein both above and below, and then anoint his Legs with this Ointment: Take of Frankincense, Rozen, and fresh Grease, of each a like quantity, and having boiled them well together, strain it, and use it once a Day as you shall have occasion, and it will heal any Gource whatsoever; only for the taking up of the Veins you may, if you will, forbear it; for, if it be not done with great Cunning, it will make the Horse stiff ever after. See farther in the new Additions, for any Strain general, Noted thus.

CHAP. CXXIX. *A certain and approved Cure for any Surded or Swelled Legs, by what Accident soever.*

**F**irst, with a Fleam prick the swell'd Parts; then take a pint of Wine-Lees, an ounce of Cummin-Seeds, and a handful or more of Wheat-Flower, and boil them till they be thick, then apply this Poultis very hot to the swell'd Part, and renew it but once in 24 Hours, and if this in two or three Days draw it to a head, then Lance it, and heal it either with a Plaister of Shoe-Makers Wax, or else with the Yolk of an Egg, Wheat-Flower, and Honey beaten together to a Salve.

But if it do not draw to any head, and yet the Swelling continue, then take of Pitch a quarter of a pound, and as much Virgins Wax, of Rozen half a pound, of Juice of Hyslop half an ounce, of Galbanum half an ounce, of Myrrh Secondary half a pound, of Bdellium Arabicum half an ounce, of Deers Suet half a pound, of Populeon half an ounce, of the drops of Storax half an ounce, boil all these together in an Earthen Pot, and after it is cooled, take of Bitumen half a pound, of Armoniack an ounce and a half, and of Costus as much, beat these into fine Powder, and then incorporate them with the other, and boil them all over again, which done, pour the whole Mixture into cold Water, and then roll it into several Rolls Plaister-wise; after spread this Plaister upon Sheeps-Leather, and fold it about the swell'd Member, and this will both assuage it, and give much Strength.



Strength to the Sinews. You shall by no means remove this Plaister so long as it will stick on.

This Plaister is wonderful soveraign, and of a singular use ; for the Horse that is continually kept therewith, I mean, that hath it applied to his Limbs, ever when he cometh from Travel, he shall never be troubled with swell'd Legs, nor yet ever put out Wind-Gall.

Now if you will neither go to this Cost, nor endure this Trouble, yet would have your Horse cured of his Infirmary, then know, there is not any thing better, or more approved, than continually both before and after Travel, and in the House many times in the Day, to lave and wash your Horse's Legs, or other swell'd Parts, with the coldest and clearest Fountain-Water that you can get, and sometimes let the Horse stand in some cold running Stream the space of a quarter of an hour or more, up to the Knees and Cambrels, but in any case no farther.

This Medicine, how poor soever it look, is of much Vertue, and tho' I write of cold Water, yet is the Operation hot and fiery ; only this you must take to your Remembrance, that this Application appertains not to Imposthumations, but unto Strains, Swellings, and Bruises, which are without Anguish.

#### C H A P. CXXX. Of the Farcy, or Fashions.

THE Farcy (of our Ignorant Smiths called the Fashions) is of all outward Sorances the vilest, the most poisonous, infectious, and the most dangerous, (being any whit neglected) or otherwise the most easie, and with the least cost or trouble to be helped. It is a kind of creeping Ulcer, growing in Knots, ever following amongst some one Vein or other, and sometimes amongst divers or sundry Veins, according to the Strength of the Infections. It proceedeth sometimes from corrupt Blood ingendred in the Body, sometimes from outward Wounds or Hurts receiv'd by cankerous or poisonous Instruments, as rusty Spurs, rusty Forks, biting of Dogs or Horses, biting of Ticks, Hog Lice, or such like ; sometimes by the rubbing of Swine against the Legs of the Horse, or by lying in the Litter where Swine has lain, or by interfering or hewing one Leg upon another ; but generally it proceedeth from an evil habit of the Body, being surfeited by disorderly and unruly Travel, whereby the Blood being heated, the Grease melted, and sudden cold taken, there groweth such Obstructions in the Blood, and such Putrefaction in the Body, that can in no way evacuate or void, but by these small Knots, Pustules, or Ulcers, which are so infectious, that as many Horses as do gnaw or gnaw upon the Horse infected, will within one Month have the same Disease, or if the Horse infected do bite any other, he will infect him also ; and this Infection without

without present Cure is Mortal, and will kill any Horse : Therefore, whensoever you have any Horse troubled with this Sorance, see that you separate him from other Horses to prevent the Danger.

Now for the Signs, they are the appearance and palpable feeling of the Knots, which Knots are never but accompanied with great Swellings and Ranklings, running along as the Veins run, and dividing themselves as the Branches of the Vein divide, the Number of the Knots multiplying and increasing until the Body be universally covered over, or else that the Number (if it be in a Member) be utterly deformed and mis-shapen.

Now the Cure (according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers) is, First let him bleed on the Neck-Vein, and on both his Spur-Veins, then give the Horse this Drink : Take a Gallon of Water, and put into it a good handful of Rue, and a pound of Hemp-seed, both being first bruised in a Mortar ; then boil them in Water till the one half be consumed, and give the Horse this to drink in the Morning fasting, being cold, for divers Mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the Ancient Farriers use first to let the Horse bleed in that Vein where the Sorance first riseth, as nigh the fore place as may be, and let him bleed well ; then fire or cauterize every Knot one by one, taking the Knot in your left Hand, and pulling it so hard as you can from his Body, to the intent you may the better pierce the Knot with a round blunt hot Iron, of the bigness of a Man's Fore-finger, without doing the Body any hurt, and let the Matter out, leaving none unburned, being little or much ; that done, anoint every Knot so burned, with Hogs-grease warm'd every Day once, until the Cores be ready to fall ; and in the mean time, prepare a good quantity of old Urine ; and when you see the Cores ready to fall, then boil the Urine, and put therein a little Copperas and Salt, and a few strong Nettles, and with that Water being warm, wash out all the Cores, and all the Corruption ; that done, fill every hole immediately with the Powder of unslacked Lime, continuing thus to do every Day once until the holes be closed up ; and if any be more rank than others, fill those with Verdigrease ; and during this Cure, let the Horse be thinly dieted, that is to say, with Straw and Water only ; unless it be now and then to give him a Loaf of Bread, or a little other Provender ; for the lower he is kept in Flesh, the sooner he will heal ; and in any wise let his Neck either be yoaked in an old bottomless Pail, or else splented with Seaves in such sort, that he may not come to lick any of his Sores ; and the less he hath, the better will be his Amendment. Now there be other later Farriers, which for the Sorance take a good Quantity of Mistletoe, Honey, and Black-Soap, and boil them very well in old Urine, and being very warm, wash your Horse all over



over therewith, every Day once for the space of five or six Days, and it will help it. Others use to cut the Horse two Inches long down the Forehead, and upon it on the midst thereof on both sides two Inches, and put thereto a Tampin made of the inner Rind of Elder Bark which is green, and look that it lye cross the Cut ; for so it will destroy all the venomous Humour in his Body ; and it will heal him very perfectly, having been very often approved. Others use to take a very sharp Bodkin, and to thrust it cross-wise through the nether part of the Horse's Nose, even through the small Gristle, so that he may bleed well ; or else to let him Blood in the Neck-Vein ; then feel the Knots, and as many as are soft, Lance them, and let them run ; then take strong Lye, Lime, and Allom, and mixing them well together, bathe all the Sore therewith, and it will cure him.

Others take a sharp Lance Knife, and in the top of the Horse's Forehead, somewhat above his Eyes, make a long slit even unto his Skull ; then with a blunt Instrument for that Purpose, loose the Flesh from the scalp a good compass, then take Carret-roots cut into little thin round Pieces, and put them between the Skin and the Skull ; or, for want of Carret-roots you may take red Dock-roots, and see that they be a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a Day see that you thrust out the Matter, but by no means thrust out the Roots ; but if the Roots do not stay in, then with a Needle and Silk stitch the Wound together that it may hold in the Medicine ; then once a Day anoint the Wound with fresh Butter ; this is held a very certain Cure for the Farcy ; for look how this Wound made thus shall rot, waft, and grow sound, so shall the Sorance break, dry up, and be healed ; only the Fault of the Cure, is, That it will be somewhat long in healing, and is a foul Eye-sore until it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which, after the putting in of Roots, as is aforesaid, use to burn all the fore Place round about with a hot Iron ; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a Man's Finger to burn the Sore in the midst till the white Matter come forth, then with a pair of Pinsons pluck out the Knots ; this done, anoint all the fore Place with Soap, and then dress him no more the space of four or five Days, in which Time you must prepare a good Quantity of strong Piss, with the which you must wash him every Day, the Piss being first made scalding hot, and rub the Sores well until they begin to bleed ; then having dried all the fore Places, throw on the Powder of unslackt Lime, or of Burnt Allom, which will heal better than Lime. Now if you see that in any of the Sores through negligent dressing there riseth proud Flesh high, that you cannot correct it sufficiently with the aforesaid Powder, then you may burn any such place so sore or sorer as you did at the first, and dress it as before. Now there be

be other Farriers, which when they see the Farcy to have been old and long gone, and that it is so far entred into one Member or other, that the Member is disfigured, they will then first purge the Horse with some strong Purgation, of which you may find choice in a Chapter before written; and then under his Belly, put in one Rowel either of Hair or Leather; or on the pitch of the Shoulder of his grieved Leg, (if it be before) or else in the Stiffing-Places; if his Grief be behind, put in another Rowel, and so keep those two Places together with the issue in his Forehead open, until the Cure be finished; then with another hot Iron burn all his Leg down with long Strikes, even from the Body to the Hoof, not above an Inch one Strike from another, the edge of the Iron being not above a Straws breath, and draw your stroke ever downward with the Hair, and burn him no deeper than that the Skin may look brown. Now, when by this Practice you have cured the Disease; if then the Member be unfashionable, or by Swellings out of all form, then you shall lay unto the Member a Plaister made of Wine-Lees, and Wheat Flower, and Rowl it with a woollen Rowler, renewing it once in Twenty four Hours, 'till the Member be asswaged; and this Practice will heal any great swell'd Leg, if it be applied and continued with Patience; but if by former Dressings, Burnings, Manglings, or Cuttings of some ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary, hard, or horny Substance grown about the Member, which the Plaister aforesaid will not dissolve, then you shall take of Virgins-Wax half a pound, of Myrrh one pound, of Raisins a pound, of Galbanum half a pound, of Costus six ounces, of Armoniack six ounces, of Swines-grease two pounds; put your Swines-grease first in an earthen Pot, and having placed it in a broad Cauldron full of Water, then make a soft Fire under it, to the end that your Water may boil, and when you do perceive your Swines grease is almost melted, then shall you put in all the other Simples, except the Costus; and when they are all molten, which will ask five or six Hours boiling at the least; then your Costus, which is a white Root, being beaten into fine Powder, you shall add to the aforesaid things after it is taken from the Fire, and incorporate them all very well together; then make a Plaister thereof upon a piece of Sheeps Leather, somewhat bigger than the Sore, and this Plaister without renewing, will serve for at the least Thirty Days, with a very little refreshing, only you must once a Day take it off, and rub his Leg very well for fear it itch, which may cause the Horse to beat and stamp with his Foot, and so rather increase than decrease the Swelling; and you must regard, that you do not Rowl him too strait, for that is most hurtful. It shall not be amiss now and then to ride him into the Water, and walk him an hour after, then bringing him into the Stable, rub his Leg well;



then warm his Plaister over a Chafing-dish of Coals, and so lay it to again : And this Practice in two or three Months will take away any Deformity of Swelling, be the Member never so uncomely.

Now there be other Farriers, which for this Farcy, if it be but young, and especially if it be about the Head or Face of a Horse, will take only of Aquavitæ two spoonfuls, of the Juice of Garlick two spoonfuls ; and of the Juice of Rew, or Herb of Grace, two spoonfuls, mix them well together, then take Plegants or round Balls of Flax, and steep them therein, and then stop them hard into the Horse's Ears ; then take a Needle and Thread, and stitch the tips of his two Ears together, by means whereof, he cannot shake out the Medicine, and use the Horse thus three several Mornings together, and it will kill the Farcy, as hath been often proved.

Other Farriers use to take Drag-worts, or Groundsel, and beat it well in a Mortar with white Salt, and then stop it hard into the Horse's Ears, and so either stitch them together, or with a broad Inle bind them up, renewing it once in Fourteen Hours for three or four Dressings, and it will heal any reasonable Farcy.

Others use to anoint all the Sores either with Tansey and Verjuice boiled together ; or else with Boars-grease very hot, and that will kill it. Others use first to wash the Sores with old Urine, then take the Powder of Glass, Brimstone, and Hogs-grease well stamped and beaten together ; then opening and slitting the Knots, anoint them all therewith, and it will cure them immediately. Other Farriers use to let the Horse Blood, if it be at the beginning of the Disease, or else not ; and then to burn all the Knots as is aforesaid, and then to heal the burnings with Tar, Oil, and Honey mixt together, and give him with a pint of Malmsey, two or three spoonfuls of the Powder Diapente ; or else give him four ounces of the Powder of Wall-Wort, or Dan-Wort, with a pint and a half of Malmsey three Days together ; after that, take an ounce of Aloes, one ounce of Centaury, one ounce of Opoponax, beat them all into fine Powder, and give them him to drink in a pint and a half of Malmsey warmed, wherein the Roots of the aforesaid Herb called Wall-Wort, or Dan-Wort, have been sodden : Use to ride him often until he sweat, and when the Disease is killed, turn him to Grass ; for running in the open Air is very wholesome.

There be others which take Black-Soap, Arsnick, unslackt Lime, Verdigrease, and Red Lead, work all these well together, and opening the Knots, dress them therewith till you see them begin to dry up and die. Others open the Knots with a hot Iron, and then take Black-Soap and great Bay-Salt beaten together, and half so much as of them, of Verdigrease, and boil the Verdigrease with fresh Grease, and

and then take a Saucerful of Mustard, and put them all together, and dress the Sores therewith.

There be others that take three ounces of Quicksilver, and put it into a Bladder, with two spoonfuls of the Juice of Oranges or Lemmons, and shake them together to cool the Quicksilver; then take half a pound of fresh Hogs-grease, and Verdigrease an ounce; put all these in a trend Dish, and work them well together; then anoint the Knots with this Ointment till they rot: Then let them out with a sharp Knife, and anoint them still, and put into his Ears the Juice of Ragweed, and the Sores will dry up. This Medicine is very well approved. Others take black Soap, Mustard made of Wine Vinegar, and Red Lead; mix all these together, and anoint the Vein all along holding a hot Iron close to the Sore, to make the Ointment strike in, and do thus once a Day until the Sores dry up. Other Farriers take the Juice of Hemlock a good quantity, and dipping Tow therein, stop his Ears therewith; then open all the Knots and thrust in Salt. Lastly, give him to drink sweet Wort mixt with Fennel and Treacle. Other Farriers take the Butter Bur, and being dried and beaten to Powder, strew it upon the Knots after they have been opened, and then give two or three spoonfuls of the same Powder with a Pint of Malmsey to drink, and it will cure the Farcy; and it is also exceeding good for all manner of Ulcers; the Root is strong in smell, and bitter in taste.

Others take Sulphur, Orpiment, unslackt Lime, and mixing them together, put it into the Knots, and it will kill the Farcy; which done, anoint him with Bole-Armoniack made into Powder, and incorporated with strong Vinegar, the Juice of Housleek, and of white Leeks and Solatro. Other Farriers, after they have let the Horse Blood, will boil in Vinegar, Bean-flower and Swines-Grease, then add a pretty quantity of Oil, and then strain it, and then add one part of Aloes and two of Brimstone, and boil it a little; then being warm anoint all the sore Places therewith, or else anoint them twice a Day with the Juice of Smallage, and the Yolks of Eggs beaten together.

There be other Farriers which take two ounces of Oil de Bay, one of Euforbium, and two ounces of Arsnick, and mixing them together, anoint the Sores therewith, and it will kill the Farcy. Now after all these many Receipts, of which not any but have been approved to be very good, yet these two which I shall now rehearse, I have ever found to be the most excellent for any manner of Farcy whatsoever, whether it be (as our simple Smiths term it) a dry Farcy, a wet or watry Farcy, or a running Farcy, all being indeed but one Farcy, and proceeding from one Cause; only some Horses not having



such Flux of Humours in them as others have, the Knots will be unwilling to break; then, say they, it is a dry Farcy. Others of the contrary part will break as fast as the Knots arise, and run filthy Matter, then they call it a watry Farcy. Others will spread in many Parts of the Body, yet not break, but as it were move betwixt the Skin and the Flesh, but that they call a Running Farcy.

Now all these are but one Farcy, and have but one certain Cure, which is this: First, with diligent heed mark upon what principal Vein of the Horse's Body the Knots do arise, and note how they spread and run, then if the Farcy be divided into sundry Branches, according as the Vein doth divide, you shall take the last Knot of every Branch, which for the most part will be hard, and not come to rottenness; and then slit them, and fill them with your Knife's point full of white Mercury; then those which you find to be rotten, let the Matter forth, and anoint them with black Soap and Mercury mixt together; then within a Day or two you shall see those which you dress with Mercury simple, to have their Cores fall out; and the rest which you dress with black Soap will dry up: Then anoint them all with fresh Butter molten till they be whole. Now if you perceive any new Knots to arise, then you shall dress them likewise with Mercury simple, as was said before, and not leave any uncured. Now if the Farcy be not very contagious, but as it were newly begun, then if you only take Black Soap and Mercury, as before said, and anointing your Finger and your Thumb therewith, do but nip and bruise every Knot, and within two or three days after they will dry up and heal. But if the Farcy be foul and desperate, that is to say, either universally spread over the Body, or so gotten into any Limb or Member, and the Limb is deformed, and hath lost his Proportion, so that a Man can neither judge which way the Veins run, nor in what part the Knots are most Venomous, because that healing one, two new ones will arise.

✂ In this same Case you shall first give your Horse a strong Scouring or Purgation, according to the strength of his Body, of all which a pint of Muskadine, or a quart of strong Ale, with half a pint of the Oil of Oats, is the most Sovereign; then you shall take a pennyworth of Tar, and two good handfuls of Pigeons dung, and twelve pennyworth of White Mercury; mix all these very well together, and make them into a Salve; then with a slice daub it all over the sore place, leaving no part of the Member uncovered; then heating a Bar of Iron red hot, hold it so near that it may dry the Salve upon the Sore; then lay more fresh Salve on, and dry in like manner, and so let it rest until it fall off, and it will kill any Farcy whatsoever, at the first or second dressing. There be others which will stop the Knots with the Powder of Verdigrease and of Arsnick mixt together, or else wash  
the

the Sores with Aqua-fortis; but they are neither so good as the other before rehearsed.

C H A P. CXXXI. *Of the Canker in any part of the Body.*

**A** Canker is a poisonous creeping Ulcer, fretting and gnawing the Flesh a great breadth, whose Beginning is Knotty, not much unlike to the Farcy, and spreadeth it self into divers Places; and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one Wound or filthy Sore, from whence there runneth a thin sharp Lye, which galleth off the Skin wheresoever it goes, and so both encreaseth the Ulcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from melancholy and filthy Blood, ingendred either by rankness of keeping, or else by too extream Poverty; and if this naughty Blood be mixt with sharp or salt Humours, then it causeth more painful and grievous Exulceration. It also may proceed from some Loathsome Wound, which is neither clean kept nor well drest, but in such sort, that the corrupt Matter thereof poysoneth the other clean parts of the Body. For Signs of this Sorance, there needeth no more but the Description already mentioned: And for the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is, Firrst to let the Horse Blood in those Veins which are next the Sore, and make him bleed well; then take of Allom half a pound, of Green Copperas as much, of White Copperas one quartern, and a good handful of Salt, boil all these things together in fair running Water, from a Pottle to a Quart; and this Water being warm, wash the Sore therewith with a Clout, and then sprinkle thereon the Powder of unslackt Lime, continuing so to do every Day once the space of fifteen Days; and if you see that the Lime do not mortifie the rank Flesh, and keep it from spreading any further, then take of Soap half a pound, of Quicksilver half an ounce, and beat them together in a Pot till the Quicksilver be so well mingled with the Soap, as you can perceive no Quicksilver in it; then with an Iron Slice or Splater, after that you have washed the Sore with the strong Water aforesaid, cover the Wound with this Ointment, continuing thus to do every Day once until the Canker leave spreading abroad: And if it leave spreading, and that you see the rank Flesh is well mortified, and that the Edges begin to gather a Skin, then after the washing, drest it with Lime, as before, continuing so to do until it be whole; and in the dressing, suffer no filth that comes out of the Sore to remain upon any whole Place about, but wipe it clean away, or else wash it away with warm Water; and let the Horse during this Cure, be as thinly dieted as may be, and thoroughly exercised. Now if this Cankerous Ulcer happen to be in the Tail of a Horse, as it is often seen, and which you shall perceive as well by the falling away of the Hairs, as also by the Wound, then  
you



you shall make a Bolster of soft Cloth or Sponge, and wet it with Vinegar both within and without, and so bind it on fast to the Sore; and always when it waxes dry, you must wet it again; do thus twice or thrice a Day, if it be done oftner it is better; so shall you continue for three or four Days, and then heal up as you heal an ordinary Wound; that is, with Hogs-grease and Turpentine molten together, or such like. There be other Farriers, which for the Canker on the Body do take an ounce of the Juice of the Root of Affedely, three ounces of unslackt Lime, two ounces of Orpiment, and Arsnick, put this in an earthen Vessel close stoppt, and either boil or bake it in an Oven till it come to a Powder, then first wash the Sore with strong Vinegar, and after strew this Powder thereon. Others use to take Garlick, and beat it in a Mortar with Swines-grease till it come to a Salve, and then having washt the Sore either with Vinegar, Allom-water, Copperas-Water, or old Urine, anoint it once or twice a Day with it till it be whole. Other Farriers take the Herb Mullain, and bruise it, and mix it with Salt and Verdigrease, and dress the Sore therewith Morning and Evening for the space of three or four Days; then use the same Salve again as long without Verdigrease; then lastly use the Herb alone; but if at any time you see it do begin to wax raw, then begin again, as is aforesaid, and ever before you anoint, wash it first with Vinegar and Grease mixt together. Others take Savin, Bay-Salt, and Rue, stamp with Barrows-grease, and anoint the Sore therewith, and when the ill Humours are kill'd (which you shall know by the Whiteness) then heal it with Tar, Oil, and Honey mixt together.

✦ Lastly, (and which I hold the best) take Vinegar, Ginger, and Allom, and mix them together till they come to a Salve, and with it anoint the Sore, and it will both kill the Poyson, and heal the Ulcer.

#### C H A P. CXXXII. Of the Fistula.

**A** Fistula is a deep, hollow, crooked, mattering Ulcer, and for the most part, commonly a great deal straiter at the Mouth than at the bottom, being ingendred in some Wound, Bruise, Sore or Canker, not thoroughly healed. The Signs to know it are, The hollownes of the Sore descending downward from the Orifice, and the Thinness of the Matter which issueth from the same; besides, the crookedness which you shall find in the Ulcer, when you search it.

✦ Now for the Cure, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, it is thus: First search the bottom thereof, with a Goose or Swan's Quill, or with a small Rod well covered with a fine Linen Cloth; and having found the bottom thereof, cut it so large with a Razor, that the Matter may have free Passage downwards; but take heed in Lancing it, that you cut not any Master Sinew, or main Tendon;

Tendon; then having stanch'd the Blood either with Swines-Dung, or such like, Take of good Honey a pint, of Verdigrease one ounce, and boil them well together upon a soft Fire three quarters of an hour, then having cleansed the Sore by tying a Tent of Flax or fine Linen Cloth to the point of your Quill, with a thred draw it softly into the Wound; then cut off your Quill or Feather so long that you may take good hold in the nether end of the Tent, which then shall come out at the bottom of your Sore; then dip another Tent in the afore-said Salve, and then with a Needle and Thred make fast your Tent to your first Clout, at the upper end thereof, then draw out your first Tent downward, so shall you draw your Tent with the Medicine easily into the Wound, and your first Tent will have cleansed the Sore very clean; and if the Matter do abound much, then it shall be good to dress him twice a day; but you must not dress him with this Medicine no more but one day, and afterwards you shall dress him with this Medicine following; Take of Turpentine, of Swines-grease, of Honey, and Sheeps-suet, of each a like quantity, and melt them together, and make a Salve thereof, wherewith you shall dress your Sore four Days, for one Day that you dress him with the former Medicine made of Honey and Verdigrease; and take heed that you make your Tent of very soft Linen Cloth, and fine Flax; and let not your Tent be too big after the first and second time dressing; but presently after the first dressing, you must cover the sore place, and round about the same, with this Poultis here following.

First, Take two Gallons of fair Water, and having boiled and scum'd it so long till you have perfectly cleansed it of all Corruption, then take two or three handfuls of Mallows, and as much of Violet-leaves, and two or three of Oatmeal, and having boiled all these three things well in your former prepared Water, you shall add thereto of Hogs-Wort, and fresh Butter, of each a pound; then shall you let it boil so long till it become thick, like Paste or Pap, and then apply it hot to the Sore, and take heed that in opening this Sore you let not any hair strike into it; and on the other side, that you keep it not hot: and if this Fistula be in the Horse's Withers, you must take heed that you tie his Head to the Rack, so as he may neither lye down, nor put his head lower than his Manger: For if you suffer him to feed on the Ground when he hath any grievous Sore in his Withers, it shall hardly be possible ever to cure him: but if you perceive the Wound to heal apace, and that it matter but a little, then shall it be enough to dress him once a day; and also it shall be good. Take great heed, that you make not your Tent too big, and see that you use your Poultis till it be perfectly cured. Now there be others of the ancient Farriers, which use for this Cure, First to search the Depth of the Fistula either with



with a Quill, or with some other Instrument of Lead, which may be bow'd every way; for unless you find the bottom of it, it will be very hard to cure; and having found the bottom, if it be in such a place as you may boldly cut and make the way open with a Lancet or Razor, then make a slit right against the bottom, so wide, that you may thrust in your Finger to feel whether there be any Bone, or else Gristle perished, or spongy, or loose Flesh, which must be gotten out; and then tent it with a Tent of Flax dipped in this Ointment: Take of Myrrh, of Aloes, and of Sarocolla, of each one ounce, of good Honey six ounces, and of Verdigrease two ounces; and melt all these on a gentle Fire, and make them into a Salve, then being lukewarm, dress the Tent therewith, and bolster the Tent with a Bolster of Flax, and if it be in such a Place as the Tent cannot conveniently be kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole two ends of a Shoemaker's Thred right over the Bolster, to keep in the Tent, which ends may hang there, as two Laces to tie and untie at your Pleasure, renewing the Tent every Day once, until the Sore leave mattering, and then make the Tent every Day lesser and lesser, until it be whole: for you shall understand, that this Salve doth purge this Fistula of Putrefaction, incarnateth and breedeth Flesh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty Flesh. Now when you have done as aforesaid, then you shall close it up by sprinkling thereon a little unslackt Lime; but if the Fistula be in such a place, as you can neither cut against the bottom nor tie the same, then there is no Remedy, but every time you dress it, to pour into it either through some Quill, or by some small Squirt or Syringe some strong white Copperas-water, or some Allom-water, so that it may go down to the bottom, and dry up the filthy Matter; and this you may do twice a day at least until it be whole. Now there be of our later Farriers, which use this Cure, after they have searched the Fistula to the bottom, To take a pottle of White-Wine Vinegar, of Camphire half an ounce, of Mercury precipitate half an ounce, of green Treacle three ounces, of Red-Sage an handful, of Yarrow and Rib-wort of each an handful, of Honey half a pint, of Boars-grease half a pint, boil all these together till a quart be consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the Wound. Then to heal up the same, you shall take Oil of Roses, Virgins-Wax and Rozen, of each a like quantity, of Turpentine five ounces, of the Gum of Ivy and Deers-suet as much, boil these together unto a Salve, and then dress the Sore therewith until it be whole; observing ever, both in this Cure, and all the rest, that as soon as you have put in your Tent to clap a Plaister over it of Pitch, Rozen, Mastick, Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, which will both comfort the Wound by taking away evil Humours, and also keep in the Tent from falling out.

Now

Now if the Fistula be in or about the head of the Horſe, then you ſhall take the Juice of Houſleek, and dip therein a Lock of Wool, and put it into the Horſe's Ears, and it will ſtay the Inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you ſhall cut away all the rotten and falſe Fleſh, and then bathe it well with the Grounds of Ale made warm, and then wipe the Blood clean away; then take Butter, Rozen and Frankincenſe a little, and boil them all together, and boiling hot pour it into the Wound, and then clap on the Plaſter; do thus once a Day till the Horſe be whole. Now if there be any Inflammation behind the Horſe's Ears, or that it grow to any Impoſthumation in that place, then you ſhall boil the Roots of Mallows in Water till they wax tender, then bruife them, and ſtrain out the Water clean, and being warm, apply it to the Sore, and it will heal it.

There be other ancient and ſkilful Farriers, which for the general Fiſtula uſe for a prevention thereof, to take Honey and Sheep-fuet, and making it ſcalding hot, to ſcald the Sore extreamly therewith upon the firſt Swelling, and it will keep the Fiſtula that it ſhall not breed; but if it breed, then you ſhall lance it in the nethermoſt part, and put into it as much Mercury Sublimatum as a Pea, being firſt abated with Sallet-Oil, and laid on with a Feather; after that, take of Verdigreaf four pennyworth, of Vitriol a half pennyworth, of Red-lead three pennyworth, beat theſe together, and every Day waſh the Wound with Copperas-Water, made with Copperas and Elder Leaves in Summer, and with the inner Green Bark in Winter; after the waſhing, take the Powder, and put it on the Sore, and after it drop on a little Oil.

Other Farriers take the outermoſt Green Shells of Walnuts, and put them in a Tub, ſtrowing three or four handfuls of Bay-Salt upon them, ſome in the bottom, ſome in the miſt, and ſome on the top, and ſo keep them all the Year; and when you will uſe them, take a pint of them, a little Bay-Salt, and half a quarter of a pound of Black-Soap, with half a ſpoonful of May-Butter, (and for want thereof, other Butter) and mix and incorporate them together; and then ſpread it on the Sore, or tent the Sore therewith; but two Hours before you lay it on, anoint the Place with Venice Turpentine, and do thus till the Fiſtula be whole.

Other Farriers take Unguentum Ægyptiacum, which is made of Honey a pint, Vinegar half a pint, Allom a quarter of a pound, and Verdigreaf one ounce and a half; and ſeethe them all together till they be thick, and of a rauny colour; this is called Ægyptiacum, and to make it the ſtrongeſt way, is to put in of Mercury Sublimatum one ounce made into Powder, and of Arſnick two Scruples, and boil it together; with either of theſe, eſpecially the ſtronger, dreſs any Fiſtula, Canker, or foul old Ulcer whatſoever, and it will kill it;



and the weaker of these, which wanteth the Mercury and the Arsnick, may be applied to the Fistula in the Mouth of a Horse. Other Farriers take of Sublimatum made into Powder one ounce, the midst of well Leavened Bread slack baked, three ounces, of Nenin ten drams; mingle them together with a little Rosewater, and make Tents thereof, and dry them upon a Tile, and at your Pleasure tent your Fistula therewith, and it will assuredly kill it. Others take strong Lye, Honey, Roch-Allom, and Mercury, and see the them together, and squirt it into a Fistula, and it will kill it at the bottom, and when you mean to dry up the Fistula, take red Wine, Goats-dung, and Bean-flower, and see the them together, and apply it to the Fistula, and it will dry it up.

Now if you intend to sink down the Swelling of a Fistula, first of all sear it with a Drawing-Iron in this Proportion †, and then take Rozen, Sheeps-Suet, and Brimstone, and boil them together, and lay it upon a Fistula very hot with a Cloth, and it will sink down the Swelling. It is also most excellent to take away a Wind-gall, if it be laid on after the Wind-gall is prickt, but not too hot, but very reasonable, and it will keep it also very clean.

There be other Farriers, which for a Fistula take Verdigrease, Butter and Salt melted together, and pour it scalding hot into the Sore; and use this till all the Flesh look red; then tent it with Verdigrease, burnt Allom, Wheat-flower, and the Yolks of Eggs well beaten and mingled together; last of all, skin it with Barm and Soot mixt together.

C H A P. CXXXIII. *A rare and true approved Medicine to cure any Fistula, or hollow Imposthumation whatsoever.*

**T**AKE a pint of the strongest Vinegar, and being hot upon the fire, mix therewith the Lome of Clay-Wall, which hath not any Lime in it, but by no means do not pick out the chopt Straw or Hay that is in the Lome, but boil them all together till it come to a Salve; then being reasonably hot, spread it all over the swell'd Place, and over every part which you shall feel hard; and you shall thus do twice a Day, and it will not only ripen and break the hollow Ulcer, but also search it to the bottom and heal it. This Medicine cureth any sore Back whatsoever, how grievously soever, either gall'd or bruised.

C H A P. CXXXIV. *Of the Ambury.*

**A**N Ambury is a great spongy Wart full of Blood, which may grow upon any part of the Horse's Body, chiefly about the Eye-brows, Nostrils, or Privy-Parts, and it hath a Root like unto a Cock's-stone. Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, First to tie about with a Thred or Hair, so hard as you can pull it, and the Thred will eat in by little and little, in such sort as within seven or eight Days it will fall away of it self; and if it be so flat, that you can  
bind

bind nothing about it, then take it away with a sharp hot Iron, cutting it round about, and so deep as you leave none of the Root behind, and then dry it up with the Powder of Verdigrease: but if it grow in such a sinewy place as it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot Iron, then it is good to eat out the Core with the Powder of Rosalgar, or Mercury, and then to stop the hole with Flax, dipt in the white of an Egg, for a day or two; and lastly, to dry it up with the Powder of unslackt Lime, and Honey, as is before taught. Other Farriers, instead of tying the Wart with a Thred, do tye it with some Horse-hair; and that is a great deal the better, and it will rot it off sooner, and faster.

C H A P. CXXXV. *Of the Cords.*

**T**HE Cords is a certain String which cometh from the Shackle-vein to the Gristle in the Nose, and between the Lip, the Length of an Almond; or there be two Strings like Threds, which lye above the Knee, betwixt the Knee and the Body, and go like a small Cord through the Body to the Nostrils, making a Horse to stumble much, and sometimes to fall also; and it is a Disease very much incident to many young Horses. The Signs are, an apparent stiff going, and much stumbling, without any outward or visible Sorance; the Cure is, according to the Opinion of our ancient Farriers, To take the end of a crooked Hart's horn that is sharp, put it under the Cords, and twine it ten or twelve times about, till the Horse be constrained to lift up his Foot; then cut the Cord asunder, and put a little Salt into the issue, or cut it first at the Knee, then at the end of his Nose, and so draw it upward a span length, and cut that off. Other Farriers let the Horse Blood in the Vein that descendeth in the inside of the Leg, by the Breast, and take away at least a Pottle of Blood, and after seven Days wash him with Beef-broth, and it will heal him.

Other Farriers take Mustard, Aquavita, and Sallet-Oil, and boil them on the Coals, and make a Plaister, and bind to a place that is grieved, and it will heal him.

Others take the Grounds of Ale, and being made warm, bathe his Legs therewith, and then rope them up with wet Hay-ropes, and it will make the Horse perfectly sound.

C H A P. CXXXVI. *Of the String-halt.*

**T**HE String-halt, of some called the Mary-hinchcho, is a sudden twitching up of the Horse's hinder Legs, as if he did tread upon Needles, and were not able to endure his Feet upon the Ground; The Signs whereof be an apparent ill-favoured manner of halting most visible to the Eye; and the Cure is, To take up the middle-Vein above the Thigh, and underneath the same; then under the said Vein there lieth a string, which string must be cut away; and then anoint him with Butter and Salt, and he will both do well, and go well.



C H A P. CXXXVII. *Of a Horse that is Spur-gall'd.*

**I**F a Horse by the Indiscretion of an Evil Rider, be Spur-gall'd, which is a Disease most plain, both to be felt and seen; then the Cure is, either to bathe it with Urine and Salt mixt together, or with Water and Salt, or with warm Vinegar, or else bind unto the Place the Crops of Leaves of Nettles stamped; and any of these will cure him.

C H A P. CXXXVIII. *Of Wounds in general.*

**W**OUNDS, according to the Opinion of all Farriers, is a Solution, Division, or parting of the whole; for if there be no such Solution, or Division, then it is rather called a Bruise than a Wound; and therefore, Wounds are most commonly made with sharp or piercing Weapons, and Bruises with blunt Weapons: Notwithstanding, if by such blunt Weapons any part of the whole be evidently broken, then it is to be called a Wound, as well as the other, and these Wounds do proceed from some stroak, prick, or violent Accident. Now of Wounds some be hollow, and some be deep and hollow: Again, some Wounds chance in fleshy Parts, and some in boney and sinewy Places; and those which chance in the fleshy Parts, though they be very deep, yet they be not so dangerous as the others, and therefore I will speak first of the most dangerous. If then a Horse have a Wound newly made, either in his Head, or in any other place which is full of Sinews, Bones or Gristles, then according to the Opinion of the most Ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the Wound well with White-Wine warmed, and keep it ever whilst you are in dressing it, covered with Cloths wet in warm White-Wine; that done, you shall search the bottom of the Wound with a Probe or small Instrument of Steel made for the Purpose, suffering the Wound to take as little Wind or Air as you can possible: then having found the depth, stop the hole close with a Clout until your Salve be ready: Then take of Turpentine, Mel-rosatum, Oil of Roses, of each a quartern, and a little unwrought Wax, and melt them together, stirring them continually, that they may be well mingled together; and if the Wound be a Cut, make an handsome Roll or round Plegant of soft Tow, so long and so big as may fill the bottom of the Wound, which for the most part is not so wide as the Mouth of the Wound, then make another Roll or Plegant somewhat bigger, to fill up the rest of the Wound, even to the hard Mouth, and let both these Rolls be aointed with the Ointment aforesaid, made lukewarm: only this you must ever observe, that if the Wound be long and large, that then it is best, if you can conveniently, to stitch the Wound together with a fine Needle and a Crimson-Silk; for that will make it heal the sooner, and make the Scar less. But if the hurt be like an hole made with some Prick, then make a stiff Tent either of Tow or Lint, such an

an one as may reach the bottom, anointed with the aforesaid Ointment, and bolster the same with a little Tow; and over both this and the other, or any Wound whatsoever, as soon as your Rowels, Plegants or Tents are put in, you shall clap a sticking Plaister made of Pitch, Rosin, Mastick and Turpentine, melted together, as hath been before taught, both to keep in your Salve, and to comfort the Sore. Now if the Mouth of the Wound be not wide enough, so as the Matter may easily run forth, if it be in such a place as you may do it without hurting any Sinew, then give it a pretty slit from the Mouth downward, that the Matter may have the freer Passage; and in any wise, have an especial regard that the Tent may be continually kept in by one means or other, and also that it may not be drowned within the Wound, but by tying some Thread about the upper end thereof, so kept, that it may be taken out at Pleasure. Now if the hole be deep, and in such a place as you may not cut it, then make your Tent full as big as the hole of a dry Sponge that was never wet, so long, that it may reach the bottom; and the Tent being made somewhat full, with continual turning and wrying of it, you shall easily get it down, and then dress the Wound with this twice a day, cleansing the Wound every time with a little Whire-Wine lukewarm; for the Sponge anointed with the Ointment aforesaid, will both draw and suck up all the filthy Matter, and make it so far within as is possible; and as it beginneth to heal, so make your Tent every day lesser and lesser, until it be ready to close up: and never leave tenting it, so long as it will receive a Tent, be it never so short; for hasty healing of Wounds breedeth Fistulas, which properly be old Sores, and therefore must be healed like Fistulas. Now if the Wound proceed from any ancient Imposthumation, then you shall take two or three great Onions, and taking out the Cores, put therein a little Bay-Salt, and a little whole Saffron, and so roast them in the hot Embers; then Plaister-wise lay them all hot on the Wound, renewing it once a day till the Wound be healed. Now if the upper Skin of the Wound be putrefied, and you would have it away, then make a Plaister of Cows-dung sod in Milk, and clap it to for four and twenty Hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the Wound. Others use generally for any Cure whatsoever, to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, of Tar and Black Soap, of each half as much, and a little Turpentine: boil all but the Soap together, then when you take it off the Fire, put in the Soap, and with this Ointment dress and cut, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers use only to take Hogs-grease and Venice-Turpentine, and to melt them together, and it will heal any Wound. Other Farriers take eight Drams of Turpentine, four drams of new Virgins Wax, melt them in a pewter Vessel, and stir them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the Fire, and  
by.



by and by whilst they be hot, pour into them half a pint of White-Wine, then after they be cold, throw away the Wine, and anoint your Hands with Oil of Roses, and work the Wax and Turpentine well together; after that put them into the pewter Vessel again, then put to them half an ounce of the Gum of Fir-tree, and three drams of the Juice of Betony, then seethe them well together until the Juice of Betony be wasted, then put to it three drams of Woman's Milk, or the Milk of a red Cow, and seethe them once again until the Milk be wasted; and then put it in a close Pot or Glass, and with this dress any Wound whatsoever, and it will heal it. Others use to take Rosemary, and dry it in the Shadow, and beat it to Powder, then wash the Wound with Vinegar, or the Urine of a Child, and strew thereon the aforesaid Powder, and it will heal an indifferent Wound.

Other Farriers take Wormwood, Marjoram, Pimpernel, Calamint, Olibanum, beat them all into fine Powder, then take Wax and Barrows grease, and boil them on a soft Fire until they be as thick as any Ointment or Salve; with this dress any Wound and it will heal it. Others use to take the tops of Nettles, Butter, and Salt, and beating them well in a Mortar till they come to a Salve, and it will dry and heal a Wound. Now the Powder of Honey and Lime, or Turpentine simply of it self, will dry up and skin any Wound. Take Turpentine, Honey, Hogs-grease, Wax and Sheeps-suet of each alike; melt them well together to a Salve, and they will heal any Wound. Now if a Horse be gored upon a Stake then you shall cast him, and pour into the Wound Butter scalding hot, and so let him lie till it be gone down into the bottom; and do thus once a day till the Wound be whole. If you desire to keep a Wound open, put into it the Powder of green Copperas, and it will do it; but if you intend to heal it speedily, then Wheat-flower and Honey well beaten together to a Salve will do it, dressing the Wound once a Day therewith.

C H A P. CXXXIX. *Of an Hurt with an Arrow.*

**I**F a Horse be shot or hurt with an Arrow, tent the Hole only with Hogs-grease and Turpentine molten together, and renew it once a Day until the Wound be whole.

C H A P. CXL. *Of the healing of any old Sore or Ulcer.*

**O**LD Ulcers or Sores are of three kinds; the first deep, hollow and crooked, and they be called Fistulas; the second broad and shallow, but most spreading and encreasing; and they be called Cankers; and the last broad, deep, black about the sides and bottom, yet not much encreasing, although not at all healing, and they be called old Sores or Ulcers: They proceed either from some great Bruise, Wound or Imposthume, which is either venomous or abused in healing by contrary Salves; or through the Flux and Abundance of Humours

mours flowing down to those Parts, through the Negligence of a most unskilful Farrier. The Signs are, the long Continuance of the Sore, the thinness of the Matter which issueth away, and the blackness of the Sore, which is ever full of Inflammation.

Now for the Cure according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers, it is thus; first cleanse the Sore well with White-wine; then take Copperas, and the Leaves of Lilies, beat them well in a Mortar with Swines-grease, till it come to a perfect Salve, and lay it upon the Sore with Flax, and then cover it with a Plaister as in case of Wounds, and renew it once a Day, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Lime, and tough Horse-dung, and mix it very well together with Pepper, and the White of an Egg, and lay it to the Sore, renewing it once a Day, till the Ulcer be cured.

Other Farriers strow upon the Sore the Powder of Galls, and that will dry it up.

Others scald it once a day with hot Oil-Olive, and that will heal it.

C H A P. CXLI. *A most certain and approved Cure for the healing of any old Ulcer whatsoever.*

**T**AKE Mastick, Frankincense, Cloves, green Copperas, and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, or Myrrh, double so much as of any one of the other; beat all to Powder, then burn it on a Chafing-dish and Coals, but let it not flame; then, as the Smoak ariseth, take a good handful of Lint, or fine Hurds, and hold it over the Smoak, so that it may receive all the Perfume thereof into it; then, when it is thoroughly well perfumed, put the Lint or Hurds into a very close Box, and so keep it.

Now when you have occasion to use it, first wash the Sore with Urine or Vinegar, made warm, then dry it; and lastly, lay on some of this Lint or Hurds; and thus do twice a Day, and it is a speedy and most infallible Cure.

C H A P. CXLII. *Of Bruisings or Swellings.*

**A**LL Bruisings and Swellings come unto an Horse, either by Accident, or by some blow, rush, pinch, or outward venoming; or else naturally, as thro' the Flux of Blood, or thro' the abundance of Wind. The Signs are the sightly Appearance. in what Place or Member soever they be: And the first, which are those which come by Accident, are properly called Bruisings, or Swellings; and the other, if they do rot or corrode, and so turn to Matter, are called Imposthumes.

Now for the general Cure of any Bruise or Swelling, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus; Take of dry Pitch, of Gum, of each an ounce; of Galbanum, of Lime, of each four ounces, of Bitumen two ounces, of Wax three ounces; melt and boil them very well together, then anoint the sore Place therewith once a Day, and it will heal it: But if the Swelling proceed only from some Bruise,



Bruise, Rush, then you shall take two pints of Verjuice, one pint of Barm, and putting a little fine Hay thereto, boil them very well together, then bind the Hay to the Swelling very hot, and after pour on the Liquor: Do thus three or four Days together, and it will take away the Swelling.

Other Farriers take the tops of Worm-wood, Pellitory of the Wall, Brank-Ursine, beat them well together with Swines-grease, then see the them; then add a pretty quantity of Honey, Linseed-Oil and Wheat-Meal; then stir it over the fire, till all again be sodden together; then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day, till the swelling be gone.

Other Farriers use first to prick the swelling with a Fleam, then take of Wine-Lees a pint, as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and an ounce of Cummin, boil them together, and lay this somewhat warm unto it, renewing it every Day once, until the Swelling either depart, or else come to an head; which if it do not, then lance it and heal it according to a Wound.

Other Farriers take of Rozen, of Turpentine, and of Honey, of each half a pound, dissolve them at the fire, then strain them, and add of Myrrh, Sarocol and the Flower of Fenugreek, and of Linseed, of each an ounce, incorporate them all together, and then make it thick like a Salve with the Meal of Lupins, and lay it to the Swelling, and it will assuage.

Other Farriers take of Galbanum, and of Cerus, of each an ounce, of Oil two ounces, and of Wax three ounces, mix them together over a soft fire; and when they are brought to a Salve, then lay it to the Swelling, and it will assuage it.

If you take only rotten Litter, or Hay boiled in strong Urine, and apply it daily unto any Swelling, it will take it away. Now if the Swelling be upon the Legs, and come by any Strain, then you shall take of Nerve-Oil one pound, of Black-Soap one pound, of Boars-grease half a pound, melt and boil them all well together, then strain it, and let it cool; then when occasion serveth, anoint and chafe your Horse's Legs therewith, holding an hot Iron near thereunto, to make the Ointment enter in the better; then rope up his Legs, and keep them clean from dust or dirt. But if the Swelling be upon any part of the Back or Body, then take of Honey and Tallow of each alike, and boil them together, then spread it on a Cloth and lay it on the swoln place, and let it there stick till it fall away of it self. Now if the Swelling proceed from any windy Cause, and so appear only in the Horse's Belly, then you shall take a sharp pointed Knife or Bodkin, and arm it so with some stay that it go not too deep, for piercing his Guts; then strike him therewith through the Skin into his Body before the hollow place of the Haunch-Bone, half a Foot beneath the Back-Bone, and the Wind will come out thereat; then if you put a hollow Quill therein, or some Feather to keep it open a while, the Wind will avoid the better, then heal it up again. It

It is also very good to rake the Horse, and to ride him up and down a little; but if the Swelling be under the Horse's Jaws, or about any part of his Head, then you shall take his own Dung hot, as soon as he makes it., and with a Cloth bind it fast thereto, renewing it twice a Day till the Swelling be gone. See further in the New Additions for the Fistula marked thus, 

C H A P. CXLIII. *Of Imposthumes, and first how to ripen them.*

**I**mposthumes are a gathering and knitting together of many and most corrupt Humours in any Part or Member of the Body, making that part to swell extremely, and growing into such violent Inflammation, that in the end they rot and break out into foul, mattery and running Sores; they commonly proceed either from Corruption of Food, or Corruption of Blood; they are at the first appearance very hard, and very fore; which hardness is the principal Sign that they will Rot. And of these Imposthumes, some be hot Imposthumes, and some be cold; yet forasmuch as every Imposthume must first be ripened, and brought to Matter before it can be healed, we will first speak of the ripening of them. If therefore you would ripen any Imposthume, (according to the Opinions of the ancient Farriers) you shall take of Sanguis Draconis, of Gum-Arabick, of new Wax, of Mastick, of Pitch of Greece, of Incense, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melting them together, and straining them, make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the Imposthume without renewing, and it will both ripen, break, and heal any Imposthume.

Other Farriers take of Swines-Grease, Red-Wax, and the Flower of Euforbium, and mixing them on the Fire well together, lay it to the Imposthume, and it will do the like.

Other Farriers take of Honey, and of Wheat-Meal, of each a like quantity, and either boil it in the Decoction of Mallows, or else mix it with the Yolk of an Egg, and it will ripen, break, and heal; yet it must be renewed once a Day.

Other Farriers take Barley-Meal, and boil it with Wine and Pigeons Dung, and so lay it to the Imposthume Plaister-wise, and it will ripen exceedingly.

Other Farriers take a handful or two of Sorrel, and lapping it in a Dock-Leaf, roast it in the hot Embers, as you would a Warden, and then lay it to the Imposthume as hot as may be well endured, renewing it once a Day; and it will ripen, break, and heal it. A Plaister of Shooemakers Wax will do the like also.

Other ancient Farriers take Mallow-Roots, and Lily-Roots, and then bruise them, and put thereto Hogs-grease and Linseed Meal, and Plaister-wise lay it to the Imposthume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it perfectly. See further in the New Additions for the Fistula, noted thus, 



C H A P. CXLIV. *Of old Imposthumes.*

**I**F the Imposthume do proceed from any old Causes as those which rise after cold taking, or when a Horse is at Grass in the Winter Season, then you shall take the Herb called Balm, and stamp it and Hogs-grease well together, and so Plaister-wise apply it to the Sore, and it will heal it: Or else when the Imposthume is ripe, open it in the lowest part with a hot Iron, then wash it with warm Urine; after that anoint it with Tar and Oil well mixt together; and if you make your Incision in the manner of a Half-Moon, it is the better.

Other Farriers take White Mints, and see the them in Wine, Oil, Ale, and Butter, and so lay it hot to, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Cuckow-spit, and stamp it with old grease, and so apply it, and it will heal it.

**I**F Other Farriers take a handful of Rue, and stamp it well with the Yolks of Eggs and Honey, and then apply it Plaister-wise, and it will heal any old Imposthume.

C H A P. CXLV. *Of hot Imposthumes.*

**I**F the Imposthume proceed from any hot Causes, as from the extremity of Travel, parching of the Sun, or the Inflammation of the Blood; then, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall take Liver-wort, and stamp it, and mix it with the Grounds of Ale, Hogs-grease, and bruised Mallows, and then apply it to the Sore, and it will ripen, break and heal it; but if you would not have the Swelling to break, then take the Grounds of Ale or Beer, and having boiled Mallows therein, bathe the sore Place therewith, and it will drive the Swelling away. Other Farriers take either Lettice-Seed, or Poppy-Seed, and mix it with Oil of red Roses, and lay it to the Sore Plaister-wise, especially at the beginning of the Swelling, and it will take it clean away.

C H A P. CXLVI. *Of the Tetter.*

**A** Tetter is a filthy kind of Ulcer, like unto a Canker, only it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one Place; and many times it will remain between the Skin and the Flesh, like a knotty Farcy, and will not break.

**T**he Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of the ancient and understanding Farriers, is, To make a strong Lee with old Urine, Ashes and Green Copperas, and bathe the Knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them. Some other Farriers take a Snake, and cut off the Head and the Tail, and cast them away; the rest cut into small pieces and roast them on a Spit; then take the grease that droppeth from them, and being hot anoint the Sorance therewith, and it will heal it in a short time; but look that you rouch no part of the Horse therewith, save only the Sorance, for it will poison and venom.

C H A P.

C H A P. CXLVII. *Of Sinews that are cut, pricked, or bruised.*

**I**F an Horse, by the mischance of some Wound, shall have any of his Sinews either cut, pricked, or sore bruised, then if there be no Convulsion of the Sinews, you shall according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers, Take Tar and Bean-flower, and a little Oil of Roses, and mixing them together, lay it hot unto the place; and if it do not present good, take Worms and Sallet-Oil fried together, or else the Ointment of Worms, which you may buy of every Apothecary, and applying either of them, they knit the Sinews again, if they be not clean asunder. But if there be a Convulsion, then with a pair of Shears you must cut the Sinew in pieces, and then take Rosin and Turpentine, Pitch, and Sanguis Draconis; then melting them together, clap it somewhat hot unto the sore; then take Flax and put upon it, for that will cleanse and defend it; and than this Medicine, there is none better for any swoln Joint whatever.

Now if the Joint be not much swell'd, but only that the Sinews are exceeding stiff through the great Bruisings, then you shall take of black Soap a pound, and seethe it in a quart of strong Ale till it wax thick like Tar, then reserve it, and when you shall see cause, use to anoint the Sinews and Joints therewith, and it will supple them, and stretch them forth, although they be never so much shrunk; as hath been approved.

C H A P. CXLVIII. *Of fretting the Belly with the Fore-girts.*

**I**F when you saddle and gird your Horse, the Girts be either knotty or crumpled, and therewithal drawn too strait, they will not only gall and wound the Horse under the Belly very much, but they will also stop the Blood which is in the principal Veins, called the Plat-Veins, in some sort, as they will occasion most extream and hard Swellings.

The Cure whereof is, according to the general Opinion, to take of Oil de Bay and Oil of Balm two ounces, of Pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rozen; mingle them well together, and then anoint the Horse's fore Bowels therewith; then take either Flocks, or chopped Flax, and clap upon it, and so let it abide until it fall away of it self, and it will surely cure him.

Other Farriers use to take Vinegar and Soap, and beat them well together, and stir it with a Stick or Cloth, and then fall to rub and wash the galled place therewith, and do thus at least twice a day, and it will dry it up in two or three Days at the most. But if the galling be about any part of the Horse's Neck, then you shall take the Leaves of Briony (called the Hedge-vine) and stamp them, and mix them with Wine, and then, Plaister-wise, lay it to the Sore, and it will heal it.



C H A P. CXLIX. *Of Blisters.*

**B**listers are certain waterish hollow Blebs which do arise betwixt the Skin and the Flesh, proceeding either from slight Burnings, Scaldings or Chafings, and they be very full of thin Matter. The Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of the most general Farriers, is, First, in the Sun to fret them till they bleed; then take the roots of Ivy, and stamping them in a Mortar, mix them with as much Tar, Brimstone and Allom, till they come to a Salve; and then dress the Blister therewith, and it will heal it.

C H A P. CL. *To take away all manner of Bones, Knobs or any superfluous Flesh.*

**W**hen a Horse hath any Bone growing upon any part of his Body, more than natural, or when he hath any lumps or bunches of superfluous Flesh, otherwise than of right doth belong to his true proportion; then such Bones, Knots, or Bunches are called Excretions, proceeding from tough and flegmatick Substances, stirred up either by most sore Bruises, imperfect healed Wounds, or other naughty Putrefaction of the Blood, being most apparent to the Eye, and most palpable to the Hand.

Now for the Cure (according to the general Opinion of the most ancient Farriers) you shall first use corrosive Medicines, after drawing Medicines, and lastly drying Medicines; or more particularly, thus you shall cure them; first, with an Incision-knife, scarifie the Excretions, then apply Sulphur and Bitumen, or Coloquintida burnt and sifted; and when it hath eaten the Excretion away, then heal it up with drying Salves, as Powder of Honey and Lime, or Bole-Armoniack, or such like. Other Farriers use, after they have made the Excretion to bleed well, then to take two ounces of the Ashes of Vitis, and as much unslack'd Lime, mixed with six ounces of strong Lee, first strained, then sod till half be consumed, and so brought to a firm Substance; then keep it in a Glass, in a dry place, and apply it to the Excretion, till it have eaten it away, and then heal it up as is before-said. Other Farriers use to take a pound of strong Lee, and Soap, and a quarter of a pound of Vitriol-Roman, one ounce of Sal-Armoniack, and as much Roch-Allom, and boil them together until they be very thick; and then, with that Ointment eat away the Excretion. Others use to take of Ægyptiacum the strongest kind, and lay it on the Excretion with a Cotton three or four times, and it will take it clean away. This Medicine is most excellent for any Splent; and of no small Importance, if it be used against any Fistula; for it will sink it, although it were in the Crown.

C H A P. CLI. *How to eat away any superfluous and dead Flesh.*

**I**F when your Horse have any Wound, Ulcer, or other Sore, you shall perceive that there groweth therein dead Flesh, which dead Flesh you shall know, partly by the insensibility thereof, and partly in that it is a spongy, hollow, naughty Flesh, not substantial, as the true Flesh is, and either of a blackish, or an high red colour; then it shall be fit that you seek all means possible how to consume and eat away that superfluous and naughty Flesh, because the Sore that is pestered therewith, neither can nor will ever heal, till it be cleansed of the same: Therefore, according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers, the best means to eat it away, is, To-boil fresh Grease and Verdigrease, of each a like quantity together, and either to tent or plaister the Sore therewith, until the dead Flesh be consumed.

Other Farriers take either the scrapings of Hartshorn, or Ox-horn, and mixing them with old Soap, dress the Sore therewith, and it will eat away dead Flesh.

Other Farriers take *Spongia Marina*, or Sea-Sponge, and therewith dress the Sore, and it will do the like. Other Farriers use the Powder of Risagallo, Risagre, but it is a great deal too strong a fretter. Others use Litharge, or Lime in Lee, but they are likewise very violent and strong eaters.

Others use to take either white or black Elleborus, Ink, quick Sulphur, Orpiment, Litharge, Vitriol, unslack'd Lime, Roch-Allom, Galls, Soot, or the Ashes of Avellan, of each half an ounce; and they will consume dead Flesh: Likewise Quicksilver extinct, and Verdigrease, of each an ounce, made into Powder, will do the like: The Juice of Borrage, of Scabious, of Fumitory, and of a Dock, of each half an ounce, a little old Oil and Vinegar; boil with a soft fire, put to it Tar, and it will likewise eat away any dead Flesh.

There be other Farriers which take Cantharides, Ox-dung and Vinegar, and mix them well together, and lay it to the Sore, and it will fetch away the dead Flesh. Others use first to pounce the Sore with a Razor, then anoint it with Grease, and strew upon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment. Other Farriers use, instead of Risagallo, to take the Powder of Verdigrease and Orpiment, of each an ounce; of unslackt Lime and Tartar, of each two ounces; mix them together and therewith dress the Sore, after you have washed it well with strong Vinegar; and if you please, you may add thereunto Vitriol and Allom. for they are both Consumers of dead Flesh. Other Farriers take the Powder of Tartar, and Man's Dung, burnt with Salt, and then beaten into Powder, and strewed on the Sore; or else take Salt, unslack'd Lime, and Oister-shells, and beat them in a Mortar with strong Lee or old Urine, till it be like a Paste; then bake it in an Oven, and after beat it to a Powder; strew it on the Sore, and it will eat away the dead Flesh.

Other



Other Farriers use first to wash the Sore with Ale, wherein Nettle-seeds have been sodden, and then strew upon it the Powder of Verdigrease.

✂ Now to conclude, you must ever observe, that before you use any of these Medicines; you do shave away the Hair, that it be no Impediment to the Salve; also when you have dress it once, and see that there is no Asker raised, then you shall dress it with some mollifying or healing Salve, till the Asker come away, and then dress it with your eating Salve again; and thus do, until you behold that all the dead Flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound Flesh, and then heal it up, as in case of Wounds. Also Precipitate, simple of it self, will eat away any dead Flesh.

C H A P. CLII. *For Knots or Joints, Hardness, Cramps, or any Inflammations.*

**T**Here do grow in Joints three sorts of Swellings; namely, an hot Swelling, an hard Swelling, and a soft Swelling; all which you may easily distinguish by your feeling; and they do proceed, either from abundance of gross Humours engendred by foul keeping, or else by accident, as from some Wound, Rush or Strain. The Cure whereof, according to the Opinion of most ancient Farriers, is, To beat the Powder called Diapente, together with Oil, till it be like an Ointment, and then apply it once a day to the Grief, and it will take it away; especially if it be a Cramp, or an Inflammation.

Other Farriers use to incorporate with Oil, half an ounce of liquid Storax, two ounces of Turpentine, five of Wax, and ten of Bird-Lime; and apply that to the Grief, and it will ease it. Other Farriers take Wine, and old Oil, and Tar, mingled and boiled together, and therewith dress the sore Place, and it will help it.

✂ Others of your old and later Farriers take half a pound of grease, three scruples of Mustard, and the like of Bay-Salt; mix these with Vinegar, and apply it to the Grief. Others use to take a Plaister of Figs, and the Roots of Fern and Rocket; or mingle them with Grease and Vinegar, and apply it to the Grief. Other Farriers use to take the Unguentum Basilicon; which is made of Honey, Storax, Galbanum, Bdellium, Black-Pepper, Bay-Berries, the Marrow of a Stag, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniack, and of the Powder of Frankincense as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with Sheeps-Suet, and apply it to the Grief, and it will help it.

✂ Other Farriers take dry Pitch, Pitch of Greece, of each one Part; of Galbanum, and of Lime, of each four Parts; of Bitumen two Parts, of Wax three Parts; melt them all together, and anoint the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the Grief, and peradventure also the Eye-sore.

C H A P. CLIII. *How to Cure any Wound made with the shot of Gun-powder.*

**A**Ccording to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first, with a Probe, or long Instrument, search whether the Bullet remain within the Flesh, or no; and if you find that it doth, then with another Instrument for the purpose, you shall take it forth, if it be possible; if otherwise, let it remain; for in the end, Nature it self will wear it out of its own accord, without any Grief or Impediment, because Lead will not corrode nor canker: Then to kill the Fire, you shall take a little Varnish, and thrust it into the Wound with a Feather, anointing it within even unto the bottom; then stop the Mouth of the Wound with a little soft Flax, dipped in Varnish also; then charge all the swollen place with this Charge: Take of Bole-Armonjack a quartern, of Linseed beaten into Powder half a pound, of Bean-flower as much, and three or four Eggs, Shells and all, and of Turpentine a quartern, and a quart of Vinegar, and mingle them well together over the Fire; and being somewhat warm, charge all the sore place with part thereof, and immediately clap a Cloth or piece of Leather upon it, to keep the Wound from the cold Air, continuing both to anoint the Hole within with Varnish, and also to charge the Swelling without, the space of four or five Days; then at the five Days end, leave anointing of it; and tent it with a Tent reaching to the bottom of the Wound, and dipped in Turpentine and Hogs-grease melted together, renewing it every Day once or twice, until the Fire be thoroughly killed; which you shall perceive by the mattering of the Wound, and by falling of the Swelling; for as long as the Fire hath the upper hand, no thick Matter will issue forth, but only a thin yellowish Water, neither will the Swelling assuage; and then take of Turpentine, washed in nine several Waters, half a pound, and put thereunto three Yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and tent it with this Ointment, renewing it every Day once, until the Wound be whole. But if the Shot have gone quite through the Wound, then you shall take a few Weavers Linen-thrums, made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them clean through the Wound, turning them up and down in the Wound at least twice or thrice a Day, and charging the Wound on either side, upon the swollen places, with the Charge aforesaid, until you perceive that the Fire is killed; then clap on a comfortable Plaister upon one of the Holes, and tent the other with a Tent in the Salve, made of washed Turpentine, Eggs and Saffron, as is before said.

Other Farriers use only to kill the Fire with Oil of Cream, and after to heal the Wound up with Turpentine, Wax, and Hogs-grease molten together.

**¶** Other Farriers kill the Fire with Snow-Water, and charge the swelled Place with Cream and Barm beaten together; and then heal up the Wound, by dipping the Tent in the Yolk of an Egg, Honey, Saffron, well beaten and mixed together.

C H A P. CLIV. *Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing.*

**A**Ccording to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the Sore round about, and in every part, very clean, with warm Urine; then kill the Fire, by anointing the place with Oil and Water beaten together, dressing him so every Day, until the Sore be all raw; and then anoint it with Hogs-grease, and strew thereupon the Powder of unslack'd Lime; dressing him thus every Day once, until he be whole.

Other



Other Farriers use first to wash and cleanse the Sore with Sallet-Oil only warmed, then to kill the Fire with Cream and Oil beaten together, and when it is raw, then to spread upon it Cream and Soot mixed together; and lastly, to strew upon it the Powder of Honey and Lime, until it be perfectly skinned.

CHAP. CLV. *Of the biting with a mad Dog.*

**I**F your Horse at any time be bitten with a mad Dog, the Venom of whose Teeth will not only drive him into an extream Torment, but it will also infect and inflame his Blood in such sort, that the Horse will be endangered to die mad: The Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, To take of Goats-dung, of Flesh that hath lain long in Salt, and of the Herb Ebulus, generally called Dane-wort, of each half a pound, and forty Walnuts; stamp all these together, and lay part thereof to the Sore, and it will suck out the Venom, and heal up the Wound; but upon the first Dressing, you shall give the Horse Wine and Treacle mixed together to drink.

There be other Farriers, which first give the Horse Sack and Sallet-Oil to drink, then with an hot Iron Canterise and Burn the Sore; and lastly, heal up the Wound with the Salve first recited.

Other Farriers first give the Horse two or three Spoonfuls of the Powder of Diapente, to drink in a pint of Muscadine; then take a live Pigeon, and cleaving her in the midst, lay it hot to the Wound, and it will draw out the Venom; then heal the Sore with Turpentine and Hogs-grease well molten together. The Leaves of Aristoloch bruised, will take away any Poison.

CHAP. CLVI. *Of Hurts done by the Tusks of a Boar.*

**I**F an Horse be stricken with the Tusks of a Boar, you shall then take Copperas or Vitriol, and the Powder of a Dog's head, being burned, after the Tongue hath been pulled out, and cast away, and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the Sore, and it will cure it: Yet, before you dress it, first wash the Sore very well, either with Vinegar, or with White-Wine, or Urine.

CHAP. CLVII. *To heal the biting or stinging of Serpents, or any venomous Beast whatsoever.*

**I**F your Horse be either bitten or stung, either with a Serpent, or any other venomous Beast, which you shall easily know by the sudden Swelling either of the Body or Member; then you shall first chase him up and down until he sweat, and then let him Blood in the Roof of the Mouth; and lastly, take a young Cock, or a Pigeon, and cleaving it in the midst, clap it hot to the Wound, and then give the Horse White-Wine and Salt to drink. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the Herb called Sanicula, stamp it, and temper it together with the Milk of a Cow, till it be all of one Colour, and give it the Horse to drink, and it will heal him. Other Farriers clap to the Sore, Hogs-dung, or Ox-dung, or Henbane bruised; or else the Ashes of Reeds, then give him to drink Mugwort, or great Tanfie, and Wine, and Camomile, stamped together: Or else give him Wine and *Oleum Rosarum* mixed together.

Other Farriers make a Plaister of Onions, Honey and Salt, stamped and mingled together, and lay that to the sore Place, and give the Horse Wine and Treacle to drink; or else White Pepper, Rue and Thyme, mixed with Wine. Other Farriers take *Aphodillus*, *Hastula Regis*; stamp it with old Wine, and lay it to the Sore, for it is most sovereign good.

CHAP. CLVIII. *Of Lice and Vermin, and how to kill them.*

**T**HE Lice or Vermin which breed upon an Horse, be like unto Geese-Lice, but somewhat bigger; and do breed most commonly about the Ears, Neck; Mane, Tail, and generally over the whole Body; they do proceed from Poverty, or feeding in Woods, where Trees are continually dropping upon them: The Signs are, the Horse will be always rubbing and scratching; and altho' he eat much Meat, yet will not prosper; and with this continual rubbing, he will fret and wear away all his Mane and Tail, and you shall also perceive the Lice, when the Sun doth shine, running on the tops of the Hairs. The Cure, according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers is, To take of Soap one pound, and Quicksilver half an Ounce; mix and beat them together well, until the Quicksilver be killed, and then anoint the Horse all over therewith, and it will consume the Lice presently.

Other Farriers take Staves-Acre and Soap, and mixing them together, anoint the Horse all over therewith. Others take unripe Mulberries, and their Roots or Stalks, and seethe them in strong Urine, and then wash the Horse therewith; after that, anoint all his Body over with Sanguis Draconis, the Juice of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Oil, and Swines-grease, very well mixed together.

✚ Others use to chafe all the Body over with Quicksilver and soft Grease, mixed together, till the Quicksilver be killed; and in two or three dressings the Lice will be consumed.

Chap. CLIX. *How to save Horses from the stinging of Flies in Summer.*

**I**F you will save your Horses in the Summer-time from the stinging or biting of Flies, which is very troublesome unto them, then you shall anoint all the Horse's Body over either with Oil and Bay Berries mingled together, or else bind unto the Head-stall of his Collar a Sponge dipped in strong Vinegar. Some use to sprinkle the Stable with water wherein Herb of Grass hath been laid to steep; or else to perfume the Stable with the smoak of Ivy or Calamint, or with Gith burnt in a Pan of Coals.

✚ But the surest way of all, both in the Stable, and abroad, is, To make two good wisps of Rue, and therewithal to rub the Horse's Body all over, and no Fly will light upon him, or touch him; as hath been often approved.

CHAP. CLX. *Of Bones being broken, or out of Joint.*

**O**UR common English Farriers are very far to seek in this Cure, because they do neither perfectly acquaint themselves with the Members of an Horse, nor have so much invention, in this extremity, to make an Horse, being an unreasonable Creature, to suffer like a reasonable Person;



son; and also that in the old Traditions in Horse leach craft affirm, that all Fractures above the Knee are incurable; and so despairing, they cease to make Practice. But they are much deceived; for neither the Fracture above the Knee, nor the Fracture below the Knee is more incurable in a Horse than in Man, if the Farrier can tell how to keep the Horse from struggling, or tormenting the Member grieved.

If therefore your Horse have any Bone broken, which is most easie to be discerned, by the deprivation of the use of that Member, and as easie to be felt, by the separation of the Bones, and one part being higher than the other, besides the roughness and inequality of the Place grieved; you shall then, for the Cure thereof, first take a strong double Canvas, which shall be as broad as from the Horse's fore-shoulder, to the Flank; and shall have another double Canvas, which shall come from between the Horse's fore-booths, up to the top of the Withers; where meeting with the rest of the Canvas, and having exceeding strong Loops, to which strong Ropes must be fastened, you shall by main force sling up the Horse from the Ground, so as his Feet may no more but touch the Ground: And if it be a fore Leg that is broken, then you shall raise him a little higher before than behind; if an hinder Leg, then a little higher behind than before; so that the Horse may rest most upon the Members most sound. When your Horse is thus slung, then you shall put the Bones into the right Place, which done, wrap it close about with unwashed Wool newly pulled from the Sheep's back, binding it fast to the Leg with a smooth Linen Roller, soaked before in Oil and Vinegar mingled together, and look that your Roller lie as smooth and plain as may be, and upon that again lay more Wool dipped in Oil and Vinegar, and then splent it with three broad, smooth and strong Splents, binding them fast at both ends with a Thong, and in any case let the Horse's Legs be kept out very strait, the space of forty Days, and let not the bones be loosened above thrice in twenty Days, unless it shrink, and so require to be new drest and bound again; but fail not every Day once to pour on the fore place, thro' the Splents, Oil and Vinegar mingled together: And at the forty Days end, if you perceive that the broken place be sowed together again with some hard knob or gristle, then loose the Bonds, and ease the Canvas, so as the Horse may tread more firmly upon his Fore-foot; which when he doth, you shall loosen him altogether, and let him go up and down fair and gently, using from henceforth to anoint the fore Place either with soft Grease, or else with one of these Plaisters, or Ointments: Take of *Spuma argenti* of Vinegar, of each one pound, of Sallet Oil half a pound, of Armoniack, and of Turpentine, of each three Ounces; of Wax, and of Rosin, of each two ounces; of Bitumen, of Pitch, and of Verdigrease, of each half a pound; boil the Vinegar, Oil, and *Spuma argenti* together, until it wax thick, then put thereunto the Pitch, which being molten, take the pot from the Fire, and

and put in the Bitumen, without stirring at all; and that being also molten, put in then all the rest; set the pot again to the fire, and let them boil all together, until they be all united in one; that done, strain it, and make it in Plaister form, and use it as occasion shall serve.

Other ancient and well experienced Farriers take of liquid Pitch one pound, of Wax two ounces, of the purest and finest part of Frankincense one ounce, of Amoniacum four ounces, of dry Rosin, and of Galbanum, of each one ounce, of Vinegar two Pints; boil first the Vinegar and Pitch together, then put in the Amoniacum, dissolved first in Vinegar; and after that, the aforesaid Drugs; and after they have boiled all together, and be united in one, strain it, and make it into a Plaister, and use it according to occasion.

Other Farriers take of old Sallet Oil a Quart, and put thereunto of Hog's Grease, of *Spuma Nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boil together until it begin to blub above; then take it from the fire: And when you use any of the Ointment, let it be very hot and well chafed in, and then one of the two former Plaisters folded above it; and it is most sovereign and comfortable for any Bone that is broken.

#### CHAP. CLXI. Of Bones out of Joint.

**I**F an Horse have any of his Bones out of the Joint, as either his Knee his Shoulder, his Pastern, or such like; which you shall perceive both by the uncomeliness of the Joint, and also feel by the hollowness of the Member that is displaced, then your readiest Cure is to cast the Horse on his Back, and putting four strong Pasterns on his Feet, draw him up so as his Back may no more but touch the Ground; then draw the grieved Leg higher than the rest, till the poise and weight of his Body have made the joint to shoot into its right place again; which you shall know when it doth, by a sudden and great Crack which the joint will give when it falleth into the true place; then with all gentleness loose the Horse, and let him rise; and then anoint the grieved place, either with the last Ointment rehearsed in the last Chapter, or else with the Oil of Mandrake, or the Oil of Swallows; both which are of most sovereign Virtue.

#### CHAP. CLXII. To dry up Humours, or to bind; being astringive, or binding Charges.

**T**AKE of Unguentum Tripharmacum, made of Litharge, Vinegar; take old Oil, boiled till they be thick; only take as much Oil as of both the others: and it will stop and stay the flux of any Humours.

If you take strong Lee, it is a great drier and binder of Humours.

Dissolve in Vinegar, Rosin, Asphalto and Myrrh, of each an ounce, of red Wax half an ounce, and of Armoniack half an ounce, mingle them



well together in the boiling; for this Salve drieth wonderfully, bindeth all loose Members, and comforteth all parts that are weakened.

Take of Lard two pounds, and when it is sodden strain it with three ounces of Cerus, and as much Alom melted; and it both drieth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry Figs, beaten with Alom, Mustard and Vinegar, do dry abundantly.

Oil and soft Grease beaten to a Salve, with Vitriol, Galls and Allom, and the Powder of Pomegranates, Salt and Vinegar, both dry and bind sufficiently.

Soap and unslacked Lime mixed together, drieth perfectly after any Incision.

Verdigrease, Orpiment, Sal Armoniack, and the Powder of Coloquintida, of each alike, made into a Plaister, with Milk or Wax, drieth and bindeth.

The Grease of Snakes roasted, the Head and Tail being cut away, is a great drier.

To conclude, The Bark of a Willow-Tree burnt to Ashes, is as great a drier, and binder, as any simple whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXIII. *A Plaister to dry up superfluous Moisture, and to bind Parts loosened.*

Take of Bitumen one pound, of the purest part of Frankincense three ounces, of Bedelium Arabicum one ounce, of Deers-Suet one pound, of Populeum one ounce, of Galbanum one ounce, of the drops of Storax one ounce, of common Wax one pound, of Resin Cabial half a pound, Viscus Italicus one ounce and an half, of Apoxima one ounce, of the Juice of Hyssop one ounce, of the drops of Armoniack one ounce, of Pitch half a pound; let all these be well and perfectly molten, dissolved and incorporated together according to Art, and then make a Plaister thereof.

CHAP. CLXIV. *Another Plaister to dry up any Swelling, Wind Gall, Splent, or Bladders, in or about the Joints.*

Take of Virgins Wax half a Pound, of Rosin one pound and a quarter, of Galbanum one ounce and an half, of Bitumen half a pound, of Myrrh Secondary one pound, of Armoniack three ounces, of Costus three ounces; boil all these things together in an earthen Pot, saving the Armoniack and Costus; which being first ground like fine Flower, must be added unto the other Things, after that they have been boiled and cooled, and then boiled all together again, and well stirred, so as they may be incorporated together, and made all one Substance, and then applying as occasion shall be administered.

CHAP. CLXV. *Receipts to dissolve Humours.*

**T**AKE of Wormwood, Sage, Rosemary, and the bark of an Elm, or of a Pine, of each a good quantity, and boil them in Oil, with a good quantity of Linseed, and make a Bath thereof; bathe the grieved part and it will dissolve any Humours that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of Figs stamped with Salt, till they come to a perfect Salve, dissolveth all manner of Humours, by opening the Pores, and giving a large Passage.

CHAP. CLXVI. *How to mollifie any Hardness.*

**T**AKE of Linseed punn'd, and of Fenugreek, of each four ounces; of Pitch and Rosin, of each three ounces; of the Flowers of Roses two ounces, Pitch of Greece three ounces; boil them together, then add three ounces of Turpentine, six ounces of Honey, and a little Oil; and then applying the Salve, it will mollifie and soften any hard Substance.

Malvavisco well sod and stamped with Oleum Rosatum, being laid hot to any hardness will make it soft.

Boil Brank-Ursine and Mallows together, and beat them with Oil and Lard, and they will soften much.

Malvavisco, Cole-Worts, Brank-Ursine, Herb of the Wall, and old Grease pounded, doth mollifie very much.

The Oil of Cyprus both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheat-Meal, Honey, Pettitory, ~~Brank-Ursine and the Leaves of Wormwood~~, being beaten with Swines Grease, and laid hot unto any hard Tumour, doth suddenly mollifie it, and is very good for any stripe also.

Grease, Mustard-Seed and Cummin boiled together, doth mollifie very much.

Take of Soap half an ounce, of unslacked Lime an ounce, and mix them well with strong Lee, and it will mollifie even the hardest Hoofs.

The juice of the leaves and roots of Elder, or a Plaister made thereof, doth dry up and mollifie Humours marvellously.

So doth the juice of the tops of Cyprus, and dry Figs macerated in Vinegar, and strained, of each three ounces: And if you add to it of Salt-Niter one ounce, of Armoniack half an ounce, of Aloes and Opoponax a little, and make it into an ointment, it will mollifie any hardness very sufficiently.

Mallows, Nettles, Mercorella, and the Roots of Cucumbers, and old Turpentine, being beaten together with old Grease, will mollifie any hardness speedily.

CHAP.



CHAP. CLXVII. *To harden any Softness.*

**T**HE Sole of any old Shooe burnt, and foddren in Vinegar, will harden Hoofs; and so will also the Powder of Galls boiled with Bran and Salt, in strong Vinegar.

The Powder of Honey and Lime, or the Powder of Oyster-shells, or the Powder of a burnt Felt, or thick Cream and Soot mixed together, will harden any Sore whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXVIII. *To conglutinate.*

**I**Ris Illyrica beaten and sifted, mingled with Pepper, Honey, Currans, and given the Horse to drink with Wine and Oil, helpeth and conglutineth any inward Rupture or Burstness whatsoever.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruit of the Pine, with the yolks of Eggs, given likewise to drink with Wine and Oil, doth also conglutinate any inward Member or Vein broken.

Incense, Mastick, and Cut, doth the like also. Poligano sod in Wine, and given to drink, is good also.

The roots and seed of Asparagus, sod in Water, and given to the Horse; then after, for three Days, give him Butter and Opoponax, with Honey and Myrrh; and it will conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXIX. *To mundifie and cleanse any Sore.*

**T**AKE Oil of Olives, Swine's Grease clarified, the Grease of a young Fox, Turpentine, Allum, and white Wax, seethe them all together, till they be most thoroughly incorporated together; and with this Ointment dress any foul Sore whatsoever, and it will mundifie and cleanse it most sufficiently.

Chap. CLXX. *Of repulsive Medicines, or such as drive back Humours.*

**R**EPUSSIVE Medicines, or such as drive evil Humours back, are commonly called amongst Farriers, Plaisters, or Salvers defensative, and are to be used about every great Wound or Ulcer, lest the flux of Humours flowing to the weak part, both confound the Medicines, and breed more dangerous Exulcerations. Now of these Repulsive Medicines, these are the best; either Vinegar, Salt and Bole-Armoniack, beaten together, and spread round about the Sore; or else White-Lead and Sallet-Oil, beaten also together; or Red-Lead and Sallet Oil, or else Unguentum Album Camphoratum, and such like.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXI. *Of Burning Compositions.*

**B**urning Compositions are for the most part Corrosives, of which we shall have occasion to speak more at large in a Chapter following; yet forasmuch as some are of better Temper than others, you shall here understand, that of all burning Compositions, the gentlest is Unguentum Apostolorum; next to it, is Verdigrease and Hogs-grease beaten together; next to it, is Precipitate and Turpentine mixed together; next to it, is Arsnick, allayed with any Oil, or healing Salve; next to it, is Mercury sublimated, likewise allayed with some cooling Salve; and the worst is Lime and Soap, or Lime and strong Lee beaten together, for they will corrode and mortifie the soundest Part or Member whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXXII. *For all manner of Hurts about any Horse whatsoever.*

**T**ake an ounce of Oil, two ounces of Turpentine, and a little Wax, mingle them at the fire: This will heal any Wound or Gall, and keep it clean from Filth, Water and Dirt.

Take Vinegar and Honey, and boil it together; when it is cold, add the Powder of Verdigrease, Copperas and Brasse burnt, mingle them well together: This will take away all ill and dead Flesh, and cleanse and heal any old Ulcer.

Take Wax, Pitch, Swine's Grease and Turpentine, and mix them well together: This will heal any Bone, spell, or any other Stub.

Take House Snails, and seethe them in Butter, and they will draw out any Thorn or Nail, being often renewed. So will also the Roots of Reeds, being bruised and applied.

The Roots of Elder, beaten to Powder, and boiled with Honey, is good for any old Sore whatsoever.

Take Salt, Butter and Honey, or White Wax, Turpentine and Oil-Rosatum, of each a like quantity, with twice as much Bean-flower as of any of the other; mix it very well together, and make it into a Salve, and it will heal any Sore, either old or new, whatsoever.

Take Wax, Turpentine and Deer's Suet, or the Marrow of a Stag, and mix them well together, and it will heal any Wound, or any Imposthume whatsoever: So will also Wax, Oil, Mastick, Frankincense and Sheep's Suet, well molten together; or the Powder of Mastick, Frankincense, and Aloes, mixed and molten well together.

The Whites of Eggs, beaten with Oleum Rosatum and Salt, and so laid upon Flax hurds, healeth any Wound that is not in any principal part, where the Muscles are.

If you will purifie, cleanse and heal any old Sore, take three pints of well clarified Honey, and boil it with one pint of Vinegar, and one of Verdigrease, and so apply it: Or else take of Mastick and Verdigrease,  
of



of each half an ounce; of Frankincense one ounce, or new Wax four ounces, of Turpentine six ounces, and of Hogs-grease two pounds; boil and incorporate all these together, and then apply it to the sore place, and it will both cleanse, purifie and heal.

Chickweed, Groundsel, Graise, and stale Urine, very well boiled together, will heal any galling or hurts by Halter, or other Accident; or any strain, or stripe, or swelling, which cometh by any such like mischance.

Take of new Milk three quarts, a good handful of Plantain; let it boil till a pint be consumed; then add three ounces of Allom made into Powder, and one ounce and an half of white Sugar-candy made likewise into Powder; then let it boil a little till it have an hard curd, then strain it; with this warm, bathe any old Ulcer, then dry it, and lay on some Unguentum Basilicon. This cleanseth, drieth, strengthneth and killeth the Itch, and healeth the foulest Ulcer, either in Man or Beast, that may be. Also, if you take of Milk a quart, of Allom in Powder two ounces, of Vinegar a spoonful; when the Milk doth see the, put in the Allom and Vinegar, then take of the Curd and use the rest, and it will likewise dry up and heal any foul old Sore whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXXIII. *How to make the Powder of Honey and Lime.*

**T**ake such a quantity of unslack'd Lime as you shall think fit, beat it into very fine Powder; then take so much Honey as shall suffice to mingle it together, and make it into a very stiff Paste, in the form of a thick Cake, or Loaf; then put the same Cake or Loaf into an hot Oven, or a burning Fire, till it be baked, or burnt glowing red; then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into very fine Powder, and then use it as occasion shall serve. It drieth, healeth and skinneth any Sore whatsoever very marvelously.

CHAP. CLXXIV. *The Order of taking up of Veins, and wherefore it is good.*

**F**irst, before we speak of the Order of the taking up of Veins, you shall understand, that all Veins, except the Neck-veins, the Eye-veins, the Breast veins, Palate-veins, and the Spur-veins, are to be taken up, and not stricken with the Fleam; partly because they are so little and thin, that if you strike them you shall either endanger the striking thro' them; or partly because they are so near adjoining to Arteries and Sinews, that if, in striking, you should hit and prick either Artery or Sinew, it were a present laming of the Horse, as I have oftentimes seen and noted in the Practice of many Ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking up a Vein, is thus.

First, You shall cast your Horse either upon some soft Ground, Grass, some Dung-hill that is not very moist, or in some lightsome House, upon  
good

Good store of sweet straw; then, when the Horse is thus cast, you shall look for the Vein which you intend to take up? and if it be either so small, or lie so deep, that you can hardly perceive it, then you shall, with warm water, rub, chafe, and bathe all that part where the Vein lieth; then take a narrow silk Garter, and a handful or two above the Vein, (if it be of any of the Horse's Legs) garter the Member very strait: But if it be a Vein to be taken upon the Body or Breast, then with a good Surfingle, either close behind the hinder point of the Shoulder, or within a handful of the place where you mean to take up the Vein, gird him very strait, and presently you shall see the Vein to arise; then mark that part of the Skin which covereth the Vein, and with your Finger and your Thumb, pull it somewhat aside from the Vein, and then, with a very fine Incision-Knife, slit the Skin clean thro', without touching the Vein, and in any wise cut no deeper than thro' the Skin, and that long-wise too, in such sort as the Vein goerh, yet not above an Inch at the most in length; that done, remove your Finger and your Thumb, and the Skin will return again into its place, right over the Vein, as it was before, insomuch that but opening the orifice or slit, you shall see the Vein lie blue and bare before your Eyes; then take a fine smooth Cronet, made either of the Browantler of a Stag, or of an old Buck, and thrust it underneath the Vein, and lift it up a pretty distance (that is to say, half the thickness of the Cronet) above the Skin; that done, you shall then loose either the Garter or Surfingle, for they are but only helps for you to find out the Vein; and when the Vein doth appear, have a special care that you touch not the Sinews.

Now when you have thus taken your Vein upon your Cronet, you shall then either put a red silk Thread, dipp'd in Oil of Butter, or else a small Shooe-maker's Thread underneath the Vein also, somewhat higher than the Cronet, which Silk or Thread must serve to knit the Vein when time requires; then the Cronet standing still as before, with your Knife slit the top of the Vein long-wise, the length of a Barley-corn, that it may bleed; then stopping the nether part of your Vein with the Silk, or the Thread, suffer it to bleed from above; then with your Silk or Thread removed above, knit it fast with a sure knot, above the slit, suffering it only to bleed from beneath; and having bled there also sufficiently, then knit up the Vein beneath the slit with a sure knot, then fill the hole of the Vein with Salt, and heal up the Wound of the Skin with Turpentine and Hog's-grease molten together, or else with a little fresh Butter laid on with a little Flax, or soft Tow, is sufficient.

Now the Virtue which redounds from this taking up of Veins: First, it is very necessary, and doth ease all Grievs, strains and stiffness  
of



of the Limbs; for the taking up of the Plat-veins easeth all pains in the Breast, and Grievs in the Chest: The taking up of the fore-thigh-veins easeth Farcies, and swellings of the Legs: The taking up of the Shackle-veins before, helpeth Gourding Quitter-bones, and the swelling of the Joints, Scabs and Scratches: The taking up of the hinder Hough-veins, helpeth Spavins of both kinds, most especially, any Farcy in those parts; and generally, all Swellings, or Imposthumes: The taking up of the Pastern veins behind, helpeth swelling about the Cronet, or nether Joints, Pains, Mules, and all manner of Cured Heels; besides sundry other such like Diseases.

CHAP. CLXXV. *Of Cauterizing, or giving the Fire, the Kinds and Uses.*

**T**HE giving of Fire, which, among the best Farriers, is called Cauterizing; and amongst the simpler, Burning, Searing, or Blistering; is (according to the general Opinion of all the most ancient Farriers) the chiefest Remedy, and, as it were, the last refuge of all Diseases incident to any Horse's Body, whether they be natural or accidental; for the violence of Fire separating and digesting all manner of Humours into a thin Air, and loose Body, cleanseth and avoideth those Grossnesses which are the material causes of Putrefaction and Ulceration. Now of Cauterization there be two kinds; the one of them actual, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the Instrument, that is to say, of the hot Iron, of what fashion soever; the other Potential, which is done by the applying of a Medicine, whose nature is either Corrosive, Putrefactive, or Caustick.

Now the first of these, which is the Cauterize actual, is principally to be used when there is any Aposthumation in any Sinew, part or Member, or amongst any of the most principal Veins; also when you shall dismember or cut away any Joint, or make any incision, where there is fear of any Flux of Blood, or where you shall find either the Skin or Muscles shrunk or straitned; and in many such like cases.

The Cauterizing Potential is to be used in old cankered Ulcers, Wens, or any spongy Excretion, either of Flesh or Bone whatsoever; of whose Natures and Properties you shall read more hereafter, in a following Chapter.

CHAP. CLXXVI. *Of the Cauterize actual, and the form of Instruments.*

**A**N actual Cautery, according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers, being moderately used, is a notable Remedy to stop all Corruption in Members, to keep perfect the Complexion of the same, and also stanch the Blood; only you must have a careful regard that in  
the

the handling of your Iron, you touch neither Sinews, Tendons, Cords, nor Ligaments, lest you do utterly disable the Member, or breed Cramps or Convulsions; except it be when you dismember or cut away any joint; as when you did make Curtals, geld Horses, or such like; and then your Cautery is to be used only to sear the Veins, Sinews, and Ligaments, till such time that you are perfectly assured that all flux of the Blood is stopped whatsoever.

Now again, the actual Cautery bindeth together parts loosened, it doth attenuate things blown and puffed up, it drieth up superfluous moisture, it both looseth, disperseth and divideth evil matter gathered into knots, it asswageth old Grievings, it rectifieth those parts of the Body that are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their first perfect Estate, and suffereth no abundance of evil Humours to grow or increase; for the skin being separated and opened with the hot Iron, all putrefaction whatsoever, thro' the virtue of Fire, is first digested and ripen'd, and then so dissolv'd, that the matter doth issue out abundantly at the holes whereby the griev'd or sickned Member is now healed and eased of all Pain and Grief; yea and insomuch that the holes being once closed, and close shut up, the place is stronger, and better knit together, and cover'd with a tougher and harder Skin than ever it was before: Only greatest blemish that can any way be found in Cautery is, that it commonly leaveth a great Scar, which is many times an Eyesore more than is tolerable; and therefore the use of Cauterizing is only to be preferred, but in desperate Cases of great extremity; for, although it works foul, yet I am perswaded it is most certain, and it works most sure.

Now as touching the Instruments wherewith you must cauterize, their substance and proportion, you shall understand, that the most curious Farriers do prefer either Gold or Silver to be the best Metal to make them of, in that few or no evil Accidents do follow where they burn: But the wisest, best and most skilful Farriers take Copper to be sufficient enough, and a metal without any lawful exception; yet where Copper Instruments cannot be had, there you may, with commendations enough, use such Instruments as are made of Iron, and find your Work nothing at all hindered.

Now for the fashion or proportion of your Instruments or Irons, they are only to be referred to the Sore, or place griev'd, wherewith you are to meddle; according to the diversity whereof, your Instruments are to be made of divers fashions: As some are to be made Knife-wise, either with thin edges, or broad edges; and they be called Drawing-knives, or Searching-knives, because they are principally employed in the drawing of strait lines, shallow or deep, and sometimes in circular, or divers squares. Some are made like strait, and some like crooked Bodkins; and they are employed either in fleshy Excretions, to cause Exulcerations; or else Imposthumes, to open small passages for the Matter. Some



are made like Hooks, or Sickles; and they are to be used where the Wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead Flesh, or such like hidden evils, which cannot be reached by any strait Instruments. Others are made either with great Buttons, or little Buttons at the end; and they are used to open Imposthumes, or else to burn into the sound Flesh, where you intend to make any new Sore or Issue, for the drawing, or keeping back of other evil Humours. And in making of these Irons, the Farrier's own Judgment is to be of great value, because he must either increase or diminish them, according to the manner of the place grieved, and be sure that he ever make them fit for his right purpose.

Now for the use of these Instruments, there are two principal things to be regarded, first the heating of the Iron; and next, the true temper, or bearing of the Farrier's hand.

Touching the heating of the Iron, you shall understand, that the back of the Iron must never be so hot as the edge; that is to say, you must never make the back of the Iron red hot, for fear that thereby it yield too much heat, and consequently breed Inflammation: Therefore, whensoever you see the back of your Iron as hot as the edge, you shall a little cool it with Water.

Now for the temper of the bearing of your hand, you shall understand, that the more evenly and light it is done, so much the better it is done: And herein is to be consider'd the fineness or thickness of the Horse's skin, which you shall know most commonly by his Hair; for if it be short and fine, then the skin is thin; if it be long and rough, then is his skin thick and boisterous.

Now the skin that is fine must be cauterized or seared with a very light hand, inasmuch as the skin is soon pierced thro', and the thick skin with a heavy hand; and both of them with such a tempered hand, that the skin must no more but look yellow; wherein you shall ever find, that the fine skin will sooner look yellow than the thick skin; the main reason being, because the thickness and roughness of the Hair of the thick skin doth cool and choak the heat of the Iron; insomuch that if it be not laid to with a more heavy hand, and the Instrument so much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot work that effect which in Art it should do.

Now you shall also observe, that in drawing of any Line or other Cauterize whatsoever, that you ever draw with the Hair, and never against the Hair, whether the Lines be short, long, deep, shallow, strait, crooked, or overthwart, according as the Grief doth require.

Now, to conclude, you are to observe, in Cauterizing, these few Precepts: First that you do not give fire to any finew Place except there be some apparent Swelling, or else Imposthumation. Secondly, that you give

give not fire to any Bone that is broken, or out of Joint, for fear of breeding a general weakness in the whole Member. Thirdly, never to give the fire so deep, or suffer your hand to be so heavy, that you may mis-shape or deform the Horse, either by unnecessary Figures, or uncomely Scars. Fourthly, not to be too rash or hasty in giving fire, as if every Cure was to be wrought by that Practice only (as I know some very well reputed Farriers hold Opinion) but only to attempt all other good Means before; and when all hopes else is desperate, then to make the fire your last refuge as extremity that must prevail, when all other Practices do perish.

Lastly, I would not have you, like the foolish Farriers, which know nothing, utterly to contemn or neglect it, as if it were useless; but with all Moderation, and judicious Discretion, to apply it in fit time and place, so the poor Horse may gain Ease, your self good Reputation, and the Owner Profit; which is most certain, as long as you are governed by Wisdom.

Chap. CLXXVII. *Of Cauterize by Medicine, which is Cauterize Potential.*

**T**HE Potential Cauterize, or searing of the Flesh by Medicine, is (as I said before) when the Medicines are either Corrosive, Putrefactive, or Caustick; Corrosive, as when they do Corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the Flesh; Putrefactive, when they do corrupt the Complexion of the Member, and do induce a main Scar like dead Flesh, causing infinite Pain, in such sort, that they are often accompanied with Fevers and Mortality, and therefore are not to be Administred but to strong Bodies, and in very strong Diseases; and Caustick, which is as much as to say burning, when the Operation is so strong, that it inclineth, and cometh nearest to the nature of fire, and so burneth and consumeth whatsoever it toucheth.

Now these Potential Cauterizes do exceed and excel one another by certain degrees, as thus: The Corrosives are weaker than the Putrefactives, and the Putrefactives are weaker than the Causticks; the Corrosives work upon the upper part in the soft Flesh, the Putrefactives in the depth of the hard Flesh, and the Causticks have power to break Skin sound or unsound, both in hard and soft Flesh, and that very deeply also.

Now of Corrosives some be simple, and some be compound: The simple Corrosives are Roch Alom, burnt, or unburnt, the Spunge of the Sea somewhat burnt, Lime, red Coral, and the powder of Mercury, the shavings of an Ox or Harts-horn Precipitate Verdigrease, and such like. The compound Corrosives are, black Soap and Lime, Unguentum Apostolorum, and Unguentum Egyptiacum, and Unguentum Caraceum, and many such like: And these are to be applied unto Sores, Ulcers, or Excretions, after they are corroded.

The



The Putrefactives are Arsnick, either white or yellow, Resalgar, or any Medicine compounded with any of them; besides, Sandracha, Chrysocola, and Aconitum.

Now if you would have your Putrefactive Medicines to be caustive, that is, breeding a great Scar, and hot in the fourth degree: Then they are unslack'd Lime, and the burned dregs of Wine; and these are to be used to Carbuncles, Cankers and Amburies.

The Caustick Medicines are those which are made of strong Lee, called Capitellum, or Magistra, of Vitriol Roman, Sal Niter, Aquafortis, Apium, Chantharides, Ciclamine, Onions, strong Garlick, Melanacardium the stones or grains of Briony, and many such like.

Now in conclusion, I would wish every diligent Farrier, seldom or never to use either Arsnick, Resalgar, or Mercury sublimate, simply of themselves, but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to work be very great) with Unguentum Apostolorum; but if it be very little, then with Hogs-grease, Turpentine, or such like. And thus much for this Potential Cauterizing, and the proper Uses.

#### CHAP. CLXXVIII. *Of the rowelling of Horses, and the use thereof.*

**T**He rowelling of Horses, is amongst our ignorant and simple Smiths, the most ordinary and general Practice of all other whatsoever, inso-much that not any Disease can almost be found about a Horse, either how slight or great soever it be, but presently without any Reason or Sense therefore, they will rowel him for the same; whereby they not only put the Horse to a needless Torment, but also bring down (now and then) such a Flux of Naughty Humours, that they lame the Horse, which otherwise would be perfectly sound. But it is not my Theme to dispute of those Ignorances, only this I must say of Rowelling, it is a practice as necessary and commendable for the good Estate of a Horse's Limbs and Body, as any Medicine whatsoever, so it be applied in its due time, and in its due place: Otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodness.

The helps which are got by Rowelling, are these; it separateth and dissolveth all evil Humours, which either through natural or unnatural Corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place hindring the office of any Member, or deforming the Body by any superfluity or evil substance: It loosneth those parts which are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakned; it giveth strength unto sick joints, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold Flegm, or hot cholerick substance: The general use of Rowelling, is either for inward Strains, especially about the Shoulders or Hips, or else for great hard Swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward Medicine, which is  
either

either Plaister or Unguent, for you shall understand, that when a Horse receiveth any Strain or Bruise, either in the upper joints of his Shoulder, or his Hips, which joints do not stand one upon another, as the lower joints, do but they go one into another, as the one end of the Marrow-bone into the pot of the Spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double Bone: Now as I say, when a Bruise is received in these parts, if by present Application of hot and comfortable Medicines, the grief be not taken away, then quickly there gathers between the Pot and the Bone, a certain bruised Jelly, which continually offending the tender Gristle which covers the end of every Bone, makes the Horses to halt vehemently, and then is this corrupt Matter not to be taken away by any outward Medicine, but by Rowelling only; and as I speak of the Shoulder, so I speak of the Hips also, where the upper Thigh-bone, goeth into the Pot of the Cannel bone, and there breeds the like Infirmitie. Now for the manner of Rowelling, it is in this sort: First, when you have found out the certain place of the Horse's Grief as whether it be on the fore-pitch of the Shoulder, on the hinder Elbow, or on the Hip, then you shall (having cast the Horse upon some Dung-hill, or soft Ground) make a little slit more than a good handful below the place of his Grief thro' the Skin, and no more, so big as you may well thrust in a Swan's quill into the same: Then with your Cronet raise the Skin a little from the Flesh, and then put in your Quill, and blow all the Skin from the Flesh upward, even to the top, and all over the Shoulder: Then stopping the whole with your Finger and your Thumb, take a small Hazel-stick, and beat the blown place all over; and then with your Hand spread the Wind into every part, and after let it go: Then take a Tampin of Horse-hair twound together, or which is better, of red Sarsenet, half the bigness of a Man's little Finger, or about a Foot or sixteen Inches in length, putting it into your Rowelling Needle, which would be at the least seven or eight Inches long; thrust it in at the first hole, and so putting it upward, draw it out again at least six Inches above, and then if you please, you may put in another above that: And then tie the two ends of the Tampins or Rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the Skin, in any wise not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every Day after they are in, to anoint them well with Butter, Hogs-grease, or Oil de Bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opiated that these long Rowels, or Tampins of Hair or Silk, do make both a double fore, and a great scar, therefore they make their Rowels of round pieces of stiff Leather, such as is in the upper part of an old Shooe, with a round hole in the midst according to this Form; and then doubling it when they put it in, as soon as it is within, to spread it, and lay it flat between the Flesh and the skin, and





The Putrefactives are Arsnick, either white or yellow, Resalgar, or any Medicine compounded with any of them; besides, Sandracha, Chrysocola, and Aconitum.

Now if you would have your Putrefactive Medicines to be caustive, that is, breeding a great Scar, and hot in the fourth degree: Then they are unslack'd Lime, and the burned dregs of Wine; and these are to be used to Carbuncles, Cankers and Amburies.

The Caustick Medicines are those which are made of strong Lee, called Capitellum, or Magistra, of Vitriol Roman, Sal Niter, Aquafortis, Apium, Chantharides, Ciclamine, Onions, strong Garlick, Melanacardium the stones or grains of Briony, and many such like.

Now in conclusion, I would wish every diligent Farrier, seldom or never to use either Arsnick, Resalgar, or Mercury sublimate, simply of themselves, but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to work be very great) with Unguentum Apostolorum; but if it be very little, then with Hogs-grease, Turpentine, or such like. And thus much for this Potential Cauterizing, and the proper Uses.

#### CHAP. CLXXVIII. *Of the rowelling of Horses, and the use thereof.*

**T**He rowelling of Horses, is amongst our ignorant and simple Smiths, the most ordinary and general Practice of all other whatsoever, in so much that not any Disease can almost be found about a Horse, either how slight or great soever it be, but presently without any Reason or Sense therefore, they will rowel him for the same; whereby they not only put the Horse to a needless Torment, but also bring down (now and then) such a Flux of Naughty Humours, that they lame the Horse, which otherwise would be perfectly sound. But it is not my Theme to dispute of those Ignorances, only this I must say of Rowelling, it is a practice as necessary and commendable for the good Estate of a Horse's Limbs and Body, as any Medicine whatsoever, so it be applied in its due time, and in its due place: Otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodness.

The helps which are got by Rowelling, are these; it separateth and dissolveth all evil Humours, which either through natural or unnatural Corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place hindring the office of any Member, or deforming the Body by any superfluity or evil substance: It loosneth those parts which are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakned; it giveth strength unto sick joints, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold Flegm, or hot cholerick substance: The general use of Rowelling, is either for inward Strains, especially about the Shoulders or Hips, or else for great hard Swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward Medicine, which is  
either

either Plaister or Unguent, for you shall understand, that when a Horse receiveth any Strain or Bruise, either in the upper joints of his Shoulder, or his Hips, which joints do not stand one upon another, as the lower joints, do but they go one into another, as the one end of the Marrow-bone into the pot of the Spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double Bone: Now as I say, when a Bruise is received in these parts, if by present Application of hot and comfortable Medicines, the grief be not taken away, then quickly there gathers between the Pot and the Bone, a certain bruised Jelly, which continually offending the tender Gristle which covers the end of every Bone, makes the Horses to halt vehemently, and then is this corrupt Matter not to be taken away by any outward Medicine, but by Rowelling only; and as I speak of the Shoulder, so I speak of the Hips also, where the upper Thigh-bone, goeth into the Pot of the Cannel bone, and there breeds the like Infirmity. Now for the manner of Rowelling, it is in this sort: First, when you have found out the certain place of the Horse's Grief as whether it be on the fore-pitch of the Shoulder, on the hinder Elbow, or on the Hip, then you shall (having cast the Horse upon some Dung-hill, or soft Ground) make a little slit more than a good handful below the place of his Grief thro' the Skin, and no more, so big as you may well thrust in a Swan's quill into the same: Then with your Cronet raise the Skin a little from the Flesh, and then put in your Quill, and blow all the Skin from the Flesh upward, even to the top, and all over the Shoulder: Then stopping the whole with your Finger and your Thumb, take a small Hazel-stick, and beat the blown place all over; and then with your Hand spread the Wind into every part, and after let it go: Then take a Tampin of Horse-hair twound together, or which is better, of red Sarsenet, half the bigness of a Man's little Finger, or about a Foot or sixteen Inches in length, putting it into your Rowelling Needle, which would be at the least seven or eight Inches long; thrust it in at the first hole, and so putting it upward, draw it out again at least six Inches above, and then if you please, you may put in another above that: And then tie the two ends of the Tampins or Rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the Skin, in any wise not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every Day after they are in, to anoint them well with Butter, Hogs-grease, or Oil de Bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opiated that these long Rowels, or Tampins of Hair or Silk, do make both a double sore, and a great scar, therefore they make their Rowels of round pieces of stiff Leather, such as is in the upper part of an old Shooe, with a round hole in the midst according to this Form; and then doubling it when they put it in, as soon as it is within, to spread it, and lay it flat between the Flesh and the skin, and





so as the hole of the Rowel may answer just with the hole that is made in the Horse's skin; and then once in two or three days to cleanse the Rowel, and to anoint it, and so put it in again.

Other Farriers do use to make the Rowel of Lanthorn-horn, in the same fashion as is made of Leather, and in like sort to use it. But for mine own part, I have used them all, and truly in my practice find not any better than another: Only the Leather or the Horn is somewhat more cleanly, and less offensive to the Eye, yet they ask much more attendance.

Now if you do Rowel your Horse for any swelling, then you shall ever put in your long Rowel the same way that the Veins run, and seldom or never cross-wise, and the more you blow the skin for a swelling, so much the better it is: For the wind is it which only occasioneth Putrefaction, and makes these festred Humours to dissolve, and distil down from the secret hollows of the Joints into these open places, where it falleth away in Matter, and so the Beasts becomes Cured.

#### CHAP. CLXXIX. *How to geld Horses or Colts.*

**T**Here is to be observed in the gelding of Horses, First, the age. Secondly, the Season of the Year: And lastly, the State of the Moon. For the Age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine days old, or fifteen, if his stones be come down: For to speak the truth, the sooner that you geld him, it is so much the better, both for his growth, shape and courage: Altho' some hold opinion, that two years old should be the soonest; but they are mistaken, their Reasons are weak therein.

Now if it be a Horse that you would geld, then there is no scruple to be made of his Age: For it is without any question, that a perfect Farrier may geld a Horse without danger at any Age whatsoever, being careful in the Cure.

Now for the season of the Year, the best is in the spring, between *April* and *May*, or in the beginning of *June* at the farthest, or else about the Fall of the Leaf, which is the latter end of *September*.

Now for the State of the Moon, the fittest time is ever when the Moon is in the Wane; as touching the manner of Gelding it is in this sort, whether it be a Foal, Colt, or Horse: First, you shall cast him either upon Straw, or upon some Dunghill: Then take the stone between your foremost Finger, and your great finger, you shall with a very fine Incision Knife slit the Cord, so that you may press the stone forth, and no more: Then with a pair of small Nippers, made either of Steel, Box-Wood, or Brazil, being very smooth, and clap the strings of the stone between them, very near unto the setting on of the stone, and press them so hard, that there be no flux of Blood: Then with a thin drawing Cauterizing Iron made red hot, sear away the stone; then take a hard Plaister made of  
Rosin,

Rosin, Wax, and washt Turpentine well molten together, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the strings: Then sear the strings, and then melt more of the Salve, till such times as you have laid a good thickness of the Salve upon the strings: Then loose the Nippers, and as you did so with that stone, so do with the other also: Then fill the two slits of the Cod with white Salt, and anoint all the outsidés of the Cod, and all over the Horse's belly and thighs with Hog's grease clean rendered, and so let him rise: And keep him either in some very warm Stable, or otherwise in some very warm Pasture, where he may walk up and down; for there is nothing better for a Horse in this case, than moderate Exercise.

Now, if after the gelding you do percieve that his Cod and sheath doth swell in any extraordinary Fashion, then you shall chase him up and down, and make him trot an hour in a Day, and it will soon recover him, and make him sound without any impediment.

CHAP. CLXXX. *Of the making of Curtails, or cutting off the Tails of Horses.*

**T**HE Curtailing of Horses is used in no Nation whatsoever, so much as in this Kingdom of ours, by reason of much Carriage, and heavy Burthens which our Horses continually are exercised and employed withal, and the rather, since we are strongly Opinioned, that the taking away of those joints doth make the Horse's Chin or Back a great deal stronger, and more able to support a Burthen, as in truth it doth, and we daily find it by continual Experience.

Now for the manner of Curtailing of Horses, it is in this sort: First you shall with your Finger and your Thumb grope till you find the third joint from the setting on of the Horse's Tail, and having found it, raise up all the Hair and turn it backward: Then taking a very small strong Cord, wrap it about that joint, and pull it both with your own strength and another Man's, so strait as you can possible pull it: Then wrap it about again, and draw it as strait or straiter again; and thus do three or four times about the Tail, with all the possible straitness that may be; and then make fast the ends of the Cord: Then take a piece of Wood, whose end is smooth and even, of just height with the frunt of the Horse's Tail, and setting it between the Horse's hinder Legs, after you have tramelled all his four Legs, in such sort that he can no ways stir, then lay his Tail thereupon, and taking a main strong sharp Knife made for the purpose, set the edge thereof so near as you can guess it, between the fourth and fifth joint, and then with a great Smith's Hammer, striking upon the back of the Knife, cut the Tail asunder: Then if you see any blood to issue forth; you shall know that the Cord is not strait enough, and there-  

P p

fore



fore you must draw it straiter, but if no blood follow, then it is well bound: This done, you shall take a red hot burning Iron, made round after this fashion, of the full compass of the Flesh of the Horse's Tail, that the Bone of the Tail may go thro' the hole, and with it you shall sear the Flesh till you have mortified it; and in the searing you shall plainly see the ends of the Veins start out like pap heads; but you shall still continue searing them, until you see all to be most smooth, plain, and hard, so that the blood cannot break thro' the burning: Then may you boldly unloose the Cord, and after two or three Days, that you perceive the Sore begin to rot, you shall not miss to anoint it with fresh Butter, or else with Hogs-grease and Turpentine, until it be whole.

CHAP. CLXXXI. *To make a white Star in any part of a Horse.*

**I**F you will at any time make a white Star, either in your Horse's forehead, or in any other part of his Body, you shall according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers, Take a Tile stone, and after you have burned it, beat it into fine Powder:  Then take Lilly Roots, Daffie Roots, White brier Roots, of each a like quantity, and having dried them, beat them also into fine Powder, and mix them with the first: Then with a Razor shave that part of your Horse where you would have your Star; and then with this Powder rub it so vehemently, that you scarce leave any skin on; then take a good quantity of Honey-suckle Flowers, and a like quantity of Honey, and the Water wherein a Mole hath been sodden, and then distil them into a Water, and with that Water wash the Sore place for the space of three Days together, and keep the Wind from it, and you shall presently see the white Hairs to grow; for this Receipt hath been often very well approved.

There be other Farriers, which take a Crab, and roast it, and being fiery hot, bind it to that part which you would have white, and it will scald away the old Hair, and the next Hair that groweth will be white. Other Farriers use, after they have shaved the place to take the juice of sharp Onions, or Leeks, and to bathe the place very much therewith: Then take Barley-Bread, as fire hot as it cometh from the Oven, and clap it to the shaved place, suffering it to lie so till it be cold; and then after anoint it with Honey, and the white Hair will come. Other Farriers use to anoint the shaven place with the Grease of a Moldy-warp sodden, and that will bring the white Hairs. Other Farriers use after they have shaved it, to rub the place well with Salt, and then twice every Day for a fortnight, to wash it with the broth wherein a Moldy-warp and some Swine's grease hath been sodden.

Other

Other Farriers use to boil a Moldy-warp in Salt-Water for three Days together, or else with strong Lee, and ever as one Liquor consumeth, to supply it with another; then with this Decoction being warm, anoint the shaved place, and it will bring white Hairs suddenly.

Other Farriers take the Gall of a Goat, and rub the shaved place therewith, and it will bring white Hairs also.

Other Farriers take Sheep's Milk, and boil it, and in that wet a Linnen Cloth, and being very hot, lay it to, renewing it until you may rub off the Hair with your Finger; this done, apply the Milk to it twice a Day luke-warm, till the Hair do come again, which without all question will be white.

Other Farriers take the Roots of wild Cucumbers, and twice as much Nitrum mingled with Oil and Honey; or else add to your Cucumbers Sal Nitrum beaten, and Honey, and anoint the shaven place therewith, and it will bring white Hairs.

Other Farriers use to take a piece of a Brick-bat, and with it gently to rub and chafe the Place, till by the continuance thereof, you have rubbed away both the Hair and the Skin, so broad as you would have the Star, and then after to anoint it with Honey, until the Hair come again: Or else to roast a Colewart-stalk like a warden, or an Egg, until it be stone hard; and then as they come hot out of the fire, to clap either of them to the Horse's forehead, and it will scald off the Hair, then to anoint it with Honey till the Hair come again.

Now to conclude, and to shew you the most perfect and absolute Experiment, which I have ever found to be most infallible, and it is thus: You shall take a very fine, sharp, long Bodkin, made for the same purpose, and thrust it up betwixt the Skin and the Bone upwards, so long as you would have the Star; and in thrusting it up, you shall hollow the Skin from the Bone, the bigness that you would have the Star; this done, you shall take a piece of Lead, made in the true shape of your Bodkin, and drawing out the Bodkin, thrust in the Lead into the same holes; then you shall thrust the Bodkin cross-wise the forehead underneath the Lead; and then thrusting in such another piece of Lead, you shall see it in the Horse's Face to present this Figure; which being done, you shall take a very strong packthred, and putting it underneath all the four ends of the Leads, and drawing it with all straitness, you shall gather all the hollow skin together on a purse, folding the packthred oft and oft about, and still straiter and straiter, so that you shall see it then to present unto you this Figure: This done, you shall let it rest at least the space of eight and forty Hours, in which time the Skin will be, as it were, mortified: Then may you unloose the packthred, and draw forth the leaden pins, and with your hand close the hollow Skin to the Forehead hard again: And shortly





after you shall see the Hair to fall away, and the next Hair which cometh to be white; and this Experiment is most infallible.

Now there be some other Farriers, which will not put in pins, nor use any packthred, but only will slit the forehead, and open the Skin on both sides, and then put in either a Horn or a plate of Lead as big as the Star, and so let it remain till the Skin rot: Then take out the Horn or Lead and anoint the place with Honey, and the Water of Mallows sod, and it will bring white Hair; And surely this Experiment also is most Infallible; but it maketh a foul Sore, and is somewhat long in bringing this Virtue to effect.



Again, I have seen a white Star also made by taken the guts of a Hen, or Puller, and clapping them hot as they come out of the Belly to the Horse's Face, having in readines some hollow round thing made for the same purpose, to keep the Guts together upon the Horse's Face.

CHAP. CLXXXII. *How to make a black Star, or white Hair black.*

**I**F at any time you should have a desire to make upon a white Horse a black Star, you shall take a scruple of Ink, and four scruples of the Wood of Oliander beaten to Powder, incorporate this in as much Sheeps Suet as will well suffice, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will, no doubt, make any white Hair black.

Other old Farriers take the Decoction of Fern Roots, and Sage sod in Lee, and wash the place therewith, and it will breed black Hair: But you must wash the place very oft therewith.

Other Farriers use to take the rust of Iron, Galls and Vitriol, and stamp them with Oil: Or else take Souter's Ink, Gall, and Rust, and heat them well together, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will turn any white Hair to black.

CHAP. CLXXXIII. *To make a red Star in a Horse's Face.*

**I**F you desire to make in your Horse's Face, or any other part, a red Star, you shall take of Aqua fortis one ounce, of Aqua vitæ a pennyworth, of

of Silver to the value of eighteen pence: Put them into a Glass, and heat them well therein, and then anoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the Hair to be of a perfect red colour, only it will endure no longer than till the casting off the Hair: And therefore, at every such time you must renew the Hair again, if you would have the Star to continue.

CHAP. CLXXXIV. *How to make Hair come very soon, very thick, and very long.*

**I**F you would have Hair to come very soon in any bare place, or to grow thick where it is thin, or longer where it is short, you shall take (according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers) the Urine of a young Boy, and with it at first wash the place: After that take Lee made of the unslack'd Lime, Ceruse, and Litharge, and with it wash the Hair oft, and it will make it come soon, long, and thick.

Other Farriers use to wash the place with Water, wherein the Roots of Althæa have been sod; then after dry it gently with your hand and it will increase Hair much. Other Farriers use to wash the place with Oil mingled with the Ashes of Nut-shells burnt, or else Snail-shells burnt, and it will increase Hair also. Other Farriers take Agrimony pounded with Goat's Milk, and with it anoint the place, or else Oil wherein a Moldy-warp hath been boiled, and anoint the place with either of them, and it will increase Hair very much. Other Farriers take the Dung of Goats, Alom, Honey, and the blood of a Swine: Mingle them all together, and stir them till they be ready to boil, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other ancient Farriers take Nettle-seed bruised with Honey, Water and Salt, and then rub the place therewith. Other Farriers take the root of a white Lilly, beating and sod in Oil, and anoint the place therewith. Others take the juice of a long Onion, or else the juice of Radishes, and anoint the place therewith. Others take Tar, Oil Olive, and Honey boiled together, and with it anoint the bare place. Others take the Soot of a Cauldron mixed with Honey and Oil, and anoint the place therewith.

There be other ancient Farriers which use this, and it is the best of all: They take green Wall-nut-shells, and burn them to Powder, and then mix it with Honey, Oil and Wine, and anoint the place therewith, and it will increase Hair wonderfully, and very soon.

CHAP. CLXXXV. *To make Hair smooth, slick, and soft.*

**I**F you will make your Horse's Coat to be smooth, slick, soft, and shining, you shall, with sufficient store of Cloth, keep him warm at the Heart, for the least inward cold will make the Hair stare: Then you shall make him sweat often, for that will raise up the dust and filth, which makes



makes his Coat foul and hard; then you shall, when the Horse is in his greatest sweat, with an old Sword-blade, turning the edge towards his Hair, scrape, or as it were curry away all the white foam, sweat, and filth, which shall be raised up, and that will lay his Coat even and make it smooth: And lastly, you shall when you let him Blood, rub him all over with his own Blood, and so let it remain two or three Days, and then curry and dress him well, and this will make his Coat shine like glass.

CHAP. CLXXXVI. *How to take off Hair in any part of a Horse.*

**I**F you will at any time take off the Hair from any part of a Horse you shall dissolve in Water (according to the Opinion of the most ancient Farriers) eight ounces of unslack'd Lime, and then boil it till a quarter be consumed, then add to it an Ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a Plaister thereof to any part of the Horse, and it will in few hours bring all the Hair away.

There be other ancient Farriers which boil in running Water, Rust and Orpiment, and with it, being very hot, wash the place, and it will soon bring the Hair away.

CHAP. CLXXXVII. *How to cast and overthrow a Horse.*

**V**Hensoever you intend to cast or overthrow your Horse, after you have brought him into a convenient place, as namely, either upon some green swarth, or upon some Dunghill, or in some Barn upon good store of soft straw, you shall take and double a long rope, and cast a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his Neck, and the double rope betwixt his fore-Legs, and about his hinder Pasterns, underneath his Fetlock, then put the ends of the Rope under the bought of his Neck, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him, then make the ends fast, and hold down his head, under which always you must be sure to have good store of straw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your Horse on the Buttock, or do any thing about his hinder Legs, that he may not strike, take up his contrary fore-Leg, and when you do brand your Horse, see that the Iron be red hot, and that the Hair be both fear'd quite away, and the flesh scorched in every place before you let him go, and so you shall be sure lose no Labour.

CHAP. CLXXXVIII. *How to know the Age of an Horse.*

**T**HE Age of every Horse is known, either by his Teeth, by his Hoofs, or by his Tail.

It is known by his Teeth: At two years old he changeth the four foremost Teeth in his Head, at three years old he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leave no more apparent foals Teeth but two of each side, above and below: At four years old he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth

leaveth no more foals Teeth but one on each side both above and below; at five years old he hath never a foals Tooth before, but then he changeth his Tushes on each side: At six years old he putteth up his Tushes, near about which you shall see apparently growing a little Circle of new and young Flesh; besides, the Tush will be white, small, short, and sharp: At seven years old, the two outmost Teeth of his neather Chap on both sides will be hollow, with a little black speck in them, and at eight years old, then all his Teeth will be full, smooth, and plain, the black speck being clean gone, and his Tushes will be somewhat yellow, without any Circles of young Flesh: At nine years old, his foremost Teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foul, and his Tushes will be blunt: And ten years old, in the inside of his upper Tushes will be no holes at all to be felt with your Fingers ends, which till that Age you shall ever most perfectly feel; besides the Temples of his Head will begin to be hollow and crooked; At eleven years of Age his Teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black, and foul, only he will cut even, and his Teeth will stand directly opposite one against another: At Twelve years old his Teeth will be long, yellow, black, and foul, but then his upper Teeth will over-reach and hang over his neather Teeth: At thirteen years his Tushes will be worn close to his Chap, if he be a much ridden horse, otherwise they will be black, foul, and long, like the fangs of a Boar.

If a Horse's Hoofs be rugged, and as it were seamed, one seam over another; if they be dry, full, and crusty, it is a sign of a very old Age; as on the contrary part, a smooth, moist, hollow, and well sounding Hoof is a sign of young years.

If you take your Horse with your Finger and your Thumb by the stern of the Tail, close at the setting on by his Buttock, and feeling there hard; if you feel betwixt your Finger and your Thumb of each side his Tail a joint stick out more than any other joint, by the bigness of a hazel Nut, then you may presume, the Horse is under ten years old; but if his joints be all plain, and no such thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and at least thirteen. If a Horse's Eyes be round, full, and starting from his Head, if the pits over his Eyes be filled, smooth, and even with his Temples, and wrinkles either about his brow or under his Eyes, then the Horse is young: If otherwise you see the contrary Characters, it is a Sign of Old Age. If you take up a Horse's Skin on any part of his Body, betwixt your Finger and your Thumb, and pluck it from the flesh, then letting it go again, if it suddenly return to the place from whence it came, and be smooth and plain without wrinkle, then the Horse is young, and full of strength; but if being pulled up, it stand and not return to his former place, then be assured he is very old, and exceeding wasted.

Lastly, If a Horse that is of any dark colour, shall grow grisel only about the Eye-brows, or underneath his Mane, it is then an infallible Sign of most extreme old age: And thus much touching a Horse's age.

CHAP..



CHAP. CLXXXIX. *How to make an old Horse seem young.*

**T**ake a small crooked Iron, no bigger than a Wheat-Corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two utmost Teeth of each side the neather Chap before, next to the Tusshes, and then with an Awl blade prick it, and make the Shell fine and thin; then with a sharp Scraping-Iron, make all his Teeth white and clean: This done, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollows of the Horse's Eyes which are shrunk down, make a little hole only but thro' the Skin, and then raising it up, put in a Quill that is very small, as the Quill of a Raven, or such like: And then blow the Skin full of Wind, till all the hollownes be filled up, and then take out the Quill, and lay your Finger a little while on the hole, and the Wind will stay in, and the Horse's Countenance will be as if he were but six years old at the most.

CHAP. CXC. *How to make a Horse that he shall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.*

**I**F either when you are in Service in the Wars, and would not be discovered, or when upon any other occasion, you would not have your Horses to neigh, or make a noise, you shall take a list of woollen Cloth, and tie it fast in many folds about the midst of your Horse's Tongue; and believe it, so long as the Tongue is so tied, so long the Horse can by no means neigh, or make any extraordinary noise with his voice, as has been often tried and approved of.

Chap. CXCI. *How to make a Horse exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur.*

**I**F your Horse be either dull of the Spur thro' his natural inclination or thro' tiring, or any other Accident, you shall first shave him the breadth of a Saucer on both sides, just in the Spurring-place, on both sides the Vein, then with a Lancet make six Issues or small Orifices on both sides; then raising the Skin from the Flesh, you shall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt Salt, which will make the Sore to rankle.

In this sort you shall keep it three Days, and by no means ride the Horse, the third Day being ended, you shall set a Child on his Back with Spurs, and make him spur the Horse in the Sore place, which done, you shall wash the place with Piss, Salt, and Nettles sodden well together, and it will make his Sides smart so extremely, that he will never abide the Spur after.

Now you shall let him stand after his washing three Days more and then take half a pint of Honey, and with it anoint his Sides once a Day till they be whole. Also rub his Sides with the Powder of Glass, and it will do the like.

CHAP. CXCI. *How to make a Horse that tires, or is restiff, to go forward.*

**I**F your Horse, (as it is the common nature of Jades) through the naughtiness of his Nature, or dulness of Spirit, be either so restiff or so tired, that he will not go forward a foot, but standeth stock still, you shall then make a running Suickle of a good small Cord, and put it about his Cods and Stones, in such sort that it may not slip: Then you shall draw the rest of the Cord between the Girths and the Horse's Body, and bringing it up just between the Horse's fore-Legs, besure to hold the end of the Cord in your Hand as you sit in the Saddle, then ride the Horse forward, and when he beginneth to grow restiff or to stand still, then pluck the Cord and cramp him by the Stones, and you shall see that immediately he will go forward. And in this manner you shall use him for at least a Fortnight together, and it will clean take away that evil Quality.

CHAP. CXCI. *Other most excellent and approved ways to preserve a Horse from tiring, never disclosed till now.*

**I**F your Horse, either through violence of Labour, dittemperature of Body; or naughtiness of Nature, happen to tire under you, or Travel not with that Spirit you desire, then when you come to a baiting-place alight, and set up your Horse warm, but do not walk him: Then after he hath been well rubb'd, take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto half an Ounce of the fine sc'd Powder of Elicampane, and brew them together, then give it the Horse with an Horn; which done, tie his Head to the Rack, for you need not care for Provender till Night, at which time provender him well, and in the Morning give him Oats or Bread, or both, in plentiful manner, and being ready to take his Back, give him the former quantity of Ale and Elicampane as aforesaid; and doubtless you shall find him to Travel with great Courage and Spirit, as hath been approved. Also, if you take a bunch of Penny-royal, and tie it to the Mouth of your Bit or Snaffle, you shall find it very comfortable, and it will cause your Horse to travel lustily.

✠ Again, If you take of your best Tobacco, and dry it in the Sun in a Glass close stopr, then pound it very small and mix it with an equal quantity of Cockle-shells, then with the Oil of Dill and the Oil of Cloves make the Powder into a PASTE, then make pretty round Balls thereof as big as Wall-nuts, and dry them in the Shadow in the Dog-days, then keep them close in a Gally-pot, and give them as Pills in the time of Necessity; that is to say, a Ball at a time, whensoever your Horse shall fail in Travel: And this doth not only help tiring, but also takes away any Cold whatsoever.



☞ Lastly, If your Horse notwithstanding for all this, do happen at any time to tire, then presently take off his Saddle, and with the Herb Arismart rub his Back all over very hard, then laying Arismart under the Saddle, so ride him gently at first, and if there be any Life in him, it will make him go, as it hath been made proof of.

CHAP. CXCIV. *How to make a Horse to follow his Master, and find him out, and challenge him amongst never so many People.*

**I**F you will have your Horse to have such a violent Love towards you, that he shall not only follow you up and down, but also labour to find you out, and own you as soon as he hath found you: You shall then take a pound of Oat-meal, and put thereto a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and half a pound of Lunarce, and then make a Cake thereof, and put it in your Bosom next unto your naked Skin: Then run or labour your self up and down until you sweat, then rub all your Sweat upon your Cake; this done keep your Horse fasting a Day and a Night, and then give him the Cake to eat, which as soon as he hath eaten, you shall turn him loose, and he will not only most eagerly follow you, but also hunt and seek you out when he hath lost or doth miss you; and though you be environed with never so many, yet he will find you out, and know you, and you shall not fail, that every time he cometh unto you, you shall spit in his Mouth, and anoint his Tongue with your Spittle: And thus doing, he will never forsake you.

CHAP. CXCV. *The Nature and special Qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Work, set down in the manner of Alphabet.*

**A** *Brotanum*, which we call in English Southern-wood, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and openeth the Pipes of the Body, and is good for short Wind.

*Abfentibium*, which we call Worm-wood, is hot in the first Degree, and dry in the second; it cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for the Stomach.

*Aceto*, which we call Vinegar, especially if it be of Wine, is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the first and dry in the third Degree.

*Agaricum*, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it expelleth Humour, purgeth all Flegm and Choler, and is good for the Liver and Kidneys.

*Allium*, which we call Garlick, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree; it draweth, openeth and expelleth all evil Humours.

*Agreum*, which we call Cresses, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree; it burneth, draweth, and dissolveth, and is exceeding good for Scurf, or wild Scabs, or for the Lungs.

*Agripa,*

*Agripa*, is a known Unguent that is good against all Tumours.

*Alum*, called commonly Roch-Allum, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and is good for Cankers.

*Alder*, or Elder-Tree, is hot and dry, it purgeth Choler and Flegm, and healeth Wounds.

*Aloes*, is hot in the first, and dry in the third Degree: It cleanseth and dissolveth, and also comforteth the vital parts.

*Alibæa*, which we call white Mallows, is hot and dry: It loosneth and scattereth Humours, warmeth and moistneth very much.

*Almonds*, are hot and moist in the first Degree, provoke Urine, and are very good for the Lungs or Liver.

*Ambrosia*, which we call Wood-sage, represseth, driveth back, and bindeth Humours.

*Ammoniacum* is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: It softneth and dissolveth Humours.

*Anetum*, which we call Dill, hot in the third and dry in the second Degree: It ripeneth crude Humours and expelleth Heat.

*Anniseeds* are hot and dry in the third Degree: Expel cold, dissolve Humours, and provoke Urine.

*Antimonium*, or *Stribum*, is cold and dry; it bindeth, mundifieth, and purgeth.

*Apio*, which we call Smalage or Parsly, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it ripeneth, cleanseth, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

*Aristolochia*, which we call Birthwart, or Heartwort, is hot, and cleanseth: But if it be *Rotunda*, then it is so much stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth Degree: It draweth and purgeth thin Water and Flegm, and is good to open the Lungs; it is good against all manner of Poison whatsoever, or biting of any venomous Beasts.

*Armoniack*, both drieth, cooleth, softneth and draweth.

*Artemisia*, which we call Great Tansie, or Mug-wort, is hot in the second, and dry in the third Degree: It is very good for Worms, and swellings in the Sinews.

*Arnick* of both kinds, is hot in the third, and dry in the first Degree: It bindeth, eateth, and fretteth being a very strong Corrosive.

*Assafetida*, is a Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the first Degree: It cleanseth evil Humours.

*Asphaltum* is a Pitch that is mix'd with *Bitumen*: It is hot and dry, and comforteth any Swelling.

*Assonco* is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth and drieth, and is good for to comfort the Stomach.

*Assugia*, which we call the soft or fresh Grease, is hot and moist in the first Degree: It mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any Wound, Imposthume, or Ulcer.



*Avena*, which we call commonly Oats, are naturally dry: They do dry, bind, cleanse, and comfort all the inward Parts, and are the only principal Simples which do naturally agree with the composition of a Horses Body; and therefore the Oil, or the Quintessence of them is the only absolute and perfect Medicine that can be administred for any inward Sicknes, as Experience will approve and make perfect.

*Avelane*, which we call the Ashes of Nut-shells burnt, are hot and dry, and do skin or stop the flux of Matter.

**B***ay-berries* are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of Rheums, or shortness of Wind, especially for any Disease in the Lungs: They are good against Poisons, Consumptions, short Breath, Flegm, hardness of hearing, help tiring, Cramps, Scurvy, the Stone, stoppings of the Liver, cure the Yellows and Dropie.

*Balsamum* is hot and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth, draweth, and comforteth.

*Bdellium* is a Gum that is hot and dry: It softneth, and draweth away moisture, and is excellent against all hard swellings whatsoever.

*Bertonium*, or *Bettonicum*, which we call Dog-stone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the first Degree: It purgeth and cleanseth all evil Humours.

*Piacca* is cold and dry in the second Degree: It closeth things opened, it softens, hardens, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all Excretions.

*Bittole*, which we call Beets, is cold and moist, and cleanseth Ulcers.

*Bitumen* is a kind of Brimstone, or fatness from the Sea, it is hot and dry in the second Degree, and comfortable against any swelling.

*Bottiro* is hot in the first, and moist in the second Degree, and it ripeneth Imposthumes.

*Bole-Armonia* is a certain Earth which is cold and dry, which bindeth and driveth back evil Humours, and is also an excellent defensive against fluxes of Blood.

*Branc-Ursin* is a wonderful great softner and mollifier.

*Brassica*, which we call Coleworts, is very dry, it doth conglutinate Wounds, it healeth Ulcers and Tumours, it holdeth the Secd, and killeth evil Humours.

*Brotano*, which is the same that *Abrotanum* is; look there.

*Brusco*, which we call Butchers Broom, or Knee-holm, is hot in the second Degree, and dry in the first: It provokes Urine.

*Briony*, of these are two kinds, the White and Black; but the White is more effectual: The Root of it is hot and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good for all old Diseases; it also drieth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardness.

## C

**C**<sup>alafonia</sup>*alafonia*, or *Colofonia*, doth incarnate Ulcers, and doth conglutinate things which are separated.

*Calaminto*, which we call wild Penny-royal, or wild Mint, of which, that which grows on the Mountains is the best, is hot and dry in the third Degree, doth resolve Tumours, and draweth away Humours.

*Cancina viva*, which we call unslack'd Lime, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree, it adjusteth, drieth and corrodeeth.

*Camomila*, which we call Camomile, is hot and dry in the first Degree: It mollifieth and dissolveth all Grievs, and is good especially for the Liver.

*Camedros*, which we call Germander, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and is good against all moist Colds.

*Camfora* is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third Degree; it preserveth the Body from Putrefaction, and bindeth Humours.

*Canabis*, which we call Hemp, is hot, the Seed whereof driveth away extraordinary Colds; it ripeneth and dissolveth Humours, and mollifieth and drieth Inflammations.

*Cinamon* is hot and dry in the third Degree, and is comfortable in all inward Sickneses.

*Canna*, which we call Reeds, especially the Hedge-Reed, draweth out Pricks, if you lay the Roots to the Knobs.

*Cantharides* are certain Flies, which are hot and dry in the third Degree; they will raise Blisters in the sound Parts.

*Capilli Veneris*, which we call Maiden's-hair, is dry, and bindeth loose Humours.

*Cardimonium* is hot; it extenuateth Humours, and being mix'd with Vinegar, killeth Scabs.

*Cloves* are hot and dry in the third Degree, and are very comfortable to the inward Parts.

*Carrowaies* are hot and dry in the third Degree, it helpeth Wind and cleanseth evil Humours.

*Cassia* is hot and moist in the first Degree; it expelleth Wind, dissolveth Humours, and purgeth the Stomach of Choler and Flegm.

*Castoreum* is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

*Cabbage* is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it cleanseth and ripeneth Humours.

*Cinere*, which we call Ashes, are hot and dry in the fourth Degree, and cleanse mightily.

*Centuria*, which we call wild running *Butony*, smelling like *Marjoram*, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it bindeth Wounds, and conglutinateth, and is good for diseased Livers, for the Worms, Sores and Wounds, and is commonly called Centaury;

*Cepe*,



*Cepe*, which we call *Onions*, is hot in the fourth Degree: It doth cleanse Corruptions and ripen Swellings.

*Cervil* is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

*Cerusa* is a white Ointment made of Oil and white Lead; it is cold and dry in the second degree; and for the Effects, it hath all those which *Bracca* hath.

*Cerecallo*. See *Cerecocollo*.

*Chelidonium*, which we call *Scladine*, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it cleanseth all putrefactive Humours, and is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially *Yellows* or *Jaundice*.

*Cicuta*, which we call *Hemlock*, is cold in the fourth Degree, it numbeth and astonieth.

*Cicoria*, which we call *Succory*, is cold and dry in the first degree, and bindeth much.

*Comin* is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the second; It mollifieth and ripeneth.

*Cipallo*, which is *Leeks*, or as we call them, *Chives*. See *Cepe*.

*Cinobar*, or *Sanguis Draconis*, or as we call it *Vermillion*, is a certain Metal drawn from Quick-Sulphur and Quicksilver; it drieth, healeth, incarnateh, bindeth and comforteth *Ulcers*.

*Cisto* or *Cisto*, is dry in the second Degree, and bindeth much.

*Citrons*, or *Citrons*, are cold and moist in the second Degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

*Colloquintida* is hot and dry in the third Degree, and mundifieth only.

*Colofonia*, which we commonly call *Earth-pitch*, or *Greek-pitch*, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it conglutineth and gathereth together. See *Pece Grace*.

*Cocuineri*. See *Cucumber*.

*Consolida*, which we call *Comphry*, is cold: It conglutineth and bindeth, and is good against *Ruptures*.

*Costro*, or *Cosso*, being bitter, is hot, and healeth *Ulcers*.

*Costus*, is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the second Degree; and it raiseth up *Worms*, and is that which we call *Herb Mary*, or the root of *Angelico*.

*Corne di cervo*, which we call *Harts-horn*, is dry, yet it strengthneth very much, and expelleth *Poison*.

*Crocum*, which we call *Saffron*, is hot in the second, and dry in the first Degree: It bindeth, comforteth, and resolveth *Imposthumes*.

*Cucumeri Silvaggi*, is hot and dry in the third Degree: It dissolveth, softneth and purgeth *Flegm*.

*Cucumeri elaterium*, is cold and moist in the second Degree: It cleanseth much, and is made of the juice of wild Cucumbers.

*Dates*

## D

**D** *Acer* are hot and moist in the second Degree: They do resolve and disperse things knit together.

*Diacatholican* purgeth all offensive Humours which offend the Body whatsoever.

*Diaphanicon* or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth Wind exceedingly, and comforteth all Griets of the Belly which are begot by crude Humours, springing from Cholicks or such-like Pains.

*Dialtea* or *Dialthea*, is an Ointment made of Holy-Hox, or Sea Mallow: It warmeth and moistneth.

*Dragon-wort* is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

## E

**E** *Buli*, which we call Elder, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it drieth, and driveth out Water, and expelleth Choler and thin Flegm. See *Sambucus*.

*Eldera terrestris*, which we call Ground Ivy. See *Hedera*.

*Elaterium*. See *Cucumeri*.

*Elleboro*, which we call neezing Powder; of it are two kinds, the white and black: It is hot and dry in the third Degree.

*Eruca*, which we call Rocket, and of which the Wild is the best; the Seeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth Urine, Worms and Water.

*Elusa*, which is an Herb like Spurge; it is hot in the fourth Degree, and drieth and cleanseth exceedingly, and of some called Woolf's Milk.

*Euforbium* is a Gum that is hot in the fourth Degree; it drieth, purgeth, cleanseth, and exulcerate much.

*Excrusion* is that which we call *Oxieration*, is a certain composition or mixture made of *Aceto* and Water, and is good to allay Swellings and Tumours.

## F

**F** *Aba*, which we call a Bean, is cold and dry, and it cleanseth, and dissolveth very much.

*Farina*, which we call Bran, is hot and dry in the first Degree, and dissolveth very much.

*Fern* is dry and binding, but the Root is hot and cleansing, and killeth Worms.

*Felle*, which we call Gall, is hot and dry, and it cleanseth and mundifieth.

*Ferrugo*, which we call the rust of Iron, is hot and dry in the second Degree: It comforteth, and restraineth evil Humours.

*Fici aridi*, which we call dry Figs, are hot and dry in the second Degree; they ripen Tumours, soften and consume hardness, and are good for Purpiveness, Coughs, and Diseases of the Lungs.

*Filamentano*, which we call a Dodder, being a thing that cleaveth to Herbs, winding about them like Threads; it openeth the Liver and Milt, and purgeth all Flegm and Choler.

*Filario*.



*Filonio* is a composition which will astonish or benumb any part or Member.  
*Fennel* is hot in the third, and dry in the first Degree. It doth dissolve all manner of gross Humours, and is good for the Liver or Lungs.  
*Fuligo*, which we call Soot, is hot and dry, and it drieth marvellously, and so doth all Soots whatsoever.

## G

**G** *Alanga*, which we call Galangal, is hot and dry in the third Degree: It easeth the Stomach of all Grievs, which proceed from cold Causes: It strengthneth the Brain, and comforteth the Senses.

*Galbanum* is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the second: It softneth, stoppeth, and draweth away evil Humours, and is good against a Cold.

*Galla*, which we call Galls, or a light fruit of Oaks, are hot and pleasing.

*Garrifilata*, which we call Herb Bennit, is hot and dry in the second Degree.

*Garofoli*, which we call Cloves, are hot and dry in the third Degree, and are very comfortable for inward Sickness.

*Ginger* is hot, and is excellent to preserve heat in the inward parts.

*Genistra*, or *Ginistra*, which we call Broom, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it killeth Worms, and scoureth much.

*Gentian*, especially the Root, is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree; it doth extenuate, purge, and cleanse all evil Humours, and is good for the Liver and Stomach, and for Wounds and Sores.

*Gillio*, which we call Lilies, softneth Sinews, and are good for Wounds and Sores.

*Gramon*, which is any manner of Grain and Pulse, is cold and dry, except Wheat, and that is temperately hot and moist; they do incarnate and mundifie.

*Grasso*, which is any manner of Fat, is hot and moist, and doth ripen and soften.

## H

**H** *Arundinis cortex*, which we call Cane-reed, is hot and dry in the third Degree.

*Hedera*, which we call Ivy, is a great Drawer and Opener.

*Helxine*, which we call Pellitory of the Wall, cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for any old Cough, or for any Inflammations.

*Hysoppo*, which we call Hyssop, there is both wild and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the best: It is hot and dry in the third Degree; cleanseth and warmeth; it is good for Inflammations of the Lungs, old Coughs, Poes, Rheums, and short Wind.

*Hordeum*, which we call Barly, is cold and dry in the first Degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

*Inense*,

**I** *Ncesse*, which we call *Frankincense*, it drieth and incarnateth; see *Olibanum*.

*Ipericon*, which we call *Saint John's wort*, expelleth moisture, and healeth burnings.

*Iris Florentia*, which we call *Flower-de-luce*, especially the Root: It warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the Cough, and is hot and dry in the third Degree.

*Iride Illirica*. See *Helpe*. *Iris* is a Root that is hot and dry; it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against Colds, and purgeth Ulcers.

*Iaspiana*, which we call *Henbane*, is cold in the fourth Degree: It asthisheth and benumbeth.

*Juniper* is hot and dry in the third Degree: The Berries are good for the Stomach, Lungs, liver, and Kidneys; it cureth all Coughs, Gripings, and Windiness of the Belly, and provoketh Urine; is good against all Venom, the infection of the Plague, and kills Worms.

**L** *Igustum*, which we call *Lovage*, is hot and dry in the third Degree: It expelleth Wind, especially the Seed and Root.

*Eupathum*, which we call a *Dock*, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

*Lauri*, Which we call *Laurel*, or *Bays*, are hot and dry, and they cleanse and Mundifie.

*Lentisco* is a Gum that is like *Mastick*; it is dry in the second Degree, and moderately bindeth; it is bitter in taste, and evergreen.

*Linosa*, which we call *Flax* or *Lime*; the Seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth Tumours.

*Lee* is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: It is very adustive, cleansing and piercing.

*Litbargyrio*, of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of Gold, the other of Silver: It is very dry, it bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and closeth up; of these two, that which is like Gold is the best.

*Lolium*, which we call *Cockle*, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and dissolveth much.

*Lumachs*, which we call *House-snails* without Shells, do conglutinate very much.

**M** *Alva* is cold and moist, it stoppeth, softneth, and mitigateth Pain.

*Malva viscosa* is very dry; it softneth, looseth, and mitigateth,

*Mace* is dry in the third Degree, without heat, and only bindeth.

*Mama* is of equal Temper, hot and dry; it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.



*Mariatm* or *Martian*, is a hot unguent against all cold Humours; it helpeth the grief of Sinews, and purgeth old watery Matters, and ripeneth Tumours.

*Marrubeo*, which we call Hore-hound, of which there be two kinds, the white and the black; but the white is the better: It is hot in the second, and dry in the third Degree; it helpeth obstructions in the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good against Cold and for Sores.

*Mastick* is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: it draweth and drieth, bindeth and softneth, and is good against Colds.

*Medulla*, which we call Marrow, of which there be three, is cold and moist, and mollifieth Ulcers; now the best Marrow is that of a Hart, or Cold Stag, the next of a Calf, the next that of a Sheep, and the last that of a Goat.

*Mel*, which we commonly call Honey, is hot and dry in the second Degree; it cleanseth the Stomach and the Entrails, stoppeth Humours and incarnateth Wounds.

*Melissa*, which we call Balm, is hot in the second, and dry in the first Degree: It cleanseth and conglutinateth.

*Mentha*, which we call Mint, is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree, of which the wild Mint is the best: It killeth Worms, bindeth, it dissolveth, and is good for the Stomach, or a cold Liver.

*Minio*, which we call red Lead, is cold and dry, and good against Swellings.

*Myrrhe* or *Myrrba*, is a sovereign Gum; it is hot and dry in the second Degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth and cleanseth Wounds, is good against all Colds, killeth Worms, and helpeth the purgick: for though it doth cleanse much, yet it doth exasperate the Arteries; also it doth incarnate.

*Morcosita* or *Marcasita*, is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth Humours.

*Mertilia* is the fruit of the Myrtle-Tree, it is dry in the third Degree; it doth bind good, and loosen evil Humours.

*Morai*, which we call the Mulberry, the unripe is cold and dry in the second Degree: The Barks, but chiefly the Root, is hot and dry in the third Degree, it doth cleanse, purge, and bind; the Root thereof killeth Worms, and the Gum thereof doth loosen, and the Juice of the Berry doth heal Cankers, or sore Mouths.

N.

*Narcissi Radix*, which we call the Root of a white Daffodil, or else Primrose petticoat, is dry, it cleanseth and draweth, and healeth Wounds.

*Nardi Radix*, which we call Sweet-will, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it bindeth, and *Spica Nardi* provoke Urine.

*Nesurtium* is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: It burneth, it draweth and melteth, and killeth Worms. See *Agrecum*, which we call Cress.

*Nigella*,

*Nigella*, which we call Gir, is hot and dry in the third Degree: It stayeth Wind, killeth Worms, and looseth; yet to give too great a quantity is dangerous.

*Nitrum* is of the same Nature that Salt-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O

*Libanum* is a Gum; it is hot and dry in the second Degree: It warmeth, bindeth, closeth Wounds, and incarnateth.

*Oil of Olives* is of a very temperate Nature, and changeth its Qualities according to the Nature of the Simples which are mix'd with it.

*Opium* is cold and dry in the fourth Degree, and is a Liquor made with Poppy dried and mix'd with Saffron, it doth astonish and provoke Sleep.

*Opoponax* is a Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree; it softneth and stayeth Humours: It is good against all Colds. See *Papaver*, *Galbanum*, *Bdellium* or *Sagapenum*.

*Oripimento* is a kind of Metal, of which the Artificial is called Arsenick; it is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the second; it bindeth, corrodeeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a Corrosive.

*Origano*, which we call wild Marjoram or Penny-royal, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it taketh away stoppings, and is good for Coughs.

*Orebus*, which we call Fitches, are hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: They do open and cleanse.

*Orizo*, which we call Barly, is cold and dry in the first Degree: It ripeneth and cleanseth.

*Urtica*, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry: They are biting, and wholefome for the Lungs, or for Sores.

*Ovum*, which we call Eggs, the White is cold, and the Yolk is hot, and doth incarnate.

P

*Anacea* is that Herb whose Fruit we call *Oppoponax*.

*Panico* is a Grain which we call Panick; it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

*Papaver*, which we call Poppy, the Seeds thereof are white, and hot in the fourth Degree. See *Opium*.

*Pastinache*, which we call Parsnips, are hot, and do provoke Urine.

*Pecce*, which we commonly call Pitch, is hot and dry in the second Degree, draweth, drieth and ripeneth.

*Pecce liquida*, which we call Tar, is hot and dry in the second Degree, is good against Colds, or evil Humours gathered together in the Breast, and draweth Wounds.

*Pecce Resina*, which we call Rosin, or pitch of Greece, it draweth, healeth, and incarnateth.



*Pece Refina & liquida*, which we call Turpentine, it doth draw, skin, incarnate, and conglutinate things together.

*Pepper* is hot and dry in the fourth Degree; it is both attractive and mundificative, and good for all Diseases of the Breast or Lungs.

*Peaches* are cold and moist in the second Degree: They bind and stir up Worms.

*Petastres*, which we call Butter-bar, is dry in the third Degree.

*Petroleum* is a certain Oil made of Salt-peter and *Bitumen*; it is hot and dry in the second Degree, it healeth Wounds and comforteth weak Members.

*Petrocellium*, which we call Parsley, or Stone-Parsley, is, and especially its Seed, hot and dry in the third Degree: It stays Wind, openeth and provoketh Urine.

*Philonium*, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum*, and *Philonium Persicum*, are excellent Compositions, and most comfortable after the loss of Blood.

*Polygonum*, which we call Knot-grass, is cold in the second Degree, and keepeth back Humours.

*Plantago*, which we call Plantain, is cold and dry in the third Degree: It comforteth, drieth, bindeth, and incarnateth Wounds.

*Porri*, which we call Leeks, Scallions or Onions, are hot and dry, and do extenuate Obstructions, and raise and loosen all evil Humours in the Body.

*Puce* or *porrum*, is hot in the second Degree, and it is good for all cold waterish Stomachs.

*Pulegium*, which we call Penny-royal, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it doth vehemently dry in moisture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the Lungs.

*Punicum Malum*, which we call Pomegranate, is cold and dry: It bindeth, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stomach.

**R** *Rafano* or *Rafanus*, which we call Radish, is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree: They comfort, and are good for old Colds; but especially they provoke Urine.

*Refina*, which we call Rosin, is hot and dry in the second Degree; it stoppeth, softneth, cleanseth, draweth and purgeth Wounds, and is good against cold Causes.

*Resalgar*. See *Resigalla*.

*Rigorelio* or *Rigalia*, which we call Liquorice, is temperate in heat, and moistneth, and ripeneth, and is good for heat in the Stomach or Liver, and profitable against Wounds.

*Risigalla*, is a Composition of Sulphur, Orpiment, and unslack'd Lime, and is a most strong Corrosive.

*Rosa flos*, which we call Rose-leaves, or Rose-cakes, are dry and binding.

*Rubea*,

*Rubea*, which we call Madder, is dry : It comforteth and incarnateth, the Root thereof provoketh Urine, and is good for the Yellows.

*Ruberb* or *Rabarb*, is hot and dry in the second Degree, it purgeth Choler and Flegm, and putteth away Stoppings.

*Ruta*, which we call Rue or Herb-grace, is hot and dry in the third Degree ; but the wild Rue in the fourth Degree, and therefore exulcerateth : The Garden Rue digesteth, and mightily comforteth all inward Inflammations, it ripeneth, and drieth, and expelleth Wind.

*Savina*, which we commonly call Savine, is hot and dry in the third Degree, it openeth, dissolveth, drieth mightily, and is most sovereign against Worms.

*Sacoro* is hot and moist, and is very comfortable.

*Sagapenum*. See *Serapino*.

*Sagina*, or *Saggina*, or *Sorgo*, of some called *Panicum Indicum*, is only hot and dry.

*Salo*, which we call Salt, is hot and dry in the second Degree ; and it cleanseth.

*Salamora*, which we call Brine, or Water and Salt, is of the same Nature that Salt is.

*Sal Armoniac* is hot and dry in the fourth Degree ; and it cleanseth.

*Salee*, which we call Sallows or Willows : It bindeth and drieth vehemently.

*Sal gemma* is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry : It cleanseth and mundifieth.

*Sal-Nitro*, some use for this, Salt-Peter ; it is hot and dry, and evaporateth : It comforteth sinews, and taketh away tiring or weariness.

*Salvia*, which we call Sage, is hot and dry in the second Degree : It cleanseth and bindeth. Is good for Wounds, or Exulceration of the Lungs.

*Sambucus*, which we call Elder-tree or Wall-wort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the second Degree, and dry in the first : It drieth, digesteth, and conglutinateth.

*Sandolo*, which we call Sanders, are cold and dry in the second Degree, and drive back Humours.

*Sandolo Rosso*, or *Sandolo Bianca*, which we call red Sand, or white Sand, are hot and dry, and bring on Skin.

*Sanguis Draconis*. See *Ginibar*. Yet some take it for the red Dock, or red Patience, but it is not so.

*Sapone*, which we call Soap, is hot : It draweth, mollifieth, drieth, cleanseth and purgeth.

*Saxifraga*, which we call Saxifrage, is hot, dry, and binding.

*Scabioso*, which we call Scallions, is hot and dry in the second Degree ; they



they do regenerate, and are good for Scabs, for the Lungs, or for the sore-ness of the Breast.

*Scammonium*, which is the juic of a Root, is hot in the third Degree: It digesteth and purgeth Choler, but must never be given inwardly, unless it be corrected.

*Scariola*, which we call Endive, is cold and dry, and binding.

*Sarcocolla* is a Gum of the kind of *Euforbium*; it is hot and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth, incarnateth, and comforteth Wounds.

*Sea Onions* is hot in the second, and dry in the first Degree; it ripeneth and expelleth Humours, it hindereth Putrefaction, and preserveth Health.

*Semola*, Which we call young Cole-worts, are hot and dry in the first Degree.

*Semper-vive*, which we call Housleek, and some call Stone-crop, is cold in the third, and dry in the second Degree; it is good for burnings and Frettings, or for inflammation of Ulcers; it driveth back Humours, cool-eth and bindeth.

*Savadoice*, is hot in second, and dry in the first Degree: It cleanseth and openeth.

*Serapino* is a Gum of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree; it mollifieth, looseneth, and is good for Colds.

*Serpillo*, which we call wild running Betony or Thyme, smelling like Marjoram, is hot and dry in the third Degree.

*Sinapi*, which we call Mustard, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: it draweth and resolveth, and is good for Scurfs or wild Scabs.

*Salatro*, which we call Night-shade, is cold in the third Degree.

*Sulphar-vive*, which we call Brimstone, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it draweth and disperseth Humours, and killeth Worms.

*Spelta*, which we call Beer-Barley, is a Grain less than Wheat, and shorter than Rye, but not so black, is cool and cleansing.

*Sparaci*, which we call Asparagus, is without any manifest heat or cold, and only cleanseth.

*Spiga*, or *Spica*, which we call Lavender, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it cleanseth and is good for the Head, especially the Conserve, which is very comfortable.

*Squille*, is that which we call the Sea-Onion. See Sea-Onion.

*Stecados*, which we call French Lavender, is hot and dry.

*Storax* or *Stirax*, is a sweet Gum, which is hot and dry: It correcteth, softneth, and is good for Coughs, or any sickness in the Head.

**T***Artaro*, which we call Tartar, is the Excrements of Wine, which stick to the Vessel: It is hot and dry in the third Degree, and only cleanseth.

*Tasaruch*,

*Tataruck*, which we call Snails with Shells, are of the same Nature the Snails without Shells are.

*Tasso barbarosso*, which we call Yew, is of the same Nature of Poison.

*Turpentine*, is hot in the second, and dry in the first Degree: It draweth, cleanseth, skinneth and comforteth.

*Thymum*, which we call Thyme, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and expelleth Flegm.

*Thuris Lacrima*, which we call Frankincense, is hot in the second and dry in the first Degree. See *Olibanum*.

*Thuris Cortex*, is dry in the second Degree and bindeth.

*Thuris succulis*, is hot and dry in the third Degree.

*Tithymalis*, which we call Spurge or Milk-Thistle, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: It cleanseth and purgeth Flegm and Choler; and is good for old Sores, or Fistula's.

*Trifora Mana* is a certain Composition which will provoke sweat, helpeth grief in the Stomach, and taketh away all cold Rheums.

*Tutia Præparata* is a certain Mineral that is cold in the first, and dry in the second Degree, and is very good for sore Eyes.

## V

**V** *Eratro*. See *Ellebre*.

*Verbena*, which we call Vervein, is hot and dry: It comforteth and mundifieth.

*Verderame*, which we call Verdigrease, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and is a Corrosive that eateth away dead flesh.

*Vermi*, which we call Worms, do conglutinate and comfort Sinews.

*Verce* is hot and dry. See *Brasica*.

*Vitro*, which we call Glasse, is hot in the first, and dry in the second, and it cleanseth.

*Vinace*, which we call the Kernels of Grapes, are dry.

*Virga Pastoris*, which we call wild Tassel, is cold in the third, and dry in the first Degree: It comforteth and bindeth.

*Visebio*, which we call Lime, is hot in the fourth Degree: It drieth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid stuff, it burneth, and is Corrosive.

*Vicelli*, or *Vitis alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the Root: It cleanseth and killeth Scabs; it drieth, it draweth, mollifieth and dissolveth.

*Vitelli*, which we call the Yolks of any Eggs, are hot, and do strengthen and incarnate.

*Vitriol*, which we call Coperas, is of two kinds, that is *Vitriolum Romanum*, which we call green Coperas, and *Vitriolum Album*, which we call white Coperas, they are hot and dry, but the white is much the stronger; they take away Scurfs and kill Scabs.

*Variola*



*Vitriola Calcanthum*, is reckoned amongst Metals, and is a kind of inky Earth; drieth and fretteth.

*Vitriola herba*, is an Herb that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for Pelitory of the Wall. See *Helvine*.

*Urtica*, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry, and stop and cleanse Humours, and are good for Sores.

## Z

**Z** *Eferano*, which we call Saffron, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it comforteth and expelleth all inward Poison, and incarnateth Wounds.

*Zebulus*. See *Ziziphe*.

*Zeutonico*, which we call Worm-feed, it is hot and dry.

*Zenzero*, which we call Ginger, is of the Nature of Pepper, and hath the strength of long Pepper; it maintaineth natural heat, and is good for cold Stomachs.

*Ziziphe* taketh away Coughs, and helpeth the shortness of Breath.

*Zucche*, which we call Gourds, are cold and moist in the second Degree, and it allayeth all manner of Inflammations or hot Swellings.

## CHAP. CXCVII. Certain Principles touching SIMPLS.

**Y**OU shall understand, that touching Simples, some are only to ease Pain, as Linseed, Camomil, soft Grease, Suet of all sorts, or any other Oil that is hot in the first Degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, the Medicine is called *Anodyne* or *Lynogs*.

There are other Simples which are astonying, benumbing or bringing sleep; as Opium, Mandrake, Poppy, Hemlock, and such-like, which are gross and cold in the fourth Degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is amongst Leaches called *Narcotica*.

The third sort of Simples are such as incarnate and breed Flesh, as Frankincense, Flour, Saffron, Yolks of Eggs, and such-like, which are hot in the second Degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is called *Sarcotica*.

The fourth sort of Simples are corroding, fretting, or burning, as Arsnick, Rissagallo, Mercury, Lime, and such-like, which are hot in the fourth Degree; and whensoever they are applied simple or compound, then the Medicine is called *Corrosive*.

The fifth sort of Simples are those which are called mollifying, and are four in number; that is green Mallows, White Mallows, Violets, and Brank-Ursine.

The last sort of Simples are those which are called Cordials, and are three in number; that is to say, Violets and Bugloss of both kinds.

And thus much touching the nature, use, property, and operation of Simples.

CHAP. CXCVIII. *Of Weights and Measures, and to know them by their Characters.*

**A**ltho' I have in this Work set down your Weights and Measures in such plain English, that every one may understand them: Yet forasmuch as the more curious do set down many excellent Receipts under obscure Characters, I think it good here to acquaint you with them all, that when you find any such, you may not be ignorant in the understanding of them.

Know then that the least of all Weights is a Grain, which is the Weight either of a Barley-corn, or of a Pepper-corn, and his Character is G. or Gr.

*Siliqua* is four Grains, and his Character is *f*.

An English half-penny is five Grains, and his Character is *ob*.

A Scruple is twenty Grains, and his Character is  $\ominus$ .

A Dram is three Scruples, or the eighth part of an Ounce, and his Character is  $\mathfrak{z}$ .

A Roman Penny is the same that a Dram is, and his Character is *X*.

An Ounce is the Twelfth part of a Pound which is twenty four Scruples, and four hundred and eighty Grains, and his Character is  $\mathfrak{z}$ .

The Character of half an Ounce is  $\mathfrak{z}$  ss.

A Pound in medicinal Receipts is twelve Ounces, and his Character is *lb*.

The handful is six Ounces and a half, and his Character is *M*.

The Character of as much as you can hold betwixt your Fingers is *p*.

The Character for a drop is *Gut*.

The Character for Drops is *Gut. iij*.

*lb ss* is half a Pound.

$\mathfrak{z}$  ss is half an Ounce.

$\mathfrak{z}$  ss is half a Dram.

$\ominus$  ss is half a Scruple.

$\mathfrak{z}$  j ss is an Ounce and an half.

*M j ss* is an handful and an half.

*P j ss* is half an handful, which is three Ounces and an half.

*Anna* or *an* is like, or of each a like.

And thus much touching Weights and their Characters.



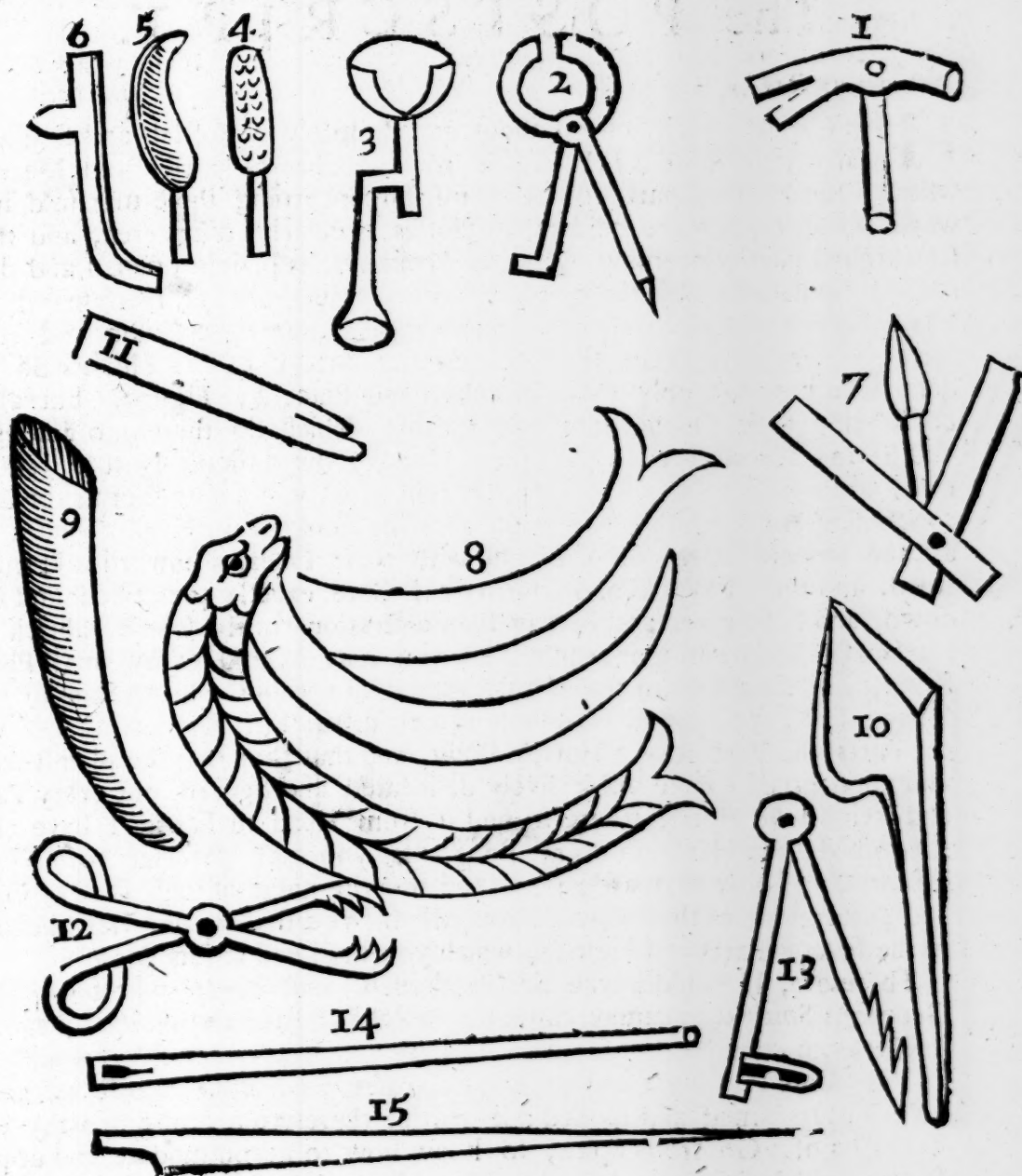
CHAP. CXCIX. *The Farriers Instruments expounded, with their Names and Properties.*

**T**HE Figure 1. sheweth the Hammer, which driveth in the Nail. Figure 2. Pincers which breaketh off, cleneth and draweth the Nail.

3. The Butteris is that which pareth and openeth the Foot.
4. The Rasp or Rape, which maketh smooth the Hoof.
5. The Cutting-Knife, which taketh away the superfluous Hoof.
6. The Fleam, with which he letteth Blood in the Neck, or in the gross places where the Vein is great.
7. The Farriers Lancet which openeth small Veins and Threds, where the Stroke may not be used.
8. The Incision-Knife, to open Imposthumes, and to cut away superfluous Flesh.
9. The Cronet to take up Veins.
10. The drawing cauterizing Iron to open and separate the Flesh, either found or Imposthumated.
11. The round button cauterizing Iron to bore holes in the skin and swelled Places.
12. The Mellets to cleanse Wounds.
13. The Barnacles to pinch an Horse by the Nose or Ears, to make him endure pain patiently.
14. The Needle to stich up Wounds.
15. The probe to search the depth of Wounds.

And thus you have a full Explanation of all the needful Instruments belonging to the skilful Farrier.

The





## The POSTSCRIPT.

*Courteous Reader,*

**H**AVING now with infinite Labour and Industry perfected and finished this my MASTERPIECE for the Cure of Horses and Mares, wherein the Physical part of Horsemanship concerning those manifold inward Diseases which are incident to Horses is clearly discovered, and the Chirurgical part concerning outward Accidents, is plainly opened and described; and having for the more absolute advancement of Horsemanship, and to give Satisfaction therein, made a particular Speculation and run through every Part, Vein, Bone, Sinew and Artery of the Horse's Body, demonstrating not only their Number and Place by Figure, but also considering their Disaffections and Diseases which do thereunto belong; and having also with much pain (as a Work of this difficult Nature requireth) brought it to a full period, not only given you a few Terms of Art concerning Horsemanship, but making an Anatomy from Head to Foot of all the Integral Parts of a Horse, with their Diseases inward and outward, and their Physical and Chirurgical Cure exactly prescribed and set down, and have given you ocular Demonstrations of the whole Fabrick of the Horse's Body; so that as in a Map you may behold every small Part, River, Creek or Stream running up and down within the Superficies of the Earth; so I have likewise made and drawn divers Pictures, setting out all the Parts and Parcels of a Horse's Body, and that they may be plainly seen and considered, I have most lively delineated and figured out every Part and Vein in the Horse, where to find it from Head to Foot. I have also Anatomized the Horse in every Bone, that you may perceive their Conjunction, and how they are joined, and thereby judge of their Dislocations, and putting out of their Places: And all this you shall at one view behold in the several Parts and Figures, which you shall find in this Book.

Therefore, I would advise all Gentlemen, and others, who being of a Generous Spirit, who cannot chuse but delight and take wonderful pleasure in Horses, to consider, that for want of Care and Experience many excellent Horses falling into slight and common Diseases, have either utterly perished or else been lamed and spoiled; it will be therefore a Study worthy the Thoughts of a Generous Spirit, to know how to accommodate and apply Cures and Medicines to the outward and inward Diseases of Horses, in regard that a Horse is a Beast whose Praises cannot be sufficiently declared.

The Horse is commodious for common use, as pleasing Tillage and transporting of Carriages and Burthens, and also for Men's continual Occasions and daily Journeys. In time of Peace, when Princes did use to  
recreate

recreate themselves with Hunting Deer and other wild Beasts, Horses were always had in high Estimation and Honour; and those that would out-run the Wind, and made the best speed after the Chace were most esteemed, so that there could be no pleasure in Hunting, if they had no Horses to carry them after their Game; and what a brave sight is it to see in a Field an hundred or more Hunting-Horses riding and running this way or that way after the timorous Deer or fearful Hare; therefore the Horse, as he was made for industrious Labour, so he is fit to maintain and procure the Pleasures and Delights of a Prince or any Noble man.

And moreover in War, the Courage and Service of a Horse is daily now seen, and too well known: He will, as if he were animated by the sound of Drums and Trumpets, presently rush into the Battel, and take delight to charge the Enemy; he is all fire, and full of mettle and fury. And thus we see that a Horse is not only convenient for daily Occasions of the Husbandmen, of Travellers, and divers others, but in Princes Courts he is highly esteemed, for Hunting, for Races, and other Pastimes; and also in the Wars, his daily Service is sufficiently known, being a Beast of a magnanimous and undaunted Courage, so that the Horse is naturally made for Profit and Pleasure; for Labour and Delight; for Peace and War; for Hunting; for Triumphs, and all Gallant Occasions.

It is pity then that a brave Horse, well Limb'd and Spirited, falling sick in any inward Disease, or outward accidental infirmity, as Sprains, Dislocation of Bones, Spavins, and hundreds more Diseases, should be spoiled in suffering the Disease to grow on him until it be incurable, or in applying Remedies unfit for the Malady; whereby many a Horse becomes maimed, and for want of Cure, utterly disabled for any Service.

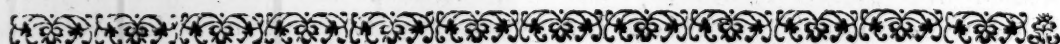
Therefore my Advice and Counsel is, (as I said before) that if any Gentlemen whatsoever, shall have their Horses either by outward Accidents, as Sprains, pricking in the Feet, and the like, or inward Surfeits, Glanders, Colds and Heats, by intemperate and extraordinary Riding, fall sick, or become through the aforesaid Infirmities any ways disabled for Service, they should not depend upon their own Experience or Judgment, but should wisely consider with themselves, and consult with the Farrier, reasoning together, and comparing their Opinions concerning the Causes and Cures of such Diseases as are incident to their Horses, that so by this means, by the height of Discourse and Reason they may come to a certain and infallible Knowledge of the Horses Diseases and Infirmities, and having diligently searched out the Causes thereof, they may know likewise to Cure the same: For you shall meet with many illiterate Farriers, who are not Book-learned, and therefore have no more Knowledge than Horses themselves, but are subject, through their Ignorance, to run into many gross Errors; so that through their Negligence and aforesaid Ignorance, mi-  
flaking



staking the Causes and Cures of Diseases, and in one word, most grossly, for it is good for Experience both in the Theorick and Practick part of any Art or Science.

For another, (to my Knowledge) many good Horses do continually remain lame and unfit for Service, or else do utterly perish for want of understanding their Diseases and the particular Cures thereof. Therefore, as wise Physicians do consult together when they meet with a sick Patient, so I advise both Gentlemen and Farriers to compare their Judgments together, whereby the Beast may be saved, the Gentlemen and Farriers gain Credit, and their Experience and Knowledge in the many Diseases of Horses much bettered.

Moreover, for the Reader's greater benefit, all Simples and Compounds good for Horses are Alphabetically here placed, and the Conditions of them, whether hot or cold, with their Names and Qualities, are described. Also what Ounces, Drams and Scruples are to be given in any Drink. If Gentlemen be unacquainted with these things, let them confer with the Farriers, and so confirm their Judgments by Discourse. And so, *Courteous Reader*, I have left you my best Work thus accomplished, and thus Perfected, that I know in all the Points belonging to the Cure of Horses, it will give full satisfaction, if the Reader follow the Advice of this Postscript.



The

## The TABLE of the Second BOOK, containing all Cures Chirurgical.

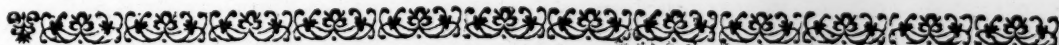
**P**roportions of Members Page 125. Of the Veins p. 127. The Anatomy of Veins p. 128. Of the Sinews p. 130. Of all the Bones *ibid.* When a Horse should be let Blood p. 132. Outward Sorances *what they are* p. 137. The Diseases in the Eyes p. 138. The Blood-shot Eye p. 139. Of Dimness of Sight p. 140. A rare approved Medicine for any desperate Blindness p. 141. Another most excellent and approved Receipt for any Blindness *ibid.* To Cure the Pearl, Pin, Web *ibid.* Another infallible Cure for it p. 143. The Haw in a Horse's Eye *ibid.* Of Moon-Eyes, or Lunatick-Eyes p. 144. The Canker in the Eye p. 145. For a stripe on a Horse's Eye *ibid.* For a Wart in the Eye p. 146. Inflammation in a Horse's Eye *ibid.* The Imposthume in the Ear p. 147. The Pole-Evil *ibid.* An approved Cure for the Pole-Evil p. 149. Of a Horse that is Lave-Ear'd p. 150. Of the Vives or hard Kernels *ibid.* An approved Medicine to Cure the Vives p. 152. Another *ibid.* Of the Strangle p. 153. The Ulcer in the Nose p. 154. Of Bleeding at the Nose p. 155. Of Blood Rists p. 156. The Giggs *ibid.* The Lampas p. 157. The Camery, or Frounce *ibid.* The Canker p. 158. Heat in the Mouth p. 159. The Tongue hurt *ibid.* The Barbes or Paps p. 160. Pain in the Teeth, and of the Woolfs Ties *ibid.* Crick in the Neck p. 162. Wens in the Neck p. 163. Swelling in the Neck after Blood-letting *ibid.* To Staunch Blood p. 164. Falling of the Crest *ibid.* To raise up the Crest that is fallen p. 166. Manginess in the Mane *ibid.* Of shedding the Hair p. 167. Pain in a Horse's Withers *ibid.* Gall'd Back or Wubers p. 177. Canker in the Withers p. 172. The Stick fast, Sit-fast, Horns, or Bones growing under the Saddle *ibid.* Wens or Knobs about the Saddle p. 173. The Navel-Gall *ibid.* Of Swaying in the Back p. 174. Of Weakness in the Back p. 175. Swelling of the Cods or Stones *ibid.* Incording, Bursting, or the Rupture in Horses p. 177. The Botch in the Groins p. 178. To Cure the Botch in the Groins *ibid.* Manginess in the Tail p. 179. Manginess over the whole Body *ibid.* Two more Medicines for the foulest Mange or Leprosie p. 182. To know when a Horse halteth before *ibid.* Of halting behind p. 184. To know when a Horse hath any hidden Grief in him p. 185. The Grief in the Shoulder *ibid.* The Wrench in the Shoulder p. 187. The Wrench in the Neather Joint p. 188. Of Splatting the Shoulder *ibid.* The Shoulder Pigbt p. 189. A Cure for any desperate Pain in the Shoulder p. 190. Swelling of the Fore-legs p. 191. Of Foundring in the Feet *ibid.* The Splent on the inside of the Knee p. 196. How to take away any Splent p. 198. The Screw p. 199. The Mallander *ibid.* The Upper Attaint p. 201. An approved Medicine for any Sinew-strain p. 202. A Neather



Neatber Attaint *ibid.* An Attaint on the Heel *ibid.* The Mellet on the Heel p. 203. False Quarters *ibid.* Of burts in the Hips p. 204. Of Stifling p. 205. The bone Spaven p. 207. The blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or thorough Spaven, p. 209. A Medicine to take away any Blood Spaven p. 210. The Sellender p. 211. The Hough Bonny *ibid.* The Curb p. 212. of Pains p. 213. Of Mules p. 215. Of Wind Galls p. 216. A Strain in the Pastern Joint p. 218. To help any Halting. p. 219. Three Medicines which will cure any Strain or Swelling p. 221. Another Cure for any Strain *ibid.* Of Enterfering *ibid.* The Shackle Gall p. 222. Of Casting in the Halter *ibid.* Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-Tails 223. An approved Cure for the Scratches p. 225. The Ring-bone *ibid.* Hurts on the Cronet p. 227. A Cure for any Hurt on the Cronet *ibid.* The Crown Scab *ibid.* The Quitter-bone p. 228. Of Gravelling. p. 229. Of Surbauling p. 230. Of the Prickle in the sole of the Foot p. 231. To draw a Stub, Thorn, or Iron, out of the Foot p. 232. The Fig *ibid.* A Retrait p. 233. Of Cloying p. 234. Observations for the Feet p. 235. Of loosning the Hoof p. 237. Of Casting the Hoof p. 238. Of the Hoof bound, 239. The Running or Rotten Frush p. 240. A certain Cure for the running and rotten Frush p. 241. Of Evil Hoofs *ibid.* Of Brittle Hoofs *ibid.* To preserve Hoofs p. 242. For Hurts on the Hoofs p. 243. To soften Hoofs *ibid.* To harden Hoofs *ibid.* Of the Malt-ling *ibid.* To Skin any sore Foot 244. Goured or Swoln Legs *ibid.* A certain Cure for any surd or swell'd Legs p. 245. The Farcy p. 246. The Canker in the Body p. 253. Of the Fistula p. 254. An approved Medicine to cure any Fistula p. 258. Of the Ambury *ibid.* Of the Cords p. 259. The String-bait *ibid.* Of the Spur Gall'd p. 260. Of Wounds in general *ibid.* Of burts with Arrows 262. Of healing any Sore or Ulcer *ibid.* A certain and approved Cure for any old Ulcer 263. Of Bruisings *ibid.* Of Imposthumes p. 265. Of old Imposthumes p. 266. Of hot Imposthumes *ibid.* The Tetter *ibid.* Of Sinews that are cut 267. Of fretting the Belly *ibid.* Of Blisters, 268. To take away all Bones, &c. *ibid.* How to eat away superfluous Flesh 269. For Knots or Joints, Hardness, &c. p. 270. To cure any Wound made with Gun-powder p. 271. Of burning with Lime *ibid.* The biting with a mad Dog 272. Hurts done by the Tusks of a Boar *ibid.* To heal the biting or stinging of Serpents *ibid.* How to kill Lice and other Vermin 273. To save Horses from the stinging of Flies *ibid.* Of Bones broken *ibid.* Of Bones out of Joint p. 275. To dry up Humours *ibid.* A Plaster to dry up superfluous Moisture p. 276. Another to dry up any Swelling, &c. *ibid.* To dissolve Humours p. 277. To mollify any Hardness *ibid.* To harden any softness p. 278. To conglutinate *ibid.* To mundifie and cleanse any Sore *ibid.* Of repercussive Medicines *ibid.* Of burning Compositions p. 279. For all manner of Hurts *ibid.* To make the Power of Honey and Lime p. 280. The order of taking up of Veins *ibid.* Of Cauterizing p. 298. The Cauterize actual *ibid.* Of Cauterize by Medicine 301. The rowelling of Horses p. 302. To geld Horses or Colts p.



304 Of the making of Curtails p. 389 To make a white Star 290.  
To make a black Star 292. To make a red Star ibid. To make Hair grow ve-  
ry soon 293. To make Hair smooth ibid. To tak off Hair 294 To cast and  
overthrow a Horse ibid. To make an old Horse seem young p 307. To know the  
Age of a Horse ibid. To make an Horse that he shall not neigh ibid. To make  
a Horse quick of the Spur ibid. To make a Horse that tires go forward 297.  
Other approved ways to preserve a Horse from tiring ibid. To make a Horse fol-  
low his Master p 298. The Nature and special Qualities of all the Simples that  
are spoken of in this whole Work, set down in the manner of Alphabet ibid. Prin-  
ciples touching Simples p. 312. Of Weights and Measures to know them by their  
Characters ibid. The Farriers Instruments expounded, with their Names and  
Properties p. 315.



T t

The



*The Right Method for the Ordering and Curing of all Diseases in Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, Goats, Dogs, and all small Cattle.*

I. OF O X E N.

**T**HE worthy Author having excellently treated of the Order and Government of Horses, both as to their Breeding, Feeding, and Managing, as also for the curing of all Diseases they are, or may be incident to; I thought it very proper to add by way of *Appendix*, this short, but necessary Treatise for the Directions of the painful Country-man in his ordering all other sorts of Cattle, *viz.* Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, &c. and herein I shall be as short as may be, giving you only those approved Receipts, which not only the former, but these modern Times have frequently experienced.

C H A P. I. *For the Cough in Oxen.*

**A** Cough of no long continuance may soon be remedied by a Drink which you may make with Water and Barley-Meal, adding some Bean-flower and some Stich-wort, and so given to your Beast.

A certain Cure for an old Cough, is, To steep two pound of Hissop in a quart or two of Water, well mix'd with eight pound of Lentil-pease mingled together: Likewise give the Beast fine Wheat and Roots of Leeks clean washed, well beat together, fasting. You may also stamp Garlick and Dragon-Water, new Ale and Butter, and being warm give it the Beast.

C H A P. II. *For a Beast's Hoof Hurt.*

**I**F your Ox by chance be hurt with a Stub of Wood, or with a Coulter or Share, on any part of the Clees, mix but the Powder of Brimstone with a Salve of Pitch and old Grease well melted together, then pour it hot on any sore part.

To keep your Beasts from Foundring: When you unyoke them wash their Feet with cold Water; likewise let their Pasterns and Clees be anointed with old Grease, and they will do well.

To Cure the Gravel or a Cut in an Ox's Foot: Let him be bathed in warm Water, then melt Tar and old Grease for an Ointment, and if with old fresh Grease you rub and chafe his Feet before you unyoke him, nothing is better to preserve them.

C H A P.



**C H A P. III.** *For a Bruise on a Beast's Shoulder.*

**L**abouring Oxen may be lame or sore bruised on their Shoulders, either by going on the hard Ground, by a crush of a Post or Gate, let them but bleed on the fore-Legs it shall certainly heal them.

**C H A P. IV.** *For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body.*

**Y**our Ox will commonly gape, and eat no Meat, but stand holding his Head and mourn, if he has eat any venomous Grass or such-like: For cure whereof, give him to swallow down a white Onion bruised, well mix'd with a little good Vinegar, but before he has it, you rub his Mouth and Tongue well with it.

**C H A P. V.** *To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattle.*

**B**y taking Cold after a great Rain, by some Sickness or Surfeit, your Oxen, Kine, or other Cattle may be Lousie; for a Remedy, rub and chafe the Beast all over with the Decoction of wild Olives mix'd with Salt, or take Penny-royal mix'd with Garlick stamp'd, give it the Beast in Ale or Beer, and chafe him a while after. Some say Rain will kill them, if you sift Ashes on their Backs. If you feed your Cattle well and put them into good Pasture, it will not be long e'er they are Well. If they have Lice or Ticks about them, these Medicines above are very good to kill them with.

**C H A P. VI.** *Against the Swelling of Cattle by eating of green Corn.*

**Y**our Cattle will be in danger of Death (without speedy remedy) if through negligence of the Keeper, they eat of Barley, Rie, or Wheat, that is near ripe, for it will lie and sprout in their Maws, and cause in them a mighty swelling. To help them, some drive them up and down, till they see them assuage thereof, and so they recover. Some throw a new-laid Egg, Shell and all, into the Beast's Mouth, and break it in his Mouth, making him swallow it with Ale. Some give him an handful of Nettle-tops well beat, and strained with Wine or honeyed Water. Some stamp or strain Juniper Leaves or green Berries with Wine, and give it the Beast. Others give the Beast in Ale or Beer, Soot, and the hard Rone of a red Herring well beaten. All which are approved Remedies.

**C H A P. VII.** *Of an Ox or other Beast that have lost their Quide.*

**A**N Ox or other Beast will mourn, and eat nothing (because he cannot digest what he hath already eaten) if he happen to lose his Quide, as perhaps by some occasion it may fall out of his Mouth: To remedy this, some take part of the Quide out of another Beast's Mouth of the like Na-



ture; if it be a Cow wants her Quide, they take part of the Quide of another Cow, giving it her to swallow down, and she will be well; and so the like of other Beasts. Some bruise a quantity of the Herb called Cudwort, and put it to a quantity of Fat, and so make the Beast that hath lost his Quide swallow it, and he will amend. Others put a piece of Leven into the Beast's Mouth, as aforesaid, and thereby he will recover: But if he have continued so long that he is far spent and wasted, take out his Tongue, prick the Vein under it with an Awl in two or three Places, and so it will bleed, whereby he will be well again.

#### CHAP. VIII. *For Worms in Cattle.*

**S**Tamp a good handful of Wormwood, strain it with Ale or Beer, and give it to your Cattle troubled with Worms. Some stamp Garlick and mix it with Milk or Ale, and give them. Some stamp a good handful of Mugwort, and being strained with Ale, give it the Beast. Others stamp Garden-Cresses, then strain it with Ale, and give them. All which are very good Remedies for Worms in Cattle.

#### CHAP. IX. *To help a Beast that pisseth Blood.*

**I**N arrable Land you may find shell-Stones, which burnt and beaten to Powder, and mixed in a Vessel of Milk and Water, is very proper to be given to your Cattle; or you may take Blood-wort and Knot-Grass, and stamp a handful of each together, mix them with good Milk; add to it some Rennet and some of the Husks of Acorns: Give this in a Drenching-Horn twice a Day, and it will effect what is desired.

#### CHAP. X. *To help Cattle that cannot Piss.*

**T**AKE *Cardus Benedictus* a good quantity, and steep it in White-Wine a whole Night, afterward strain it; you may also add some Sow-Thistles, a handful of Anniseeds, and two or three Onions sliced, all steeped the same time and strained; and so given to the Beast, it will force Urine and increase the Appetite.

#### CHAP. XI. *For Beasts that are goared or hurt by one another's Horns.*

**Y**OU may take red Earth and Oaker, and mingle them well together with a little Ale, make a Salve of it, and spread it upon a Plaister. Ashes finely sifted mixed with the Grounds of Ale, have been found an excellent Remedy, but it must be made very thick, and applied by Plaister to the Place grieved. It certainly heals.

CHAP.

C H A P. XII. *To breed Calves and cut them.*

**A**S Husbands relate, it is not convenient to take Calves of which you will make young Bulls, which are Calved within the Prime, which is counted five Days after the Change, for they will not prove well : And Calves (or any other Beasts) then calved are not good to keep, but to eat or sell. Two Calves of a hundred will be enough to make Bulls. For the rest it will be best to cut them quickly after they have calved, for two Years old ; then mix with Litharge the Ashes of Vine-Twigs burnt, and put it upon the Sores ; three Days after, for fear of swelling, anoint it with melted Tar, mingled with the aforesaid Ashes.

Some approve of gelding of Calves young and tender, not with Iron, but a cloven Hazel-stick pressed together, raising the end by degrees, whilst it is consumed : This way is counted best, for it is performed without Wound.

It is not so convenient to cut a Calf (that is big) the first Year, as it is the second.

In Autumn at the decrease of the Moon, it is best to cut them, the Sign not being in the place ; then take two strait Laths like Rulers of Wood, made in fashion of a pair of Tongs or Barnacles, casting him down, his Feet being travell'd together, touch him with Iron, afterwards take up the Stone with the Nerves and strings they hang by, and close your Tongs under betwixt his Body and Stones ; let the Stones be on the outside, but close them hard together, then first slit the Purse of one Cod, and put forth the Stone thereat. Let it be cut off within hard by the said Tongue, close up the Nerves ; then take out the other Stone. For fear of bleeding too much, anoint him with fresh Grease, and let him go, but cut them so, that you leave the end of the string joining to the said Nerve, and he will not lose so much Blood, and will not be seminate nor stout of his Members. After ye have thus dressed, anoint him with fresh Grease.

C H A P. XIII. *The Government of Cattle, and the ordering of Kine with their Calves.*

**T**HE right and good ordering and nourishing of Cattle and Kine (as able Authors relate to us) must be the care of the Husbandman himself, or some honest experienced Servant that will have a diligent Eye over his Cattle, whether they be Oxen or Kine, at home or abroad, and to see that they have (both Morning and Evening) Meat and Water sufficient, and in due time ; and if sick to provide them Medicines, and to get Stalls for them to lie in, set East and West, with Windows and Doors Southward, but close Northly, for the better security of the Cattle from the sharpness of the Winter. Some hold strewing of Salt beat, on the Boards or Stones under them,

to



to be good for the preservation of the Health. Some strew Sand on the Planks for fear they should slide. Before they be well littered after their Work at Night.

If you put them out in the Spring with your Kine, separate the young Calves as soon as they have sucked their Dams, and put them severally into an House, where they must remain one Day ; if you have a mind they should suck, turn them out to their Dams only Morning and Night, then House them again. Thus doing, your Calves will be fairer and fatter than going with their Dams. It is necessary to give Kine with Calf of the green Herb called Melilot, stamp with Honey, steep all Night in Milk : The Herb aforesaid (although the Kine be a good Nurse herself) without she be well look'd to by the Owner, she will not be able to give Nourishment enough to her Calf. Farmers Wives may (without any waste) make Butter and Cheese, when the Calves are took up and the Milk put apart ; gather your Cheese well and close, press out the Whey clean, if you leave any in, the Cheese will be sower and full of Holes : Scald and wash your Pots and other Vessels thoroughly. Let not your Women-Servants touch the Butter or Cheese when they have their Monthly Terms, for it is not wholesome : It is not a good Sign for a Day-labouring Ox to bate none of his Flesh, but to continue fat, for he is Flegmatick. Open his Mouth every eighth Day, wash it with his own Water, it will draw forth the Flegm which he would still swallow down. The Flegm oftentimes hinders his eating, and you may discern that it occasions the Catarrh or Rheum by the hanging down his Ears, by the dropping of his Eye, and being watry : Then bruise Thyme in White-Wine and wash his Mouth, and rub it with Fat and Garlick well mixt ; after this, wash it again as before. Several Remedies are prescribed for it, but for the Catarrh of Rheum, if his Eyes do inflame, let but Blood on the Vein under his Tongue, and you shall find the Cure perfected to your Heart's content.

#### C H A P. XV. *For Purging of Cattle.*

**B**Ruise and seeth in Water the Leaves of Adder, strain them, give them to the Beast in the Morning, and both Choler and Flegm shall be purged downwards by it ; it will likewise cleanse the Stomach of Water.

Others take a Quart of Ale or Beer, putting into it a good handful of the Tops, leaves and flowers of Centaury, which they boil until a Quart of it waste away ; then, it being pretty warm (but before well strained) they give it the Beast, if the Sign serve. This is a gentle Purge for Choler and Flegm, but chiefly Flegm, and is necessary at any time for the Cattle. If the Weather be sharp, let him be in the House six Hours after. Some put in a pint or more of honeyed Water or Ale, a handful of green Broom crops, which they steep at Night, and so (being strained the next Morning) give it the

the Beast warm. There are several other things set down, but these well ordered, the Beasts will do well, God willing.

C H A P. XV. *For Fattening of Oxen.*

**C**ountrymen, and my Friends, if you desire to fat your Oxen well, observe these following Directions: First, he will like his meat the better if he go in the Sun, or if with warm Water he be washed three times a Week; then give him to eat ground Beans, dried Barley, or Elm-leaves; or if you boil Coleworts with Bran, it will make their Bellies loose, and add to Nutriment more than Barley; Chaff likewise sometimes mixt with ground Beans is very good. If your Ox by Labour be weak or feeble, once a Month give him Vetches beat and steeped in Water mixed with beaten Bran; and to make your Beast lively and nimble, rub his Horns with Turpentine being mixt with Oil Olive; touch not any other part of his Head beside the Horns, for it will in some time endanger his Sight. Also, if you rub and chafe the Muzzel or Mouth of an Ox with Garlick bruised, or Leeks well beat, he being made to swallow it, he will assuredly be cured of a rising that comes over the Heart of the Beast, whereby he seems as tho' he would vomit.

C H A P. XVI. *A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongst Cattle.*

**T**Here are several Remedies for the Plague or Murrain amongst Cattle, if taken berimes. Infectious Blood causes the Disease; it is vulgarly discerned in the Head by a swelling, they will have great Eyes that run with Water; they will eat though they are sick, and when once they froth at Mouth they are near Death. For cure of this Disease, it is thought good by some to bind a small Cord hard about the Neck, then take a Lancet and strike on the farther side, where you will find a Vein, bleed him a Pint or more, and so for the other side of the Neck: It will stanch, the Cord being taken away; but it is more dangerous of bleeding still the Sign being there; and if it continue, put to it Nettles and wild Tansie bruised with Salt, and some give them Drinks. Thus serve your infected Cattle, being all together in one Pasture; by this means you will avoid great Peril in this Disease. The Murrain is caught by venomd Grass, by Company, by poisoned Water, and by Hunger.

C H A P. XVII. *To rear up Calves that they may increase.*

**I**T will be prudence in a Husbandman every Year to rear as many Calves as he thinks necessary for the maintenance of his Stock. Those that fall betwixt Candlemas and May are esteemed of best, for at that time they can spare their Milk, and there will be Grass enough, and they will be able by the next Winter to shift for themselves with other Cattle, being looked after



a little; also their Dams in *June* will take Bull again, and bring other Calves in the space above-mentioned. A Cow is barren oftentimes and the Calf weak, if it be after *May* e'er she Calve; and besides, it would be too chargeable to rear Calves the latter end of the Year, and to keep their Dams in the House all the Winter, as it is practised in some places; Again, for their own advantage it will be best they come betimes, that they may put them out, for Grass increases a great deal more Milk, when the Kine are abroad, than Hay or Straw at home; for dry Mear will abate Milk, Grass does not; and if your Calves have been used to Grass, wean them abroad and not at home; your Calves will have great Bellies if you wean them with Hay, Grass makes them stir better, and is not noxious to them. In the Winter-season instal them, rather than let them run abroad a Nights; when you take them in you may give them Hay, but in the day-time let them feed in the Fields. Observe but these Directions and you will find them a great deal fitter for the Plough when you come to make use of them.

CHAP. XVIII. *For a Cow that has newly Calved, wanting Milk.*

**A**Nniseeds boiled in Ale and strained, given warm to a Cow that has newly Calved, and being Poor, wants Milk, is very good for the increase of it; Colewort-leaves boiled or raw, will do the like: Also Barley and Fennel-seed sod together is good for her. There are several others, but these are the principal approved Medicines to increase Milk in Kine.

CHAP. XIX. *For the Shoulder bone of a Beast out of Joint.*

**Y**OU may easily discern the tripping of a Beast on the same Foot that the Shoulder bone is out of Joint; for cure whereof throw him on the Ground, and bind fast his other three Legs, then stretch out the other Leg, and put one Hand on his Shoulder where the Bone went out, and the other near his Body within side, and place the Bone right, and just even with the other Bone; when it is right and fast together, get two wooden Pricks of a length, and boring two holes cross under the Skin, in the middle of the Joint, from both sides of the joint they must be distant an Inch and an half from each other, and there put your pricks cross under the Skin, then wrap it round with strong Packthread, binding of it round the ends of the Pricks, draw up the Skin in a lump with it; so when your Thread is fastned, there let it be until it drop away of itself, and the Beast will be well, fit for Work in two days time. If it be in the heat of Summer, anoint the place with Tar by reason of the Flies,

CHAP. XX. *To cure Cattle that be sick and will not feed in Pasture.*

**B**Ruise and boil of Horehound, Camomil, Betony, Cinquefoil, Penny royal and Agrimony, of each a like quantity in a quart of Ale, until half of it be consumed, with a stick of bruised Liquorice; afterwards strain it and mix it with three pennyworth of good Treacle, give it him fasting, when it is well mixt together; walk him for some space after, and he will certainly recover.

CHAP. XXI. *A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be found.*

**G**Ripe him on the Back with your hand behind the fore-shoulder, and if he be not found, he will shrink with his back, and almost fall down; but on the contrary, if he be found, he will not shrink in the least.

CHAP. XXII. *A Remedy for the Disease in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Cholick, or any such like thing.*

**I**F at any time your Beast be troubled with the Cholick, Belly-ake or gnawing in the Guts, it will speedily give him ease, if you boil good store of Oil in the Water he uses to drink. For the Bloody Flux, give the Beast some Powder of Wood, Rose-seeds well beat and dried, and brewed with a quart of Ale, and it will Cure him.

CHAP. XXIII. *For Weakness, Stiffness or Soreness in the Sinews of a Beast.*

**I**F your Beast's Sinews be at any time tender or do shrink, you may perceive it by the slow pace he goes. Bind to the place out of order Mallows and Chickweed; but they must be boiled in the Dregs of Ale or Vinegar, and being very warm when you lay them on, they will very much strengthen the Sinews.

CHAP. XXIV. *A Cure for the Palate of a Beast's Mouth that is down.*

**T**He Palate of a Beast's Mouth by hard working will be apt to come down, which you may discern by two things, they will often sigh, and would fain eat, but cannot. To cure him, throw him down, putting it up again with your hand, then bleed him in the Palate, and anoint it with Honey and Salt, and turn him to Grass, for you must not let him eat any Hay or dry Meat.

CHAP. XXV. *For any inward Diseases in Cattle.*

**T**Ake a handful of Wormwood and as much Rue, and boil them in a quart of Ale; then let it be strained, and put into it two spoonfuls of the Juice of Garlick, as much of House-leek, and as much of London Treacle;



Treacle: make it lukewarm, mix them well together, and then make the Beast drink of it, and you will in short time see the verue of it against any inward Disease or drooping in Cattle.

CHAP. XXVI. *For all sorts of Bruises in general.*

**F**Ry the least sort of Brook-lime with Tallow, and apply it hot to the place that is hurt, and if it does not expel it, yet it will ripen it, break it, and heal it, as many by Experience have found to be very true.

CHAP. XXVII. *A Remedy to kill any sorts of Worms either in Oxen, Cows, or Calves.*

**C**Hop the Herb Savin very Small, beat it with fresh Butter, then roll it up in Balls; give it the Beast, and it will destroy the Worms in their Bodies sooner than any other rhing. Likewise a little black Soap mixt with sweet Wort, and given the Beast to drink, will make them void their Worms better and quicker than other rhings.

CHAP. XXVIII. *Against the Gout in Cattle.*

**Y**OU may discern by the often rising and swelling of your Beasts Joints, whether they have the Gout or not: For Cure whereof, boil Galengal in the dregs of Ale and sweet Butter, and being made like a Poultis, clap it to the place that is disordered.

CHAP. XXIX. *For Purging of Cattle as some do.*

**G**reen weedy Grafs growing under Trees in Orchards is the best thing to purge Beasts naturally, and the best purging Medicine for them is Sugar-Candy, Butter and Tar, well mingled together, then rolled up in Balls as big as Hens Eggs, and so given them.

CHAP. XXX. *Things good to breed Milk in Kine.*

**I**F your Cow's Milk after she hath Calved come not down as it was wont to do, beat to Powder Coriander and Anniseeds, and put them into a quart of strong Posslet Ale, and make her drink every Morning; which thing alone will beget great and wonderful increase in her Milk: Besides it will assuredly cause it to spring, and come down in abundance.

CHAP. XXXI. *For the Rot in Beasts.*

**I**F your Beasts wax lean, slight their Meat, or scour much behind, you may assure yourself they are subject to rottenness; you must beat



to Powder, Bay-berries, and mix it with Myrrh, Ivy-leaves, Elder-leaves and Feaverfew, a good lump of Clay and Bay-Salt, all together in strong Urine, and when it is warm, give the Beast half a pint thereof to drink, and it will firmly knit and preserve them.

CHAP. XXXII. *Against Vomiting of Blood.*

**I** Must give you to understand, that this Sicknes happens to your Beasts by being hard kept, and then put into good Pasture, where they feed overmuch, and so get such rank Blood, that you may discern it flow from their Mouths. The remedying of this must be to bleed the Beast, and afterwards to drink, give him some Bole-Armoniack and Ale mixt together.

CHAP. XXXIII. *For the overflowing of the Gall in Beasts.*

**I**F the Skin and the Eyes of your Beast look yellow, it is a true sign of the overflowing of the Gall: For a Remedy, first let him blood, afterwards for three mornings one after another, make him a Drink of two pints of Milk, Saffron and Turmerick; mix it all together; then give it him, and it will help him.

CHAP. XXXIV. *To draw out Thorns.*

**I**F at any time your Beasts accidentally get Thorns or Stubs in their Feet, get some black Soap and black Snails, and let them be well beat to a Salve, then lay them to the sore place, and it will by degrees draw them out, and your Beast (whether Ox, Cow or Calf) will in a short time be perfectly well again.

CHAP. XXXV. *A Cure for Feverish Cattle.*

**B**Easts many times surfeit by their Meat being raw and mussy, whereby the Fever cometh upon them, or if they are kept in the Cold (thro' a Flux of cold Humours ingendred by it) they will have a Fever. If they tremble, groan, or foam at Mouth, it is a true sign they have it: To cure him, let him blood, sprinkle his Hay with Water, and boil three or four Plantane Roots, and two spoonfuls of London-Treackle in a quatt of Ale, and then give it him to drink.

*These Remedies before-mentioned are the best (as by Experience several have found) for Oxen, Cows, and Calves, some I know by my own Experience; others are collected out of such able skilful Authors that would never have prescribed such Medicines, if they would not certainly have cured the Beasts.*

# *The Right Method for the Ordering of Cattle.*

## II. OF SHEEP.

### Chap. I. *Some short but sure Rules for a certain Cure of Diseases in Sheep.*

**I**F the greatest quantity of your Sheep happen to fall sick, change of Pasture will conduce much toward their Recovery, and place them a good distance from the Ground they went in before: If the Murrain come by Cold, put them in the Sun; if by Heat in the Shade; Also over-driving them, and so will lying still be the worse for their Distemper; you must keep them going on a moderate pace. Likewise it will be much better to part them at their new pastures, for in a small parcel the infection will not prevail so much as in a great quantity, and a few will be sooner Cured than a great many.

### CHAP. II. *For the Itch and Magots in your Sheep.*

**B**rimstone and Tar well stirred together over a small Fire is an excellent Remedy, when the Wool is sheared off anoint the sore place with that above mentioned. Likewise Powder of Brimstone mixt with Wax, is good for the Scab.

### CHAP. III. *For Sheeps Feet.*

**A**Certain Cure for Sheeps-Foot that are Galled, is, if you beat a Pomegranate not ripe, with Alom, and adding to it a little Vinegar, apply it to the place. Or the Powder of Galls burnt, mixed with red Wine, and so laid unto it, is very good.

### CHAP. IV. *For Broken Bones in Sheep.*

**I**F accidentally any one happen to break his Leg, the Bones will be knit again, if you bruise young Ashen Leaves, and lay to it, or apply to it the Herbs of Comfrey, Betony, or Cuckow-spit well stamp, and the bones will knit.

### CHAP. V. *For the Glanders or Snivel in Sheep.*

**G**ive them to drink honied Water, well mingled with the Juice of Betony, and it will help them. Some for their Cure take a Stick, and (at what time they think fit) cleanse their Noses of all the Matter and Snivel they can get out. Others stamp the Herb called Bucks-beard with Wine,

Wine, which they say is an excellent Remedy for to drive Cold or Flegm out of their Bodies.

CHAP. VI. *For Sicknefs in Lambs.*

**I**F your Lambs have a Fever, or are grieved otherwise, the Distemper will be catching; therefore take them from their Dams, and if you would have them well again in a short time, force them to drink rain water mingled with some of the Ewes Milk. Also some pour down their Throats Goats Milk with a Horn, and for some time after keep them warm; which is prescribed for an Excellent Medicine.

Sometimes your Lambs will have Scabs on their Chins, sometimes on other places; if on their Chins, Wash the palate of the Mouth and Sores with Cyprus Leaves stamped in Water, or Tar and Hogs-grease mixt and made into an Ointment is very good, but you must wash the scab with Vinegar before you anoint it. If they happen to be scabby on the Brisket or elsewhere, I might set down several Remedies, but I shall instance but one, which I do imagine to be the best, because most Shepherds do generally use it, which is only some fine Grease mingled with Tar, and so to lay it upon the place infected.

CHAP. VII. *Some short but necessary things to be observed concerning Sheep.*

**F**irst, if the Wool come off when they have been scabby, grease them with Tar and Goose-grease, and it will grow again.

Secondly, For the Cough, stamp the great Nettle, then let it be strained with Wine; and give him of the Juice thereof to drink, but it must be warm; and so he will be well. You must be sure to take it in time, for until it be gone he will not be fat, but abate in his Flesh daily.

Thirdly, if a Sheep be blind, which they will be for a space at one time or other, some say he will be well again of himself, but if you bleed him under the Eye, or drop Tar in his Eye, he shall recover his sight the sooner.

Fourthly, Scabs often come on the Muzzels of Sheep by pricking their Lips and Muzzels with eating the Tops of Furz; which you must anoint with Plantane and fresh Grease boiled together, and it will perfect their Cure.

Fifthly, If they are troubled with the Haw in the Eye, for which the Juice of Pimpernel dropt into the Eye and shut it close, is very good.

Sixthly, A Shepherd must always carry with him his Knife, Sheep-hook, Sheers and Tar-Box, and a Dog must not be wanting, which must be such a one as he has brought up to his own Command, to go or stand still as he pleases.

Seventhly,



Seventhly, Sheep sometimes have the Pox, which you may discern by things like red Pimples on their Skin, and Locks of Wool will hang loose on their Backs, the Pimples will be as broad as a Groat, and many Sheep for want of early looking after, die by it.

Eighthly, Sheep by feeding on Hills, or places full of Fern, are in the Spring-time commonly troubled with the Cramp, or as some call it the Wood-Evil; which Diseases (without speedy remedy) will endanger their Lives in two days time. For Cure, cause them to be anointed with Neats-Foot Oil, and Housleek stamped together, or Scallions of Bugloss stamped and bound to their Legs is good. Likewise it will help towards their Cure to remove them into some other lower Meadows to feed in.

Ninthly, Sheep in the hot Season will be troubled with Fly-blows and Maggots, which you may be certain of, if they bite, stamp, or shake their Tails, and many times they are wet; to dry it up, throw Powder that is very dry upon it, sometime after strike it off again, and anoint it well with Tar, and they will be perfectly well.

Tenthly, By cropping some noxious Herb your Sheep may be poisoned, which you may easily know by their Heads hanging down, and they will swell, and stagger, and foam at Mouth, and in a short time (without speedy Remedy) fall down dead, which to prevent, cut the Bladders which you will see under his Tongue, then Chafe it with Lome beat small, or the crums of Bread, afterwards wash it down. If his water be stopped, pour some Drink down his Throat, and give him juice of Wormwood in Vinegar, and it will Cure him.

Eleventhly, Sheep may have Worms in their Guts, which come by reason of some cold Humour; you may know it by several things, he will not feed as formerly, he groans, hangs down his head, and many times swells, which without help will speedily kill him: Now for his Cure give him Powder of Worm seed in a little Malmsey, or Powder of Savin in Ale or Wine finely beat, and it will thoroughly heal him.

Twelfthly, If you imagine your Sheep have the Rot, honeyed Water warm, mixt with Elder-berries will clear their Bodies of Water, or seeth a little Water, put some Milk to it, then give it to them; for it will purge them betwixt their Flesh and Skin. If they will drink Salt Water after they have been a great Journey, you may assure your self of their health, and they will do well.

#### CHAP. VIII. *For the red Water in Sheep.*

**S**heep are oftentimes troubled with the red Water, which is a poisonous Disease, very noxious to the Heart; for this Water will so scald and consume, that at length he will perish by it, without some speedy help; which must be done thus: First, Bleed him in the Foot between the Claws, and

and under the Tail: Then stamp Wormwood and Rue with Bay-Salt, and it will Cure them, being applied to the fore places,

CHAP. IX. *For the Itch or Scab in Sheep.*

**VV** Ash the Scabby places of your Sheep with the Root of Camellion Noir and the Herb Bears-Foot boil'd both together in Water; it must be warm; and without any other thing they will be cured.

CHAP. X. *Herbs hurtful for Sheep.*

**S**everal Herbs are very noxious to Sheep, I shall instance the principal; First, Speart-wort, which usually grows in moist places, is thick and hard of digestion. Knot-grass and Mill-dew'd Grass are not good, Black Ellebore is very hurtful for Sheep or other Cattle, if they eat any store of it. Two-penny Grass, and dead Grass or rotten Fog, which is in low Commons and Meadows, is very destructive to them, and will breed the Rot in them, Hemlock and Mushrooms are naught for Sheep. Lastly, if Sheep eat Oak-leaves when they are green, it is bad for them; especially for young Lambs, for it will certainly kill them.

CHAP. XI. *Against the Gall in Sheep.*

**S**heep will stand shrinking their fore-feet together, if they are troubled with the flowing of the Gall; you must let him blood under the Tail, then give him to drink half a Spoonful of good Vinegar, and as much Aqua Vitæ mixed together, and he will be better.

CHAP. XII. *The Turning Disease in Sheep.*

**S**heep oftentimes hold their Head on one side, by reason of this Turning Sickness. Some Shepherds give Advice, that if the Sheep hold their Heads on the right side, ye must cut off the Horn on the left side, for under the Horn their lies a Worm which will be killed if you anoint it with Tar, and they will be well again.

CHAP. XIII. *Some Directions to increase Milk in Ews.*

**T**here is nothing better than altering of Pasture for the increasing of Milk in Ews; put them to graze sometimes in Valleys, sometimes on Hills, let them feed longest upon short Grass, if it be sweet; for there they eat most heartily; for touching giving them Fitches, Dill, and Anniseeds, and such like, Milk will spring much better by Change of Pasture.

CHAP. XIV. *For loose Teeth.*

**I**f your Sheep's Teeth be loose, let him blood in his Gums, and under the Tail, and afterwards rub his Teeth with Earth, Salt and Sage, and they will fasten.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV. *For the wild-fire in Sheep.*

**T**Here is a dangerous Sickness, which is called the Wild-Fire, that will infect the whole Flock, if not look'd after. Some bury the first infected Sheep alive, with his heels upwards, before the Sheep-Coat door; but it is very certain you may save your Sheep alive, if you take but Chervil, stamp it with old Ale, make a Salve thereof, and anoint the Sore therewith, and your Sheep will be sure to recover again.

*The Right Method for the Ordering of Cattle.*

## III. OF HOGS.

**T**Here are several Diseases which Hogs (as well as other Creatures) are incident unto, which you may find discoursed of in the Pages following, with Directions for the Cure of them.

CHAP. I. *For Imposthumes under the Throats of Hogs.*

**I**F your Hogs have Kernels or Imposthumes underneath their Throats, they must be let blood under the Tongue; and when they have bled sufficiently, beat some fine white Meal and Salt together, and rub and chafe his Throat and Groin with it, and he will do well. Others prescribe as followeth: You must give them six ounces of Garum which you may buy at the Apothecaries, then with a flaxen Cord bind it thereunto with Ferules of Wood, and hang them about his neck, so that they may touch the Imposthumes and Kernels, and it will certainly Cure them.

CHAP. II. *Directions to preserve your Hogs from the Measels.*

**I**N the heat of Summer, as from the middle of July to the middle of August, in which time are the hottest and Dog days, you must give your Hogs some cooling Herbs chopt small, as Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Violet Leaves, Fumitory, Dandelion, Sow-thistle, and such like, or the Leaves of Dwale, they must be mingled with their Wash or other Meat. These Herbs aforesaid are very good to keep them in a cool temper; you must use but a few of the Leaves of Dwale, for they are exceeding cold in Operation. For I must acquaint you that it is the great and vehement heat



beat of Blood in Hogs which doth breed the Measels. There will be Kernels in the outward part of the Body, which will appear in his Throat, and at the Roots of his Tongue, and you may first know his Infection, if he be hoarse, or rattle in his voice when he cries, it is a certain sign; then if you look into his Mouth, you may see the Kernels under his Tongue; thus you may know Measly Hogs. Likewise to preserve them from the Measles, put Mens Urine amongst their Wash, and it will keep them from it. Soap water and Fish water is naught for them, it will breed the Measles: Some say, if you often use to put Mustard amongst the Wash they eat, it will in a short time make them Measly.

Now it would be necessary to give you some Directions to Cure your Measled Hogs, for take all the care you can to prevent it, some may happen to be so. An approved Remedy to help them, is to shut them up in a Stry without any thing whatsoever, either Meat or Water, for the space of three days and three nights. Then make a hole in the top of half a dozen Apples, and take out the Cores, afterwards fill it up with Brimstone beat to Powder, and cover the Brimstone with Pieces of Apples, and so throw them to your Measly Hogs: First give him one or two, and so the rest, for being hungry he will eat them all; then after two or three hours give him a little Meat, and no more until the next Morning; then the next Morning serve him as aforesaid with five or six Apples as before is directed. Thus serve him five or six days, and he will be well again. Also some mix the Lees of Soap with some strong Lee of a Buck, and give that, and use them as the other before, and give him no Meat an hour or two after; and they say, this is a very good Remedy against the aforesaid Sicknes.

CHAP. III. *What Herbs are good, and what are bad for Hogs to eat.*

**T**HE Roots of Daffodils are very good for to cleanse the Lights of Hogs. Knot-grass is good for Hogs, and they love it marvellous well; it binds the Belly, and causes Urine; the Juice of it put into the Ears, helps the pains in the Head: These are the Herbs that are wholesome.

Likewise many there be that are not wholesome: The Herb called Goose-Foot, or the Camelson Thistle will kill Hogs, if they eat of them. If they eat of Henbane or Hemlock, which is so cold in Operation, that they are very nigh unto a cold Venom, and will make Hogs lie as if they were dead for some time; to Cure them, warm the Juice of Cucumbers, give it them to drink, for it will make them Vomit, whereby they will so thoroughly cleanse their Bodies, that in a short time they will recover their Health again.

CHAP. IV. *Of the Garget, Catarrh, and Staggers in a Hog.*

**F**irst, for the Garget, it is very noxious to them, and many are killed by it, you may know by a swelling and Inflammation in the Throat behind a Hog's Jaws. For to give him ease they do use to slit the Sore in the middle, and then flay up the Skin on both sides of it; afterwards they rub it with Salt within, and lay Tar without, and he does well. Some rub it with Nettles and Salt. Some mix burnt Alome with Plantane.

Hogs have sometimes the Catarrh or Rheum, which makes their Eyes water; it happens to them by eating a great deal of rotten Fruit, which breeds a corrupt Matter almost as bad as the Plague. For help, old Capers mixt with their Meat or wash is good, or Coleworts both Red and White put amongst their Meat is also good: Some mingle Marsh-Mallows with the Meat. Others boil Liver wort in honied Water and give it them. All these aforefaid are excellent things to stay the Rheum or Catarrh.

For the Staggers in a Hog, give him of the Herb called Stare-wort or Gall-wort in Milk, and he will amend.

CHAP. V. *How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hogs.*

**A**S long as your Hogs are lousie they will not thrive; be sure you keep them well in cold Weather, for it is thro' Poverty and want of good feeding in the Winter, they are so full of this Vermin. To rid them take Quicksilver, first kill it with fasting Spittle and Sallet-Oil; then mix therewith fresh Grease or Neats-Foot Oil, and so anoint them all over. Some melt Soap and Tar together, with the Powder of Staves-acre, and so anoint them with it. If Maggots breed in your Hogs Ear, or any other hollow place under the skin, drop the Juice of Hemlock into the hole, and they will die or avoid; also take but Oil and put in that place, all the Moggots will die or avoid the place incontinent, if they live; this has been well experienced by several Persons.

CHAP. VI. *How to spay a Sow.*

**Y**OU must first lay her upon some Form or Board, then with a Cord bind her Mouth fast, lay her so that her left side be upward; then take your Lancet and strip away the Hair two inches long, three fingers from the hinder Leg, and likewise from the edge of her Flank. Then with the point of your Lancet cut aslope her Belly thro' the skin two inches and a half long, so that you may put in your Fore-finger towards her Back, and there you shall feel two Kernels as big as Acorns on both sides the Birth, and with the top of your finger draw on to the slit, then cut the string with your Knife; so take out the other also, and cut them off,

off, then strike away the Blood and stitch up the slit again with a strong Thred. Be sure you have a special care of her Guts; then afterward anoint her with Tar, and so you may let her go.

## Of DOGS.

**D**OGS in their Kind are very useful, and there are divers sorts: First, *The Blood Hound*, used to find out Dear-stealers, or will scent out any Person that kills or steals any thing. Second, *The Slut-Hound* is also excellent, and will follow Thieves even thro' the Water, and will not leave off till they have found them. Third, *The Brache*, or *Rache*, good for scenting all sorts of Birds and Beasts. Fourth, *The Graze Hound*, excellent at seeing as the others are at smelling, he will separate his Game, and take the youngest and fattest, and not rest till he has killed it. Fifth, *The Tarrier*, excellent for Badger or Fox, they will creep into their Holes, and kill them or fright them out. Sixth, *The Tumbler*, is very cunning in catching Conies. Seventh, *The Leviner*, a Dog good for Swiftnes and Smelling, and expeditious in taking his Game. Eighth, *The Gray-Hound* is swift and strong, and by most reckon'd to merit the first Place among Dogs. Ninth, *The Spaniel*, there are two Sorts, one for Land, and the other for Water.

*How to chuse a Dog and Bitch for good Whelps.*

Take care they be of a good Kind, large Ribs and Flanks, and well proportion'd. A young Dog and old Bitch bring the best Whelps, and the Third Litter is accounted best. 'Tis said *January*, *February*, and *March*, are the best times for them to be lined; and if they couple when the *Moon* is in *Gemini*, or *Aquarius*, you will have more Dogs than Bitches, and they will never run Mad: At two Months end you ought to wean them, and not Hunt them till a Year and an half old at least. There are also Dogs of Pleasure, as, *The Shepherd's Mastiff* for watching his Flock, and the *Ban Dog*, for Bull, Bear, and Guarding the House. If the Shepherd would have his Dog fierce, pull them oft by the Ears, and set them to fight, tho' not hurt; tie them sometime to a Clog; let him loose at Night, and keep him ty'd up of Days. This makes him wakeful at Night, and sleepy in the Day. Let not Shepherds suffer their Dogs to eat dead Sheep, for fear they come to eat the Living. Cut their Tails at Seven Weeks old. When young, a little Worm is subject to breed under their Tongues, that makes them bark much; take it out with an Awl, and it prevents their growing Mad.

*For a Mangy Dog.* Take Quick-silver, Verdigrease, Wool, Oil, Brimstone Powder; mix all together, and anoint the place.



A Bitch goes with Whelps Eighty Days, and Whelps are Seven Days Blind. A *Grey-Hound* goeth six Weeks, and they are blind Twelve Days.

*For Mangy or Scabby Dogs.* Anoint with Oil of Bitter-Almonds. If his Ears are sore within, mix Tar and Hogs greafe, and anoint them, and it will make the Ticks and Lice to fall, to touch gently therewith.

*For Fleas.* Anoint with the Lees or old Dregs of Oil-Olive.

*To kill Itch in Man or Dog.* Take a Potion of Oil of Flower-de-luce, a good quantity of Brimstone beaten to fine Powder, the like Quantity of Elicampane Roots dried in an Oven, and beaten into fine Powder, with a Quantity of Bay-Salt dried and beaten to a fine Powder; mix all these with the said Oil, warm it, and anoint therewith. If you scratch and make it Bleed or Water, and then anoint it, it will do better. *Proved.*

## To Cure DISEASES in DOGS.

*For Worms.* Take New-Milk a Pint, put a good Quantity of Flour of Brimstone to it, and drink it Blood-warm.

*For the Mange.* Take strong Wine-Vinegar and Gun-powder, mix them as thick as Puddle, and anoint, and it kills it; or take an Oat-sheaff, burn it to Ashes, and make a Lee, and wash him thrice a-day, and let him Blood on the Cameril Vein behind, and it certainly cures him.

*For biting of Venomous Creatures.* Take Calamint, Turpentine, and Yellow Wax, beat them to a Salve, and use it. If you boil the Herb Calamint in Milk, and take it, it expels all poison inward.

*For Galling.* Yellow Wax, May Butter, and unslack'd Lime, three drops of Sweet Oil beaten to a Salve, anoint, it's a present Remedy.

*For any Disease in the Ears.* Take Chervil, Water, and Verjuice, and Four Drops of Vinegar, mix them Morning and Night, drop about Two Spoonfuls into his Ears. *Probat.*

*For Fleas and Lice.* Five handfuls of Rue boiled in a Gallon of Spring-Water, till about a Quart is consumed, strain it, put of Staves-Acre two Ounces powder'd; bathe the Dog with it warm. *Probat.*

*For the biting of a Mad Dog.* Burn three leaved Grass, or Honey-suckles, mix it with old greafe, and lay it to him; or beat the said Flowers with old White-wine, and give it him; or the Berries of Elder, or Juice of the Leaves given with White-wine warm.

*For all Madness whatever.* Take Juice of Hart's-horn eight Drams, or Dog's-Tooth, and give it; or the Roots of Eglantine powder'd and laid thereon.

*For Surbaiting.* Wash his Feet with Beer and Butter, then to the Soles of his Feet bind your red Nettles beaten to a Salve.

*For Sore Eyes.* Two leaves of Ground-Ivy chew'd, and spit the Juice into his Eyes Evening and Morning. *Probat.*

*For*

*For the Stone.* Gravel-seeds bruised and put into half a Pint of White-wine, and give it him. *Probat.*

*For Dogs weak and sick.* Take a Sheep's head, Wool and all, cut it into many Pieces, bruise it, boil it with Oatmeal, Penny-royal, a little Sage, give this Broth warm. *Probat.*

*For a Bruise.* Take Strong Ale Dregs, boil Chickweed and Groundfel in it till tender; bathe the swell'd or bruise'd Place: If inward, give him half a Pint of New Milk, and half an Ounce of Stone-Pitch, powder'd.

*For a Tetter.* Vinegar, Juice of Mint, Black Ink, of each a like Quantity, mix them with Powder of Brimstone to a Salve; anoint till it bleeds, and it will cure.

*For the Itch.* Elecampane Roots dried, Powder of Brimstone, Oil of Flowder de-Luce, of each a like quantity, and some Bay-Salt powdered, a grain of White Salt; mix all with the Oil, warm it, anoint, scratch, and make it bleed.

It is said there is Seven sorts of Madness in Dogs; the *Dumb Madness*, the *Running*, the *Falling*, the *Lank*, or *Lean Madness*, the *Sleeping*, the *Slavering*, and the *Hot Burning Madness*; and in my opinion the best and only Cure is to knock them on the Head for it.

If you are bitten by a mad Dog, it's the venomous Spittle of the mad Dog that infecteth, and it will make the Person bitten go Mad; and sometimes it will be about that Day Year; for it shall be known the Venom goes from the bitten place to the Heart, then to the Head, and next thorow all the Members, and its dangerous to touch such Persons as are infected, for the Venom will corrupt all Things near them. If Venom, be taken by Meat or Drink, then take Treacle and Wine that Sow-thistle is sod in; then be purged and bathed, and lastly let Blood. But first of all, Vomit or take a Glister to bring it down; eat Fat Meat, Filberds, small Nuts and dry Figs, for they draw, consume and waste Venome. Balsam and Woman's Milk helpeth the burning sore Ach thereof. Treacle fortifieth the Body, and wasteth Venome. Also, if you are bitten with a mad Dog, take a Hen or a Cock, kill him, and slit him strait, and all hot put it on the place, and it draws it out. Also Calamint, Seed of Wild Tares, Sea-Onions, Water-Creases, Rue, Balsam, Vinegar, Asses Milk, Child's-Piss, Garlick, Gentian, Mint, Ditany.

*To cure any Beast, Sheep, &c. bit with a mad Dog, or other Venomous Beast.*

Cut the Wound that the Blood and Venome may come forth; then give them Treacle, and lay Paisters of Nuts mixt with Garlick, Rue, and Salt altogether. If a mad Dog bite Hogs or Hounds, give them Juice of Plantain mixt with a little Milk, and let them Blood.

The

# The TABLE of the APPENDIX.

## I. OF OXEN.

**F**or the Cough in Oxen p. 2. For a beast's Hoof hurt *ibid.* For a Bruise on a Beast's Shoulder p. 3. For a Beast that has gotten Venome in his Tongue or Body *ibid.* Lice or Ticks to kill *ibid.* Against the swelling by eating of green Corn *ibid.* Quide lost in Cattle *ibid.* Worms in Cattle p. 4. Pissing Blood *ibid.* To help Pissing *ibid.* Gored to cure *ibid.* Calves to breed and cut p. 5. Cattle to Govern, and the ordering of Kine with their Calves *ibid.* Purging of Cattle p. 6. Fattening of Oxen p. 7. Murrain or Plague to cure *ibid.* Calves to rear *ibid.* Cow that has newly Calved, wanting Milk p. 8. Shoulder-bone out of Joint *ibid.* Cattle sick and will not feed in Pasture p. 9. A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be sound *ibid.* Flux, Cholick, or any such like Disease in an Ox or Cow to cure *ibid.* Stiffness or Soreness in the Sinews of a Beast *ibid.* Palate of a Beast's Mouth that is down, to cure *ibid.* Inward Diseases in Cattle *ibid.* For Bruises in general p. 10. To kill Worms in Cattle *ibid.* Gout in Cattle *ibid.* Cattle to purge *ibid.* Milk in Kine to breed *ibid.* Rot in Beasts *ibid.* Vomiting of Blood p. 11. Overflowing of the Gall in Beasts *ibid.* To draw out Thorns *ibid.* Cure for Feverish Cattle *ibid.* II. Of Sheep. Certain cure of Diseases in Sheep p. 12. Itch and Maggots in your Sheep *ibid.* Sheeps Feet *ibid.* Broken Bones in Sheep *ibid.* Glanders or Snivel in Sheep *ibid.* Sickness in Lambs p. 13. Necessary things to be observed concerning Sheep *ibid.* Red Water in Sheep p. 14. Itch or Scab in Sheep p. 15. Herbs hurtful for Sheep *ibid.* Gall in Sheep *ibid.* The Turning Disease in Sheep *ibid.* To increase Milk *ibid.* Loose Teeth *ibid.* Wild fire in Sheep p. 16. III. Of Hogs. Imposthumes under the Throats *ibid.* To preserve Hogs from the Measels *ibid.* Herbs good and bad for Hogs p. 17. Garget, Catarrh, and Staggers in a Hog *ibid.* Lice or Maggots in Hogs to kill *ibid.* To Spay a Sow *ibid.* IV. Of Dogs. How to chuse a Dog and Bitch for good Whelps p. 19. For a Mangy Dog *ibid.* For a Mangy or Scabby Dog p. 20. For Fleas *ibid.* To kill Itch in Man or Dog *ibid.* For Worms *ibid.* For the Mange *ibid.* For biting of Venomous Creatures *ibid.* For Gallings *ibid.* For any Disease in the Ears *ibid.* For Fleas and Lice *ibid.* For the biting of a Mad Dog *ibid.* For all Madnes whatever *ibid.* For Surbaiting *ibid.* For Sore Eyes *ibid.* For the Stone p. 21. For Dogs weak and sick *ibid.* For a Bruise *ibid.* For a Tetters *ibid.* For the Itch *ibid.* To cure any Beast, Sheep, &c. bit with a mad Dog, or other Venomous Beast *ibid.*



# THE Compleat Jockey:

O R,

The most exact Rules and Methods to be observ'd in Training up of Race-Horses: Shewing how to prepare them for any Heats or Courses; with the manner of their Keepings, Instructions for their Dressing and Looking to their Scourings, Diets, Matches and Racings; the like not Published to the World before.

*To which is Added,*

The most Experienced way for Buying Horses; and Instructions to avoid being Cheated upon the like occasion; with a Relation of the Cheats and Tricks the *Jockeys* and *Horse-Cour-sers* put on the unexpert Buyers.

---

CHAP. I. *The best Method, and speediest way for Ordering of Race-Horses, to fit them for any Match, in what Estate soever they be.*

**A**T such time as a Horse is matched, (or design'd to be matched) for a Race, or Course, let him, to whom the Horse belongs, or whosoever shall have the ordering of that Affair, be very circumspect in observing the Condition or Ability of Body in which the Horse is at the time of such his being matched, which chiefly ought to be taken notice of in three several Rules or Methods, the which I here shall undertake to lay down for the better satisfaction of those whom it hereafter may concern.

1. The first of which is, If your Horse be Foggy, Gross, or over-fat when he has been lately taken from Grass, or Soil.

2. The second likewise to be observed is, If he be more than ordinary Lean, either by Reason of too hard Riding, or any Disease has pulled him down by hindring his feeding.

3. Thirdly, If he be in good plight, and has had good keeping, dealt well by, and moderately rid or exercised.

Now

Now in the first of these you cannot take less than two Months, or ten Weeks, to bring your Horse into a fit condition for a Match, which must be done by moderately Dieting him and often Exercising him, which wastes the superfluous grease, and makes him long-winded, both which will make him more fit and apt to win the Wager laid upon his Head.

As for the second, If your Horse be exceeding poor, then about six Weeks space must be allowed, with good feeding and moderate exercise.

Now for the Third and Last of the fore-mentioned Conditions, which is a *Medium* betwixt both; lesser time will serve to fit him for the Match you do design to have him run. About a Month or five Weeks will be sufficient, if you observe the Dieting of him, which must be indifferently well.

But since I have given you an Account of the particular Estates or Conditions of Horses; so now I must give some Cautions therein to be observed: First then, Note if your Horse be fat and unwieldy, you must have a regard to his Exercise, for if he be over-free, and is willing to put out his Strength and Abilities to the utmost, so that his Flesh quickly fall away, you must restrain him, and not put him to too hard Exercise, for he cannot bear it, like those who are hardy by Nature, and grow fat with any Diet, or any reasonable Exercise.

Yet farther, If your Horse be in a poor condition by any hard or ill usage or disorder of Body, yet notwithstanding any thing in the like nature, grows quickly into good liking, and so continues for a considerable time; you need not, neither shall you be so tender of him as in the case of that just before-mentioned, nor at all restrain him from his Exercise, for if you do, he will soon grow unfit for your purpose.

Thus far have I thought fit to instruct such as are unskilful, or have not the most expedient Method, for preparing Horses for Races.

And now I think it most convenient to give my Reader a full satisfaction and ample Instruction as to the dieting and using of Horses, and lay open the Secrets most necessary to be observed by all, according to Truth and the most innate Sincerity. And first of the fat Horse, because in him are comprehended the other two, by reason he may be made lean, or between both, as the Master of him thinks most convenient, &c.

CHAP. II. *The Way and Manner of Dieting or Feeding a Horse to fit him for a Race, being Fat or Gross, immediately after his being taken from Pasture or Soil, as to the first two Weeks.*

**N**OW if you lay a Wager, or match a fat or unweildy Horse which has been made so either by being kept at Grass in long Idleness; or standing at the Stall, and there over-lavishly fed; to bring him to a fit Condition to perform your Expectation, for the first Fortnight you must be up as soon as Day appears, if not before, to attend him, and having put on his Bridle, which you must be sure always to let hang upon the Rack close by him, dipped either in Beer or Ale, which will not only put him in mind of his being Rid, but also make him the more familiar with it, and love it the better when on. This being done, cleanse the Stable of the Filth, and then fall to Dressing of him, which according to the best Method is as follows:

First, Curry him well in every Part, but begin with the Head, then his Neck, Back, and hinder parts, after that his Shoulders and Fore-legs as low as the Knees, that done, use your Dusting-Cloath, or some in the like Nature, and with it Dust him over in every Part, then rub him well with your hard Brush, beginning first at the Head, and omitting no Place whatsoever there, as the Temples, Nose, Ears, Under-jaws, and Fore-head, then proceed to the other Parts as before, not forgetting his Shanks, nor setting on of his Hoofs, going backwards by degrees till the whole Body be well rubbed; after that, take your wet Hand and stroke him over gradually, not leaving him rough nor wet in any part; then with your wet Hands or a soft Cloath rub gently his Yard, Testicles, Sheath, Ears, between his Thighs, and all others private Places whatsoever: After which, with a Hair-Cloath, or any other hard Cloath, if that be wanting, rub him over again, being sure to observe the rubbing of his Face well, as his Cheeks between his Jaws, and on his Fore-head, the rising of his Neck, and Fetlocks, and other places as you shall see Occasion.

Which being well done, take a clean Wollen-cloath something fine, and cleanse him with the same, beginning at the Head, and so proceeding as you were taught before, leaving no part unrubbed; lastly, with a Curry-Comb well wetted, comb out the Mane and Tail very decently; thus much for Rubbing and cleansing, which is as necessary in the ordering of Race-Horses, as their Meat. The next thing to be observed is, to cover his Body with a large Cloath for that purpose, either of thick Kersey, or thin Stuff according to the Season of the Year; or as heat or cold shall best agree with the Nature of the Horse, upon which put his Saddle, girting the foremost Girth very hard, but the other slack; then under it thrust two Wisps of clean Straw, which may stretch it to an equal straitness with the first, then putting a thick Breast-Cloath on, you may



mount ; but if you please you may first spirt some Beer or Ale into his Mouth, which will make him champ and feel his Bit the sooner, and be sure that your Stable be made clean before you bring your Horse in again, the Dung and foul Litter being laid at the Door, and it well stored with fresh ; for if the Horse stand not upon good store of Litter, and have it likewise to lie dry in, he will not thrive well nor seem so pleasant as he will with it ; for which Purpose, of all Straw, Wheat-Straw is the best, and must be used on this Occasion, unless it cannot be got, and then the next to it is Oat-Straw ; for both Rye and Barley-straws do much annoy your Horse, by reason the one doth cause him to be much troubled with the Heart-burn, and the other to loosen him, and make him scour extremely.

Being thus upon his Back, you must ride him easily for the space of half an Hour, for if you gallop or strain him presently you do him much Injury, by reason that it stretches his Sinews too much on the sudden, which is apt to ingender cold Humours in the Joynts and Nerves, so that the Horse will be stiff after it, if not carefully and quickly remedied by bathing his Legs with Oyl of Swallows or Earth-Worms ; but after by gentle riding they are made pliable, you may gallop him easily, but let it be by any means upon plain and firm Ground, or if you live near any steep Hills whose ascent is smooth and firm, let it be upon them, then walk him down in your hand a Foot-pace, or a small Amble, that so he may cool by degrees ; the best time to begin to Exercise is before the Sun rise, or as soon as it is risen at the farthest ; then after his Breathing, when he begins to be cool, lead him to some pleasant Sping or River, and there let him drink his fill.

Then Gallop him again, but not too hard ; when you have done so for about the space of a quarter of an Hour bring him again to the Brook or River, and let him drink if he so pleases, but if not, then give him a gentle Course or two to raise Thirst in him, the which no doubt will do it ; for take this as a general Rule, That before and after Water, you be sure to breath him gently.

After he hath drank three times, and been breathed the like Number, you may bring him home, and coming to the Stable-Door where the Dung and the foul Litter is laid, let him stand upon it after you are alighted from his Back for some time, and by softly tapping or hitting his hinder-Legs with your Switch or Whip, make him stretch them as far as he can backwards, and by pleasant Whistling, provoke him to Urine, which if he refuse to do once or twice, yet at last he will do it freely, and thereby you will preserve your Stable from filth and noisomness, which otherways would much offend the Horse.

He being come into the Stable, rub his Fore-legs with Wisps of clean Straw, putting all your strength thereto, but first, be sure tie his Head  
up

up close to the Rack in his Bridle, then his Breast, or Fore-Cloath being taken off, rub his Head, Breast, and Neck. After that unloose his Body-Cloath, and rub him well in every Part, but especially in the Saddle-place, his Saddle being hung up in his sight; and after he hath been well rubbed with dry Cloaths, cover him up again with a Linnen Coverer, and upon that put his Woollen Cloath, or more if the Weather be Cold; if Warm, they will be sufficient, but be sure to observe they are dry when you put them on.

After you have girted them close upon him, stop in little wisps of light Straw quite round him between the Cloaths and the Girts, let them by no means be Knotty or Hard, lest they hinder him of his Sleep, and make him lie uneasy by hurting his Sides; when he is thus cloathed, cleanse his Feet, by pulling out the Gravel or Earth that may have got into them, and with warm Cow-dung stop the same up close; after that is done, put about half a small Armful of Hay that is very sweet and good into his Rack, bound up as hard as possibly you can bind it, but first let it be cleared from Dust or Seeds as well as may be, and take not off his Bridle till he has eat it, or most of it, for it being bound up hard will make him pull it with more than ordinary eagerness, and then consequently he must eat it with a good Stomach, but let him not stand above one hour and a half in his Bridle, but having taken it off rub his Face, the ridge of his Neck, and each part of his Head with a rough Cloath made of Flax or Hemp, but the latter is the best, because if it be new, the smell of it is very wholesome, and being apt to make him Sneeze, will thereby cleanse his Head of gross and crude Humours lodged therein.

This being done, cleanse the Manger of all the scattered Hay, or other things offensive that may be in it, then take about two double handfuls of the best old Oats that are free from Chaff or Seeds; be sure they be the largest and fullest you can get, for the goodness of Oats is known by their weight, such as many do call *Polonian* Oats, or some more vulgarly cut Oats, for these of necessity are wholesomest and best; for if you give your Horse those that are Musty or Wet, they will cause several little Risings in the Horse's Body, or more properly termed Swellings, and such as be not old breed little Worms in the Belly and cause pain; it is very hurtful for to give your Horse any Oats that are not throughly dressed, for they will not only cheat him in his feeding, but make him slight them; nor are black ones to be allowed of, unless in time of Necessity, and then thy are not wholesome.

Therefore be sure when you give him his Portion of Oats, which must not exceed a Quart at a time, you must sift them so, that all the light Oats and Husks may fall away, and whatsoever else you imagine offensive, as Dusts or Seeds, Straw or other Grain, after which put them into the Manger, and observe whether he eat them heartily or not, if he do, you

may supply him with the like Quantity again, ordering them as the former, so depart and leave him to himself till about ten or eleven a-Clock, at which time, you coming again to him, rub his Head, Face, and Neck with the Hempen Cloath before-recited, then give him another like Quantity of Oats or somewhat more, order them also in the like manner before you give them to him, after which leave him for the space of two Hours, and let him remain, during that time, in as much Darkness as your Stable is capable of, and not only then, but always in your Absence; for the more obscure and dark he is kept the better he will eat his Meat, and the better will he take his Rest; for note, a Horse will seldom lie down in a Stable that is very light, unless he be much wearied either with Standing or Travel; to cause the more darkness, many are used to line their Stables, or at least the Stall where the Horse designed for Race stands, with Sacking or Canvas; not only to make it dark, but to keep him warmer, by sheltring him from the Wind and Dust.

After the end of the said two Hours, which is about one of the Clock, you must visit him again, and give him another the like Quantity of Oats ordered as the former, and rub his Head, Neck, and Face as before; which done, give him a small Bundle of Hay hard twisted together and let him alone to eat that by himself, and so let him continue till four of the Clock if the Days be long, but if short, not past Three.

Then according to the time come to him again, and the Stable being well cleansed, wet the Bitt of his Bridle in Beer, and so fasten the Reins of it to the Rack as soon as you have put it on, which being done, take off his Cloaths, and Dress him according to what you were taught in the Morning; he being well dressed, bring him forth and put his Saddle upon his Cloaths as formerly, and endeavour to make him Piss on his Dung and old Litter cast without the Stable, then as soon as you please you may mount him, and ride him as in the Morning, only let this difference be generally observed, that you ride him not up any Hills that are steep in the Evening, but upon the plainest and firmest Ground you can find; or if you will for change, sometimes in smooth green Meadows that are dry, or by running-waters if they lie convenient, or that there be any near you; and let him take all the Air he can, and often suffer him to gaze upon the Stream, but suffer him not to stand still, but keep him in a continual Motion, either Galloping or short-pacing, which many give Term of Raking; if he at any time as you lead him in or out of his Stable, offer to smell to any Horse-Dung, though not his own, hinder him not, for that will cause him to evacuate, and fit him the better for his Meat.

When he is well watered and well aired at the cool of the Day (or if it be within Night it matters not) bring him home (for note, there is nothing



nothing better to rid him of gross and foul Humours, than to be abroad with him early and late) and when he is come to the Stable, observe that nothing, according to former ordering of him be omitted, but all done with Care and Diligence, the which I hope by this time you have so well taken Notice of, that I need not to repeat it it over again; let his Diet be likewise the same, and let him stand at it by himself two Hours or more, according to the Season of the Year in his Cloaths; in Winter you may may let him stand till Nine before he has his Bait for all Night; in Summer later if you please: Then coming to Visit him you must give him near three Pints of Oats sifted, Dress him in every Part, give him a small Bundle of Hay in his Rack, and after having raised his Litter, leave him till the ensuing Morning.

Then betimes you must abroad with him again, and use him as you have been taught, so that in the space of two Weeks you may bring him to such a pass, as he will be fit to Ride or take any moderate Heat, but be ware how you strain him too much, for it will do him a great Injury; thus having after the exactest Manner instructed you as to the first Fortnight's keeping, I shall next proceed to give you Rules and Methods for giving him Courses, or as some term them Heats, &c.

CHAP. III. *Orders most carefully to be observed in the Coursing or Heating your Horse.*

**T**O begin with which, I must inform you that you must not give above two Courses in a Week, for if you do, you will spend him, too much, although he be never so lusty, and thereby weaken him, and make him unfit for your Race.

The next thing to be observed is, that one of the times must be upon the Day you design he shall run the Match; the two Days must be as equally distant from each other as you can divide the Week, therefore you ought to make your Match accordingly; Mondays and Fridays, or Tuesdays and Saturdays are the fittest if you can so model the Affair, for those Days have the most distance between them; if your Match be designed on the Monday let that and Friday be his Heating Days.

But if on Tuesday or Wednesday, then Saturday must be the other that must serve to both, because it is unseemly to do it on Sunday, and so you may observe of whatsoever Day it shall fall out to be, that you keep as near as you can equal distance of time between his Courses or Heats.

But again, you must be sure to observe in what Weather you ride him at such times; for if wet, that is, if it either Rain, Snow, or Hail, you must not give him any Heat till such time it be fair, unless Necessity urge it, as when it Rains most part of the Week or so; and then you must chuse the time when it holds up best, and let him be covered very warm, not only his Body but his Head, Neck, Ears, Breast and Shoulders; for his.

his Head you must provide a Covering made with little Bags to put his Ears in, and be sure you keep him abroad as little time as possible, for the damp raw Air will at such times endanger much his Health.

But to the last Particular that is to be taken Notice of in this Chapter; be sure if the Weather be fair and serene, get him Dressed, and abroad with him as soon as Day-light appears, but not before, by reason it is very incommodious in that Case both to the Horse and Man: And thus much concerning his Courses or Heats, which is the most necessary thing to be observed in preparing him for your Match; now to the second Order of his Keeping and Feeding.

CHAP. IV. *The manner of his second Fortnights Feeding, and the care to be observed therein.*

**I**N this, as in the former, you must be circumspect to observe the cleaning of his Stall, giving fresh Litter, and keep it lighted-up that his Bed may be always soft, add the old with his Dung and Stale cast out at the Stable-Door; then when you come to him in the Morning, give him a Quart or somewhat more of well-dressed Oats, dressed as you were taught before, e'er you put on his Bridle, which being eaten, Dress him in every part with such Cloaths, Brushes, and Combs, as you formerly have done, which being perfected according to the best of your Skill, Surfingle on his Cloaths, and then set his Saddle upon his Back, and ride him abroad, galloping and racing him moderately, and between each time of so doing water him, and let his bringing home and Stabling be in each Particular observed as in the foregoing Fortnight, the which you have been so amply taught, that I think there is no need of repeating it over again, only this take notice of, which is not yet laid down; when you have brought him into his Stall, before you pull off his Bridle take a wisp of the best Hay you can get, and holding it hard in your Hand after it is well dusted, let him eat it thence, and give him all the Occasion you can to pull hard at it, and if he devour it with a good Appetite, supply him with more, and do so three times at least if he will eat it, for by so doing you will bring him to be familiar with you, and win much upon his good-Nature; when he refuses to eat, or that you think he has eaten enough, take off his Bridle after he has stood in it about an Hour, then rub him all over, and dress him as formerly, which ended, give him his Bait of Oats in Quantity and Manner as has been often declared, but by no means forget to sift them. Then having his Diet-Bread by you pretty stale, which must be about three Days old at least, it being then the wholesomest and most commodious for him to eat, and after having eaten it to digest; the manner of making it according to the most skilful Prescribers, is as you shall be shewed in the following Chapter.

CHAP. V. *The first Diet to be given in the ordering your Race-Horse, and the way to make it.*

**F**IRST, To make this Diet-Bread, you shall take half a Bushel of the best Horse-Beans, well sifted from any Seeds or Husks, or three Pecks, if your Horse be a great Feeder; to the latter you must put one Peck of the best Wheat you can get, to the former Quantity proportionably; you may grind them, divided if you please, and so mingle them afterwards, but in my Opinion they will be best ground together, after which Dress the Meal as fine as you can, so that there be few or no Husks or Bran left in it; then take the best Ale-Yeast you can get, by no means let it be Sour or Dirty, about three Quarts will do, and put to that as much Water as will just make the Meal up into Dough, which must be Kneaded with all your strength in a Trough, or some such like thing for that purpose. If you are not strong enough to Knead it with your Hands you may tread it with your Feet, being sure to leave no Knobs in it, when it is thoroughly kneaded, cover it from the Dust, and let it remain the space of an Hour, then knead it again, and after you have so done, make your Loaves up about the bigness of Six-penny Loaves or bigger if you please, and after you have baked them exceeding well in an Oven, take them out, set them transverse to cool, that is, with their Bottoms upwards.

When you have kept them three Days, which you must do e'er you give any of them to your Horse for fear of making him sick, which if they do, he will refuse to eat it for the future.

The next thing to be observed is, that if the Bread be moist or clammy, so that it stick to his Mouth and he cannot freely swallow it, or do seem not to like it, you must cut it into thin slices and dry it in the Sun, or if the Sun shine not, in some Stove, or by the Fire, but not too hard, then take it and mix it with his Portion of Oats by smalling it amongst them, so that then he will eat it freely, and it will do him no harm, but be sure to pare away the Crust, but note that you must never give it him alone, but always being crumbled and mixed with his Oats, the Quantity of Bread you so mix must not exceed three or four slices at a time.

You having given him one Bait in the Morning about eleven or twelve a-Clock visit him again, and after well Dressing him, give him his Bait or Portion of Diet as before, both of Bread and Oats.

About two of the Clock or somewhat later if you design not to Course him the following Day, and so take the distance of time as has been formerly observed in all his Diets, only let his Motions be curiously observed, and each Action taken notice of, for by that you may know in what liking or estate of Body he is, and how he thrives upon his Diet.

Again



Again observe, that if you design to Heat him the Day following, you must not from the time just before-mentioned give him any Bread with his Oats, but let him eat them by themselves, and when he has eat them put him on his Bridle and Dress him well in each Part, the Manner of which I hope we need not now declare; then his Cloth being put on in decent Manner, clap on his Saddle and ride him abroad in the Air, gallop and race him gently, and let him take his Waterings as before, then bringing him home let him Stale and Dung at the Door, if you can get him to do it; and being brought into the Stable, after rubbing down, give him his Portion of Oats, but no Hay, for that is not convenient before a Heat.

Now I have given you a most exact Account concerning the Ordering and Dieting your Horse, the next thing necessary is, to inform you what Muzzles are most convenient for Race-Horses, and what is the Occasion of their being put on, and the Danger that there is in some of them.

First then, Muzzles were made to prevent Horses from Biting and Tearing their Racks, Mangers, and Stalls, to keep them from Eating Loam or Mud-Walls, their own Litter, or the like, which is very dangerous and hurtful to them; for it is not requisite they should eat any thing without your knowledge, or what you give them.

But as for these Muzzles there are many kinds, some close, some broad, others with little round holes in them, these are commonly made of Leather which often proves very annoiably to your Horse.

First then, Any Leather that is allomed is very hurtful to the Head by reason of its sharp Scent and Saltness, the next is that which is greased or dressed with course Oil, the smell of which often makes your Horse's Head ache, and causes him to leave his Meat, be Sick, and hard-bound, so that he cannot Dung kindly.

Now there are other kind of Muzzles that are very requisite which are much in use, which are made of Pack-thread or Whipcord: These are most convenient in the Summer-time, and will not offend the Horse, if you wash them once in two or three Days or have fresh ones to put on.

Another sort there are which are commonly used in Winter, which are made of strong Canvas fit for the Head of your Horse, so far as need require, and bound with strong Filleting on one side, a Loop being made, and on the other a String to fasten it round his Poll, and under his Chaps, some for warmth use to put a double Canvas, but take notice there must be a Breathing-place with Net-work just against his Mouth and Nostrils, to let the Air in and out, or else, if it be hard tied on, it will go near to Stifle him.

Thus much as touching Muzzles: Now I will return again to the Ordering your Horse, and give you a farther Account of several other Particulars in the Management of him, beyond what has already been-discoursed upon.

If

If in the ensuing Morning, you coming to visit your Horse find him laid, raise him not, but let him rest; but if he be upon his Legs take a Quart of Oats and wash them well in Beer or Ale, then dry them indifferently well and give him them to eat; and when he has so eaten them, put on his Bridle and rub him down exceeding well, after that, put on all his Cloaths and then for Sadling of him; after which, hold up his Head as high as you can reach, and into his Mouth break a New-laid Egg and oblige him to swallow it, after which spirt some Beer into his Mouth and carry him abroad to Air, observing at the Door as formerly. Being mounted, ride him gently, and by degrees increase his Pace till it come to a Gallop, and if he be so inclined let him smell to any Horse's Dung he meets with upon the Road.

Now I shall give you another Instruction worth observing; that is, The Day you are designed to run the Race, when you come within a Mile or less of the starting Goal or Post for that purpose assigned, take off his Cloaths, which being done, clap your Saddle upon his Back, sending some Person with his Cloaths to the end of the Race intended, and ride him on gently till you come to the weighing or starting-post; shew him the Post and make him as far as he is capable, sensible of what he designed for to be done withal.

The Signal for the Start being given, put him on at near three quarters speed, or if his Strength will allow it, more, but be sure you put him not to more than he is able to perform, hold the Reins pretty strait in your hand, but by no means check him in his Course, but let him run on chearfully and give him all the Encouragement you can, and so let him run the whole Race through.

If you, during the Course, find his strength to fail him, or that he begin to yield, give what Ease you can, and do not force him to too great a swiftness, but use him so that he may be at all times well pleased with his Courses and free to run, and so in a short time you will bring him to perfection, but if he be any way discouraged at first, he will never perform according to your Expectation.

Now the next thing material to be observed is, upon what Ground you run, and then consider which Ground your Horse takes most delight to run upon, for this may turn to your great Advantage, the which you may best take notice of in Heats or in his first Race, whether it be smooth, rough, dry, wet, or a little rising that he most eagerly covets, and for the future chuse it if possible in all your Races.

When the Race is ended, wherein if he have been exceeding hard put it, by no means let him stand still, but gallop him moderately about some green Field, the better to let him take Breath by degrees and cool accordingly, the which when you find he has pretty well

done have him into some dry Gravel-pit or other deep place out of the Wind, or if there be none convenient, then to the thickest Bushes or Trees you can meet with, and there having his Cloaths ready, with a large blunt Knife or some old piece of Iron or Wood, flat like a Ruler, yet having a blunt edge, scrape the Sweat off from his Body, laying the strength of both your Hands on the same till none appear in any part, and between whiles give your Horse a Turn or two, and then scrape him again till he has done sweating at which time pull off his Saddle, and scrape the place on which it was; likewise then with dry Cloaths, rub him in all parts, not omitting any place, exceeding well, put on his Cloaths and girt his Saddle on upon them, immediately after which, you must Gallop him gently for a considerable space, then rub him slightly, not taking off his Cloaths, especially from his Head and Neck; then you may alight and walk him in your Hand about the Heath or Field, but be sure you suffer him not to graze if he should offer it, and when you perceive him cool and dry, ride him home gently; you may gallop him softly if you please; when you come home to the Stable-Door endeavour to make him piss and Dung, but beware you put him not into the Stable till he be quite dry and very cool, where being entred, fasten his Bridle to the Rack, and have this following Dose in readiness, which you must give him in a Drenching-Horn, or some such like thing, which will cleanse his Body and much help Nature to recover Strength, if he be any ways weakned by Running.

C H A P. VI. *The Dose or Scouring is made thus.*

**F**IRST, get a Pint of the best Canary, and add to it one Ounce, three Drams of clarified Rosin beat into Powder, and stir it about in the Wine, then add more, half a Pint of Olive Oil the best that can be got, (for if it any ways stink it will make your Horse sick and cause him to cast it up again) and mix it well with the former, then take an Ounce and three Quarters, or if you will two Ounces of Sugar-Candy, beat it small and put it to the rest, all which being well mixed together, place them in an Earthen Vessel upon a gentle Fire till they boil, then take it off and let it stand till it be Blood-warm, and so give it your Horse, if he refuse to take it, you must force him to it by pouring it down his Throat, and holding up his Head till he have quite swallowed it down.

The Virtue of it is to take away the Scouring and sometimes by gentle Sweat all foul and gross Humours; that too much Heat or Over-straining had caused to gather in the Stomach and Bowels, it dissolves crewdy Grease that having been melted is again settled in hard Knobs, and brings it away in what Part soever; in fine, there is not a wholesomer Drink can be given to any Horse, especially after Running.

C H A P.



CHAP. VII. *The Way and Method of looking too, and keeping your Horse after he has taken this Potion.*

**W**HEN the Horse has taken it, then immediately rub his Legs and pull off his Saddle and all other his Cloaths, leaving him nothing on, then Curry him well, and after brush him, and with a Dusting-Cloath dust him, and again with a new Hempen Cloath or Cloath of Hair, rub his Body in every Part, but in so doing your greatest Pains must be about his Head, Neck, and Breast; this being perfected, put on his Cloaths and keep him as warm as possible, and put several handfuls of Straw under his Girts, and let him remain without either Meat or Drink for the space of two Hours, during which time you must watch him, and seldome let him stand still for fear of getting cold, during the time the Potion is in working; nay, Sleep or standing still (which he will chuse if he be left alone to himself) are alike dangerous, by reason that the Blood and Vital Spirits have not their Operation so well as in times of Motion, nor the heat of the Body power to force up the Humours that lie as it were absconded in the several Parts. When he has stood in his Bridle, and fasted so long as is before-mentioned, or if you think convenient somewhat longer; then take Ears of Wheat about one Hundred<sup>e</sup> and offer them to him to eat, but let them not be bearded in any wise; but e'er you suffer him to take them, feel him all over in what Condition or Estate of Body he is, and if you find him Sweat on a sudden, or any cold Clamm overspread his Limbs, which many call a cold-Sweat, or if you observe him to Pant, Tremble, or fetch his Breath short, with-hold your Hand, and give not any thing; for if you do, it will much indanger him, these being the Symptoms that the Potions has not done working, but that it is striving with the vicious Humours and foul Indigestures of the Body, therefore put on his Slip, and taking off his Bridle, stop all the Lights of the Stable, the better to keep it Dark, and secure your Horse from too much Air, and let him take his Ease in your Absence for the space of two Hours or more, by which time the Potion will have done working, and his Sicknes will pass away.

Then coming to him again, if you find him well, you may give him the Ears of Wheat by four or five at a time till the whole Parcel is wasted, after that, if he will eat any more you may suffer him to have the like Quantity again, and after them a small Bundle of Hay bound up very hard and thrown into his Rack; but during the time of his eating it, be sure to rub him over as you have been taught; but more-specially his Head.

Within the Hour following give him his Quantity of Oats as before, mingling with them a Pint of husked Beans, as clean from Husks and Dust as can be, then take three Slices of Bread and (the Crust being cut away) crumble them among the Oats and Beans, and so give them to him and after he has eaten let him stand about two Hours and a half, or three if you please.

Then coming to him give him some Bait again of each the same Parcels as before, then Dress him down well and put on his Cloath, but put not on his Saddle, nor Back him, neither let him have any Water that Night, but keep him within Doors, for if you do otherwise you will endanger your Horse.

CHAP. VIII. *The Manner of making these Balls and their Vertue, with an Account of what Diseases they are most powerful to cure.*

**T**AKE the Power of Elicampane Roots, Cummin-Seeds and Fenugreek-Seeds, of each two Ounces beaten and sifted as fine as you can possible, to which put two Ounces of Sugarcandy, Brown if you please, beat that likewise: Fine Flower of Brimstone the like Quantity, one Ounce of the Juice of Liquorice, then wetting them with half a Pint of White Wine set them over the Fire, after which take one Ounce of the Chymical Oyl of Anniseeds, and three Ounces of the Syrup of Colts-foot, add to these of Olive-Oil, Honey, and Syrup or melted Sugar, all of them being the best you can get, one Pint and a half, that is of each half a Pint, proportionable, then mingle all these Ingredients together, and thicken them into Paste with fine Wheat-Flower, and so make them up into Balls for your use; you must not make them above the bigness before-mentioned, or if you please you may make them up as you use them; put them or the Paste up into a Gally-pot and stop it close, and it will keep a long time,

For the use of them take these Instructions, for their Vertues are very great.

First then, if you use them for any Sicknes or Dulness in your Horse, anoint or rub them over with Sweet-Oil or Butter, and so give them to him each Morning as you were taught before, and after give him a gentle Breathing and let him drink, but if the Weather be foul, take him not out.

But if for Cold, or any Infirmary in his Stomach, you may give them to him till you perceive it wasted and gone.

The Vertues of them are for several other things, as Glanders, Heavings, to purge away any molten Grease, to recover a lost Stomach, Faintings and Heart-Qualms, and to make any tolerable Horse Fat to Admiration, but  
to

to your Race-Horses you must give for strenghtning and cherishing the Spirits. But now the fourth and last Fornight for preparing your Horse, which must begin with his last Diet.

C H A P. IX. *The Manner of making his last Diet.*

**I**N this you must use three Pecks of Weat, and but one of Beans; and let them be ground together upon the Black Stones as small as possible they can be, then Dress it through an exceeding fine Dressing-Cloath; for Note, that every Bread must be finer than the former: Then put to it the formentioned Quantity of Ale-Yeast, but be sure it be not sowre, nor the Grounds. Then knead it together, and make it up into Loaves as formerly; but to this, above what has been spoken of, you must add the Whites of two or three and twenty Eggs, and instead of Water put Milk, so much as will make it up.

They being baked, let them stand their usual time, and then cut the Crust away, or as some call it, chip them, after which, dry a Quart of Oats-well, and after that sift them, so that there be no defect left in them, to which put your Beans in like manner ordered, at the usual times, them all three mingled together to him.

As for his Heating and Courting-Days, the first Week they must be punctually observed, but the second you must bate him one, that is, Heat him but once, and must be Monday's Heat. After he has stood one Hour more in his Bridle, you may take three Pintsof Oats, and steep them in Beer or Ale for a short time, and then give them to him, and they will much cherish him, and allay his Thirst.

This being done, about an Hour's space after, you shall give him the former Quantity of Beans, Oats, and Bread in the same Order, and Manner, or if you think it more convenient, you may give them severall, and not mingle them; let him by no means want for feeding at Night, for when you make him his last, give him not only his Bait, but leave him a Bundle of Hay in his Rack bound up very hard.

Next Morning, as soon as Day appears, you must give him his first Diet, then rub him well in every part; after which, put on his Cloths and Air him, that is, Ride him abroad, and use him as formerly, permitting him to drink freely; both Gallop and Rack him, but do not Ride him hard.

When you return, Dress him, and feed him with Oats, Beans, and Bread as heretofore, and some Hay, but not so much as you were used to give him.

As for your Heating Days, they must likewise be observed in all points as formerly, nor upon any Occasion neglected, unless upon such as has been



been declared, nor must you encrease them, nor strain your Horse more than you were wont; four Heats or Courses will be sufficient for the first Fortnight, and four Purges or Scowrings for the whole time of his being made fit for Racking, all which must be observed with diligence and caution, according to the forementioned Methods and Instructions; but now to the Third, &c.

CHAP X. *The Third Fortnight's Dietting and Ordering your Horse.*

**N**OW for the Manner of making his Bread, it must be as followeth, finer than formerly was wont, must it be made; therefore take but two Pecks of Beans, and with fine Wheat make it up a Bushel, let them be ground together as formerly, and dressed exceeding fine, so that there be hardly a Husk or a Bran to be seen; then with a like Quantity of Yest as before, mingle the Meal and add Water to it, so much as is just sufficient to make it stick close together; when it is well kneaded and worked up, you must Bake it as you have been taught.

After which, it having stood about three Days or somewhat more, pare away the Crust and give it your Horse, (that is) three Slices crumbled amongst a Quart of fine dressed Oats and a Quart of split Beans; your Observance shall be in these as in the former two Weeks, his Dressings, Airings; times of Feeding, and likewise his Heating-Days must be particularly observed. And take Notice of this.

That you must not, after he has been heated, give him any of the Scowring, but that being laid aside, give him in the room of it Balls about the Bigness a Pullets-Egg, which are great Cordials and Restoratives, and you must give him one at a time; thus sitting in the Saddle or otherwise if you please, hold up his Head as high as is convenient, and put one of them into his Mouth and oblige him to swallow it, but before you give it him you must rub him down, or according to your Match; for you must not heat him for four or five Days before you intend to run your Race, but you may Air him very well, and give him gentle Breathings, that he may in no wise lose his Wind, but give him none of the forementioned Scouring Drink.

One thing more I have considered to quicken his Spirits and make him lively, which is to burn Storax, Olibanum, Frankincense and Benjamin mixed together, which drive away all ill Scents and Airs, and there is nothing more wholesomer for the Brain,

As likewise, when you give your Horse his Oats, Beans, and Bread, wash the two former in neither Ale nor Beer, but take a Pint of Muscadine, about the Whites of ten Eggs, and steep them therein, but you need not do it above four times in a Week; at other times give them to him dry as formerly.

Beware

Beware likewise how to give him any Hay, unless immediately after his Heats, and then holding a small Wisp in your Hand let him pull it thence by degrees, but if his Belly be apt to shrink up, you may give him more to keep it strait.

Again, all the last Week if your Horse be given to eat his Litter, you must keep him muzzled as you have been formerly taught, but if he be not subject to the same, nor to eat any other foul thing, three Days before you Run him will be a sufficient space to keep him muzzled.

The Day-Morning before you intend to Run him, you must Air him gently, and when you have brought him Home, Dress him and Rub him as formerly, and be sure to Diet him exceeding well, omitting no Point, neither before nor after his being carried abroad, only towards Night you may stint him of the third part of his usual Bait, but let his last Diet be full Proportion, as likewise his Dressing; another thing is also to be observed, which is, that you must not keep him out late, but let him be in his Stable at Sun-set or before, and likewise the Day before the Match you shall Shooe him, Poll him, and all things else that you shall think convenient for fitting him out in the best wise, but beware that it be not unskilfully performed, for then you may much injure your Horse, or give him some cause to be offended at your Curiosity, or as many call it Adornment. It is reported by some who have had long Experience in this Way and Manner of ordering of Horses, that several are so skilful as to understand the meaning of such Ornaments, and what they are to be put to, the next Day, which makes them conceive such Pride that they will not eat any Meat till the time they have run the Race, unless it be forced upon them.

It is true, all Authors that treat of Naturalities do affirm that Horses are most knowing and subtil Creatures, and that they are endued with many noble Qualities and generous Perfections.

Now for Brading their Tails and Manes, and tying Ribbons on their Forehead, or at their Ears, I hold altogether unnecessary, for so doing does not only offend him, but many times hinders him in the performance of his Race, by reason that they make him cast his Head often to look at them, and if he has not been used to them, many times make him start out of his Way, and so lose his Ground; therefore in my Opinion, only to Comb out his Mane and Tail (and if they be too cumbersome you may clip them a little) is the best Method in that Case.

Be sure there be nothing left undone that you intend to do to him, till the Morning he is to Run, for if there be, it may chance to vex him, and thereupon some Horses will grow Sullen, and will not run freely.

The Morning you are to Run, make him a Visit before it is well light and after you have pulled off his Muzzle and rubbed his Head in every  
part

part thereof, offer him a Quart of Oats steeped in a Pint of Muskine or Tent, but before you put them in, bruise them a little; if he chance to refuse it, put him some Oats in the Whites of Eggs only; or to be better sure of his eating some of the best and finest Bread, and some whole Wheat, well sifted and dressed, mingled with Oats, in which you must use no Beans; but be sure you give him but a little of any of these Diets, for if you fill him he will be unfit for the Race and may fail your Expectation, which, otherwise he no doubt would have answered in each particular to your great Satisfaction.

If he empty not his Body freely, take him abroad and air him a little, and see if you can possibly get him to Dung and Urine, the which if he do (the which no doubt by this time you will have taught him to do) bring him into the Stable again, and put his Muzzle on; but on the contrary, if he will empty without any further trouble in the Stable, 'tis needless to lead him out, and far better to let him remain till the time you are designed to run, or about half an Hour before, according as the distance is from the place he is kept to the starting-place.

Just as you are going to lead him, dip the Bitt of his Bridle in Muscadine or Alicant, and then drawing off his Muzzle, draw on his Bridle, but if you see him inclinable to empty, let him do it before, and to incite him to do it more speedily, give him about a Pint of washed Oats, Bread and Wheat as before you did; then spread soft Wax, such as Shoemakers use under your Girt and Saddle, which done, girt it gently on his Back, so that he scarcely feels it is on; then spread a large white Linnen Cloath over his Saddle, and over it all his other Cloaths, which likewise being slightly girt, stick wisps under his Girts or Surfingles, but let them be very soft; then cover him with some piece of rich Tapistry or Cloath of State to make him shew Gallant, after which pour down his Throat with a Drenching-Horn one Pint of Muscadine, Alicant, or for want of either, Canary.

Then lead him forth with Courage, and suffer him to move gently, and if he offer to smell to any Dung either old or dew, suffer him by any means to do it, or if he offer not, endeavour to make him do it, for it will cause him to evacuate, which will much lighten him and help him in the Race; nay, use double-diligence herein, by leading him to such places as you think will soonest provoke him to it, as heaps of Rushes, Brakes, or Heath, little Bushes, high tufted Grass or the like, but if there happen to be no such in your way, then you may spread, and light up some Straw under his Feet, making him rustle; then whistle, and touch him gently with your Switch or Whip to make him stretch, the which no doubt will effect your desire.

Again,



Again, if he Foam at Mouth by Champing hard upon his Bitt or otherwise, you must take Care to have a fine Linnen Cloth ready to wipe it off, and a Vessel of fair cool Water, to cleanse and wash his Mouth still as you observe Froth or Foam to rise.

Then having walked him gently to the Place designed for Starting, you must take off all to his Saddle, and having rubbed him down with care in every part (which must be done with hard Wisps) search and cleanse his Feet, and spirt some Water into his Mouth; after which, your self or whom you assign to ride him, may take his Back, and observing the fair Start put swiftly on, and run the Match.

— No doubt with good success; for this manner of Ordering will seldom fail your Expectations, if your Horse in himself be but sound and of good mett'd Limbs and strength to bear him out.

Now I shall give the Curious to understand as necessary a Point belonging to Horses as has ever been discoursed of in any Tract whatsoever, the which will be very useful for all those whose Employ it is to Trade in Horses, and be as the Seller's Card, to direct them in that Affair, and keep them from being over-seen or cheated in any Market or Fair whatsoever; with each particular Observation, Rule and Method to be taken Notice of in the Limbs, Body, and Head, as Eyes, Mouth, Nose, Ears, and the true Manner to know a good Horse from a bad.

But to begin, First, There are these things to be observed if you will chuse a Horse that shall be for your Turn, and please you in every Part and in all his Actions, Travels or other Labours, as Hunting, Racing, War, drawing of a Coach, Chariot, or any Rural Service whatsoever, but take Notice that no one Horse can be capable of all these.

Therefore you must chuse your Horse according to what you design him for, and so manage him accordingly.

But to Imperfection in general, the which I will undertake to demonstrate in the sound Horse, who is no ways defective, because in him may lively appear all the Maladies and Mischances that may or can befall any Horse whatsoever.

First then, be advised, That whenever you design to buy a Horse, take especial notice of all his Parts, and the full Proportion of his Body, according to his natural Shape, or if you can observe any Imperfection in his Limbs that may arise by accident, whereby they are lessened or made bigger, take especial Care you find out the Cause of it, if possible, by which you may know what you buy, and whether to like or dislike him.

In which, Your Observances in Election must be drawn from two Heads, the first of which is general, the latter peculiar or proper.

For the first of which, it is to be understood upon what Occasion you buy your Horse, or for what use he is designed, what Colour is best

or best pleases you ; next his Stature, Breed and Likeness, these are general, because every Man in this will please himself according to his Fancy, nor ever can we imagine all Men to be of a Mind in this, therefore it is best to let them chuse according to their own Pleasure, nor much matters it.

The next, which is a peculiar or a particular Query, to know what Country Breed he is of, whether English or Foreign, to know which, you must enquire of those who have had the Breeding of him, or if that cannot be known, by reason of his being so often bought and sold, take these particular Observations ; if he be *Spanish* Breed, his Limbs are small and strait, dry and spare like a Hart's ; if *Barbary*, a fine little Head, and a well-set Breast and Shoulder ; if of *Naples*, he is Hawks-nosed, and clear-ey'd, his Eyes seeming to sparkle ; if *Dutch* or *Flemish*, his Legs will be generally rough, and large Hoofed ; as for *French* and *English*, they are almost alike, only the *English* are stronger set, and more hardy for any Exercise whatsoever.

Now to his Colour, for the Colour of a Horse is much to be observed, by reason one Colour is far better than another, tho' there be good Horses of all Colours ; the best Colours, as the most experienced do affirm, are the Roan, the White, the Lyard, the Bay, the Sorrel, the Dapple-grey, the Flea-bitten, the Black, Iron-grey, and White, but above all, the Bay is chosen and accounted the best, both by the *French* and the *English*, especially if they have a Star in their Fore-heads, and their Feet spotted with white Spots, the Lyard for Courage is esteemed, which is a mingled Roan, the Mouse-Dun and Grizled were formerly in great esteem, as also the Dapple-grey, and such as come nearest them, the Iron-grey, the White Sorreland Brown-Bay, *Plato* commendeth much the White, whom *Virgil* does not esteem ; others commend the Black, especially if he have a white Star in his Fore-head, or be streaked with White down his Face ; the Black if he be not mingled with Silver-Hair, nor have any White about him, is naught for Service, the Flea-bitten Horse is always singular good for Travel and other Labours, and will hold out the best of any ; the Yellowish or Glewed, unless he be spotted or streaked with White, is naught, yet if he be well marked he often proves indifferent well ; and if he have a black Lift down his Back from the Nape of his Neck to his Tail, he is excellent good for a Stallion if his Proportion be according ; the Red-Bay, and the Blue-Grey are much subject to Melancholy. The Flea-bitten and the Black with White are Sanguine ; the Roan, the Sorrel and the Black without White subject to Choler.

But as to their Paces, which are these, Trot, Rack, Amble or Gallop, the which you must chuse, according as you design to put him to, either for Racing, Hunting, Travelling, or Fight ; if it be for moderate Travelling,

velling, an easy Trot is best, the which you may know if he be prone to by observing his Legs:

Thus, when his Near Fore-Leg and his Off Hinder-Leg move together, or his Near Hinder-Leg and his Off Fore-Leg; and farther observe, that if when he moves, he be quick to raise his Legs from the Ground, and do it short and with an even distance, making but little Treads, he will likewise Pace very well; for if he lift up his Feet blandringly or carelessly, it denotes he is given to Stumbling, and will be oft troubled with Lameness; if he strikes his Legs a-cross or take no widess in his Steps, it denotes he is subject to Trip, Interfere or Fall; if he take not his Step even, it shews an unwillingness to Travel and a weakness in his Limbs; if he tread large Steps he is subject to over-reach and Strain himself, if he be put to the Speed.

Again, if you chuse a Horse for ease and pleatant Journey, you must chuse an Ambler, which you may know thus; if he move both his Legs on the same Side together, Fore-Leg and Hinder-Leg, and that he must do, large, nimble, and easie; for if he tread short and shuffling he is no good Ambler; yet if he be very nimble at his first beginning to Pace, it denotes he cannot long hold it.

Now for hunting either of Buck, Stag or Hare for Speed on the Road, or to Ride Post; if you chuse a Horse then you must take one who has naturally, or has been taught the Racing Pace, which neither Trot nor Amble, but between both, and is the easiest of all, though it gain not so much Ground, the which you may observe by the same Method as you did Ambling.

The next I have to treat of is Galloping, which is natural to all the former Paces but the Amble; for an Ambling Horse will immediately be brought to Gallop, by reason it consists almost of the same Nature with it, only a slower and not so much straining; for it being a swift Pace, by long use has so inured the Horse to it that he cannot without some time and instruction frame his Leggs to it, but will fall into a Pace; if he be overmuch spurred, beaten or forced, that can properly be called no Pace but a confusion of all together, but perfects all things, so in time you may bring him to Gallop as you please if no Imperfection in his Limbs restrain him.

Now I shall lay down such Observations as you may infallibly know a good Galloper by. First, If he raise his Feet swift and clearly from the Ground, but not too high, and that he neither rowl nor boggle in his way, nor striketh his Belly with his Feet. If he take large Reaches with his Fore-Legs, and his Hinder follow quickly, in which you must observe that he do not cut under the Knee or on the Shank, which is called by some the Galloping, but by others the Swift-cut, or that he throws not his Legs



cross, or twist them as it were, nor that he set one Foot upon, or clap it against the other, but that he keep him steady and even in all his Course, and still with his Fore-Foot Head the Way.

The Horse who has these Properties always Gallops most neatly, and a Man may trust to him in any time of Danger, that is, if he be beset with Thieves, or pursued by an Enemy in time of War, if he be but able of Body and well kept.

If your Horse raise all his Feet together, and Gallop as it were on a Heap, or Round, then he is not Swift, but will tread sure and hold out well, by reason of his strength of Limbs, and is fit for War, or carry Double.

Again, Observe if a Horse Gallops but softly and treads firm, not being subject to Fall nor Stumble, yet his Legs seem tender, and he lifts them up as it were in fear, and throws them in and out as if he was hurt or pained, then he is not for Galloping uses, nor never will he, by reason he has some obscure Disease or stiff Lameness in his Joints that is hard to remove.

Now as to his Height or Stature, the which must be observed according to the Use you put him to, or as your self shall think fit, a well-made Horse with strong Joints, but not much Flesh upon his Legs, you must chuse about sixteen Hands high if you take one for carrying double or any other great Weights; as likewise for drawing either in Cart, Waggon or Coach, and if for Recreation only, the finest and neatest Limbed and Shaped you can light of, and not exceeding fourteen Hands in Stature, or if you please less, according to the Proportion of your own Body.

Thus far having given you, as I well hope, a satisfactory Instruction, I shall now proceed to inform you of the Deformities and Imperfections, secret Distempers and Infirmities, that lie hidden many times from the Eyes of the Buyer, the which are not a few, so that it would be almost impossible to discover them all, so that every one might understand them; therefore I shall endeavour to give you as plain and full an Account as is necessary, or that can be understood according to the best Opinions of the Skilful.

To begin then, When any one offers you a Horse to sell, after you have seen him tried, as to the former Experience, and understand his Age, and Breed, then cause Saddle and all other his Cloaths, nay, his very Bridle, if so be you can get him to stand still without it, to be took off, and then place your self just before him and look wishfully upon him, and take especial Notice of his Countenance at all times, whether he look pleasant and lively, well and stedfast, without Change or Alteration; the which if he do, it is a Sign that he is of a good Spirit  
and

and in good Health as to Bodily Sicknefs or inbred Difeases; the next thing to be observed is his Ears, for if they be thick, stiff and taper from the Roots to the Tips, as also long or of a convenient Size, well fastened and strong at the Roots, it is a great sign of Mettle, perfection Comaleatnefs, for fuch Ears are an Ornament to any Horfe.

But if they be contrary, as thick at the Ends, lolling, and often moving, it denotes him Dull, Sloathful, Heavy and Stubborn, and of a very ill Temper.

Now if his Face be clean, and his Fore-head rifing, the Similitude of a Feather in his Fore-head, upon his Cheeks or any part of his Face, but it is the greater Sign if it be above his Eyes, or if he have a white Spot, Star, or Streak of a pretty large Size drawn even, or a Snip of White upon his Nose it is a Sign he is Good and Beautiful.

But on the contrary, If his Face feem Swelled, Bloated, Puffy, Fat, Dull, Cloudy or Lowring, his Fore-head Flat and Sqare, with the vulgar Term of Mare-faced, the Rach, if any he has in his Front, ftanding very low, or in the middle of his Face, his Star or Streak uneven or crinkled, his Nose ball'd or raw, and the Hair in many places off from his Face, are very bad Marks and Signatures of great Deformity.

Again, If his Eyes be fhiniug, full and round, ftand Eagle-like, out from his Head, and little or none of their Whites to be feen, if they be full and sparkling, it denoteth him Chearful, Swift-fighted and Comely, full of Spirit and of good Nature, yet Fierce and Fiery.

But if his Eyes look askue, feem dull and withered, little and flow in Motion, they denote much Imperfection, and are unhandfome to behold; if they are the Colour of Foxes or Ferret's-Eyes, he will be quickly Moon-eyed, or Wall-eyed, if not timely prevented, Blind; if he chance to have a thick dull Film over it, and in it white Specks; it not only fhews Timoroufnefs in your Horfe, but fubjection to a cauflefs Starting, and alfo in danger of having a Pin and Web, or white Skin over his Sight; if they run either Water or Matter, or feem Bloody or Raw, they proceed from an old Surfeit, or an Over-heating, which was done by immoderate Riding; Corruption ingendring in the Head by exceeding Draughts or the like, as dead Eyes that are low funk do; that if he lives long he will be Blind, and that he was gotten by a very aged Stallion and is of no good Breed; if the Whites be as much feen as the Black, it fignifies great Weaknefs, Unnatural and fullen in himfelf.

Again, If you obferve by feeling or otherwife his Chaps or Jaw-Bones Lean, Spare, and large fpaces between them, his Wind-pipe and Wind great, not furrounded or incumbred with Nerval fmall Ropes or the like; and that his Neck feems to fhoot through the Jaw, or be placed in the neather part of it within the fame; it is a Token of a large

large and strong Wind, and that your Horse will hold out a Race very well, if all his Limbs be proportionable, and that he is of a good Heart, and has a Head not subject to Diseases: But on the contrary, if his Jaws be Fat, Gross and full of Kernels or Cnobs, and that there is but a little space between the Bones; it denotes Short-wind, Foulness of Stomach and Belly, and subject to Glanders, Broken-winded, or Strangury, and many times apt to be troubled with grievous Colds.

Now if his Jaws be close and firmly fixed, as it were to touch each other, so that they cause the Flesh to rise about them, as if swelled, it denoteth Short-wind, gross and vitious Humours settling there, and especially if it rise more in one place than in another, and the form of the Risings be long, for then some inward Infection is gathered, which if not taken in time will turn to an Imposthume or worse.

If he have wide Nostrils, and they open and shut, and seem in a continual Motion, so that the insides or redness upon every little Straining or Snorting appear, yet the Compass of his Nose but small, his Mouth not wide but deep, with small dry Lips, meeting without the least hanging over, do likewise promise the Horse good, and well-winded, courageous and hardy.

But if contrary, quite otherwise; as short-winded, tender and weak, a shallow-mouthed Horse will never bear his Bridle well, but if it be not buckled fast, the Bitt will be apt to fall out of his Mouth, or he will be much apt to flaver.

Again, If his Upper-Lip be uneven, and will not meet with his Under, but either shut over or flap, it is a certain Sign that he has a lingering Disease, or is exceeding Slow, as also if he has a Rheum or Dropping at the Nose, if that be clear, it will, if not timely stopped (the which it is hard to do) turn to the Glanders; if one Nostril runs it is worse than if they did both.

Now as to his Teeth; be sure to observe that when you buy a Horse, to look into his Mouth, and take a diligent Care to see if he have lost none of his Teeth, or if he have, what they are, whether Grinders, Fore-Teeth or Tusks; for thereby you may give a shrewd Guess at his Age, although the Mark be out of his Mouth; but to avoid being Cheated, by not a Horse that has lost any, for if he have lost some the rest will quickly follow.

The next thing to be considered is his Breast, for if that be Broad, strong set, rising, or full-fleshed, and adorned with Marks or Feathers; then you may confide in his Strength, and he will not deceive your Expectations; but if he be contrary, it denotes weakness of Body, and unfitness for Labour, and that he is given to that ill Quality in Horses, viz. to Stumbling, as likewise to Cutting and Tripping as also if his Breast



Breast seem to sink, or give inwards, it shews him of no Courage or Mettle.

The next thing to be considered is his Legs; that is, his Fore-Legs only, of the Hinder hereafter I shall Treat: First, Observe the Joynt next to his Shoulder, which is properly called the Bow or Elbow, and from thence his Thigh as low as his Knee, and observe they be well Sinewed and Covered with Brawny Flesh, no ways giving out nor tumid, and that he stand firm without bending or moving his Joynts, which if he do, it is a Sign of Strength, as likewise they are all Marks of the same.

The next is to observe if he carry an even or equal Pace with his Legs, but especially with his Knees, and that they be neat, well knit and not too Fleishy, of a just Proportion; for take notice, if they differ in Magnitude, he has had his Knee broke, or else some Distemper harbours there, as the Gout, &c. if, you find any Cuts or Scars with Hair growing in them, he is apt to Fall, which will be hard to cure or rid him of.

Then leaving his Knees, observe his Shanks as low as his Fetlocks, and if they be well sinewed, finely made and shaped proportionable to his Thighs, and that they neither bend in nor out, and that there be no Ridge nor Seam descending from the Knee-Joynts on the inside, then is he good and sound in those Parts; but on the contrary, if there be Scars, Scabs, or Knobs on the inside, it is by reason of his high striking, called by most the Swift-Cut; but if above his Fetlock or Hoof, it is Enterfering, or Short-Cutting, but in this be sure to take good Observation, for if under the Skin all over there appear little Knobs or Scabs, it is caused by some ill Usage or nasty Keeping, or else Symptoms of the Mange, that will in short time break forth to the full if not prevented.

Farther, If his Legs be full-fleshed, Fat or Dropfical, he will in no wise be fit for Servile Labour; if on the inward Bend of his Knee there be long Scars, Seams or Scabs, the which have not been occasioned by the Swift-Cut, they will prove very dangerous; for it denotes a Malander; that in a short time will turn to a Canker or Ulcer.

Now let us descend to his Pasterds, the first of which must be sure to be cleaner and and strongly knit with Sinews or Ligaments; the second strait, stiff and smoothly fixed, not more inclinable to bend one way than another, but not over-long; for it shews a weak Horse: Or if the former be Gouty or Swelling, it denotes Stains and over-reaching Sinews.

The next thing to be considered is the Hoof, the which is as great a piece of Curiosity to be observed as any that belong to the chusing of a good Horse, for if that fail, all the other Properties avail not.

First then, A good Hoof should be smooth, of Colour Black and inclining to long, something hollow and full sounding; for take notice that a white Hoof is not so good, by reason of its tenderness; so that it is apt either to let the Shoe draw, or it self to batter or spread, by being in too much Wet or hard Riding.

The next is a withered Hoof that seems to Scale, or have Welts or Seams upon it; which denotes the Horse to be aged or much worn by hard Travel or Over-heats; another sort of Hoofs there are, which are called Short-Hoofs, and are so brittle, that they will not bear any Shoe above a Day at the most, if rid or laboured; if his Hoof be exceeding round, it is bad for deep and dirty Ways, by reason the Horse cannot tread sure; a flat Hoof that is light and full of Pores or Holes, is a sign of his being foundred; if you perceive by striking the Hoof a hollow Noise, or that it be hollow within, it signifies some internal defect, and an old Fester not cured, that has wasted the Pith, and therefore is not good.

The next thing observable is the Coronet, or Socket of the Hoof, the which being well-fleshed, smooth, without Chops or Scars, and well decked with Hair, is a sign of its being in good plight and sound; but if the contrary, he is often troubled with Ring-Worms, a Crown-Scab, or the like dangerous Misfortune.

Having taken particular Notice of the former Properties of Goodness or Defect, remove your self to the Right Side, and then take especial notice how his Head is fixed to his Neck; see first that it be small at the setting on, and so by degrees descend Taper to his Shoulders, not thick, but rather broad; and observe that his Head stand not too high nor too low, with a high, yet thin Crest, his Mane declinable, long, soft, and a little curling, which are Signs of Comeliness; as on the contrary, a thick Jolt-Head and thick Neck, short and Brawny, shews much Dulness and Deformity.

If there be any Swelling in or under the Nape of the Neck, it will certainly turn to the Pole-Evil or some Fistula, which is altogether as bad, if not taken in time.

Again,

Again, To have a thick Neck, and lank or fallen near the Withers, to have a gross and flat, or sunk Crest, are Signs of great defect in Strength; excessive store of Hair upon the Main, especially if it be strait and hard, signifies Dulness and want of Courage; a thin Main that is not made so by any Accident or Distemper, shews the Horse to be of a fiery Nature; if it fall away, it shews either Itch, Worms, or Mange to lodge there.

The next thing worthy to be observed, is his Back or Chine, which must be broad, strait and smooth, well measured and even, to which his Ribs must be well grafted, firm and round, his Fillets or Haunches strait, stout and strong, nor must there be above three Inches breadth between the farthest Rib and Huckle-bone, that is the nearest to the same, as the short-Ribs, which are all Signs of a perfect and well-shaped Horse.

The next thing is, To take special Observation of the shape of his Body, if it be plump, smooth, and contained within the compass of his Ribs, and not hanging over, or paunching out; his Stones or Genitals must likewise be contained close in their Purfes or Cods, as it were girt to his Yard, the which shews the Horse to be of good Mettle, well made, and free from Diseases in those Parts; but if the contrary, it shews him defective and uncomely.

First then, If he have a narrow Back, he will be prone to Saddle-Galls, Hurts and Bruises in Riding; to have a sway Back is a token of great Weakness in the Chine; or if his Ribs be very fat and strait, they in Travel will hinder him from fetching his full Wind, and so consequently make him tire; if now his hinder Ligaments or Fillets be slack, hang flabbing and unseemly, they will be a great hindrance to him, if he Travel in steep ways, and he can by no means hold and Pace up a Hill, if it be very steep, and but very untoward in carrying a Burthen.

Again, If his Belly be gaunt, and seem to be close within his Ribs, or near to his Back, if his Stones hang down and swag about in the Gods, they are great Signs of Imperfection and Uneasiness in the Horse, caused by some Distemper, and likewise he will be apt to Founder.

The next things to be taken notice of are his Buttocks; they must be smooth, round and even, not standing too high nor too low, but as near as can be level with his Body; but many choose a long Buttock'd Horse for Riding double or the like, which if they do, they must observe that they rise behind, and wear the Dock spread to the setting on thereof, which makes a Horse shew well, and are Signs of Strength.

Now for the narrow Buttock or ridged Rump, they are both weak and uncomely, and will not conveniently bear any thing behind.

From which I shall descend to his Thighs or Hips; first, observe if they be well brawned, sinewed, and that they from the first setting on to the



Bow Joint are made taper, lessening by degrees, and be well fleshed; all which, if they be not, shews Weakness and unaptness for Service; after which take special notice of the Hock or middle Joint, and with your Hand feel if it be well knit, full of Gristles, Sinews and Ligaments, that it be not fleshy nor swelled, and that it have large Veins, be pliant and apt to bend at each Motion of the Horse, something bowing it must be and firm. All these are good Signs; but if there be Cuts, Scars, or Festers in the inside of the Joint, or elsewhere, it is dangerous and not easie to be cured.

If there happen any swelling or Heat over the Joints in general, then it is no other but a Blow; but observe, if such swelling be only in one place, and that on the inside, in the hollow of the Joint, and the Veins strut, feel hot, and beat much, or throb, and that the swelling be soft, it is a Blood-Spaven; but if brawny and hard, a Bone-Spaven; but if it chance to be just upon the Hock or Out-Bow behind, or a little under it, then it is, or shortly will be, a Curb, &c.

Now for his hinder Legs, you must observe whether they be fine, near, and clean, full of strong Sinews, and not very fat, which shews him sound in those Parts; but on the contrary, if his Legs be very fat, fleshy, large, it signifies him bad for Service; if they be tumid or swelling, it denotes the settlings of molten Grease there; if any Scabs happen to be something above the Pasterns, they denote the Scratches or Chops; Cuts or Scars beneath them, denote Pains or Aches, all which are dangerous, and require great Skill and Diligence to cure them.

Now for the Tail; it cannot stand amiss nor out of place upon fair Buttocks; But upon an ill pair, if it be never so well placed, it will not seem handson; the Posture it ought to stand in, is even with the parting of the Buttocks, that is broad, high, smooth, and somewhat bending inward, fleshy and of a good length, bristly and curled, the length being not only a Beauty, but very necessary for him to defend himself with, against Wasps, Hornets, and Flies, tho' many desire to have him Cut-tail'd.

But in general, the whole Body must be framed according to the most expert Horsemen's Opinions, thus, to have the Head and Legs of a Stag, the Ears and Tail of a Fox, the Neck of a Swan, the Breast of a Lyon, the Buttocks of a Woman, and the Feet of an Ass. The perfect good Horse thus Virgil in his *Georgicks* describes, the which to insert may not be amiss.

*With Head advanced high, at first, the Kingly Colt doth pace,  
His tender Limbs aloft he lifts, as well becomes his Race;  
And foremost still he goes, and through the Stream he makes his way,  
And ventures first the Bridge, no sudden sound doth him affray.  
High crested is his Neck, and eke his Neck is framed small,  
His Belly gaunt, his Back is broad, and Breasted big withal.*

*The Bay is always counted good, so likewise is the Grey,  
The White and Yellow worst of all: Besides if far away  
There haps a Noise, he stamps and quiet cannot rest,  
But prances here and there, as if some Spirit him possess.  
His Ears be set upright, and from his Nose a fiery Flame  
Doth seem to come, while as he snuffs and snorteth at the same.  
Thick is his Mane, and on his right-side down doth hanging fall,  
And double Chin'd, upon his Loins a Gutter runs withal.  
He scraping stands, and making of deep holes, he paws the Ground,  
Whilst that aloud his horned Hoof all hollow seems to sound.*

Thus have you all the particular and general Descriptions both of a good and bad Horse, and may therefore know what to choose and what to forbear; and Note, among all the Creatures irrational, there is not one more Generous nor more serviceable to Man than is the Horse; for as we read of *Bucephalus*, the Horse of *Alexander* the Great, that altho' he was wounded in the Battle against the Persians, so that his Life was much despaired of, yet would not he suffer his Master to mount any other Horse till he had brought himself out of the Battle. The like has been reported of others, whose Loves have been so great to their Masters, that when they have been enclosed with Enemies, the Horses have fought in their Defence couragiously; and *Eumenius* relateth, that a certain Traveller being set upon by four Thieves, was killed, which his Horse perceiving, fell upon them with such fury, that in revenge of his Master's Death, he kill'd two of them, and made the other two get up into a Tree to save themselves, where he watched them till such time as several Passengers came by and understood what had passed, the Thieves being constrained to confess what they had done. And indeed it behoves all who frequently Travel the Roads, to have a good Horse, that they may save them in Necessity, either by Courage or swiftness in Flight.

C H A P. XI. *How to Cure the Autoco, a violent pain so called.*

**T**HIS happens most commonly when Horses are first put into fresh Pasture, by their too eagerness of feeding, which causes ill Digesture, and leaves vicious Humours in the Stomach, or if he be at Stable, or dry Mear, the like may happen by his rank feedings: This Disease often takes the Horse very violently, makes his Legs fail him and to hang down his Head, shaking all over as if an Ague possessed him. The speediest way to remedy it, is to let him Blood, and two Mornings successively to give him about an Ounce of Diapente brewed in a quart of strong Ale; it being a sovereign Medicine or Drink to expel the Vapours, Pains and Infections that do oppress the Heart; if he be not cured in twice giving, you may give him thrice, the which will infallibly remove and take away the Distemper.

C H A P. XII. *How to Cure a Horse that has been burnt by any Mare, &c.*

**V**Vether he be so or no, you may discern by his Yard, for if that be foul, corrupt, and swelleth so that he cannot stale without much pain, they are infallible Symptoms that he has been burnt. To cure which, Take a pint of *French Wine*, boil it with a quarter of a pound of *Roch Allom* beaten into fine Powder; after which, take it luke-warm, and with a Syringe or Squirt, squirt it into his Yard; and so do till his Yard leave Matter-ing, and it will perfectly cure him.

C H A P. XIII. *Rules to be observed in the Sweating of Horses.*

**F**irst, Let the keeper take great care, when he airs his Horse, that it be done by degrees, and not all on a sudden, and then let him observe in that as well as in all his other Actions, what Temper of Body he is of, that is, whether with little or much Motion he used to sweat; for many Horses will Sweat tho' they stand still in their Stalls, which commonly denotes the Horse faint, ill dieted, and as bad looked after, then must you exercise him to work out the Sweat, and bring down his foul feeding; but if he be not apt to Sweat, unless upon strong Heats and large Breathings, then observe, if his Sweat be White or Frothy, then take notice that your Horse is foul within, and must be exercised yet more; but if it be like Water, yet thick and black, you need not fear any Danger.

C H A P. XIV. *How to prevent a Horse from Stumbling, &c.*

**T**ake your Horse so used to Stumble, and with his Halter fasten him close to a Post, then with a Lancet, or a sharp Pen-knife, slit the Skin from his Nose to the upper Lip, that is downright just between his Nostrils, about two Inches, which when you have done, part it as wide as you can, and under it you will find a Red Film, or second Skin, that likewise cut and part, beneath which you may discern a flat, smooth, white Sinew, the which take up with your Cornets Horn point, and twist it round about, after a little space twist it again quite round, so another time, then have regard to his Legs, and you shall see him draw by degrees his hinder Legs almost to his fore Legs, the which as soon as he has done, with your Lancet divide the Sinew at the part which grows to the Lip, the which as soon as you have effected, untwist it and it will shrink up into the Head, and then his Legs will withdraw back again; for Note, that this Sinew is the cause of his Stumbling; and that it goes quite through his Body, and spreads itself into his two hinder Legs; after which, you must close up the Slit, and put into it fresh Butter and a little Salt beat fine; then take a Cere-cloth made of Burgundian Pitch, or Stock-Pitch, and lay upon it, and afterwards you may trust your Horse for Stumbling. This is a rare Secret, known by few, but worthy to be observed in any the like Occasions.

CHAP.



CHAP. XV. *How to take the best advantage of Ground in any Race.*

**T**IS to be observed, that when you know the Ground you are to run, you must acquaint your Horse with it, and give him his Heats there always, making him take the worst part of it, that so upon any strait he may not boggle, but that if he in the Race get the best part he may run the more chearfully, yet let it not be in such rough Ground where he may be apt to slip, or get any Sprains in his Joints, for if he does, it will disable him for the future, and make him Timorous; but at any time when you hear your Horse thereon, let him run out the full Course, and never beyond the weighing Post; or if you do not ride him outright, ride him half way and back again, but never let him exceed the Bounds he is to run, that is, not beyond the Mark or Post, but you may run him quite through, and then back again, if he be of Ability to bear it; so that in a little time he will be so well acquainted with the Ground, that when he comes to the Race it will be easie for him to perform. One thing more is to be observed, that is, what Ground the Horse most delights to run upon, that you must choose as near as Opportunity will give you leave, but you must not always heat him upon the same Ground, sometimes in spacious Fields, green Meadows and Rivers sides, as has been before mentioned.

CHAP. XVI. *How to know by the Hair of your Horse's Neck, in what estate he is.*

**F**irst, Observe the Horse's Hair in every part; but the main regard is to be had to that of his Neck; for if he be sleek, close, bright and shining, it denotes that he is in good order; but if the contrary, as rough, shagged, and standing upright, and as it were changing Colour, take it for a Rule he is not well, but that some inward Grief has seized him, as chilness of Heart, want of warmth in the external Parts, or some Ague hovering about him, but not yet perfect; to prevent which, and to restore him, you must rub him in, and keep him very warm with double Cloths, and give him in a quart of warm Ale, one of the before mentioned Cordial Balls, the which will expel the cold Humours, and make him lively and chearful again, the which you shall know by the sudden falling of his Hair, the which before stood staring.

CHAP. XVII. *How to make the brittlest Hoof imaginable become soft, and bear well any Shoe, without the least injury to the Horse.*

**T**AKE about eight Pounds of fresh Hogs-grease, and about half a Bushel of Damask Roses well pick'd and clean from Seeds; melt the Hogs-grease in a Kettle, and when it boils put in the Roses, and dip them all over till they swell; then take them off, and putting them into a close earthen Vessel with the Grease and all, let them stand and cool; or if you have an Oren, when you have drawn, let it stand in it and cool by degrees; after which

which, when your Horse has newly dunged, put about three Pounds of the same into them, let it stand for the space of three Weeks, then melt it again, and strain out the liquid part, and cover it up close in the earthen Vessel by itself, throwing the other away.

The manner to use it is as followeth: Take one Spoonful of Tar, and a handful of Horse-dung, heat them together in a pint of Olive Oil, then taking off his Shoes, wrap up his Feet with stiff Leather so that you may pour the Liquor in, and it will not run out, which being in, let it continue there about a Week, and then the old being wasted, supply its place with fresh, the which after thrice doing you may put on his Shoes again, then stop his Feet well with the Tar, Horse-dung and Oil, putting over it Tow, or Flax, and in a short time his Hoofs will be soft and tough, so that you may use them without fear, and they will bear any shoe exceeding well, and so for a long time, if not as long as the Horse liveth.

CHAP. XVIII. *An account of the things to be observed for the Preservation of a Horse's Health, and to make him live long.*

**T**HE First of which is mature and good Digestion of whatsoever he eateth or drinketh, so that it turn to pure Blood and Nourishment.

2. The second to be considered, is spare and moderate feeding, in which he must neither eat too fast, nor too much.

3. The third must be taken from moderate Labour and seasonable Exercise.

4. The Fourth is to observe fit Times and Seasons for sleeping and waking, both which must be moderately taken.

5. The Fifth, He must not be too much acquainted with Mares, nor ride them often, for nothing sooner shortens Life in any Creature.

6. The Sixth, not to be overheated, nor his Spirits to be wasted by long and tedious Journeys.

7. The Seventh is, continually to be in smooth, serene and wholesome Air, and not to feed in foggy Fens, Marshes, or damp Meadows.

8. The Eighth, Observe that you neither Exercise, nor any ways make him Labour hard when he is newly taken from Grass.

9. The Ninth, To keep him from greedily eating young Grass, either Clover or other, but especially from surfeiting on the blades of Corn.

10. The Tenth, you must observe that he drink not when he has been hard ridden or laboured, so that he is very hot.

11. The Eleventh thing to be taken notice of is, that you must neither wash nor walk him when you are come to your Journey's end, ride him about a moderate pace till he begins to cool, and then bring him into the Stable, rub him well down and clap on his Cloths, and whisp him round, being well stored with Litter.

12. The

12. The Twelfth and last, is to give him Meat in due time; observe his Scourings, Diets, and other Physical Medicines as occasion shall require, the which in this Book you will find good store, with large Directions how to use them.

CHAP. XIX. *St. Anthony's most admirable Remedy for any Sprain, Swelling, or stretching of Sinews or Nerves. A better not to be found.*

**O**F bruised Cummin-seeds take three Ounces, and boil them in a Pint of Oil of Cammomil, then add to them half a pound of yellow Bees-Wax, and let them boil to the thickness of a Cere-Cloth, then spread it on Sheeps-Leather very hot, and apply it to the place so grieved, and in twice doing it will perfect the Cure if it be not too far gone, if it be, you must apply it till it is well.

CHAP. XX. *The speediest and safest way to cure the Swift-Cut, or the Knee Cut.*

**T**AKE one pint of White-Wine, then add to it two Ounces of Virgin-Hony, brew them together, and boil them till the Honey is melted amongst the Wine, and then add more of Turpentine the like Quantity, then let them boil to the thickness of a Salve, and as hot as the Horse can endure it, wash the Cuts with it once or twice a Day, and it will quickly heal them; but besure you wash the dirt out of them, if there be any in, wash it with hot Water before you apply the Ointment.

CHAP. XXI. *A speedy Remedy for a Horse or a Cow that have any way licked up red Poison, Worms, Spiders, or any other venomous Insect, or that is ready to burst by eating of too much Clover, Turnips, or young-eared Barley, and drinking after it.*

**T**HIS is to be known by their speedy swelling and flavering at the Mouth, and working at the Fundament, the which when you perceive that they are ready to burst (which is a common thing about Harvest-time) be sure to have recesse to this Medicine, Take four Ounces of Spanish Soap, or if that be not to be gotten, our English Cake-soap, and scrape it in a Mortar, then put to it two Ounces of Dialphera, then beat them as small as you can together, and make it into Balls as big as Pigeons Eggs, and take one of them and dissolve it in hot Beer, and if it will not quickly dissolve, crumble it in, then with a Drenching-horn, or any such necessary Implement, pour it down the Throat of the Beast so swelled, be it either a Horse, Ox, or Cow, and it will immediately abate the swelling by Urine and Scouring, which it will force in abundance.

CHAP. XXII. *An approved Remedy for the Mad Staggers or Lunacy.*

**T**HE Symptoms whereby you shall know whether your Horse be troubled with this Disease, are his Dulness and Heaviness, foaming at Mouth, Dimness of Sight, often staring, and having a blue Skin over his Sight; restless.



less and often reeling, and the like; the which, or any of them being observed, you must instantly take care to have your Horse let blood in the Neck, in the great Blood-Veins on the left side, or if you think convenient on both sides, and in the third Bar of the Palate of his Mouth, and prick him in the Nose, just upon the Grifiles above the Nostrils, which bleeding will instantly abate the grievous pain of his Head; then take a handful of Rue, or Herb of Grace, three or four Cloves of Garlick, an Ounce of fine Salt, *Aqua vitæ* two Spoonfuls, of White-Wine Vinegar one; after they are bruised together strain them, and pour the liquid Substance equally divided into his Ears, then with Black Wool stop them close, so that no Air can get in, or tie them that he may not shake out the Wool, then fume his Nostrils through the little end of a Funnel, with the peelings of Garlick and Mastick, well dried and beaten, and rowled up in little Balls, or sprinkled upon a Chafindish of Char-coals, and so do three times a Day at least, and it will expel the infectious Vapours that disturb the Brain, then give him a Dram of single Poppy-Seeds beaten into Powder, the which you must blow up his Nostrils, and about two Ounces of Poppy-Water to drink, which will cast him into a sound Sleep; after let his Diet be mashed Oats and ground, and give him cold Water to drink, and after twenty four Hours you may unbind or unseer his Ears and take out the Wool, and in a short time he will chear up and look lively again: *Probatum est.*

CHAP. XXIII. *How to stop the Glanders for a Day or two, whilst you have Sold or Swapped away your Horse, who is troubled with the same.*

**F**irst, Of Verjuice take four Ounces, three Spoonfuls of Olive-Oil, two of *Aqua vitæ*, and put half into one Nostril, and the rest into the other, with a Sirringe when it is lukewarm, then ride your Horse full speed for half a Mile, or more, only when you observe him begin to Cough, ride gently, and put him into a warm Stable, cover him with Cloths and give him a Mash, but if he be ill-disposed upon the turning of the Glanders, give him new Milk as warm as possible, and they will infallibly stop.

CHAP. XXIV. *How to order your Stallion, as to his Diet, when he is to Cover your Mare.*

**A**T any time when you design him to cover your Mare, you must about a Week before, take him out of the Stable, and let him run in the freshest and tenderest Grass you have, the which will not only encrease, but make his Seed of the aptest and quickest Temper for to generate a lively Colt, and he will be the willinger to cover the Mare, by reason of his Airy Temperament of Body, when feeding on Hay, or other dry Meat, would render him dull and short-winded, as likewise his being acquainted with the Mare will be a great incitement to him.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV. *For the melting of Grease after a Race or other Excessive Riding.*

**T**HE means to know the Certainty of his Grease being molten, is to observe as soon as he is in the Stable, whether his Breast beats or pants more than usual after any Journey or Race, as likewise his sides, under his Girts, and his Flank heaving quick and falling softly; all which if you perceive, then is his Grease melted, and will turn to crudy Humours, if not brought away in time; the speediest way, for which, is to take one Pint of *Spanish Wine*, and an Ounce of *Diascordiam* brewed in the same, and give it to him presently to drink, and so continue four or five Mornings after, before he has eaten either Hay or Provinder, then you must Diet him with Mashs of Oats and Barley boiled, and a considerable Quantity of ground Malt, and let him drink Water indifferent warm; but if he refuse his Meat, you must give him half a Pint of White-Wine, into which, you must put two Ounces of Honey, and let them boil till the Honey is melted, and let him take it pretty warm, the which, will cause him to void much Urine, and by that means give him ease. Upon his taking of this you must ride him a Mile, or more, but it must not be above a hand Gallop, then returning home you must rub him down and keep him as warm as possible; when in this manner you have spent three Days, give him another, the like Quantity of Honey and White-Wine, then take especial notice of his Dung; if it be small and he seem to Dung with pain, then he is bound in his Belly, and the Grease is not removed, to effect which, you must give him three Pints, or two Quarts of Beer, the stalest you can get, and a slice of Household Bread, both being boiled and mingled together, to which, you must add four Ounces of Honey and the like Quantity of fresh Butter, then in the Morning, before he hath eaten any thing, give it him lukewarm, then ride him about a Mile, give him the same at Night, and ride him as before; but you must observe to give it him but every other Day, the which will loosen his Belly, and by degrees waste the Grease; about four Hours after he has taken his Dose, boil him three Quarts of Oats and give them to him, and mingle that Water, the Oats were boiled in, with some other to cool it, let him drink of it; you may with his Oats boil Fenugreek Seeds about three Quarters of a Pound, and let him eat them mingled; but if he refuse to eat them, you may mingle them with a little fine Bran; then last of all give him an Ounce of Aloes boiled, till they are dissolved in a Quart of Ale, or a Pint of White-Wine, and so it will purge away the ill Humours, and in three Weeks, or less, restore him to his former Health and Soundness of Body.

CHAP. XXVI. *How to make a Horse Vomit, and by so doing, to avoid the Foulness of his Stomach, or any Infection he hath taken in.*

**T**ake Polypodium Roots the greater, pare them and wash them very clean, and then steep them in Oil of Spike, and fasten them to the Bit of his Bridle, after which put it on and ride him abroad, with the same in his Mouth, for the space of half an Hour, or somewhat more, but it must be softly, not above a Trot at the most, and then if any ill Humour, or Flegmatick Substance, lodge in his Stomach, this will draw it up by causing him to vomit extremely, as likewise to Cough and Sneeze, the which will much cleanse his Head from Rheums that lodge there, and expel the Vapours that offend the Brain, so that tho' it make him sick for the present, yet when that is over, he will find himself more brisk and lively than before, having voided all the Filth and Slime, that are the Originals of all Diseases, that happen at any time to any Horse; after you have taken off the Bridle and removed the Roots, give him a Pint of the best *French* Wine mingled with three Ounces of Honey, let it be indifferent warm, and then keep him as much from cold as is possible, two Hours after you may give him a warm Mash of Oats and Barley.

CHAP. XXVII. *The Discovery of several Tricks and Cheats used by Jockeys.*

1. **F**irst then, To make a dull Jade both Kick, Wince, and Fling, without either Whip or Spur, they use this Device; in the fore part of a Saddle, made for that purpose, they have an Iron Plate, thro' which is drilled three Holes, thro' which, with a Spring, come three sharp Wyers, the which as long as the Rider sits upright, do not prick the Horse; but when he leans forward, and presses the Bow of the Saddle, they Torment him so, that he Capers and Dances, tho' never so dull, which the ignorant Buyer often supposes to proceed from the highth of his Mettle, which the Jockey spares not to avouch with Oaths.

2. The Second is, If any Gentleman have set up a Horse in a Stable at Livery, the Jockey either by bribing the Hostler, or privately by taking an Opportunity in his Absence, will, with a Hair, take up the Vein on the inside of the Horse's Leg, or by cramping him in the Fetlock with a small Wyer (neither of which can be observed without a curious Search) either of which, will cause the Horse, after a quarter of an Hours Riding to halt downright Lane, then is the Owner sent for, whose coming the Jockey having notice of, pretends some Business in the Stable, and whilst the Gentleman is admiring the sudden Misfortune befallen his Horse, he puts in his Verdict, saying, It was a great deal of pity that so good a Beast should be disabled, and by degrees insinuates into the Gentleman's Acquaintance, desiring him to send for a Farrier, who comes and searches his Foot,



Foot, but finds no Cause of Lameness there, whereupon the Gentleman despairing of his Recovery, is often pressed by the Jockey to sell him at half the Worth, or swap him for some dull Jade, that he or some of his Comrades have near at hand, who having got the Gentleman's Horse, by uncramping or letting loose the Vein render him as at first.

3. The Third Cheat they put upon Travellers is this: Coming into a Country Inn, their first walk is into the Stable, where taking a view of the Horses, they single out the best for their purpose, demanding of the Hostler, who that fine Horse belongs to, who ignorant of any Design, freely tells them; then they place their Horses next him, and seem only to feed, or rub them down, and order the Hostler to fetch a peck of Oats, the which whilst he is gone to do, they thrust a Stone about the bigness of a Tennis-Ball into his Fundament, one of which they have always ready; it not having been in a quarter of an Hour before the Horse begins to sweat mightily, and fall a trembling and staring, as if his Eyes were ready to start out of his Head, so that a white Foam, soon after, covers many places about him, which the Hostler observing, runs to the Gentleman that owns him, and tells him his Horse is dying; at which, starting up, he runs to the Stable and finds him in a bad Plight, not knowing what to think, or if he do, conjectures he is poisoned, and in a confused hurry, enquires for a Farrier, or Horse-Doctor, when as Mr. Jockey steps in, and asketh what is the matter, as if he, poor harmless Fellow, knew nothing of it; but quickly understanding the Business, begins both to pity the Horse and Gentleman, the former for his miserable Condition, and the latter for the Danger he is in of losing his Horse, when thus he applies himself: Sir, I am sorry to see your Horse in so bad a Plight; then puts in to buy him at a Venture, live or die, the which if he cannot do handsomely, he undertakes to cure him, telling the Gentleman, that tho' it is not his usual Custome to meddle with, yet he will undertake, for Forty Shillings, to warrant his Life: The Gentleman consents, rather than to loose a Horse worth Twenty Pounds; then for a shew he gives him a Drench, and takes Opportunity to withdraw the Stone, and within half an Hour's space the Horse will be perfectly well, and so they fob the Ignorant.

CHAP. XXVIII. *How to Dye the Manes and Tails of White Horses.*

**T**AKE two Ounces of Madder, sold by Druggists, beat it coarsly, and put it into a Glasing Pot, which will endure the Fire, with three half Pints of Claret-Wine, and a small Glass full of Olive or Walnut Oil; put the Horses Tail, or Mane into the Pot, stopping it all close about with a coarse Cloth, or Wisps of Hay or Straw, that none of it may evaporate; then hold beneath the Pot a Chafindish full of Burning Coals, blowing it with a pair of Bellows, and steeping it so, until the Liqueur

hath boil'd about a quarter of an Hour, and that the Horse may not feel the heat of the Fire, hold a Board betwixt the Chafer and Horse: Observe that none of his Dock be put in, but Hair only. When it has boiled a quarter of an Hour, take the Tail or Mane out of the Pot, and wash it presently in clean Water, and it will be a beautiful Scarlet; if not, put it in a second time among fresh Liquor, and then take it out and wash it, and the Colour will contain as long as the Hair, a Yellow and Gold Colour.

*A New and Easie Way to prevent all Distempers in Horses and Sheep:  
And also, how to feed Cattle Fat without Hay, Corn, or Grass.*

*Of the HORSE.*

**A** Horse is an excellent and useful Creature, but thro' ill Management often abused; to prevent which, the Drivers ought to observe, First, That in the Morning, they drive them moderately. Secondly, When they have done Labour rub them well down, then tie them to the Rack for an Hour or two, during which time give them no Meat, but between-whiles keep them rubbing, till their tired Spirits be refreshed, then give them a moderate Quantity of Meal and Drink. Thirdly, Let the Stables be open to the Air, and keep them clean; Let not your Horses in the Stable, especially your Saddle-Horses, have constantly Hay in the Rack, nor Provinder in your Manger, but tie them from their Racks, five, six or seven Hours together; let not your Cattle have too much Meat at a time, but such a quantity as they may eat up clean: When your Horse has been hard Rid, or Worked much, you may conveniently give him a little Water about two Hours before you give him Meat. Rubbing down Horses, is better than Walking them when hot. Those that give their other Cattle Grains, as the People about *London* do, let them put a little Salt into them, which prevents the Rot, and Watry Windy Diseases. Let your Mares with Foal, and their Coalts, run in the Fields for a Year. Observe but these Rules, and your Horses will seldom want Drenching or Bleeding: But if you find they prove too fast, the best way to cool their Blood, and keep them from Diseases, is, To give them moderate Labour, and alter the Quality of their Food.

The best Food for Horses is good Rick Hay, that is about three Quarters of a Year old, which is much better than Hay out of the Barn. And Corn in the Straw is much better than that that is only thresh'd, or that that is both thresh'd and cleans'd from its Chaff. And Beans, Fitches, Pease, Barley, and Oats in the Straw, is not only the most hearty Food, but cleanseth the Stomach from all Superfluities: But thresh'd Corn of any sort, is good Food for working Horses, that go to Grass, especially in

in Winter, giving it them Morning and Night. Put your Stable Horses to Grass, from *May* to *July*, which will cleanse their Bodies, and cure their Feet and Legs of Diseases contracted by standing in the Stable all Winter: Rain, River and Spring-Water, are best for Horses and other Cattle, much better than Pond-Water.

As for Sheep, any disorder wounds their Health, if they are driven too hard, or coursed with a Dog, or the like, if they be suffered to lye down whilst hot, and this being done often, they will break out with the Scab, or Mange: When about *Michaelmas* you put them into fresh Pastures, if they are close Folded it will do the same: If in hot Weather they be often removed from place to place, it will hinder them from Thriving, and make them Scabby, much Wet likewise makes them Rot. In the Morning betimes, drive your Sheep into Fallow Fields or Downes, where Grass is scarce, and take no notice of the Situation of the Field; then walk your Sheep gently on the driest and highest Parts; if there be Corn Fields, let them feed about two or three Hours by the Hedges. About Eleven a Clock, turn them from the Edges of the Corn-Fields or Pasturage, into the lowest Clay-ground or Valleys you have, and let them lye at ease, and as scattering as you can: Use them at all times tenderly, and less Food will serve; observe this Method from *May* till *August*, if the Weather continue warm, and it will prevent Scab and Mange, when they come into fresh Pasture. In *May* or *June*, I think is the best time for Shearing. If the Summer proves wet about *June* or *July*, let your Sheep continue in the Fold till Eight in the Morning, If the Morning be moist; and again, let them be folded before the Dew falls: Observe these Rules, and you will prevent many Diseases, as Choler, Flegm, Stoppages, Red-Water, Coughs, Pains in the Joints, Lameness; and the like: You ought to be most careful of Sheep from *Midsummer* till *Michaelmas*. Therefore keep your Sheep till Nine a Clock, or till the Sun have dried the moist Vapours and Humidity from the Earth, and then let them out, and keep them on the high and dry grounds; if the Day prove dry, feed them three Hours in lower Grounds, and about Evening put them in higher places, and be sure Fold them before the Dew falls, and Fold them on dry Ground; from *July* to *September*, Sheep are most subject to Rot, and is occasioned chiefly by too much Moisture at the Season, and not from licking up Snails, &c. which I omit for Brevity.

If wet Weather happen about *July*, *August*, or *September*, or when it is generally a wet Summer, and continues till *Michaelmas*, a Rot is greatly to be feared. In wet Weather, give your Sheep Hay at Night and Morning, or give them three times a Week Oats, or other Grain, mixing a little Salt with it, and this will prevent the Rot: Low wide Houses like Barns open on all sides to House Sheep in wet Weather, preserves them from Rot; this is a general Rule in *Flanders*. Those that live where the  
Rot



Rot is often, ought to change their Sheep for Hill-Country-Sheep, which will thrive, and prove less subject to this Disease.

*To Feed HORSES well, without Hay.*

**C**Hop half a Peck of Straw small, and mingle a handful of Oats amongst it, and put it in the Manger several times a Day, and let them drink often. Or, you may put in the Paste of Turnips in stead of Oats, which will do full as well. Make the Paste with the Coarsest Corn ground. Cut, shred, and chop all your Furs-tops, and give them your Horses, and they will exceedingly thrive therewith: This I had from a great Lord.

A great Traveller used to give his Horse a half-penny-worth of Carrots, which will answer half a Peck of Oats.

In *Kent* and *Hartfordshire*, they cut Pease and Oats small, and give their Horses with Chaff or Cut-Straw, and they thereby eat up all, and they thrive exceedingly. Parsnips are excellent likewise for all sorts of Cattle, and will feed them fat in a small time; they will feed Calves and Lambs very fat, and being boil'd, will feed Swine to the height of Fatness in a Fortnight's space, and the Liquor will feed them better than the best Whey. Cows are very greedy for the Liquor, and the Turnips boil'd; and I have seen them fed thus without any other Food, and they will afford Milk in abundance, more than with any other Food, and become fat therewith; Turnips boil'd, will feed all sorts of Poultry fat, and make them lay Eggs constantly, without any Corn at all, whereby may be kept, Pheasants, Turkeys, Geese, Partridge, Coots, Moor Cocks, in abundance without any charge. I have known Horses kept fat by slicing them, and casting them into the Manger, and of all Food whatever, nothing is more wholesome and healthful for Cattle, &c. You may keep all sorts of Poultry (and Rabbits) by a Paste made of Beasts Liver, the coarsest last Corn ground, and Bran, with a competent even mixture; but I have left out the Liver, and made a Paste, with the rest compounded with Turnips: But in Conclusion, Turnips of themselves are the only Food for Cattle, Poultry and Swine; *Probatum est*. Turnips boil'd, and mingled with Bran, will feed Hunting-Dogs very highly, without other Relief.

*To improve St. Foin, Clover, Trefoil, &c. in Ground not worth Two Shillings an Acre, to Two Pounds, &c.*

**S**T. Foin is a mighty Improver of dry and barren Ground, and excellent for feeding Cattle: For the right ordering it observe these Rules.

1<sup>st</sup>, Make your Ground fine, and kill all other Grass, Plants, &c. for they'll choak it.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Spare not for Seed; the more you sow the better and thicker it will grow. In *France* they sow these Seeds and Oats a-like quantity, on Ground that's out of Heart, and mow their Oats only the first Year, that

that it may root well; yet they may mow it in the first Year, but it's not so well, it holds good for seven Years, and it commonly bears four Loads, or more, on an Acre; after seven Years sow it with Corn, till it be out of Heart, and then sow it with St. Foin as before, for it does not impoverish Land as other Animal Plants do, but enriches it, when the Roots are turned up by the Plow: I have seen it thrive well in *England* on Chalky Banks, where nothing else would grow, and such dry barren Ground is fittest for it, (as moist rich Land is fit for Clover Grass, and Great Trefoil) tho' St. Foin will grow well on all Lands, especially if dry Grounds, for wet Land soon corrupts its Root: So Clover thrives almost in all sorts of Ground, unless very stony or very wet Land; but 'tis most proper for a mixt Land, such as partakes of Sand, and something a fatter Glebe: The same manure, or dressing that serves for Barley serves likewise for Clover, which will hold good Three Years, and make Ground of Two Shillings an Acre worth Two Pounds; this sort of Grass may be mowed twice a Year; the first Crop for Hay, and second Cut for Seed, about the middle of *September*, when the Blossoms are fully withered, for it must lye withering on the Ground for some time, and be Hous'd very dry, which is something difficult, by reason of the long Dews and declining Sun at his season of the Year. This Clover is excellent to feed Cattle, fatten Pigs and Sheep; and observe when you turn in Cattle, let it be when they are full, least they eat till they burst; it's so exceeding luscious when Clover is worn out, which is in Three Years, the Ground will quickly come to a Grassy Turf; so that I take it to be absolutely necessary for all that lays down his ground for Pasturage, to leave it with Clover. This sort of Improvement is much practised in *Herefordshire*, *Worster*, and *Glocester-shire*; and after some interval of time, it may be renewed again upon the same Ground, and so on, the Soil being first duly dress'd and prepar'd for Corn. But to return to St. Foin, as I told you, you must first fit the Ground and kill the Grass, Plants, &c. 2dly, Not to be sparing of Seed. 3dly, You must expect but seven Years Crop, and then Plow it up and sow it again with the same Seed, or other Grain. 4thly, Let not your Sheep or Cattle bite them the first Year. 5thly, Your best way is to make your Ground fine as when you sow Barley, and harrow it even, and then sow these Seeds in alone, without any other Grain, as Gardiners do Pease, but not at so great a distance, but let your range be about a Foot distant, and the'll grow like Rows of Green Pease, especially if you draw the Plow thro' them, once or twice that Summer, to destroy Weeds and Grass; and if you do thus, Clover and other Seeds may be mowed twice the first Year. *La Lucern*, not inferior to St Foin, but rather better for dry barren Lands, may be managed as St Foin. *La Lucern* they sow 14 Pound on an Acre, about the middle of *April*. Clover Ten Pound is allowed to an Acre, sometimes Twelve Pound. Its time of sowing is, usually

usually in *March* and *April*, in a calm Day; some sow it with *Wheat* or *Rye*, at *Michi-*  
*elmas*; the Middle or End of *May* they cut it, but the exact time is when it begins to  
knot.

St. Foin they allow Four Bushells to an Acre, you cannot sow it too thick; for the  
thicker it is the sooner it kills the Weeds; from *August* to the End of *September*, if  
sowed alone, but if mixt with other Grain, from the beginning of *Feb.* to the end of  
*March*; and it's better sow'd alone than with other Grain.

St. Foin, where it likes the Ground, is much more profitable than Clover, because of  
its longer Continuance; it requires a different Soil from Clover, for it thrives best in  
Hilly, Stony, Cold, and Barren Ground, but dry; such as in the higher Part of *Oxon-*  
*shire*, *Glocestershire*, and the like; this Grass may be mowed from Year to Year, for  
divers Years together: and when it dies, after a Years Intermision, may be renewed  
again, by sowing on the same Ground: It's good for Horses and other Cattle.

Two Acres of Clover the second Year, yielded in *May*, sow'd on a Rich light warm  
Land, Two Load of Hay, worth Five Pound: The next Crop of Seed, in *August*,  
yielded Three Loads, worth Nine Pound, and the Seed was worth 300*l.* which, with  
the Hay, was valued at Thirty Pound, besides the after Pasture.

### The TABLE of the Compleat JOCKEY.

THE best Method and Speediest way for Ordering of Race-Horses, to fit them for any  
Match, in what Estate soever they be, Page 1. The way and manner of dieting a Horse  
for a Race, being fat or gross, immediately after his being taken from Pasture, as to the  
first two Weeks, p. 3. Orders most carefully to be observed in the Courting of your Horses, p. 7.  
The manner of his second Fortnight's Feeding, and the care to be observed therein, p. 8. The  
first Diet in the ordering your Race-Horses, and the way to make it, p. 9. How to make the  
Dose or Scouring, p. 13. The Way and Method of looking to and keeping your Horse after he  
has taken this Potion, *ibid.* The manner of making these Balls, and their Virtue, with an ac-  
count of what Diseases they are most powerful to cure, p. 15. The manner of making his last  
Diet, *ibid.* The third Fortnight's Dieting and Ordering your Horse, p. 16. To cure the Au-  
toco, a violent Pain so called, p. 28. To cure a Horse that has been burnt by a Mare, *ibid.*  
Rules to be observ'd in Sweating your Horses, *ibid.* To prevent a Horse from Stumbling, p. 29.  
To take the best Advantage of the Ground in any Race, *ibid.* To know by the Hair of your  
Horse's Neck, in what estate he is, *ibid.* To make the brittlest Hoof imaginable become soft,  
and bear well any Shoe without the least Injury to the Horse, p. 30. An Account of things to be  
observed for a Horse's Health, *ibid.* St. Anthony's Admirable Remedy for a Sprain, Swelling,  
or stretching of Sinews or Nerves, &c. p. 31. The speediest and safest way to cure the Swift-  
Cut, or Knee-Cut, *ibid.* A speedy Remedy for a Horse or Cow that have any way licked up red  
Poison, Worms, Spiders, &c. *ibid.* A Remedy for the Mad Staggers or Lunacy, p. 32. To stop  
the Glanders while you have Sold your Horse, *ibid.* To Diet your Stallion when he is to cover  
the Mare, p. 33. The melting of Grease after Excessive Riding, *ibid.* To make a Horse Vomit,  
&c. p. 34. The Tricks and Cheats used by Jockeys, *ibid.* To Die the Manes and Tails of  
Horses, p. 35. To prevent all Diseases in Horses and Sheep; and how to feed Cattle Fat  
without either Hay, Corn or Grass, p. 60.

F I N I S.





bi-  
to

the  
if  
of

of  
in  
om-  
for  
ved

rm  
ust,  
ith

any  
rse  
the  
7.  
The  
the  
be  
ac-  
last  
u-  
id.  
29.  
our  
ft,  
be  
ng,  
ift-  
red  
top  
ver  
nit,  
of  
Fat